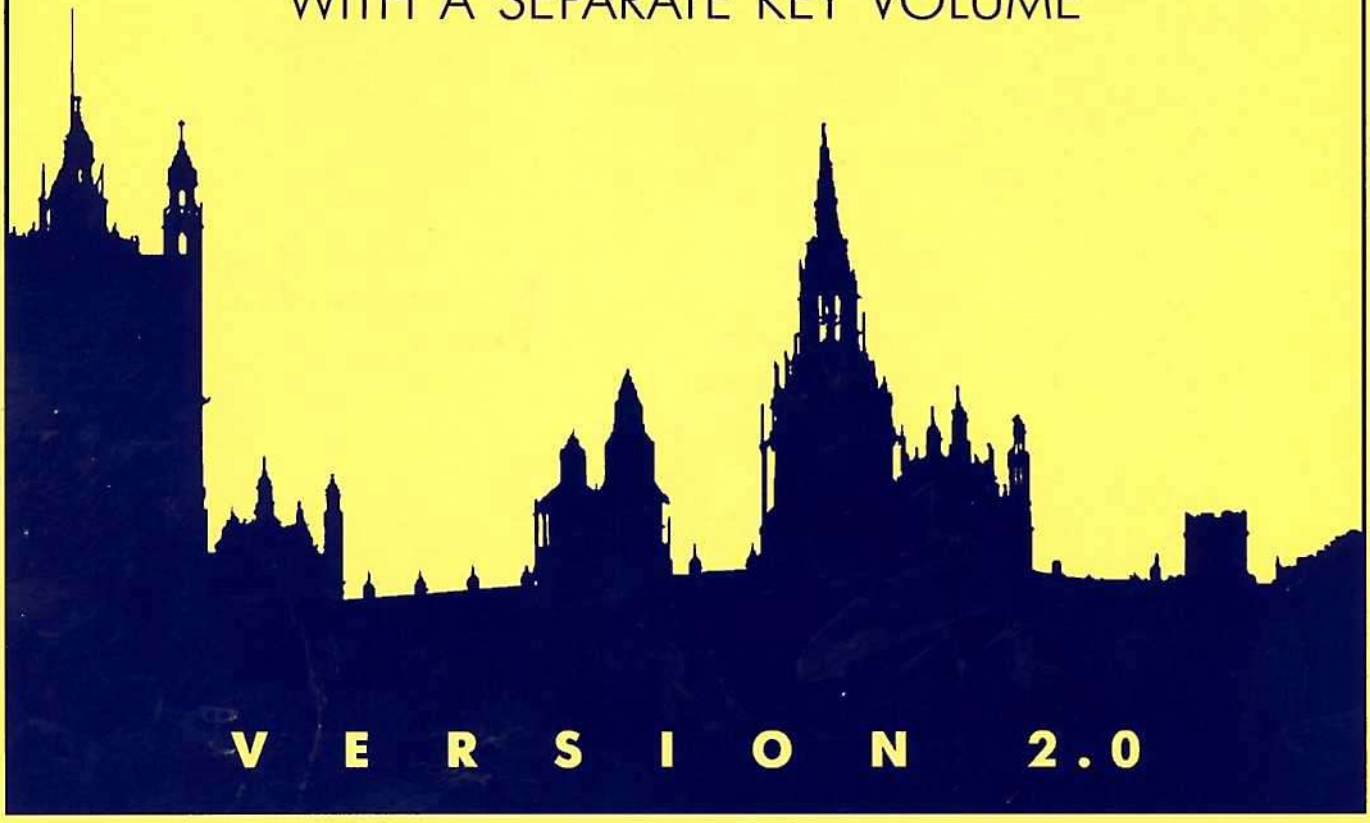
Anthology
PUBLISHERS

Т. Ю. Дроздова, В. Г. Маилова, А. И. Берестова

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

REFERENCE & PRACTICE

WITH A SEPARATE KEY VOLUME



VERSION 2.0

Т. Ю. Дроздова, В. Г. Маилова, А. И. Берестова

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

REFERENCE & PRACTICE

WITH A SEPARATE KEY VOLUME

Version 2.0

Учебное пособие для учащихся общеобразовательных учреждений
с углубленным изучением английского языка
и студентов вузов

Anthology
PUBLISHERS
Санкт-Петербург

ББК 81.2Англ
Д75

По вопросам приобретения продукции издательства обращайтесь:

ООО «Антология»:
тел.: (812) 328-14-41
www.anthologybooks.ru
e-mail: sales@bookstreet.ru

Огромный выбор учебной и методической литературы
в интернет-магазине
www.bookstreet.ru

Рецензент: Л. П. Чахоян, профессор, доктор филологических наук

Дроздова Т. Ю., Маилова В. Г., Берестова А. И.

Д75 English Grammar: Reference and Practice. Version 2.0. – СПб. : Антология, 2012. – 424 с.
ISBN 978-5-94962-165-3

Учебное пособие по грамматике английского языка для учащихся общеобразовательных учреждений с углубленным изучением английского языка и студентов вузов.

Новое переработанное издание включает 16 тематических разделов, множество таблиц и примеров, свыше 800 упражнений, рассчитанных на разные уровни языковой подготовки, новые коммуникативные упражнения. Большинство упражнений выполнено в виде «рабочей тетради». Отдельной книгой изданы ответы-ключи *The Keys*.

ББК 81.2Англ

ISBN 978-5-94962-165-3

© Дроздова Т. Ю., Маилова В. Г., Берестова А. И., 2009–2011
© ООО «Антология», 2012

ОТ АВТОРОВ

Предлагаемое вашему вниманию **издание 2009 года – новая переработанная версия учебного пособия English Grammar: Reference and Practice**. Наше пособие было создано на основе классических работ по грамматике английского языка, изданных в России, а также учебников британских и американских авторов – приверженцев коммуникативного подхода в обучении языку. Однако многолетний опыт работы в аудитории подсказал ряд изменений и дополнений, которые, не нарушая структуру пособия, значительно повышают его эффективность.

Прежде всего **учебное пособие дополнено новыми коммуникативными упражнениями**, которые предполагают создание и применение грамматической модели в соответствующих речевых ситуациях. Чтобы обеспечить психологическую комфортность процесса обучения, **сокращены длинные**, **тяжеловесные упражнения**. Ряд упражнений **снабжен иллюстрациями**, что также делает его **user friendly**.

Уточнены и расширены некоторые теоретические главы пособия. Новое издание включает **16 тематических разделов**, в которых приводятся общие сведения по каждой теме и объясняются особые случаи употребления грамматических моделей. Цель данного учебного пособия – изложить в доступной форме основные особенности грамматического строя английского языка, необходимые для практического использования.

В основе структуры пособия лежат два принципа: сопоставление грамматических моделей русского и английского языков и дифференциация сходных (для носителей русского языка), но различающихся по сути, грамматических структур английского языка. Лучшему усвоению материала должны способствовать таблицы, схемы и модели, систематизирующие материал разделов.

Данное издание предназначено для учащихся школ и гимназий, а также для студентов неязыковых вузов с углубленным изучением английского языка. Оно может быть успешно использовано для работы со студентами любой формы обучения и уровня языковой подготовки, поскольку подробные объяснения снабжены большим количеством примеров, таблиц и моделей, закрепляемых в разнообразных упражнениях. К большинству упражнений прилагаются **ответы-ключи**, изданные отдельной книгой **The Keys**. Благодаря этому наше учебное пособие также **подходит для самостоятельной работы**.

В новой редакции пособия **свыше 800 упражнений**, большинство из них выполнено **в виде «рабочей тетради»**. Упражнения располагаются по принципу нарастания языковых трудностей и предназначены для студентов начинающих (A), продолжающих (B) и продвинутых (C) групп.

В течение 15 лет материал пособия успешно использовался в различных целевых программах, при обучении студентов с разным уровнем языковой подготовки.

Т. Ю. Дроздова,
В. Г. Маилова,
А. И. Берестова

CONTENTS

THE VERB

1. The Verb "to be" 9
2. "There + be" Construction 14
3. The Verb "to have" 17
4. English Tenses Active 21
5. The Simple Forms 23
   - 5.1 The Present Simple Tense 23
   - 5.2 The Past Simple Tense 26
   - 5.3 The Future Simple Tense 32
6. The Continuous Forms 36
   - 6.1 The Present Continuous Tense 36
   - 6.2 The Present Continuous and the Present Simple 40
   - 6.3 The Past Continuous Tense 42
   - 6.4 The Past Continuous and the Past Simple 43
   - 6.5 The Future Continuous Tense 47
   - 6.6 Revision 49
7. Talking about the Future 50
   - 7.1 Present Tenses with a Future Meaning 50
   - 7.2 *Be going to ...* 51
   - 7.3 The Future Simple 53
   - 7.4 *Be to, be about to, be due to* 55
   - 7.5 Revision 55
8. The Perfect Forms 58
   - 8.1 The Present Perfect Tense 58
   - 8.2 The Present Perfect and the Past Simple 64
   - 8.3 The Past Perfect Tense 68
   - 8.4 The Future Perfect Tense 73
9. The Perfect Continuous Forms 76
   - 9.1 The Present Perfect Continuous Tense 76
   - 9.2 The Present Continuous and the Present Perfect Continuous 78
   - 9.3 The Present Perfect and the Present Perfect Continuous 79
   - 9.4 Revision 81
   - 9.5 The Past Perfect Continuous Tense 83
   - 9.6 The Past Continuous and the Past Perfect Continuous 85
   - 9.7 The Future Perfect Continuous Tense 86
10. Revision on Tenses 87
11. Tests 93

MODAL VERBS

1. Definition 95
2. "Can" 95
   - 2.1 *Can* – to Express Strong Doubt or Astonishment 99
   - 2.2 Revision 101
3. "May" 102
   - 3.1 *May* – to Express Uncertainty, Strong Doubt 103
4. "Must" 106
   - 4.1 *Must* – to Express Probability, Near Certainty 109
   - 4.2 Revision 113
5. "Should" and "Ought to" 114
6. "Need" 117

7. Revision 121
8. Tests 124

THE PASSIVE VOICE
1. Formation of the Passive Voice 126
2. Uses of the Passive Voice Peculiar to the English Language 127
3. Revision 136
4. Tests 138

QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES 140

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES
1. General Rules 146
2. Revision 150
3. Tests 152

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH
1. Indirect Statement 153
2. Indirect Command and Request 155
3. Indirect Questions 156
   3.1 Indirect General Questions 156
   3.2 Indirect Special Questions 157
4. Reporting a Dialogue or a Conversation 158
5. Revision 161

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD
1. Conditional Sentences 165
   1.1 Revision 172
   1.2 Test 175
2. Making a Wish 175
3. Revision 179
4. Tests 180

THE NOUN
1. Formation of Nouns 181
2. Classification of Nouns 184
3. The Category of Number 187
4. The Category of Case 191
5. Tests 195

THE ARTICLE
1. Use of Articles with Common Nouns 196
   1.1 Revision 202
2. Use of Articles with Nouns of Material and Abstract Nouns 205
3. Use of Articles with Proper Nouns 208
   3.1 Geographical Names 208
   3.2 Use of Articles in the Names of Places, Buildings, Public Organizations, etc. 210
   3.3 Names of Persons 212
4. Special Difficulties in the Use of Articles 214
   4.1 Use of Articles with the Names of Months and Days, Seasons, Meals, Languages, Nouns: *Day*, *Night*, *Evening*, *Morning*, etc. 214
   4.2 Use of Articles with the Nouns *School/College*, *Prison/Jail*, *Bed*, *Town*, *Church* 216
   4.3 Revision 218
5. Use of Articles in Some Set Expressions 219
6. Tests 221

THE PRONOUN

1. Classification of Pronouns 223
1.1 Personal and Possessive Pronouns 223
1.2 Reflexive Pronouns 226
1.3 Demostrative Pronouns 228
1.4 Interrogative Pronouns 230
1.5 Defining Pronouns 231
1.6 Indefinite and Negative Pronouns 236
1.7 *Much/Many, Little/Few, a Little/a Few* 243
2. Tests 246

THE ADJECTIVE

1. Formation of Adjectives 247
2. Word Order: Adjective + Noun 250
3. The Comparison of Adjectives 253
4. Tests 261

THE ADVERB

1. Definition, Forms and Place 262
2. Classification of Adverbs 267
2.1 Adverbs of Manner 267
2.2 Adverbs of Time 269
2.3 Adverbs of Frequency 271
2.4 Adverbs of Place and Direction 272
2.5 Adverbs of Degree, Measure and Quantity 273
2.6 Viewpoint Adverbs 279
3. Revision 280
4. Tests 282

THE VERBALS (the non-finite forms of the verb)

1. The Gerund 283
1.1 Forms / Use of the Gerund 283
1.2 Tense / Voice Distinctions of the Gerund 289
1.3 Verbs Used with the Gerund and the Infinitive 292
1.4 The Gerundial Construction 296
1.5 Revision 298
1.6 Tests 300
2. The Infinitive 302
2.1 Forms. Tense / Voice Distinctions 302
2.2 Use of the Infinitive without the Particle *to* 303
2.3 Functions of the Infinitive in the Sentence 306
2.3.1 Revision 313
2.4 The Infinitive Constructions 314
2.4.1 The Complex Object 314
2.4.2 The Complex Subject 320
2.4.3 The *for-to*-Infinitive Construction 328
2.5 Revision 331
2.6 Tests 333
3. The Participle 334
3.1 Forms and Functions 334
3.2 Functions of the Participle in the Sentence 336
3.3 *Have Something Done* 345
3.4 The Absolute Participial Construction 346
3.5 Revision 347
3.6 Tests 348

THE PREPOSITION

1. Definition 350
2. Prepositions of Place 351
   2.1 Prepositions of Place *at, in, on* 353
3. Prepositions of Direction 355
4. Some Prepositions Confused 359
5. Revision 362
6. Prepositions with Forms of Transport 363
7. The Prepositions of Time 364
   7.1 Prepositions *for, during, while* 365
   7.2 Prepositions *before, till/until, by* 367
   7.3 Prepositions *since, from, in time/on time* 368
8. Prepositions Expressing Abstract Relations 370
   8.1 Prepositions *by, with* 370
   8.2 *As* and *like* 371
   8.3 *About, on* 371
9. Composite Prepositions 372
10. Revision 373
11. Use of Prepositions in Set Expressions 374
12. Tests 375

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE AND THE COMPLEX SENTENCE

1. The Compound Sentence 377
2. The Complex Sentence 377
   2.1. Subject Clauses 378
   2.2. Predicative Clauses 379
   2.3. Object Clauses 380
   2.4. Attributive Clauses 381
      2.4.1 Defining and Non-Defining Relative Clauses 382
      2.4.2 Subject and Object Relative Clauses 382
      2.4.3 *Which* Referring to the Whole Sentence 385
      2.4.4 Clauses Introduced by *What, That, Which* 386
      Revision 387
   2.5. Adverbial Clauses 389
      2.5.1 Time Clauses 389
      2.5.2 Adverbial Clauses of Place 392
      2.5.3 Adverbial Clauses of Manner 392
      2.5.4 Purpose and Reason Clauses 394
      2.5.5 *As* and *since* in Clauses of Time and Cause (Reason) 395
      Revision 396
      2.5.6 Contrast Clauses 396
   2.6 Revision 398
   2.7 Tests 399

EMPHASIS

1. The Emphatic "Do" 401
2. Double Negation 402
3. The Emphatic Construction "It is ... that/which/who/whom" 402
4. The Emphatic Construction "It is not until ... that" 403
5. The Emphatic "Not ... till/until" 404
6. Tests 405

APPENDICES

Appendix 1. List of Grammar Terms and Key Words 406
Appendix 2. List of Irregular Verbs 411

Appendix 3. Irregular and Regular Verbs: Confusing Forms 414
Appendix 4. Regular Verbs: Spelling Rules 415
Appendix 5. Place and Order of Adverbs in a Sentence 416
Appendix 6. American English 417
Appendix 7. Punctuation 417
Appendix 8. Prepositions and Homonymous Adverbs. Meaning and Use 420

Literature 423

THE VERB

1. The Verb "to be"

The Verb *to be* in the Present Simple Tense

POSITIVE FORM			NEGATIVE FORM				QUESTIONS	
I	**am**	(**I'm**)	I	**am**	**not**	(**I'm not**)	**Am**	I?
You	**are**	(you**'re**)	You	**are**	**not**	(you**'re not** or you **aren't**)	**Are**	you?
He	**is**	(he**'s**)	He	**is**	**not**	(he**'s not** or he **isn't**)	**Is**	he?
She	**is**	(she**'s**)	She	**is**	**not**	(she**'s not** or she **isn't**)	**Is**	she?
It	**is**	(it**'s**)	It	**is**	**not**	(it**'s not** or it **isn't**)	**Is**	it?
We	**are**	(we**'re**)	We	**are**	**not**	(we**'re not** or we **aren't**)	**Are**	we?
You	**are**	(you**'re**)	You	**are**	**not**	(you**'re not** or you **aren't**)	**Are**	you?
They	**are**	(they**'re**)	They	**are**	**not**	(they**'re not** or they **aren't**)	**Are**	they?

The verb *to be* has the meaning: *быть, являться, находиться*.

- Today **is** Monday. – Сегодня понедельник.
- Peter **is** a teacher. – Пётр – учитель.
- The lamp **is** on the table. – Лампа на столе.
- The railway station **is** in the centre of the city. – Вокзал находится в центре города.

NOTES:

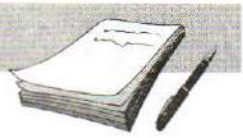
1. Short answers

1. Nouns ⇨ pronouns:
   - Are **your parents** at work?
     Yes, **they are**.
2. Positive short answers do not use contractions:
   - **Are** you a student?
     Yes, I **am**.
   - **Are** they in Moscow?
     Yes, they **are**.
3. Contractions are used in negative short answers:
   - **Is** she a teacher?
     No, she **isn't**.

2. Questions with WHAT, WHO, WHERE, WHY, HOW

- **Who is** that girl?
- **What is** on the table?
- **Where are** the children?
- **How** old **are** you?

EXERCISES



1 (A) Fill in *am*, *is* or *are*.

1. The sky is very blue today. 2. I ..... not tired. 3. This shelf ..... very heavy. 4.The children ..... asleep. 5. Look! This ..... Mabel. 6. I ..... cold. Can you shut the window, please? 7. The castle ..... one thousand years old. 8. My brother and I ..... good tennis players. 9. Amy ..... at home but her parents ..... in church. 10. My sister ..... a doctor.

2 (A) Write full sentences. Use *am*, *is* or *are*.

1. (my grandparents very old)
   My grandparents are very old.
2. (my desk very comfortable)
   .....
3. (your spectacles in your bag)
   .....
4. (I not very clever today)
   .....
5. (this house very expensive)
   .....
6. (the shops not open today)
   .....
7. (Mr. Wren's grandson six years old)
   .....
8. (the houses in this street very big)
   .....
9. (the examination not difficult)
   .....
10. (those flowers very beautiful)
    .....

3 (A) Write positive or negative sentences. Use *am/am not/is/isn't/are/aren't*.

1. Brussels ...is... the capital of Belgium.
2. I ...am not... interested in hockey.
3. I ..... angry.
4. It ..... cold today.
5. The Hague ..... in Switzerland.
6. I ..... afraid of dogs.
7. My hands ..... dirty.
8. Russia ..... a very big country.
9. The Amur ..... in Europe.
10. Diamonds ..... cheap.
11. Motor-racing ..... a dangerous sport.
12. Squirrels ..... big animals.

4 (A) Fill in the right forms of the verb *to be*.

Today (1)..... Tom's birthday. He (2)..... twelve years old today. All his friends (3)..... there. His sister (4)..... there too. Her name (5)..... ..... Kate. She (6)..... eleven years old. Only Jenny, his girlfriend (7)..... not there. Where (8)..... she? She (9)..... ill. They (10)..... all in the kitchen; it (11)..... full of children. They (12)..... all hungry and thirsty. There (13)..... a lot of sandwiches on the table. There (14)..... some bottles of lemonade, too. Tom's parents and grandparents (15)..... not in the kitchen, they (16)..... in the garden. They are having tea. Tom's little brother Timmy (17)..... in his bed. It (18)..... his time to sleep.

5 (A) Read the text in Ex. 4 again and give short answers.

1. Is it Timmy's birthday? – No, it isn't.
2. Is Jenny there? – .....
3. Is Tom eleven years old? – .....
4. Is Jenny Tom's mother? – .....
5. Is Kate Tom's sister? – .....
6. Are there sandwiches on the table? – .....
7. Are the children in the garden? – .....
8. Are they hungry and thirsty? – .....
9. Are the parents in the kitchen? – .....
10. Are the grandparents there, too? – .....



6 (A) At the party Mike wants to know all about Jenny. He asks Tom a lot of questions.

He wants to know:

1. who Jenny is — Who is Jenny?
2. how old she is .....
3. if she is a nice girl .....
4. why she isn't here .....
5. where she is now .....
6. if her parents are at home .....

7 (A) Here are some of Tom's answers. What are the questions?

1. Is Jenny eleven years old?
   No, she isn't. She is twelve.
2. ..... ?
   Yes, she is. She is a very nice girl.
3. ..... ?
   Yes, she is my girlfriend.
4. ..... ?
   Because she is ill.
5. ..... ?
   She is at home.

8 (A, B) Ask questions. (Read the answers to the questions first.)

1. (his name?) — Robert.
   What's his name?
2. (single or married?) — I'm single.
   Are you single or married?
3. (British?) — No, I'm not.
   .....
4. (where / from?) — From Australia.
   .....
5. (how old?) — I'm 18.
   .....
6. (a student?) — No, I'm a secretary.
   .....
7. (your mother a teacher?) — No, she's a lawyer.
   .....
8. (where / from?) — She's Italian.
   .....
9. (her name?) — Rachel.
   .....
10. (how old?) — She's 40.
    .....

9 (A, B) Translate into English.

1. Твой брат дома? 2. Сколько стоят эти открытки? 3. Эта гостиница очень дорогая. 4. Я интересуюсь искусством (be interested in). 5. Все магазины сегодня открыты. 6. Музей сегодня открыт? 7. Мне жарко. 8. Моя сестра – архитектор. 9. Я не устала. 10. Откуда родом её муж? 11. Они не студенты, они врачи. 12. Тебе интересны иностранные языки?

10 (B, C) Using the words from the box and your own ideas, complete the letter below.

uncle	my cousin
the guy in the white T-shirt	student at University
two women in the low row	teacher of English
retired	not from Russia
in her forties	52
funny	kind
the flowers in the background	beautiful



...Last time you asked me to tell you about my family. OK, this is the photo of my family. The man on the right .....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Yours,
Mary

The Verb *to be* in the Past Simple Tense

POSITIVE FORM	NEGATIVE FORM	QUESTIONS
I **was**	I **was not**	**Was** I?
You **were**	You **were not**	**Were** you?
He **was**	He **was not**	**Was** he?
She **was**	She **was not**	**Was** she?
It **was**	It **was not**	**Was** it?
We **were**	We **were not**	**Were** we?
You **were**	You **were not**	**Were** you?
They **were**	They **were not**	**Were** they?

was not = wasn't
were not = weren't

- I **am** in Russia now. – I **was** in Russia last summer.
  (Я в России сейчас. – Я был в России прошлым летом.)
- The weather **is** nice. – The weather **was** nice when we were on holiday.
  (Погода хорошая. – Погода была хорошая, когда мы были на каникулах.)

EXERCISES



11 **(A) Fill in *am/is/are/was/were*. Some sentences are Present and some are Past.**

1. Last year their son was 26 so he is 27 now. 2. Today the weather ..... nice but yesterday it ..... cold. 3. I ..... cold. Can I have something hot to drink? 4. I ..... hungry last night so I had something to eat. 5. Where ..... you at 10 o'clock last Sunday morning? 6. Don't buy those shoes. They ..... too expensive. 7. Why ..... you so tired yesterday? 8. We must go now. It ..... very late. 9. This time last year I ..... in England. 10. We ..... tired when we arrived home so we went to bed. 11. Anton Chekhov died in 1904. He ..... a famous Russian writer. 12. "Where ..... the dogs?" – "I don't know. They ..... in the garden ten minutes ago."

12 **(A) Fill in *was/wasn't/were/weren't*.**

1. We didn't like that house. It *was* very old and it *wasn't* large enough. 2. Helen got married when she ..... 21 years old. 3. I called you yesterday evening but you ..... at home. Where ..... you? 4. My son ..... at work last week because he ..... ill. He's better now. 5. The shops ..... open yesterday because it ..... a public holiday. 6. "..... you at home at 9.30?" – "No, I ..... I ..... at work."

13 **(B) Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions, using the prompts below.**

Model: – *Where was Peter yesterday evening?*
– *He was at the theatre.*

1. Michael / home .....
   .....
   .....
2. you and Mary / office .....
   .....
   .....

3. Mrs. Brown / library .....
.....
.....
4. your friends / cinema .....
.....
.....
5. Dan and Jack / café .....
.....
.....
6. you / city centre .....
.....
.....
7. you and your colleague / street .....
.....
.....
8. Mr. Smith / department store .....
.....
.....

14 (A, B) Translate into English.

1. Где они были вчера вечером?
2. Почему ты вчера опоздал?
3. Его вчера не было в университете.
4. Меня там не было.
5. Её не было дома в 5 часов.
6. Почему ты так напугался вчера? (be scared)
7. Вчера было не очень солнечно, но тепло.
8. Она очень нервничала из-за этого неделю назад, но сейчас всё в порядке.
9. Они не были больны, я уверен. (be sure)
10. Полгода назад это было дорого для них, сейчас – нет.

15 (B, C) Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions to complete information about Mr. Smith and his children. (Student A looks at Text A, student B looks at Text B, they ask and answer questions.)

Model: *When was Mr. Smith born?*
– He was born in 1975.

Text A

Mr. Smith was born in (1)..... in Washington. His two sons Patrick and Michael were born in (2)..... when Mr. Smith was on a two-week business trip in Russia. First time they were together in St. Petersburg (3)..... . Their holiday was great because it was very warm and sunny. Now they are in (4)..... . But Mr. Smith is very disappointed with it because it is very cold and nasty there.

Text B

Mr. Smith was born in 1975 in (5)..... . His two sons Patrick and Michael were born in Washington, too, when Mr. Smith was (6)..... . First time they were together in St. Petersburg two years ago. Their holiday was great because (7)..... . Now they are in Moscow. But Mr. Smith is very disappointed with it because (8)..... .

16 (A, B) Using the verb *to be* in *the Present Simple* and *the Past Simple forms*, compare picture A with picture B below.

Picture A



Picture B



Model: *Thirty years ago Jack was young and enthusiastic. Now he is a middle-aged man.*

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2. "There + be" Construction

I. We use the *there* + *be* construction when talking about the existence or presence of people, things, etc. in a particular place. This construction has the meaning *«есть»*, *«имеется»*, *«находится»*, *«существует»*. The verb *to be* in this construction can be used in different tense forms:

there is/are there was/were there will be
there has/have been there had been

- **There are** many French books in this library.
- **There was** a meeting at the club yesterday.
- **There will be** a good crop in this region this year.
- **There hasn't been** any rain for some days.

Word Order

***there* + *be* + subject +** **adverbial modifier of place / adverbial modifier of time**

The corresponding Russian sentences begin with adverbial modifiers.

Russian	English
В моей комнате есть (имеется) телефон.	There is a telephone *in my room*.
В саду (имеется) много яблонь.	There are many apple-trees *in the garden*.
Вчера в институте было собрание.	There was a meeting *at the Institute yesterday*.

The verb *to be* in this construction can be used with modal verbs (*can*, *may*, *must*, *ought to*):

- **There must be** a dictionary on the shelf.
- **There can be** no doubt about it.
- **There ought to be** more books on the subject in our library.

We can also use some other verbs after *there* – *to live*, *to exist*, *to stand*, *to lie*, etc.:

- **There lived** an old doctor in the village.
- **There exist** different opinions on this problem.

If the subjects are of different number, the predicate agrees with the subject that stands first:

- There is **a table** and six chairs in the room.
- There were **some books** and a dictionary on the table.

II. We can also use this construction when it does not refer to a place:

a) *there* + *be* is used to introduce new information:

- **There will be** a party tonight.
- **There have been** two telephone calls for you.

b) to talk about a number or amount:

- **There are** forty of us, I think.
- **There was** a great deal of anger about the decision.

Interrogative and Negative Forms

- **Is there** a telephone in your room?
  - No, **there isn't**.
  No, **there is no** telephone in my room.
- **Was there** a meeting at the Institute?
  - No, **there wasn't**.
- **Will there be** many people there?
  - No, **there won't**.
  No, **there won't be** any people there.

Mind that the sentences: *"There is a book on the table"*. («На столе книга».) and *"The book is on the table"*. («Книга на столе».) have a different meaning. The first one shows that there is something ("a book") in that place, the second one shows that the object ("the book") we now are speaking about or looking for is in that place ("on the table").

It and *There* as Impersonal Subjects

In many kinds of English sentences we use the word *it* or the word *there* in the subject position. These are usually "impersonal" sentences – sentences where there is no natural subject.

Impersonal ***there*** is used, as it was shown above, to say that something exists in a particular place, to introduce new information, etc.

Impersonal ***it*** is used:

– when talking about the weather:	❑ **It** was a nice day yesterday. ❑ **It**'s raining hard.
– in expressions of time, day and distance:	❑ **It** is nearly one o'clock. ❑ **It** was late when we arrived. ❑ **It**'s the sixth of April. ❑ **It**'s far from here to the nearest town.
– when identifying something:	❑ Who is **it**? – **It**'s me. ❑ What is **it**? – **It**'s a book.
– in expressions, such as:	❑ **It**'s a pity... ❑ **It** was a shame... ❑ **It**'s important to...
– to express opinions about places, events, situations:	❑ **It** was fun working with him. ❑ **It** was a pleasure to be there. ❑ **It**'s strange we haven't noticed it.

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Use the *there* + *be* construction in the correct tense form.**

1. Look! ..... their telephone number in the letter. 2. Chester is a very old town. .... many old buildings there. 3. Excuse me, ... a restaurant near here? 4. How many students ..... in your group? 5. I was hungry but ..... anything to eat. 6. ..... a football match on TV last night. 7. ..... many people at the meeting? 8. Look! ..... an accident. Call the ambulance! 9. ..... 24 hours in a day. 10. This box is empty. ..... nothing in it. 11. ..... somebody at the airport to meet you when you arrive tomorrow. 12. When we arrived at the cinema, ... a long queue outside.

2 (A, B) Ask questions to the following statements, then answer them according to the model.

Model: There is a good programme on TV tonight.
– *Is there a good programme on TV tonight?*
– *Yes, there is.*

There aren't any theatres in my town.
– *Are there any theatres in your town?*
– *No, there are not/there aren't.*

1. There is a cat in the window.
   .....
2. There are a few changes in the text.
   .....
3. There are plenty of glasses in the cupboard.
   .....
4. There were a lot of people at the stadium.
   .....
5. There isn't anything on the plate.
   .....
6. There wasn't anybody in the room.
   .....
7. There are difficult exercises in this book.
   .....
8. There is something on the shelf.
   .....
9. There will be some interesting programmes on TV tomorrow.
   .....
10. There are several empty seats in the room.
    .....
11. There weren't any pears on the plate.
    .....

3 (B) Complete the sentences by translating the words in brackets.

1. I think (должна быть) ..... some possibility to do it. 2. (Могут быть) .... some books on the subject in our library. 3. I suppose (должен быть) .... some way out in this situation. 4. (Не может быть) ..... any reason to think so. 5. You can choose what you want to do. (Возможно, есть) ..... some options. 6. (Должно быть) ..... more money to help one-parent families. 7. (Могут быть) ..... different oppinions on the problem. 8. For life to exist (должны быть) ..... air and water. 9. I think (могут быть) ..... different ways to check the data.

4 (A, B) Translate into English.

A

1. В этом журнале много интересных статей. 2. В нашем городе много музеев и театров. 3. В этой комнате есть телефон? 4. В этой комнате два окна. 5. В чашке не было чая. 6. Сколько статей было в этом журнале? – Там было несколько статей. 7. Сколько студентов в аудитории? – Двадцать. 8. Рядом с нашим домом будет парк. 9. На этой улице была школа? 10. На столе лежит несколько книг.

B

1. Рядом с нашим домом есть школа. Школа находится рядом с нашим домом. 2. В городе несколько театров. Театры находятся в центре города. 3. В вазе стояли цветы. Цветы стояли в красивой вазе. 4. В театре много детей. Дети сейчас в театре. 5. Существует несколько способов решения этой задачи. Способы решения этой задачи приведены на странице 5.

5 (A, B) Fill in *it* or *there*.

1. ..... snows a lot in Russia in winter. 2. Take your umbrella. ..... is going to rain and ..... is windy, too. 3. ..... was a strong wind yesterday. 4. ..... is dark in the room. Can you turn on the light? 5. ..... is a big cloud in the sky. ..... is going to rain. 6. ..... is a bus coming. ..... is full. 7. ..... is a cat at the door. Is ..... Mrs. Brown's? 7. Who is ..... ? – ..... is me. 8. ..... is important to learn this rule.

6 **(B) Look at the pictures below. In the first one it is winter, in the second one it is summer. Compare the two pictures using *there* + *be* in *the Present Simple* or *the Past Simple*.**

Picture A



Picture B



Model: *There were many people in the park in summer. It's winter now. There are few people in the park.*

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. The Verb "to have"

The Verb *to have* in the Present Simple Tense

POSITIVE FORM				NEGATIVE FORM			QUESTIONS		
I	**have**	**(got)**	(I**'ve got**)	I	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	I	**got?**
You	**have**	**(got)**	(you**'ve got**)	You	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	you	**got?**
He	**has**	**(got)**	(he**'s got**)	He	**has**	**not got**	**Has**	he	**got?**
She	**has**	**(got)**	(she**'s got**)	She	**has**	**not got**	**Has**	she	**got?**
It	**has**	**(got)**	(it**'s got**)	It	**has**	**not got**	**Has**	it	**got?**
We	**have**	**(got)**	(we**'ve got**)	We	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	we	**got?**
You	**have**	**(got)**	(you**'ve got**)	You	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	you	**got?**
They	**have**	**(got)**	(they**'ve got**)	They	**have**	**not got**	**Have**	they	**got?**

have not got = haven't got
has not got = hasn't got

- **I've got** a cat but I **haven't got** a dog.
- What **have** you **got** in your bag?

1. In British English, we often use *have* or *have got* to mean "possess".
- ❑ I **have** a new car. / I **have got** a new car.
  (I own, I possess a new car.)

2. ***Do** you **have**..?* and *I **don't have**...* are common especially in American English.
- ❑ They **don't have** any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- ❑ It's a nice house but it **doesn't have** a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden.)
- ❑ **Does** Ann **have** a car? (= Has Ann got a car?)
- ❑ How much money **do** you **have**? (= How much money have you got?)

3. *Got*-forms are most common in the present tense. We use the correct forms of *have* in other tenses to mean "possess".
- ❑ I **had** a bad cold last week.
- ❑ We **will have** a new apartment soon.

4. When the verb *to have* is used in such expressions as:
- *to have dinner/breakfast* – обедать/завтракать
- *to have tea/coffee*, etc. – пить чай/кофе и т.д.
- *to have a bath/a shower* – принять ванну/душ
- *to have a shave/a wash* – побриться/помыться
- *to have a rest/a sleep/a dream*, etc. – отдохнуть/поспать/мечтать и т.д.
- *to have a holiday/a good time*, etc. – отдохнуть/хорошо провести время и т.д.,

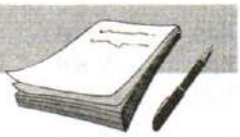
in the negative and interrogative forms it takes the auxiliary verb *to do*:
- ❑ **Do** you **have** tea or coffee for breakfast?
- ❑ Where **does** he **have** dinner?

5. *Got*-forms are not generally used to talk about habits and repeated actions.
- ❑ We **have** meetings on Mondays.
- ❑ **Do** you often **have** colds?

The past of *have* is *had* (for all persons). In negatives and questions we use *did* + *have*.

I/he **had**	I/he **did not have** I/he **didn't have**	**Did** I/he **have?**

EXERCISES



1 **(A) Write the short form (*we've got/he hasn't got*, etc.).**

1. we have got *we've got*
2. he has got .....
3. they have got .....
4. she has not got .....
5. it has got .....
6. I have not got .....

2 **(A) Write questions.**

1. (you/a bicycle?) *Have you got a bicycle?*
2. (you/a DVD player?) .....?
3. (your father/a car?) .....?
4. (Carol/many friends?) .....
   .....?
5. (Mr. and Mrs. Lewis/any children?) .....
   .....?
6. (how much money/you?) .....
   .....?
7. (what kind of car/John?) .....
   .....?

3 (A) What have Alice and Keith got? What have you got? Look at the information and write sentences about Alice, Keith and yourself.

	Alice (she)	Keith (he)	you
a camera	no	yes	?
a car	yes	no	?
black hair	no	no	?
brothers/sisters	two brothers	one sister	?

1. (Keith/a camera) Keith has got a camera.
2. (I/black hair) I've got black hair. (or: I haven't got black hair.)
3. (Alice/a camera) Alice .....
4. (I/a camera) I .....
5. (I/a car) .....
6. (Keith/a car) .....
7. (Alice/black hair) .....
8. (Alice/two brothers) .....
9. (Keith/black hair) .....
10. (Alice/a car) .....
11. (Keith/a sister) .....
12. (I/brothers/sisters) .....

4 (B) Translate into English.

1. У них есть три собаки и три кошки. .....
2. У неё большие зелёные глаза. .....
3. У моего брата голубая машина. .....
4. Сколько у вас земли (land)? .....
5. У нас не было машины в прошлом году. .....
6. У меня вчера болела голова. .....
7. Когда вы пьёте чай? .....
8. Мы хорошо провели время вчера. .....
9. Она хорошо провела отпуск на юге. .....
10. У вас есть книги по истории Англии? .....

5 (B, C) Work in pairs.

Student A: You want to buy a present for Student B's niece (Mary). You are not sure what to buy because you do not know what she has already got. Find out this information using the words and phrases below. At the end you should make a decision.

Student A

(Model:) *How about toys? Has Mary got many toys?*

1. soft toys or dolls? .....
2. a teddy bear? .....
3. a Barbie doll? .....
4. any games or puzzles? .....

Student B: You are going to answer Student A's questions about your niece Mary. Look through the words and phrases below, they will help you to answer the questions.

Student B

(Model:) *Yes, she has. She's got a lot of them.*

1. Both, but more interested in soft toys. .....
2. Yes, two. .....
3. Of course, every girl's got it. .....
4. Maybe, but you are not sure. .....

5. fairy tales? 'Cinderella', for example?
.....

5. Yes, but not 'Cinderella'.
.....

Thank you. You've been of great help. I'll buy Mary a puzzle and 'Cinderella' fairy tale.

6 (B, C) Work in pairs. Now change the roles. Student B is going to ask questions and Student A is going to answer them.

Student B: You would like to get information about your new neighbours that moved to your house a week ago. Using the words and phrases below ask Student A questions about your new neighbours.

Student B

(Model:) *Have they got any children?*

1. pets?
.....
2. a big or a small car?
.....
3. jobs?
.....
4. many books at home?
.....
5. detective stories? books of my favourite detective writer?
.....

Student A: You are going to answer Student B's questions about your new neighbours. Look through the words and phrases below, they will help you to answer the questions.

Student A

(Model:) *Yes, they have. They've got two boys, Mark and Peter.*

1. Yes, a dog and a cat.
.....
2. No car, but four bicycles.
.....
3. Of course, both shop-keepers. They've got a bookshop nearby.
.....
4. Yes, loads of them.
.....
5. Not sure, maybe. It's better to ask them in person.
.....

7 (B) Here is Mary's school timetable. Write ten sentences, beginning with *"She has got... / She doesn't have..."*

(Model:) *1) She has got Maths at nine o'clock on Mondays.*
2) She doesn't have French on Wednesdays.



	Monday	*Tuesday*	*Wednesday*	*Thursday*	*Friday*
9.00 – 10.00	Maths	French	English	Maths	Physics
10.15 – 11.15	History	Maths	Chemistry	French	Chemistry
11.30 – 12.30	Biology	Physics	Russian	Geography	English
2.00 – 3.00	English	Geography	Sociology	Russian	Maths
3.15 – 4.15	Games	Economics	Games	English	Games

.....
.....
.....

8 **(B) Write some sentences about what happens during your week. Use the prompts below.**

Model: *I have English lessons three times a week.*

Prompts: *have tests, have examinations, have club meetings, have a walk, have lunch with friends, have coffee, have a swim*, etc.

.....

.....

.....

.....

4. English Tenses Active

The category of tense denotes the relation of the action either to the moment of speaking or to some definite moment in the past or future. The category of tense and the category of aspect are intermingled. The category of aspect shows the way in which the action develops, whether it is in progress or completed, etc. There are four groups of tenses: *Simple*, *Continuous*, *Perfect*, *Perfect Continuous*. The *Simple* form has no aspect characteristics whatever, the *Continuous*, *Perfect* and *Perfect Continuous* forms denote both time and aspect relations.

SIMPLE (Indefinite) shows an action as a fact (customary, repeated)	⇨ **PRESENT** ⇨ **PAST** ⇨ **FUTURE**	**verb**
CONTINUOUS shows an action as a process	⇨ **PRESENT** ⇨ **PAST** ⇨ **FUTURE**	**to be + -ing**
PERFECT shows an action completed before a definite moment, connected with it	⇨ **PRESENT** ⇨ **PAST** ⇨ **FUTURE**	**to have + Past Participle**
PERFECT CONTINUOUS shows an action in progress, whose duration before a definite moment is expressed	⇨ **PRESENT** ⇨ **PAST** ⇨ **FUTURE**	**to have been + -ing**

English Tenses (Active)

	SIMPLE	CONTINUOUS	PERFECT	PERFECT CONTINUOUS
	verb	be + -ing	have + Past Participle	have been + -ing
PRESENT	**ask(s)**	**am / is / are asking**	**have / has asked**	**have / has been asking**
	*Repeated, customary action	*Action (process) going on at the present moment	*Completed action whose result is visible in the present	*Action (process) which began in the past and is still going on now
	usually/generally always/never often/seldom sometimes/every day *Fact *Future action (to a timetable, schedule)	*now, at present, at the moment Look! Listen!* *Future action planned before	*ever/never just/already/yet lately/recently this week/today by now for since*	*for a month/a long time since 5 o'clock how long/since when*
PAST	**asked / took**	**was / were asking**	**had asked**	**had been asking**
	*Action (succession of actions) in the past	*Action (process) taking place at a given moment/ period of time in the past	*Action completed before a certain moment in the past	*Action (process) which began before a definite moment in the past and was still going at that moment
	yesterday last week 3 days ago in 2005	*at 5 yesterday from 5 to 6 yesterday all day long/the whole day when we came*	*by 5 o'clock yesterday before he came by the end of last year *Sequence of tenses*	*He **had been working** for 2 hours when my brother came.*
FUTURE	**will ask**	**will be asking**	**will have asked**	**will have been asking**
	*Future action	*Action (process) taking place at a given moment/ period of time in the future	*Action completed before a definite moment in the future	*Action (process) which will begin before a definite moment in the future and will be going on at that moment
	tomorrow next week in 3 days in 2050	*at 5 tomorrow from 5 to 6 tomorrow all day long tomorrow when he comes*	*by 5 o'clock tomorrow when he comes by next summer*	*When you come, I'**ll have been working for 2 hours.***

5. The Simple Forms

5.1 The Present Simple Tense

It is formed from the Infinitive without the particle *to*:

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE				INTERROGATIVE		
I	**work**	I	**do**	**not**	**work**	**Do**	I	**work**?
He	**works**	He	**does**	**not**	**work**	**Does**	he	**work**?
She	**works**	She	**does**	**not**	**work**	**Does**	she	**work**?
It	**works**	It	**does**	**not**	**work**	**Does**	it	**work**?
We	**work**	We	**do**	**not**	**work**	**Do**	we	**work**?
You	**work**	You	**do**	**not**	**work**	**Do**	you	**work**?
They	**work**	They	**do**	**not**	**work**	**Do**	they	**work**?

do not = don't
does not = doesn't

The Present Simple may denote:

1. a permanent action (a fact):
   - ❑ She **speaks** English. They **live** in France.
2. the general truth:
   - ❑ The Earth **rotates** round its axis.
   - ❑ Vegetables **grow** well in this climate.
3. a repeated, customary action:
   - ❑ The Browns **go** to the seaside every summer.
   - ❑ We **write** two tests each term.
4. a future action according to a timetable:
   - ❑ The train **leaves** at 10 tomorrow.

The Present Simple is used with the following adverbials of time: *usually, often, always, every day/every week/every month, in the morning/afternoon/evening, at night, on Mondays*, etc.

Place of Adverbs

Often, always, seldom – before main verbs, after the verb *to be*	❑ She **seldom** goes there. ❑ Do you **often** help your mother with the housework? ❑ He is **always** polite.
Usually, generally – before main verbs or at the beginning of a sentence	❑ They **usually** go home by bus. ❑ **Usually**, my working day starts at nine.
Sometimes – before main verbs, at the beginning or at the end of a sentence	❑ He **sometimes** comes here. ❑ **Sometimes** he comes here. ❑ He comes here **sometimes**.
Every day, in the morning, on Mondays – at the beginning or at the end of a sentence	❑ **On Sundays**, we often go to the cinema. ❑ I check my mail **every day**.

EXERCISES



1 **(A) Answer the following questions according to the model.**

Model: What does a driver do? – *He drives.*

1. What does a singer do? .....
2. What does a runner do? .....
3. What do students do? .....
4. What does a dancer do? .....
5. What do cooks do? .....
6. What do dancers do? .....
7. What does a painter do? .....
8. What do teachers do? .....
9. What does a typist do? .....
10. What do painters do? .....
11. What do writers do? .....

2 **(A) Write the following sentences in the 3rd person singular.**

Model: I think I am tired. – *He thinks he is tired.*

1. You think you are ill. ..... . 2. They often visit their granny. ..... . 3. We live in Leeds. ..... . 4. You usually speak too quickly. ..... . 5. Do you like boiled potatoes? ..... . 6. Good animals always obey their masters. ..... . 7. The boys box in the gymnasium on Fridays. ..... . 8. His dogs always attack the neighbours. ..... . 9. Heavy trucks make a lot of noise. ..... .

3 **(A) Write the following sentences a) in the negative, b) in the interrogative.**

1. She understands the rule.
   .....
2. He usually has breakfast at 8 o'clock.
   .....
3. The lecture starts at 10.15.
   .....
4. They usually walk in the morning.
   .....
5. She remembers them well.
   .....
6. He plays chess very well.
   .....
7. We leave home at 10 o'clock every day.
   .....
8. Ann misses you badly.
   .....
9. They feel very cold.
   .....
10. Tom looks sick.
    .....
11. That train goes very fast.
    .....

4 **(A, B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Simple*.**

1. Oscar Wilde and Bernard Shaw (be) ..... the most witty British writers. 2 . Their children (go) ..... to a private school. 3. Little Amanda (collect) ..... all sorts of toy-pigs. 4. My father (like) ..... a lot of milk in his tea and a few lumps of sugar. 5. We usually (spend) ..... our holidays in Spain. 6. My English friends (live) ..... in a nice house that (stand) ..... on a hill. 7. My brother (sing) ..... in Italian opera. 8. My sister (have) ..... a good appetite and she always (eat) ..... heartily. 9. Let's go outside. It (be) ..... terribly hot in the house. 10. What you (see) ..... over there? 11. In England the traffic (keep) ..... to the left but on the Continent it (keep) ..... to the right. 12. They often (come) ..... to see me in my town house.

5 **(A, B) Answer the questions, using *the Present Simple*.**

1. What time do you go to school? (generally, usually) 2. What do you do on Sunday mornings? (often) 3. How do you spend your leisure time? (usually, occasionally) 4. What sort of radio programmes do you listen to? (usually, often, always) 5. How do you help your parents? (always, sometimes, usually) 6. What sort of films do you enjoy? (nearly always) 7. Where do you read for your examinations? (normally, sometimes) 8. Where do you have your meals? (usually, sometimes) 9. What do you take if you have a headache?

(generally, usually) 10. How do you celebrate your birthday? (nearly always, occasionally)

6 (A, B) Put the verb in brackets into the correct form.

Model: The lecture *begins* at 10 o'clock (begin). How many languages *do* you *speak* (you/speak)?

1. What time ..... (the museums/open) in St. Petersburg?
2. I have a bike but I ..... (not/use) it very often.
3. How many cups of tea ..... (you/drink) a day?
4. "What ..... (you/do)?" – "I am a chemical engineer."
5. "Where ..... (your father/come) from?" – "He ..... (come) from Minsk."
6. If you need help, why ..... (you/not/ask) for it?
7. I ..... (play) the guitar but I ..... (not/play) very well.
8. I don't understand the word "maintain". What "maintain" ..... (mean)?

7 (A, B) Make questions. Begin the questions, using the word(s) in brackets.

Model: Bob plays chess. (How often)?
How often does Bob play chess?
I get up early. (What time/usually?)
What time do you usually get up?

1. Felix watches birds. (How often?)
   .....
2. I write to my parents. (How often?)
   .....
3. I have dinner in the evening. (What time/usually?)
   .....
4. She works. (Where?)
   .....
5. I go to the Zoo. (How often?)
   .....
6. People do stupid things. (Why?)
   .....
7. The motor breaks down. (How often?)
   .....

8 (A, B) Translate the sentences into English, using *the Present Simple Tense*.

1. Я обычно делаю домашнее задание вечером. 2. Мой друг живёт на Севере. 3. Моя сестра учится в медицинском колледже. 4. У них два занятия по иностранному языку в неделю. 5. Он всегда навещает нас, когда бывает в Москве. 6. «Сколько времени вы тратите на дорогу домой?» – «Как правило, я трачу на дорогу домой около тридцати минут». 7. Он теперь редко путешествует. 8. Вы часто ходите в кино? 9. Она никогда не опаздывает. Она всегда приходит вовремя. (on time) 10. «Вы чувствуете что-нибудь?» – «Нет, я ничего не чувствую». 11. Его отец – инженер. Он строит мосты. 12. Я не учу французский язык, я учу немецкий. 13. Теперь мы редко с ними встречаемся. 14. Её муж часто ездит в командировки? (go on business)

9 (B, C) James is a university student. He is going to answer your questions about his eating habits. Using the ideas below, write down the questions.

1. How many meals a day / have?
   How many meals a day do you usually have?
2. When / have breakfast?
   .....
   .....
3. How often / eat out?
   .....
   .....
4. What cuisine / prefer?
   .....
   .....
5. What / your favourite restaurant?
   .....
   .....
6. Cook yourself? You like it?
   .....
7. Watch any cookery programmes? Why?
   .....



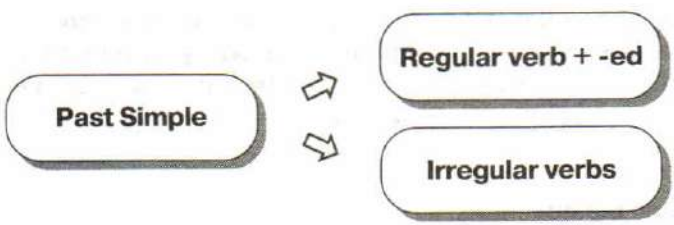
Look through the notes James has left. How would you answer the questions if you were him?

1. (usually) two-three during the week, (normally) four – at the weekends
2. 7 a.m., on Sunday / wake up at 11, so no breakfast
3. Occasionally. When my friends invite me.
4. Mexican. Like spicy food
5. Mexican, but with friends / Spanish
6. Yes, nearly always. My hobby
7. Sometimes. They give some useful advice.

Model: *Usually I have two-three meals a day during the week, at the weekends I normally eat four times a day.*

.....
.....
.....
.....

5.2 The Past Simple Tense



(See List of Irregular Verbs, Appendix 2)

Spelling and Pronunciation Rules

Regular verbs form the Past Simple and Participle II by adding ***-ed*** to the stem of the verb, or only ***-d*** if the stem of the verb ends in ***-e***:

to want – want**ed** to unite – unit**ed**
to open – open**ed** to live – liv**ed**

The pronunciation of ***-ed (-d)*** depends on the sound preceding it. It is pronounced:

[ɪd] after *t*, *d*: want**ed** ['wɔntɪd], land**ed** ['lændɪd];
[d] after voiced consonants except *d* and after vowels: open**ed** ['oupnd], play**ed** [pleɪd];
[t] after voiceless consonants except *t*: work**ed** [wə:kt].

The following spelling rules should be observed:

a. Final ***y*** is changed into ***i*** before the addition of ***-ed*** if it is preceded by a consonant:
to ca**rry** – carr**ied**
to rep**ly** – repl**ied**
y remains unchanged if it is preceded by a vowel:
to enj**oy** – enj**oyed**

b. If a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a short stressed vowel, the final consonant is doubled:
to stop – stopped to sob – sobbed to submit – submitted
to plan – planned to stir – stirred
final ***r*** is doubled if it is preceded by a stressed vowel:
to occUr – occurred to prefEr – preferred to refEr – referred
final ***r*** is not doubled when preceded by a diphthong:
to appear – appeared
final ***l*** is doubled if it is preceded by a short vowel, stressed or unstressed:
to compel – compelled to quarrel – quarrelled

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I/he **worked/wrote**	I/he **did not work/write**	**Did** I/he **work/write**?
	I/he **didn't work/write**	

The Past Simple may denote:

1. An action performed in the past:
   - We **entered** the house in silence.
   - He **met** us at the station.
2. A succession of past actions:
   - He **shut** the window, **switched** off the light and **went** upstairs.
3. A repeated action in the past:
   - He **made** an entry in his diary every night.

The Past Simple is used with the following adverbials of time: *yesterday*, *last night/week/month/year/Monday*, *two days/weeks/months ago*, *then*, *in 1993/1825*, etc. These adverbials go either at the beginning or at the end of a sentence:
- I saw him **yesterday**.
- **Last week**, he returned from a business trip.

NOTE: Repeated actions are often expressed by
used to + *Infinitive*,
would + *Infinitive*.

USED TO	WOULD
«раньше», «когда-то», «бывало»	
– refers to regular events in the past which are now finished or different. It can refer to past actions, habits or states («раньше», «когда-то»). **Used to** is only past! - (When I was young) I **used to work** much. - **Did** you **use to collect** stamps? - He **didn't use to be** very punctual.	– refers to typical behaviour or an action which took place from time to time in the past. You cannot use *would* when talking about states or habits in the past. *Would* in this meaning cannot be used with the verb *to be*. - He **would spend** all his days locked in his room.
You cannot use *would* without a change in meaning in the negative sentences. - We **didn't use** to drink coffee in the morning. (Мы никогда не пили кофе по утрам.) - We **wouldn't** drink coffee in the morning = We refused to drink coffee in the morning.	

It is necessary to distinguish between two particularly confusing verb phrases, *used to* and *be used to*.

USED TO + Infinitive («раньше», «когда-то», «бывало»)	**BE USED TO + Noun/Gerund** («привыкнуть»)
Used to + Infinitive refers to habitual actions in the past, it cannot be followed by a noun (or a gerund): ❑ When I was in England, I **used to eat** a big breakfast. *Used to* is a fixed idiom and is not used in any other tense.	The phrase is parallel in structure to *be interested in*, and it is possible to put a noun after *to*: ❑ I'**m used to** his curious ways. ❑ I'**m used to** hearing about the odd things he does. The verb *to be* in *to be used to* can be used in any appropriate tense. *Be used to* suggests familiarity through a repetition of the activitity or occurrence; it does not state the existence of a habit as such.

EXERCISES



10 **(A) Form *the Past Simple* of the verbs below and write them in the correct column of the chart. Then read them aloud.**

Reply, employ, land, refer, dance, book, cry, answer, travel, destroy, refer, cook, fry, arrange, stay, sneer, plan, phone, offer, deny, enjoy, complete, try, play, stop, prefer, dive, rub.

(V + -ed)	(V + -d)	(V + double consonant + -ed)	(V + -ied)	(V + -yed)
.....	.....	.....	..... Replied	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

11 **(A) Read a sentence about the present and then write a sentence about the past.**

(Model:) Granny usually gets up at 6.30. *Yesterday she got up at 8.00.*

1. Granny usually wakes up early.
   Yesterday morning .....
2. Granny usually walks in the garden.
   Yesterday .....
3. Granny usually has a sandwich for lunch.
   Yesterday .....
4. Granny usually goes out in the evening.
   Yesterday evening .....
5. Granny usually sleeps very well.
   Yesterday .....

12 (A) Put one of these verbs in each sentence:

hurt teach spend sell throw fall catch buy cost

Model: *I was thirsty so I bought apple juice in the shop.*

1. My father ..... me how to drive when I was 17.
2. James ..... down the stairs and ..... his leg.
3. We needed some money so we ..... our summer house.
4. They ..... a lot of money yesterday. They ..... a dishwasher which ..... 10,000 rubles.
5. The boy ..... the ball to the dog and the dog ..... it.

13 (A) Write questions. A friend has just come back from Italy and you are asking him about the trip.

Models: What place/go to?
What place did you go to?
The weather/fine?
Was the weather fine?

1. how long/stay there? .....
2. stay at a hotel? .....
3. go alone? .....
4. how/travel? .....
5. the food/good? .....
6. what/do in the evenings? .....
7. make any friends there? .....

14 (A) Put the verb into the correct form. All the sentences are past.

Model: I (not/go) *didn't go* to the park yesterday because the weather (not/be) *wasn't very* good.

1. I (not/have) ..... breakfast this morning because I (not/have) ..... time. 2. We (not/buy) ..... anything because we (not/have) ..... any money. 3. I (not/sleep) ..... because I (not/feel) ..... sleepy. 4. She (not/be) .... interested in the book because she (not/understand) ..... it.

15 (A, B) Fill in the gaps with the right verb in *the Past Simple Tense*.

have decide bake want decorate prepare go buy return

A

Pam (1)..... to prepare a birthday present for her sister Kate who was very busy in her office and (2)..... to stay there until 7 p.m. So Pam (3)..... to cheer up her sister a bit. First, she (4)..... a birthday cake with chocolate cream and a cherry on top. Then, she (5)..... her sister's room with funny balloons and (6)..... a special present – a new CD of her favourite band. After that, she (7)..... to the cinema to buy two tickets for the next day film. When Kate (8)..... home after her tiresome day in the office, she was very excited about the presents her younger sister (9)..... for her.



B

Pam meets her friend Jane who asks her questions about Kate's birthday. Write down the questions Jane asks:

1. ..... ?
   No, she wasn't. She was in her office.

2. ..... ?
   She wished to come earlier but in fact there was so much work that she came late.
3. ..... ?
   First, her favorite cake with chocolate cream.
4. ..... ?
   No, I baked it myself.
5. ..... ?
   How did you guess? Yes, I bought it. She likes their music.
6. ..... ?
   Yes, she did. She was very excited about them.

16 **(B, C) A. In pairs, ask and answer questions about the latest holiday you had. (Ex. 15 will help you.)**

B. Write a short paragraph about your partner.

.....
.....
.....
.....

PAST SIMPLE VS. USED TO – WOULD

17 **(B, C) Choose the correct alternative. Explain your choice. (In some sentences both variants are possible.)**

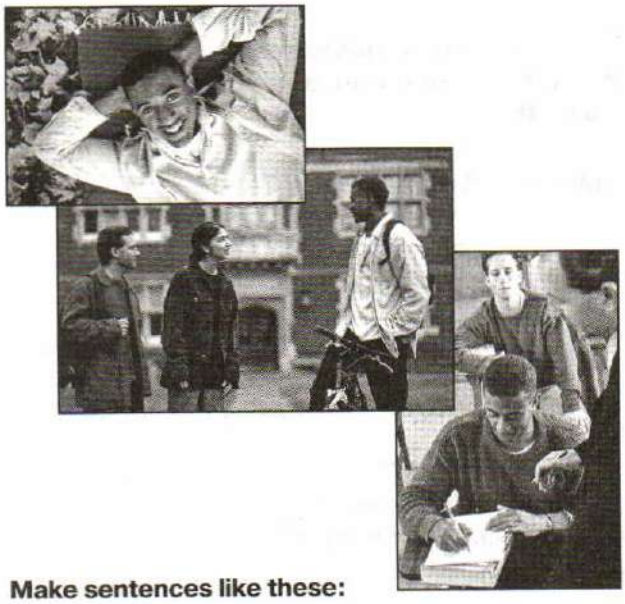
1. I *used to/would* like to play chess when I lived with my father. 2. We *didn't use to/wouldn't* go out much when we stayed at Granny's. 3. I *used to/would* forget my glasses at home every time I went to the office. 4. Why *did they use to/would they* play tennis here every Sunday morning? 5. They *used to/would* call him "Captain", I don't know why. 6. What sort of things *did you use to/would you* believe when you were a child? 7. I *used to/would* visit him twice a week. But he left for France 2 years ago. 8. Why *did she use to/would she* hate her black shoes? They were so funny.

18 **(A, B) Complete the sentence with *used to*.**

(Model:) He doesn't play the piano any more but he *used to* play it every day.

1. She doesn't eat sweets now but she .... them every day.
2. Miranda ..... my colleague but we don't work together any longer.
3. We live in Sussex now but we .... in Scotland.
4. Now there is one cinema in our town but there ..... five.
5. When they were young they .... our garden but they don't like it now.
6. Melly walks everywhere now. She .... a horse.

19 **(B, C) Write some sentences about Denis who started following his friend Henry's lifestyle. Denis stopped doing some things and started doing other things. You can use the following hints: *be in time for*, *read thrillers*, *surf the Internet*, *play football*, *meet his friends on Saturdays*, *go hiking*, etc.**



Make sentences like these:

Denis never used to be on time for work. / Denis didn't use to be on time for work, now he always comes to work on time.

1. .....
2. .....
3. .....

20 (B, C) What did people use to do and did not use to do 30 years ago? In pairs, ask and answer questions using the prompts below. Fill in the chart with your answers.

talk on mobile phones, send faxes, read more, write letters, send telegrams, buy and sell over the Internet, eat at fast food restaurants, listen to records, etc.

Model: A: *Did they use to talk on mobile phones 30 years ago?*
B: *No, they didn't.*





didn't use to...	used to...
talk on mobile phones	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

21 (B, C) Think of any reasons why people used to do some things and did not use to do other things. Complete the text below with the notes from Ex. 20. You can add you own ideas if you wish.

So much has changed since the 1980s! 30 years ago people .....
because ..... .
They also .....
and .....
because..... .
At the same time they .....
..... and .....
..... the reason for that was that ..... . But nowadays people
..... .
.....
.....
.....

22 (A, B) Translate into English, using *the Past Simple Tense*.

1. Мы начали этот опыт на прошлой неделе. 2. Они вернулись домой в 7 часов вечера. 3. Мы решили послать это письмо вчера. 4. Кому вы отдали эти журналы? 5. Вчера я встретил Стива в библиотеке. 6. Когда вы его видели в последний раз? – В прошлый вторник. 7. В прошлом году мы не изучали французский. Мы изучали английский. 8. В котором часу вы начали работать вчера? – После обеда. У нас было мало работы. 9. Погода была хорошая, и мы с друзьями пошли в парк. 10. Где вы были час тому назад? 11. Я встретил ее позавчера, и она рассказала мне об этом.

23 (B, C) Translate into English, using *used to* and *would + Infinitive*.

Model: Теперь она избегает ходить туда так часто, как раньше. – *Now she avoids going there as often as she used to.*

1. Он, бывало, внезапно появлялся в доме своей матери, но она всегда была рада ему. 2. Она, бывало, часами сидела у открытого окна, глядя на лес. 3. Я лично думаю, что теперь вы говорите по-английски лучше, чем раньше. 4. Теперь он совсем не курит, так как у него плохое здоровье, а ведь раньше он курил сигарету за сигаретой (be a chain smoker). 5. Он начал изучать французский, а в детстве он занимался английским с частным преподавателем. 6. Когда-то он был весьма состоятельным человеком, но это всё уже в прошлом.

24 (B, C) A. Work in pairs. Student A looks through text A, Student B looks at text B.

Student A

You are Nick. You would like to find a part-time job in the fast food industry. You used to work in this industry when you were a student. Look at the

following information and complete your story. You can add some ideas of your own.

At that time you lived in (1)..... (city?). You used to work in a fast food restaurant (2)..... (what kind of restaurant?) (3)..... a week (how many days a week?), mostly in (4)..... (what time of the day?). You used to (5)..... and (6)..... (your duties?). You used to wear a uniform (7)..... (what kind?). You used to earn (8)..... a week. You quitted (9)..... later (when?) because (10)..... (why?).



Student B

You are a manager of a fast food restaurant. You are going to interview your partner about his/her work experience in the fast food industry. Write down your questions using the prompts below. Use both *the Past Simple* and *Used to* in your questions.

1. you / work / in the fast food industry?
   Did you use to work in the fast food industry?
2. where / when / you / work?
   .....
3. how many days a week / you / work ?
   .....
4. what time of the day / you / work?
   .....
5. what / your / duties?
   .....
6. how much / earn?
   .....
7. when / you / quit?
   .....
8. why / you / quit?
   .....

B. In pairs, ask and answer questions about Nick's experience in the fast food industry.

5.3 The Future Simple Tense

will + Infinitive

AFFIRMATIVE			NEGATIVE				INTERROGATIVE		
I	**will**	**work**	I	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	I	**work?**
He	**will**	**work**	He	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	he	**work?**
She	**will**	**work**	She	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	she	**work?**
It	**will**	**work**	It	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	it	**work?**
We	**will**	**work**	We	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	we	**work?**
You	**will**	**work**	You	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	you	**work?**
They	**will**	**work**	They	**will**	**not**	**work**	**Will**	they	**work?**

I'll work **I won't work**

NOTE: *Will* is used for all persons (*I*, *we*, *he*, *she*, *you*, etc.). In British English, *shall* can be used for *I* and *we*.

1. ***The Future Simple Tense*** denotes a future action:

- ❑ You **will write** these exercises tomorrow.
- ❑ I am tired. I **will go** and **have** a nap before dinner.

2. ***The Future Simple*** is used with the following adverbials of time: *tomorrow, the day after tomorrow, next week/month/year/Monday, soon, in three days/a week, in 2050*, etc. These adverbials go either at the beginning or at the end of a sentence:

- ❑ I will see him **tomorrow**.
- ❑ **Next Tuesday**, he will return from a business trip.

3. Apart from predicting the future, *will* and *shall* are used in some other ways:

- *shall* in offers:
  - ❑ **Shall I get** your coat for you?
- *shall* in suggestions:
  - ❑ **Shall** we **go** to the movies?
- in threats:
  - ❑ Just wait! You**'ll regret** this.
- *will* in requests/invitations:
  - ❑ **Will** you **open** the window, please?

(Also see "Talking about the Future".)

4. ***The Future Simple Tense*** is not used after the conjunctions:

when	*as soon as*	*provided*
till	*as long as*	*in case*
until	*if*	
before	*unless*	
after	*on condition that*	

In such clauses ***the Present Simple Tense*** is used. Be attentive with *if/when*-clauses:

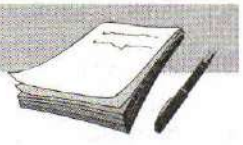
when
- introduces an object or attributive clause – the Future Simple ***is used***.
- introduces an adverbial clause of time – the Future Simple ***is not used***.

- ❑ I don't know ***when*** they **will arrive**.
  BUT: ***When*** they **arrive**, I'll inform you.

if
- «ли» – the Future Simple ***is used***.
- «если» – the Future Simple ***is not used***.

- ❑ I don't know ***if*** he **will agree**.
  BUT: ***If*** he **agrees**, I'll call you.

EXERCISES



25 **(A) Put the verb in brackets into *the Future Simple*.**

1. He (be) ..... here soon. 2. The dress (be) ..... ready tomorrow. 3. They (be) ..... at the station in time for the 10.30 train. 4. I (know) ..... the result in a day. 5. I (be) ..... twenty years old next year. 6. They (remember) ..... you well. 7. When he (come) ..... back? 8. When he comes, I (apologize) ..... to him. 9. I (not see) ..... this beautiful city again. 10. I (recognize) ..... his pictures anywhere.

26 **(B, C) Choose the correct form of the verb in these sentences.**

1. When he *calls/will call* I *give/will give* him a piece of my mind. 2. I *am/will be* at home if you *need/will need* anything. 3. They *are/will be* in the gallery if you *decide/will decide* to speak to them. 4. If they *want/will want* your advice, they *get/will get* in touch with you. 5. If you *have/will have* anything to report, put it in writing and send it to me. 6. I *write/will write* about it when I *have/will have* time. 7. He *waits/will wait* until they *send/will send* for him. 8. He *is/will be* all right when this *is/will be* over. 9. I'd like to ask you a few more questions before you *go/will go*. 10. I don't *know/won't know* when they *come/will come* to see us. 11. Ask him if he *stays/will stay* for dinner. 12. I *wonder/will wonder* if we ever *see/will see* each other again. 13. I am/will be not sure if they *are/will be* in time. 14. He can't tell us when the motor *starts/will start*.

27 (A, B) Use the words in brackets in the correct form.

1. When the weather (get) ..... warmer, I (start) ..... practising again. 2. Come and see me when you (come) ..... up to town and we (talk) ..... everything over. 3. He (want) ..... to know if you (be) ..... free tomorrow morning at 10.00. 4. I (be) ..... down at your office at 12 tomorrow. 5. I (wonder) ..... when they (write) ..... to us. 6. When things (get) ..... a little more settled, we (come) ..... to see you. 7. They can't tell me when they (be) ..... free. 8. Go straight on till you (come) ..... to a fountain at the corner of the street; then turn left and you (find) ..... this shop on your right. 9. Ask them when they (move) ..... to a new flat. 10. I (be) ..... glad when I (get) ..... to the top! 11. He doesn't say when he (come) ..... back. 12. "Give this message to your teachers as soon as you (come) ..... to school," said his mother. – "All right," said the boy, running out. – "I (be) ..... sure it (be) ..... still in his pocket when he (get) ..... home tonight," said his father. 13. Before we (talk) ..... about it, I'd like to show you something.

28 (B, C) Use subordinate clauses of time or condition instead of the underlined parts of the following sentences. Make some changes if necessary. Pay attention to the use of tenses.

Model: I will have time next week and I will fix the car. *If I have time next week, I'll fix the car.*

1. All will go well and I will graduate in June.
   .....
2. He will finish this job and we will give him another.
   .....
3. The traffic conditions will get much worse and the city will have to build elevated roads.
   .....
4. The light will turn red and all the cars will stop.
   .....
5. The weather will clear and we will finish our games. .....
6. I will be paid tomorrow and I will buy this dress.
   .....
7. We will get there before you and we will wait for you. .....
8. He will come home and his father will give him a good talking-to. .....
9. He will take this medicine and will be all right.
   .....

29 (A, B) All the sentences are future. Put the verbs into the correct form: *will/won't* or *the Present Simple*.

Model: As soon as I (see) *see* him, I (tell) *will tell* him everything.

1. If they (get) ..... here on time, we can make it.
2. There is a surprise waiting for him when he (get) ..... home.
3. Before you (leave)..... , sir, I (give) ..... you your present back.
4. If you (feel) ..... better this afternoon, we (drive) ..... to the coast.
5. Give him this message when you (see) .... him.
6. If we (come) ..... in time, we (find) ..... them there.
7. If I (be) ..... lucky, I (get in) ..... without a ticket.
8. (you/be) ..... lonely without me, while I (be) ..... away?

30 (A, B, C) Make one sentence from two sentences.

Model: They are off soon. You must visit them before that. (before)
You must visit them before they are off.

1. I'm going to finish my work. Then I'll go to the cinema. (when)
   .....
2. He'll spend a week in Brussels. Then he'll go to England. (before)
   .....

3. He'll come to London in April. He can stay with us. (when) .....
4. It's going to be dark soon. Let's leave before that. (before)
.....

31 (A, B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. В следующем году мне будет 20 лет. 2. Возможно, он придёт сегодня. 3. Когда вы начнёте изучать иностранный язык? 4. Он думает, вам не понравится новый балет. 5. Она будет дома в 6 часов? – Нет. 6. Я надеюсь, вы хорошо напишете контрольную работу. 7. У вас завтра будет много работы? – Да. 8. Экзамены начнутся 1 июня. 9. Фильм будет очень интересным. 10. Мы увидимся с ним на следующей неделе.

32 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Они не начнут совещание, пока не придёт главный инженер. 2. Если вы встретите их, попросите их позвонить нам. 3. Вы сразу узнаете Джемму, как только увидите её. 4. Интересно, когда они вернутся. 5. Не переходите улицу, пока не зажжётся зелёный свет. 6. Как только он приедет, он позвонит вам. 7. Он будет очень счастлив, когда ты приедешь в Нью-Йорк. 8. Если вы будете пить эту воду, вы заболеете. 9. Я не могу сказать вам, когда они вернутся. 10. Если вы сейчас не возьмёте такси, вы опоздаете на самолёт. 11. Когда вы захотите увидеть меня, позвоните. 12. Вы не будете знать английский язык, пока не начнёте упорно заниматься. 13. Я загляну к вам перед отъездом. 14. Когда наступит зима, я уеду в Индию. 15. Я не знаю, когда я его снова увижу.

33 (B, C) Michael is going to have a job interview tomorrow morning. His wife Jenny asks questions about it. Work in pairs. Using conjunctions and the prompts below, restore their dialogue. The first line has been done for you.

A

Jenny: *How are you going to get to the office?*
Michael: *If it doesn't rain, I'll walk there.*



Jenny

How / get to the office?

take a taxi / arrive earlier. What / do then?

The employee / ask to introduce yourself / what you talk about?
When / call me to tell the result?

you have positive answer / how celebrate it?

Michael

it not rain / walk there.
but it rain / take a taxi.
arrive there / have a walk around to relax and enter / have a coffee at the nearest café.
the employee / ask to introduce myself / talk about my qualification and work experience.
not call / the interview over.
but I free / immediately let you know the result.
I go through it / go to the restaurant in the evening.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

B. Now, using the information from the task above, write about Michael. Start like this:

Tomorrow morning Michael is going to have a job interview. He hasn't decided yet how to get to the office but if... .....

.....

.....

.....

6. The Continuous Forms

to be + -ing (Participle I)

6.1 The Present Continuous Tense

AFFIRMATIVE			NEGATIVE				INTERROGATIVE		
I	**am**	**reading**	I	**am**	**not**	**reading**	**Am**	I	**reading?**
He	**is**	**reading**	He	**is**	**not**	**reading**	**Is**	he	**reading?**
She	**is**	**reading**	She	**is**	**not**	**reading**	**Is**	she	**reading?**
It	**is**	**reading**	It	**is**	**not**	**reading**	**Is**	it	**reading?**
We	**are**	**reading**	We	**are**	**not**	**reading**	**Are**	we	**reading?**
You	**are**	**reading**	You	**are**	**not**	**reading**	**Are**	you	**reading?**
They	**are**	**reading**	They	**are**	**not**	**reading**	**Are**	they	**reading?**

I'**m reading**
She'**s reading**
We'**re reading**

She **isn't reading**
We **aren't reading**

The Present Continuous may denote:

1. An action going on at the present moment:
- ❑ Why **are** you **wearing** that funny hat?
- ❑ Look? – Something'**s burning**.
- ❑ Listen! Somebody **is singing**.
- ❑ Andrew'**s reading** up for his examinations these days.

2. A future action when it is planned:
- ❑ I **am leaving** tonight.
- ❑ They **are getting** married in June.
- ❑ We **are playing** tennis tomorrow.

3. A continuous process (with the adverbs *always*, *constantly*):
- ❑ The Earth **is** *always* **moving**.

4. An action thought of as a continual process (with the adverbs *always*, *constantly*):
- ❑ He **is** *always* **grumbling**.
- ❑ She **is** *constantly* **laughing**.

The Present Continuous is used with the following adverbials of time: *now*, *at the moment*, *at present*, *still*, *nowadays*, *today*, *tonight*, etc. Most adverbials of time usually go at the end of a sentence.
- ❑ I'm reading a book **at the moment**.

Still goes after the auxiliary verb.
- ❑ He is **still** wearing that old jacket.

Verbs Not Used in the Continuous Form

The following groups of verbs do not express a process, that is why they are not used in the Continuous form:

1. Verbs denoting sense perception – *to see, to hear*;

2. Verbs denoting mental activity – *to know, to believe, to think* (= have an opinion), *to doubt, to feel* (= have an opinion), *to guess, to imagine, to mean, to realize, to recognize, to remember, to suppose, to understand*;

3. Verbs denoting wish – *to want, to wish*;

4. Verbs denoting feeling – *to love, to like, to dislike, to hate, to prefer*;

5. Verbs denoting abstract relations – *to be, to have, to contain, to depend, to belong, to concern, to consist of, to deserve, to fit, to include, to involve, to lack, to matter, to need, to owe, to own, to possess, to appear, to resemble, to seem*;

6. Verbs denoting physical properties of objects – *to measure* (= have length, etc.), *to taste* (= have a flavour), *to smell* (= give out a smell), *to sound, to weigh* (= have weight);

7. Verbs denoting affect or influence – *to astonish, to impress, to please, to satisfy, to surprise.*

NOTE: Such expressions as:
- **to see the sights of**;
- **to see somebody home/off**;
- **to have dinner** (lunch, supper)

can be used in the Continuous form:

- They **were seeing the sights of** London when I met them.
- He **is having lunch.**

to think
- denoting an opinion – ***cannot be used*** in the Continuous form
- denoting a process of thought – ***can be used*** in the Continuous form

- I **think** you are right.
- I **am thinking** of what you have just said.

to admire
- meaning «восхищаться» – ***cannot be used*** in the Continuous form
- meaning «любоваться» – ***can be used*** in the Continuous form

- I **admire** this man very much.
- What are you doing here? **Admiring** the moon?

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Continue in the negative.**

Model: Mother is talking on the phone. (sleep) *She isn't sleeping.*

1. John is standing. (lie down) .....
2. Father is shaving. (wash) .....
3. The boys are playing. (fight) .....
4. We are dancing. (jump) .....
5. They are speaking. (shout) .....
6. Mary is running. (walk) .....
7. I am eating. (drink) .....
8. The teacher is speaking. (read) .....

2 (A, B) Answer the questions, using the words in brackets.

Model: Are you drawing? (write a story)
– *No, I'm not. I'm writing a story.*

1. Is he writing a letter? (watch television)
– .....
2. Are you reading Byron's poems? (learn them by heart)
– .....
3. Is Dad smoking in his study? (read a newspaper)
– .....
4. Are they listening to the radio? (talk with a friend)
– .....
5. Are you hurrying to work? (go home)
– .....
6. Is Joan playing the piano? (listen to a concert)
– .....
7. Is she washing up? (cook)
– .....

3 (A, B) Answer the questions, using the words in brackets.

Model: Are you busy tonight? (Yes/meet a friend)
– *Yes, I am. I'm meeting a friend.*

1. Is Ivy busy this afternoon? (Yes/go to the library)
– .....
2. Are they busy this evening? (No/have a rest)
– .....
3. Are you busy today? (Yes/have visitors)
– .....
4. Is Kate busy after lunch? (No/stay at home)
– .....
5. Are the Browns busy today? (No/have a holiday)
– .....
6. Is Fred busy tonight? (Yes/go to the concert)
– .....
7. Are you busy this afternoon? (Yes/have an English class)
– .....

4 (A, B) Put the verb into the correct form.

Model: Please be silent for a while. I (listen) *am listening* to the news.
Don't speak so loud. The child (not/sleep) *isn't sleeping* yet.
Listen to those girls. What language (they/speak) *are* they *speaking?*

1. Please be quiet. I (try) ..... to sleep. 2. Look! It (rain) ..... . 3. You (make) ..... a lot of noise. Can you be a bit quieter? 4. Excuse me, I (look) ..... for a phone box. Where can I find one? 5. (in the theatre) It's a good play, isn't it? (you/enjoy) ..... it? 6. Listen! Can you hear these children next door? They (cry) ..... again. 7. Why (you/wear) ..... your fur coat today? It's very warm. 8. I (not/go) ..... to school this week. I'm on holiday. 9. I want to lose weight. I (not/eat) ..... sweets now.

5 (B) Complete these sentences, using some of these verbs:

get become change improve fall increase rise

Model: The water level *is rising* very fast.

1. Food prices ..... at the moment. 2. He is still weak but he ..... stronger slowly. 3. These days life .... more and more expensive. 4. The weather ..... every moment. 5. The cost of living ..... . Every year things are more expensive. 6. Victor has gone to work in America. When he arrived, his English wasn't very good but now it ..... . 7. The environment is already very bad and it .... worse. 8. Living standars .... gradually.

6 (B) Read this conversation between Molly and Fanny. Put each verb into the correct form. The first one has already been done for you.

Molly: Hello, Fanny. I'm so glad to see you. What *are you doing* (you/do) these days?

Fanny: I (1)..... (train) to be a secretary.

Molly: Really? (2)..... (you/enjoy) it?

Fanny: Yes, it's quite interesting. How about you?

Molly: Well, I (3)..... (get married) soon and I'm very busy. I (4)..... (look for) a house.

Fanny: Really? (5)..... (you/do) it alone?

Molly: No, my fiancé (6)..... (help) me.

7 (B) Translate into English.

1. На кого вы сейчас смотрите? – Я смотрю на эту старую даму. 2. С кем разговаривает ваш друг? – Он разговаривает с нашим преподавателем. 3. О чём вы рассказываете своим друзьям? – Я рассказываю им о своем отпуске. 4. Вы сейчас пишете диктант? – Нет, мы делаем упражнение 9. 5. Куда вы идёте вечером? – Мы идём в цирк. 6. Когда они приезжают в Москву? – Они приезжают утром. 7. Мы уезжаем в Минск. 8. Эти студенты делают упражнение или переписывают текст? 9. Кого встречают эти студенты? – Они встречают иностранных студентов. 10. Куда вы идёте? – Я иду на фотовыставку.

8 (B) Translate the jokes.

A

Капитан корабля кричит своим матросам:
«Кто внизу?»
«Это я, Билли, сэр», – отвечает один.
«Что ты там делаешь, Билли?»
«Я делаю... м-м... ничего, сэр».
«А Том там?»
«Да, сэр».
«А что ты там делаешь, Том?»
«Я помогаю Билли, сэр».





B

– Почему ты идёшь под зонтом? (carry an umbrella). Ты думаешь, идёт дождь?
– Нет.
– Но солнце тоже не печёт (shine).
– Нет.
– Тогда почему же ты идёшь под зонтом?
– Видите ли, когда идёт дождь, папа берёт зонт; когда печёт солнце, мама хочет использовать его. Сейчас единственный случай (the only time), когда я могу использовать зонт.

6.2 The Present Continuous and the Present Simple

COMPARE:

The Present Continuous *(I am doing)*
Some action which is happening at or around the time of speaking:

- The wind **is blowing** hard. Shut the window, please.
- I can't understand him. What language **is** he **speaking**?
- It's too late. What **are** you writing?

We use ***the Present Continuous*** for a temporary situation:

- They **are staying** at the hotel until their house is ready.

The Present Continuous may denote a future action when it is planned:

- We **are leaving** tomorrow.

The Present Simple *(I do)*
Actions in general or those which happen repeatedly:

- Strong wind often **blows** here in winter.
- What language **do** they **speak** in Switzerland?
- I **write** letters to my mother twice a month.

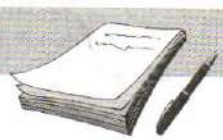
We use ***the Present Simple*** for a permanent situation:

- In summer they usually **go** to the South and **stay** at a hotel near the sea.

The Present Simple may denote a future action according to a timetable:

- The concert **begins** at 7 o'clock tomorrow.

EXERCISES



9 **(A, B) Say whether the underlined verbs are right. Correct those which are wrong.**

Model: I *don't go* there often. *(RIGHT)*
Please don't interrupt. He *talks* sense. *(WRONG – is talking)*

1. Look! Someone is coming up to the back door. – ..... . 2. Do you talk about my book? I hope you like it. – ..... . 3. Are you believing in ghosts? – ..... . 4. Listen! Somebody tries to start the car. – ..... . 5. He always goes there in the springtime. – ..... . 6. I'm thinking he is a good chap. – ..... . 7. The people are worried that the traffic is increasing. – ..... . 8. We're usually going to Hampton by train. – ..... .

10 **(B) Put the verb into the correct form, *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Simple*.**

Model: I *'m planting* (plant) a cherry-tree. Will you help me?
He *doesn't feel well* (not/feel). He hasn't been well for quite a time.

1. These things (not/belong) ..... to my parents. 2. Look! He (come) .... I (want) ..... to speak to him. 3. This stream (flow) ..... to the lake at the bottom of the valley. 4. Today the river (flow) ..... much faster than usual. 5. (it/ever/rain) ..... on Madeira? 6. Can you ride a bicycle? – No, but I (learn) ..... . My brother (teach)

..... me. 7. I usually (enjoy) ..... music but I (not/enjoy) ..... this record very much. 8. I (not/believe) ..... this man's story. 9. Vladimir is in England now. He (stay) .... with some friends. 10. She (look for) ..... a new flat at the moment.

11 (B) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Simple* and *the Present Continuous*.

1. Mr. Smith (teach) ..... us at present. He (substitute) ..... for Mr. Reese, who (be) ..... our regular teacher. 2. "I (go) ..... to visit Peter tonight. He (leave) ..... tomorrow morning." – "He (come) ..... back the same day?" – "I (not/know) ...." 3. John often (stay) at a hotel when he (come) ..... to town but tonight he (stay) ..... with us. 4. "Nick (leave) ..... today." – "What train he (take) ..... for his journey?" – "He (catch) ..... the 5.50 train." 5. The mechanic (repair) ..... my car today. So I must go to work by the underground. 6. "You (write) ..... him tonight?" – "Yes, I always (write) ..... him on his birthday. You (want) ..... to send any message?" – "Certainly." 7. John (say) ..... he (leave) ..... for Chicago on the fifteenth. 8. I (go) ..... to the seaside on my holiday. 9. My brother (come) .... to see me next week. 10. Whenever I (call) ..... at the Smiths' home, they (play) ..... cards. I really (think) ..... they (play) ..... every night. 11. Jack (make) ..... at least ten spelling errors during every lesson.

12 (B) The text below is from an interview with a Hollywood actress Gloria Martin. Read the text and put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Simple* or *the Present Continuous Tense*.

My life (get) [1] ..... pretty busy at the moment.
I (have) [2] ..... a 14-hour day, but I'm lucky because we (film) [3] ..... in the Santa Monica mountains now, 15 minutes from home.
I usually (get up) [4] ..... at 4 a.m.
I (have breakfast) [5] ..... at 4.30.
When I (have breakfast) [6] ..... ,
my husband (read) [7] ..... newspapers to me.
I (have) [8] ..... no other time for that.
I generally (walk or cycle) [9] ..... to work.
My day (start) [10] ..... with hair and make-up.
While I (get ready) [11] ..... for the camera, I (go) [12] ..... through my role again.
I often (feel) [13] ..... nervous even after all these years! But when I (stand) [14] ..... in front of the cameras, I (forget) [15] ..... everything. I (enjoy) [16] ..... my work. Though when I (not/work) [17] ..... , my favourite thing is to do absolutely nothing!

13 (B) Translate into English.

1. В этой части света солнце садится рано. 2. Джойс едет в Лондон завтра, потому что её дядя хочет её видеть. 3. Некоторым людям больше всего нравится лето, некоторые любят весну или осень, а другие предпочитают зиму. 4. «Где Лиззи?» – «Она катается верхом на лошади». 5. «Что делают дети?» – «Они слушают сказку и рисуют». 6. Джейн прекрасно рисует. 7. Отец обычно ездит на работу поездом, но сегодня он на машине. 8. Каждый год он проводит каникулы в горах.

14 (B) Translate into English.

1. «Когда он обычно приходит домой?» – «Он обычно приходит домой в 7 часов вечера». 2. Каким поездом вы уезжаете в Петербург на следующей неделе? 3. В следующее воскресенье ко мне приезжают друзья из Шеффилда. 4. Алекс делает новую полку для книг. Он всю мебель для своей комнаты всегда делает сам. 5. На ней сегодня шляпа и голубое платье. 6. Я не могу сейчас дать вам эту книгу, потому что я её читаю. 7. «Что вы делаете под столом?» – «Я ищу иголку». 8. «Что у вас обычно на завтрак?» – «Я обычно ем бутерброд и выпиваю чашку кофе». 9. «Куда ты так бежишь?» – «Я встречаюсь сегодня с Ником. Он не любит, когда я опаздываю». 10. В следующее воскресенье я уезжаю в Данию.

15 **(B) Look at picture A and say what the Browns usually do on Sunday morning. Then look at picture B and say what they are doing this Sunday morning. Use the prompts below.**

Picture A. Every Sunday



Prompts: *Mrs. Brown / cook; Mr. Brown / read a newspaper; children / watch TV; have / a good time*

Usually, the Browns are at home on Sunday morning.

Picture B. This Sunday



Prompts: *the sun / shine; Mr. Brown / wear a jacket; he / take a photo of Mary; Tom / ride a bicycle; Mrs. Brown / read a book; Mary / draw a picture*

This Sunday morning the Browns are in the countryside. It's a fine summer day.

6.3 The Past Continuous Tense

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I **was reading**	I **was not reading**	**Was** I **reading**?
We **were reading**	We **were not reading**	**Were** we **reading**?

I **wasn't reading**
We **weren't reading**

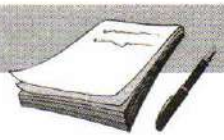
The Past Continuous denotes a temporary action taking place at a given moment in the past:

❑ I **was writing** a letter to my friend ← *at 5 o'clock yesterday.* / *from 5 to 6 on Sunday.* / *when Mum came.*

The Past Continuous is used with the following adverbials of time: *at five (o'clock) yesterday, from five to/till six yesterday, for three days last week*, etc. Most adverbials of time usually go at the end of a sentence.

❑ They were playing football **from 12 till 2 yesterday**.

EXERCISES



16 **(A, B) Here is a page from Mr. Cook's diary. Write sentences saying what he was doing at these times:**

1. At 8 o'clock *he was collecting his car from the garage.*
2. At 10.45 he .....
3. At 2.20 .....
4. At 5 o'clock .....
5. At 8 o'clock .....
6. At 10.05 .....
7. At 11.10 .....

Monday

8.00 – collect the car from the garage
10.30 – meet the manager
2.00 – lunch with Peter
4.30-5.30 – visit the dentist
7.30 – the organ concert at the Cathedral
10.00 – walk the dog
11.00 – drive Mother home

17 **(A, B) One evening there was a concert in the park near your house. Use the words in brackets to make sentences saying what each member of your family was doing at the time.**

Model: (Don/have/a bath) *Don was having a bath.*

1. (Mother/cook/in the kitchen) Mother .....
2. (Father/make/a phone call) Father .....
3. (I/get ready to go out) I .....
4. (My sister/wash some clothes) My sister .....

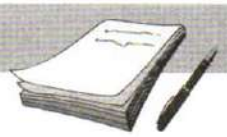
6.4 The Past Continuous and the Past Simple

We often use ***the Past Simple*** and ***the Past Continuous*** together to say that something happened in the middle of something else (some action in progress):

PAST SIMPLE
↓
PAST CONTINUOUS

- **I saw** Irene in the park. She **was sitting** on the bench and waiting for somebody.
- Jensa **broke** her leg when she **was skiing** in Switzerland.

EXERCISES



18 (A, B) Answer the questions, using *when* and the verb of the subordinate clause in *the Past Continuous Tense*.

Model: When did she meet Helen? (walk along the street)
She met Helen when she was walking along the street.

1. When did you catch that cold? (skate on a frosty day) .....
2. When did he write those nice poems? (have a holiday) .....
3. When did she learn the language? (live in England) .....
4. When did she hear that song? (listen to a concert on the radio) .....
5. When did you buy that book? (read up for my exams) .....
6. When did the boy hurt himself? (ride the bicycle) .....
7. When did Philip lose his camera? (walk about the city) .....
8. When did he ring you up? (have supper) .....

19 (A, B) Translate the underlined words. Choose from the given verbs. Cross out the wrong verb.

1. Я видел Сью вчера, но она не видела меня. Она смотрела в другую сторону.
2. Несколько недель назад я встретил Тома и Анну в аэропорту. Они летели в Берлин, а я в Мадрид. Мы поговорили, пока ждали вылета.
3. Я ехал на велосипеде, было темно. Вдруг человек вышел на дорогу перед велосипедом. Я ехал довольно быстро, но, к счастью, я успел остановиться.
4. Вечером я приготовила обед и посмотрела телевизор.
5. Я не видела Алана целую вечность. Когда я в последний раз видела его, он искал работу.
6. Я шла по улице, вдруг я услышала шаги позади себя, кто-то шёл за мной. Я испугалась и убежала.

1. saw/was seeing; wasn't seeing/didn't see; looked/was looking
2. was meeting/met; flew/were flying; were talking/talked; were waiting/waited
3. cycled/was cycling; was stepping/stepped; cycled/was cycling; managed/was managing
4. was cooking/cooked; was watching/watched
5. met/was meeting; looked/was looking
6. walked/was walking; heard/was hearing; followed/was following; was getting frightened/got frightened; ran away/was running away

20 (B) Put the verbs into the correct form, *the Past Simple* or *the Past Continuous*.

Model: While Sean (finish) *was finishing* the letter, his friend (come) *came*.

1. Dan (fall) ..... off the tree while he (rescue) ..... the cat. 2. Last night I (read) ..... in the bed when suddenly I (hear) ..... a voice downstairs. 3. (you/have) ..... a bath when I phoned you? 4. They (wait) ..... for a taxi when I (arrive) ..... . 5. I (not/drive) ..... very fast when I ..... (see) her. 6. Bob (take) ..... a nap while I (paint) .....

the ceiling. 7. We (not/go) ..... out because it (get) ..... dark. 8. What (you/do) ..... at this time yesterday? 9. We (see) ..... Amanda in the gallery. She (wear) ..... her new necklace.

21 (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Simple* and *the Past Continuous*.

1. Mary (play) ..... the piano; John (read) ..... ; my wife (sew) ..... when suddenly we all (hear) ..... a shout. 2. When her father (come) ..... in she (sit) ..... before a red tea-table, finishing a very good tea. 3. The door of his room (be) ..... open; his mother still (stand) ..... at the window. 4. And, smiling to himself, he (begin) ..... to make plans, fantastic plans for the future. He still (smile) ..... when he (walk) ..... up the rock-cut steps. 5. I (sleep) ..... soundly when the phone (ring) ..... . 6. We (sit) ..... on our front porch when Mr. Smith (drive) ..... up in his new car. 7. It (drizzle) ..... when they (come) ..... out of the house. 8. John (come) ..... in, (look) ..... at the fire, (stand) ..... a moment, (turn) ..... and (go) ..... away. 9. We (come) ..... into the dining-room while our parents (eat) ..... supper. 10. Mike (raise) ..... his eyes from the book and (look) ..... out of the window. It still (snow) ..... . 11. He (go) ..... into the kitchen and (get) ..... himself a cup of coffee. 12. He (take) ..... a cushion, (put) ..... it behind and (lean) ..... back. 13. When I (be) ..... a boy, I (want) ..... to be an actor. 14. When I (hear) ..... his knock I (go) ..... to the door and (open) ..... it but I (not/recognize) ..... him at first because I (not/wear) ..... my glasses.

22 (B, C) Open the brackets. Use *the Past Simple* in case of permanent, repeated, one-time actions. Use *the Past Continuous* if the action is temporary, taking place at a given moment in the past.

(Model:) 1) He (turn) *turned* the car and (start) *started* back towards Delphi. – *One-time action.*
2) The local businessmen (like) *liked* something solid with their luncheon coffee. – *A permanent action.*
3) I (glance) *glanced* at the terrace below the balcony. He (sit) *was sitting* under one of the plane-trees, smoking. – *A temporary action taking place at a moment in the past. The moment in the past is indicated by an independent sentence "I glanced at the terrace."*

1. I (open) ..... the shutters and (look) out. The car (stand) ..... where I had left it. 2. Suddenly I (realize) ..... that they (not/pay attention) ..... to me any longer. They (mutter) ..... something and all (look) ..... in the same direction. I (turn) ..... my head and (look) ..... where they all (look) ..... . A man (come) ..... slowly down a steep little street that (lead) ..... uphill between the houses on my right. 3. On my left I (see) ..... the lights of the first house of the village, and I (hurry) ..... towards it through the wood when a sudden flash of light (make) ..... me stop. 4. At that time I (look) ..... for a job. 5. Miss Nobbs (not/see) ..... him leave the office. At half past four she (make) ..... herself a cup of tea in a small recess off the main corridor. 6. The idea first (occur) ..... to me that afternoon as I (back) ..... the car into the garage. 7. I probably (drop) ..... the key when I (fish) ..... for small change in my bag at the news-stand. 8. All through the night I (hear) ..... them work, open drawers, drag cases over the floor. They (pack) ..... .

23 (B, C) Translate into English.

I

1. Я окончила университет, когда мне было 23 года. 2. «Когда вы были здесь последний раз?» – «Года полтора тому назад». 3. Грэй кивнул головой и пошёл наверх. 4. Я встретила Лену около трёх лет назад благодаря своим родителям. 5. Он остановился и сорвал розу. 6. Я видела его в Лондоне неделю назад. 7. Я не видел его, когда был в С.-Петербурге. 8. Что с вами случилось в тот вечер? 9. Они вернулись в дом, когда пошёл дождь.

II

1. «Ты видел его этим утром?» – «Да, он стоял у машины». 2. Он вошёл и увидел Нелли, которая рисовала странную картину. 3. Он побежал к воротам, где стояла Анна. 4. Мы как раз говорили о нём, когда он вдруг вошёл. 5. Что ты играл, когда я вошла? 6. Вода в чайнике кипела, когда мои друзья вернулись в лагерь. 7. Когда я приехал, Елена, к сожалению, как раз уходила. 8. Я сидела в саду вчера, когда пришел брат и принёс щенка. 9. Когда я вошёл, они сидели в гостиной. Старший брат решал кроссворд, мама вязала, остальные читали. Мама улыбнулась мне и сказала: «Входи, пожалуйста, и садись». 10. Когда она проснулась, в саду весело пели птицы.

24 (B, C) Read the text and put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Simple* or *the Past Continuous*.



Daniel Peden, who (be) [1]..... on an Easter trip to the city from his home in Manchester, (become) [2]..... a lifesaver when eight-year-old Ross Hunter (get) [3]..... too interested in a toy floating in the Union Channel and (fall) [4]..... in. His head (disappear) [5]..... under the water and despite being a good swimmer he could not pull himself out. But Daniel, who (feed) [6]..... ducks nearby, (hear) [7]..... the boy crying and (run) [8]..... to his aid.

"I (run) [9]..... to a little ledge and (try) [10]..... to grab him. I (get) [11]..... his arm and (pull) [12]..... him against the ledge and he (press) [13]..... his feet against it and (be able) [14]..... to get out. When I (get) [15]..... him out he (cry) [16]..... because he'd had such a fright. I (take) [17]..... him home and his mother (thank) [18]..... me."

Daniel, from Manchester, (stay) [19]..... with his aunt whose home overlooks the canal when the incident (happen) [20]..... on Monday. *(From BBC News)*

25 (B, C) Work in pairs, restore the interview with Daniel Peden (see Ex. 24). Use the information from the text and the promts for the questions below.

Where / stay / the day / the incident / happen?

.....

What / do / when / hear Ross crying?

.....

What / see / when / run to Ross?

.....

How / feel / when / rescue / the boy?

.....

How / Ross feel / when / rescue him?

.....

26 (B, C) Imagine that Daniel (see Ex. 24) is writing a letter to a friend telling him about what happened on that day. Complete the letter below.

Dear ..... ,

I'm writing to tell you what happened to me last week while I was staying with my aunt on Easter holiday. .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

27 (C) Translate the jokes.

I

Однажды утром в лондонском автобусе ехал в школу мальчик. Он был очень простужен (have a bad cold) и шмыгал носом (sniff) всё время так громко, что все пассажиры смотрели на него и качали (shake) головами. Рядом с мальчиком сидел пожилой джентльмен. Он спросил мальчика: «У тебя есть носовой платок (handkerchief)?»

«Да, у меня в кармане есть чистый носовой платок», – ответил мальчик. – «Но я не могу дать его вам. Мама говорит, что невежливо просить у кого-либо носовой платок. Вы должны пользоваться своим собственным».

Note: handkerchief [ˈhæŋkətʃɪf]

II

Озорник

Однажды пожилой джентльмен прогуливался по улицам. Он увидел маленького мальчика у двери одного из домов. Мальчик стоял у двери и пытался дотянуться (reach) до звонка (doorbell), который находился слишком высоко для него. Пожилой джентльмен был добрым человеком, поэтому он остановился, чтобы помочь мальчику. «Я позвоню в звонок за тебя», – сказал он и дернул (pull) за звонок. Маленький мальчик посмотрел на него и сказал, смеясь: «А теперь нам надо убегать».

Пожилой джентльмен не понял, что происходит. Мальчик исчез (disappear) за углом, а старику пришлось объяснять (have to explain to) рассерженному хозяину (the owner of the house), почему он звонил в звонок.

6.5 The Future Continuous Tense

AFFIRMATIVE				NEGATIVE					INTERROGATIVE			
I	**will**	**be**	**reading**	I	**will**	**not**	**be**	**reading**	**Will**	I	**be**	**reading**?
He	**will**	**be**	**reading**	He	**will**	**not**	**be**	**reading**	**Will**	he	**be**	**reading**?
She	**will**	**be**	**reading**	She	**will**	**not**	**be**	**reading**	**Will**	she	**be**	**reading**?
It	**will**	**be**	**reading**	It	**will**	**not**	**be**	**reading**	**Will**	it	**be**	**reading**?
We	**will**	**be**	**reading**	We	**will**	**not**	**be**	**reading**	**Will**	we	**be**	**reading**?
You	**will**	**be**	**reading**	You	**will**	**not**	**be**	**reading**	**Will**	you	**be**	**reading**?
They	**will**	**be**	**reading**	They	**will**	**not**	**be**	**reading**	**Will**	they	**be**	**reading**?

I'll be reading **I won't be reading**

NOTE: *Will* is used for all persons (*I*, *we*, *he*, *she*, *you*, etc.). In British English, *shall* can be used for *I* and *we*.

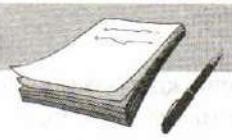
The Future Continuous denotes a temporary action taking place at a given moment in the future.

- He **will be writing** a letter to his friend
  - *at 5 o'clock tomorrow.*
  - *from 5 to 6 on Sunday.*
  - *when I come.*

The Future Continuous is used with the following adverbials of time: *at five (o'clock) tomorrow, from five to/till six tomorrow, for three days next week*, etc. Most adverbials of time usually go at the end of a sentence.

- They will be writing a test **from 10 till 11 tomorrow**.

EXERCISES



28 **(A, B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Future Continuous*.**

Model: At this time tomorrow we (write) *will be writing* a test.

1. Don't ring her up at 12 o'clock. She (have) ..... her music lesson. 2. At this time tomorrow the boys of our group (play) ..... football. 3. When we arrive in St. Petersburg, it probably (rain) ..... . 4. It is the end of September, soon the leaves (fall) ..... . 5. Let's wait here; the Palace Bridge (open) ..... in a minute to let that ship through.

29 **(A, B) Answer the questions in *the Future Continuous Tense*, using the given suggestions.**

Model: What will he be doing tomorrow afternoon? (drive to the seaside)
He will be driving to the seaside.

1. What will she be doing on Sunday? (make a dress) – ..... .
2. What will you be doing at this time next week? (bathe in the Black Sea) – ..... . 3. What will Grandfather be doing when we arrive? (work in the garden) – ..... .
4. What will he be doing at Oxford University for five years? (study law) – ..... . 5. What will they be doing at this time tomorrow? (fly to Kiev) – ..... . 6. What will she be doing at the concert tonight? (sing Russian folk-songs) – ..... . 7. What will he be doing at this time the day after tomorrow? (interview a foreign delegation) – ..... . 8. What will she be doing next term? (lecture at the Institute of Foreign Languages) – ..... .

30 **(A, B) Extend the statements in *the Future Continuous Tense*, using the words in brackets.**

Model: Don't call for me at six. (have a bath)
Don't call for me at six, I will be having a bath.

1. Don't ring them up at seven in the morning. (sleep) – ..... .
2. Don't send us any letters in June. (travel) – ..... .
3. Don't call on us tonight. (pack) – ..... . 4. Don't leave the child alone. (cry) – ..... . 5. Don't tell Granny about it. (grumble) – ..... . 6. Don't expect him to come next Saturday. (work) – ..... . 7. Don't wait for Maggie tomorrow. (keep to her room) – ..... .

31 **(B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Simple*, *the Future Simple* and *the Future Continuous*.**

1. When I (get) ..... home, my pets (sit) ..... at the door waiting for me. 2. It (be) ..... the middle of June. They (come) ..... soon. 3. If you (want) ..... to see us, come to Tom's on Sunday. We (wait) ..... for you there at midday. 4. At this time next week they (board) ..... the plane to London. 5. They (have) ..... English from nine to ten in this room. 6. I (wait) ..... for you when you (come) ..... . 7. "I (call) ..... for her at eight." – "No, don't; she still (sleep) ..... ." 8. They are so angry. A few more words and they (quarrel) ..... again.

32 **(B, C) Open the brackets. Use *the Future Simple* if the action is permanent, repeated or it is a one-time action. Use *the Future Continuous* to show that the action is a temporary one, taking place at a given moment in the future.**

1. You (know) ..... her. She (stand) ..... at the news stand. She (wear) ..... a scarlet rain coat. 2. I (tell) ..... her everything and I (show) ..... her the papers. I promise you she (not/smile) ..... this time. 3. There (not/be) ..... anyone in when we (come) ..... . The secretary (have) ..... lunch. 4. It (rain) ..... when we (get) ..... there. 5. Go straight up the street. The car (wait) ..... for you at the entrance to the department store. 6. We are much too early. There (be) .... no one there. 7. Of course, I (be) ..... still here when you (return) ..... . I (mark) .... the papers. 8. No one (see) .... us come. They (have) .... tea on the terrace. 9. At this time she (do) ..... her shopping. 10. When you (come) ..... to Athens I (cross) ..... the border.

33 **(B, C) Translate into English.**

1. Мы не должны опаздывать. Они будут беспокоиться. 2. Мы сегодня идём в кино. Вы будете сидеть рядом со мной. 3. Нам нужно вернуться в 10 часов. Мама будет ждать нас. 4. «Вы будете обедать со мной в понедельник?» – «Я бы очень хотел, но боюсь, что в это время я буду сдавать экзамен». 5. «Что они будут делать, когда мы приедем домой?» – «Я думаю, они будут читать». 6. «Я недостаточно хорошо себя чувствую, чтобы ехать в аэропорт и встречать Элис». – «Я встречу ее. Скажите, как я её узнаю?» – «На ней будет зелёный костюм». 7. «Мой сын в будущем году будет в девятом классе». – «Значит, моя мама будет учить его английскому языку». 8. «Что вы будете делать в это время в следующую пятницу?» – «Как всегда, буду работать в саду».

6.6 Revision

34 **(B, C) Open the brackets, using the appropriate tense forms.**

1. What you two (talk) ..... about? You (discuss) ..... his plan? 2. You (leave) ..... the town early this summer? 3. She (wear) .... dark spectacles. They are not just sun glasses. She (not/see) ..... very well. 4. Why you (wear) ..... sun glasses on a gray day like this? 5. He (live) ..... with his parents now. I think, he (look) ..... for a job. 6. I could not see his face, he (sit) ..... so that his face was in shadow. 7. When I (see) ..... her last she (try) ..... on hats at Angela's. 8. You (leave) ..... us soon. It (get) ..... colder every day. 9. You (hear) ..... from me one of these days. 10. Phone as late as you can. I (be) .... up. I (watch) ..... the football game on TV. It's the semi-finals tonight. 11. The rain started when I (wait) ..... for my bus. 12. I hate the place in autumn. It always (rain) ..... there. It (rain) ..... when we came and it (rain) ..... when we left.

35 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Вы долго ждали его вчера? 2. Обычно он ждёт меня у входа в метро, и мы едем домой вместе. 3. Вечно ты возражаешь. 4. Я не могу с вами встретиться: завтра приезжает мама. 5. Ты что, целую библиотеку несёшь в портфеле? Он очень тяжёлый. 6. У неё обычно пять или шесть книг в сумке, поэтому она такая тяжёлая. 7. День был очень холодный. На мне был свитер и куртка, и всё же мне было очень холодно. 8. Ты увидишь её сегодня в университете? 9. Звонок раздался, когда я заканчивала писать сочинение. 10. Он вошёл в комнату, где его ждал экзаменатор. 11. Кто-нибудь читает эту газету? Я хочу её взять. 12. Где он сейчас работает? 13. Приходи сегодня, я буду ждать.

7. Talking about the Future

I.	**– *I am doing,***	**– *I do..,***	**– *I am going to do..,***	**– *I'll do..,***
II.	**– *be to..,***	**– *be about to..,***	**– *be due to...***	

There are several ways of talking about the future:

7.1 Present Tenses *(I am doing / I do)* with a Future Meaning

The Present Continuous (I am doing) is used when speaking about something that has been arranged to happen.

- A.: What **are** you **doing** tonight?
  B.: I'**m going** to the football match.
- A.: My sister **is leaving** tomorrow.
  B.: Oh, is she? What time **is** she **leaving**?
- A.: I'**m seeing** him tomorrow (= we've arranged to meet).

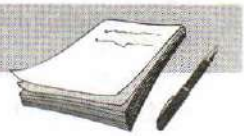
It is also possible to use *going to (do)* in these sentences (though *the Present Continuous* is preferable):

- What are you **going to do** tonight?

The Present Simple (I do) is used when talking about timetables, programmes, etc.

- What time **does** the lecture **begin**?
- The plane **takes off** at 4.30.
- Tomorrow **is** Christmas.

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Write about your friend's plans for the coming summer vacation.**

Model: (Ben/go/Siberia/train) – *Ben is going to Siberia by train.*

1. (Lucy/stay/in the South of France/with her aunt) .....
2. (Roy/take/his younger brother/Canada/his parents) .....
3. (Letty/spend/a fortnight/Rome) .....
4. (Peter and John/hike/the Swiss mountains) .....
5. (Miranda/go/round the Greek islands/cruising boat) .....

2 **(A, B) Your relatives are preparing to leave for the country for the summer. Ask them about their arrangements.**

Model: (when/leave) *When are you leaving?*

1. (travel/by train?) – ..... ?
2. (take/a lot of things?) – ..... ?
3. (your pets/go/with you?) – ..... ? 4. (let/your flat/for the season?) – ..... ? 5. (rent/a car?) – ..... ?

3 **(B, C) Put the verb into *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Simple*.**

Model: My daughter (leave) *is leaving* for Paris next Friday.
(train/arrive) *Does your train arrive at 7.00 or 7.30?*

1. They (open) ..... a new exhibition next month. 2. I see you've packed all your things (you/go away) ..... . 3. The shops here (open) ..... at 7.00 and (close) ..... at 5.30. 4. The performances at our theatre (start) ..... at 7.30. 5. What time (the plane for Moscow/ leave) ..... ? 6. Daddy, we (go/ for a swim) ..... . (you/come) ..... with us? 7. I hear, you (launch) ..... a new programme soon.

4 **(B, C) Translate into English.**

A.: Давай пойдём в театр завтра.
B:. Извини, мне бы очень хотелось, но я завтра работаю допоздна.
A.: Тогда как насчёт среды?
B.: Боюсь, я не могу. Я встречаю родителей в аэропорту.
A.: Ну а что ты делаешь в субботу вечером?
B.: Я играю в теннис в эту субботу.
A.: Понятно. А в воскресенье вечером ты свободна?
B.: В воскресенье у нас вечер встречи (reunion party) в школе.

7.2 *Be going to...*

Be going to (do) is used:

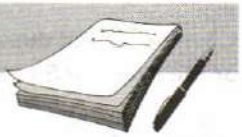
1. when one says what one intends to do in the future.

- A.: **Are** you **going to watch** the ten o'clock news?
  B.: No, I'm too tired, I'**m going to have** an early night.
- I'**m going to see** this film (= I want to.., I intend to...).
- I **was going to phone** Eve but I came home too late.

2. when the speaker knows something is about to happen. Usually there is something in the present situation that makes the speaker sure about what will happen:

- Look at that little boy at the puddle. He **is going to fall** into it!
- The sky is overcast with black clouds. It'**s going to rain**.

EXERCISES



5 **(A, B) Say when you are going to do something.**

Models: Have you watered the flowers? (in the morning)
Not yet. I'm going to water them in the morning.
Have you washed your hair? (just)
Not yet. I'm just going to wash it.

1. Have you spoken to the manager? (after lunch)
   Not yet. I .....
2. Have you made the tea? (just)
   Not yet. I .....
3. Have you bought a car? (soon)
   Not yet. I .....
4. Have you done your homework? (just)
   Not yet. I .....

6 **(B) Write questions with *be going to*.**

Model: I've found a little puppy in the park. (what/with it?)
What are you going to do with it?

1. It's unexpectedly hot today. (what/you/wear?)
   .....
2. Vlad has given me his latest painting. (where/you/hang it?)
   .....
3. I've decided to sell this house. (what/you/buy/instead?)
   .....

7 **(B) Answer the questions, using *was/were going to*.**

Model: Did you phone him yesterday?
No, I was going to phone him but I changed my mind.

1. Did you ask Melany to help you?
   No, I ..... but I changed my mind.
2. Did they visit the Tate Gallery?
   No, they ..... but they changed their mind.
3. Did he attend the meeting?
   No, he ..... but he changed his mind.

8 **(B) You have to say what you think is going to happen in these situations.**

Model: Your friend has decided against going to the concert. (regret) – *She is going to regret it.*

1. You are my best friend. We've been friends for many years. Now you are going away. (miss)
   I .....
2. The children went to the woods all by themselves. They don't know the area well. (get lost) .....
3. There is a hole in Tom's jacket pocket. He's put some small change in it. (lose)
   .....
4. On the screen of your mobile phone there is a warning: "Low Battery". And your charger is nowhere to be found. .....
   ..... (turn off).

9 **(B, C) Translate into English.**

1. Ты почистил машину? – Нет ещё. Я почищу её завтра. 2. Вы уже пообедали? – Нет ещё. Мы как раз собираемся обедать. 3. Небо такое голубое. Будет чудесный день. 4. Я решила устроить званый вечер. – Кого ты собираешься пригласить? 5. Твои друзья ездили в отпуск в Испанию? – Нет, они собирались, но передумали. 6. Экзамен завтра. Ты совсем не занимался. Ты провалишься.

7.3 The Future Simple

The Future Simple (will do) is used:

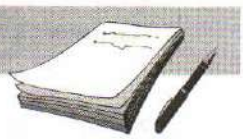
1. when one decides to do something at the time of speaking:
- ❑ Did you write the Christmas cards? – Oh no, I had no time. I'**ll do** it now.
- ❑ There are no train tickets for Murmansk. So I'**ll fly**.

2. when offering to do something:
- ❑ The shops are far from here. I'**ll drive** you there.
- ❑ (The door bell is ringing). Pete: I'**ll answer** it.

3. when promising to do something:
- ❑ I **won't let** you down. I assure you.
- ❑ I promise. I'**ll send** you those photographs.

4. when speaking about a future fact, predicting something:
- ❑ In two years she'**ll be** his wife. What **will become** of you?
- ❑ Visit us next spring, you **won't recognize** the place.

EXERCISES



10 (B) Decide what to do or not to do in the following situations.

(Model:) Letters travel too long (phone them). *I think we'll phone them.*
It's too cold today (go skating). *I don't think we'll go skating.*

1. What a hot day! ..... (for a swim)
2. You're too tired now. ..... (homework/tomorrow)
3. You forgot to phone Ann. ..... (now)
4. It's late evening. ..... (coffee)
5. It's very hot in Africa in summer. ..... (there/on holidays)
6. You have a lot of work to do. ..... (to the cinema)
7. You like juice more than lemonade. ..... (have juice)
8. It's windy outside. ..... (for a walk)
9. You don't like travelling by train. ..... (by car)
10. You feel sleepy. ..... (TV tonight)

11 (B) You do not want to babysit with your infant nephew instead of your mother.

(Models:) Mother: Oh, I must clean the flat.
You: *It's all right. I'll clean the flat.*

Mother: Oh, I must go to the cleaner's. .....
You: It's all right. I .....
Mother: Oh, I must buy food for the next week.
You: .....
Mother: Oh, I must wash the dog.
You: .....

12 (B) Agree and promise to do things.

(Model:) A.: Can you type this letter?
B.: *Sure. I'll type it after lunch.*
A.: Do you promise to phone him?
B.: *Yes, I promise. I'll phone him tonight.*

1. A.: Can you cook the dinner today?
   B.: Sure, ... (in the afternoon)
2. A.: Do you promise to write to me?
   B.: Yes. ..... (as soon as I get there)
3. A.: Can you wash my sweater?
   B.: All right, ... (tomorrow)
4. A.: Please, don't break anything.
   B.: Don't worry. I ..... (anything)

5. A.: Will you take the children to the Zoo?
   B.: Okay. ..... (on Saturday)
6. A.: Do you promise not to tell anyone?
   B.: Don't worry, ...
7. A.: Will you come after me?
   B.: Yes, ... (as soon as I can)
8. A.: Say that you won't be angry!
   B.: All right. I ..... .

13 (B, C) Decide which form of the verb is correct (or more natural) in these sentences.

1. We *will go/are going* to a picnic tomorrow. Would you like to come, too? 2. The train *is starting/starts* at 8.00 tonight. 3. I'm sure you *will get/are getting* the tickets. 4. I'm sorry. I can't come. I *will meet/am meeting* my sister at the station. 5. They *will arrive/are arriving* tomorrow morning. 6. Don't worry, I promise I *won't hurt/am not hurting* you. 7. If I can't make it at 5, I *will phone/am phoning* you.

14 (B) Answer the questions, using the words in brackets.

Model: What do you think he'll do? (forget)
I think he'll just forget about it.

1. When do you think she'll write? (probably/never)
   .....
2. Where do you think they'll stay? (expect/at her aunt's)
   .....
3. When do you think he'll phone? (I'm sure/tonight)
   .....
4. How do you think they'll let us know? (think/send a cable)
   .....
5. Do you think he'll come back? (I'm sure/very soon)
   .....
6. What do you think she'll give me? (expect/a kiss)
   .....

15 (B, C) Translate into English, using *will* or *going to*.

1. – Почему ты включаешь телевизор?
   – Я собираюсь посмотреть вечерние новости.
2. – Ой, я забыла деньги дома!
   – Ничего, не волнуйся. Я одолжу тебе.
3. – У меня ужасно болит голова.
   – Подожди здесь. Я принесу тебе таблетки.
4. – Куда ты несёшь ведро с водой?
   – Я собираюсь мыть машину.



5. – Я решила перекрасить кухню.
   – В какой цвет ты её покрасишь?
6. – Смотри! Из того дома идёт дым. Он горит!
   – Боже мой! Я немедленно вызову пожарных!
7. – Боюсь, я не знаю, как пользоваться этим фотоаппаратом.
   – Это совсем легко. Я покажу тебе.
8. – Что бы вам хотелось выпить – сока или кока-колы?
   – Спасибо, я буду сок.
9. – Антон решил, что делать после окончания школы?
   – Да, всё спланировано. Он отдохнёт несколько недель, а потом начнёт курс программирования.
10. – Нам нужен хлеб на ланч.
    – Я пойду в магазин и куплю. Джейн, я иду за хлебом. Тебе нужно что-нибудь в магазине?
    – Да, мне нужно несколько конвертов.
    – Хорошо, я куплю тебе.
11. – Линда, ты можешь отвезти меня в аэропорт сегодня вечером?
    – Конечно, я отвезу тебя. С удовольствием.

7.4 *Be to, be about to, be due to*

We use ***be to*** for:

- formal arrangements / duties:
  - ❑ The summit meeting **is to take place** in Brussels in September.
- formal appointments / instructions:
  - ❑ These letters **are to be posted** immediately.
- prohibitions:
  - ❑ You'**re not to speak** to Granny in this arrogant manner.

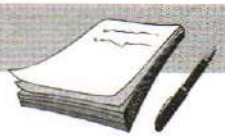
Be about to refers to the immediate future:

- ❑ Hurry up! The performance **is** just **about to start**.

Be due to refers to timetables:

- ❑ The plane **is due to land** at 2.15.

EXERCISE



16 **(B, C) Supply the correct forms of the verb phrases in brackets.**

Model: The conference delegates *are to* meet again later today *(to be to)*.

1. You ..... take these new tablets four times a day (to be to). 2. They ..... open their instructions until midnight (not to be to). 3. You'll have to hurry. The train ..... leave (to be (just) about to). 4. I can't talk now. I ..... go out (to be (just) about to). 5. There's not much longer to wait. Their plane ..... land in ten minutes (to be due to). 6. Don't be so impatient. She ..... arrive until teatime (not to be due to).

7.5 Revision

17 **(B) Read the extract from a conversation, fill in the gaps, saying whether the speaker is talking about *"a future fact" (FF)*, *"an arrangement" (A)*, *"an intention" (I)* or something that is *"about to happen" (AH)*.**

"It's going to snow again this afternoon *(AH)*, so the footbal match will be cancelled (.....). I was going to watch it on Tom's television (.....) but now I'm going to stay at home (.....). I'm playing football next weekend (.....) for our local team but we won't win (.....). We never do!"

18 **(B, C) Rewrite these sentences. Keep the same meaning but use *the Future Simple Tense (will do)* or *the Present Continuous Tense (am/is/are doing/going to)*.**

Model: I've arranged to take Harry to the Russian Museum this morning.
I'm taking Harry to the Russian Museum this morning.

1. She intends to buy him a new record for his birthday.
   .....

2. May 1st (tomorrow). Rain.
.....
3. I intended to see this film yesterday, but it turned out that it would be on TV in 2 days.
.....
4. We've arranged to meet at the Milk bar. He says he intends to ring me up at 7.
.....

19 **(B, C) Use either the Future Indefinite Tense *will do* or *going to* to make an offer or to express intentions in the following situations. Use the words in brackets to make your answers.**

(Model:) Ben says, "Oh, it's cold here!" and offers to close the window.
You: "I'll close the window."

1. You cannot decide where to go on your holidays next year. Suddenly you have an idea. (to go to Italy) –
.....
2. You see someone studying the plan of St. Petersburg. What do you say? (to show the way) –
.....
3. A week ago you decided to visit the Hermitage. Tell your friend about your intention. (to visit the Hermitage) – .....
4. You know that your friend needs your help. What do you say? (to help you) –
.....

20 **(B, C) Alice is on her way to St. Petersburg. Before she left London she had arranged to meet Mike at the airport. She thinks, *"I'm meeting Mike at the airport."***

1. She also arranged to stay at the Astoria Hotel. – .....
.....
2. On the phone Mike said, "Let's go to the Mariinsky Theatre the first evening you are in St. Petersburg." She agreed. – .....
3. She also arranged to meet her Russian teacher the day after tomorrow. – .....
.....
4. She also arranged to leave St. Petersburg in a week. – .....
.....

21 **(B) a. Read these two sentences. Choose the one, saying that Mike has already planned to invite Daisy to St. Petersburg.**

1. I'm going to invite Daisy to St. Petersburg.
2. I'll invite Daisy to St. Petersburg.

b. A man is discussing his day's plans as they appear in his diary. Look at the extract from the diary and then decide which sentence he should use.

1. I'll have a lecture on History at 10 and then I'll meet Harry. (10.00 – lecture on History; 12.30 – Harry)
2. I'm having a lecture on History at 10 and then I'm meeting Harry at 12.30.

c. You are in a hurry. You do not want to be late. You think:

1. I'll take a taxi.
2. I'm taking a taxi.

d. Two friends discuss their plans for the evening. They've decided to go to the concert. They tell someone what they have decided.

1. We are going to the concert today.
2. I think we'll go to the concert today.

22 (B) Translate the sentences denoting "future actions" into Russian.

1. He will take an exam next Wednesday. 2. The train for Prague leaves tomorrow. 3. I will have finished my essay by this time next month. 4. This time tomorrow Jane will be on a train. 5. Professor Peckinpah is arriving in Moscow one of these days. 6. When you arrive in London, John will meet you at the railway station. 7. Sally is going to re-sit for her Maths exam next week. 8. When will you stop being silly?

23 (C) Write down the dialogues on the following situations:



Model: *1. Alison: Will you play a game of tennis with me? I was going to play with Jane but she isn't coming.*
Pam: Yes, I'd really like to but...

1. ALISON offers Pam to play a game of tennis. She intended to play with Jane but unfortunately her friend wouldn't come.

PAM would really like to but she arranged to visit the doctor in the afternoon. She just wants to go out.

2. MARK says to his wife that he arranged to leave for Moscow (tomorrow evening). He should go on a business trip.
This time he intends to stay there for 3 days and suggests that his wife should join him the day after tomorrow.

MARK'S WIFE asks if he intends to stay there as usual for 2 days

then agrees to join him the day after tomorrow.

3. A SELLER IN THE STREET asks Mary to look at the sky which is overcast. He predicts that it'll start raining soon and suggests that she should buy an umbrella to protect her from the rain.

MARY thanks him and explains that she does not intend to buy it as her bus leaves in 5 minutes.



.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

8. The Perfect Forms

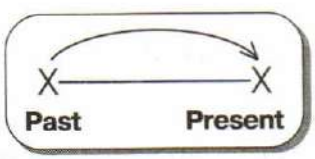
to have + Participle II

8.1 The Present Perfect Tense

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE		INTERROGATIVE	
I	**have worked**	I	**have not worked**	**Have** I	**worked?**
He	**has worked**	He	**has not worked**	**Has** he	**worked?**
She	**has worked**	She	**has not worked**	**Has** she	**worked?**
It	**has worked**	It	**has not worked**	**Has** it	**worked?**
We	**have worked**	We	**have not worked**	**Have** we	**worked?**
You	**have worked**	You	**have not worked**	**Have** you	**worked?**
They	**have worked**	They	**have not worked**	**Have** they	**worked?**

I'**ve worked**
She'**s worked**

I **haven't worked**
She **hasn't worked**



We use ***the Present Perfect Tense*** for finished actions that are important now. They have results now or they are news.

1. It denotes a completed action whose result is visible in the present.
- ❑ I am a little frightened for **I have lost** my way.
- ❑ He **has recovered** from his illness (he is better now).

The only thing which matters here is the result: the time when the action took place is of no importance.
- ❑ I **have seen** this film (I can discuss it with you now).

NB! Questions in ***the Present Perfect*** never start with *when*:
- ❑ When **did** you **see** this film?

2. ***The Present Perfect*** is not used in:
- ❑ Что вы сказали? – What **did** you **say**?
- ❑ Я не слышал вашего вопроса. – I **did not hear** your question.
- ❑ Я забыл. – I **forgot**.
- ❑ Теперь я понял. – Now I **understand**.
- ❑ Где вы купили книгу? – Where **did** you **buy** the book?

3. ***The Present Perfect*** is frequently used with:

a) the adverbs: *ever, never, just, already, yet, of late/ lately/recently*
- ❑ I have **never** seen him.
- ❑ I have not spoken to her **yet**.

YET < *«ещё (не)»* (in negatives); *«уже»* (in questions)

УЖЕ

yet (in questions)
- Have you seen this film **yet**?

already (in affirmative sentences)
- I have **already** seen this film.

already (in questions to express surprise)
- Have you seen this film **already**? (Как, вы уже видели этот фильм?)

b) *this morning/evening, today, this week, this year* (when these periods are not finished at the time of speaking):
- Has Ann had a holiday **this year**?
- Have you seen him **today**?

c) the prepositions *for, since*:
- I have known her **for** two years.
- He has not seen his friends **since** last September.
- I haven't met him **since** he left for Moscow.

d) the expression: *This (It) is the first time*:
- **This is the first time** he has driven a car.

Place of Adverbs

Ever, never, just, already – after auxiliary verbs in affirmative sentences	❑ He has **just** arrived. ❑ We have **already** finished our work. ❑ I've **never** met him.
Ever – before main verbs in questions	❑ Have you **ever** been to Paris?
Yet, lately, recently, this morning/evening, today, this week, this year – at the end of the sentence	❑ I haven't read this book **yet**. ❑ Have you finished the work **yet**? ❑ I haven't seen him **lately/recently**.

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Perfect*.**

1. I don't know this girl. I never (meet) ..... her before. 2. "Where is Mother?" – "She just (go) ..... out." 3. "Don't you know what the film is about?" – "No, I (not/see) ..... it." 4. Don't worry about the letter. I already (post) ..... it. 5. "Is he a good teacher?" – "Oh yes, he (help) ..... me a lot." 6. I know London perfectly well. I (be) ..... there several times. 7. I can't find my umbrella. I think somebody (take) ..... it by mistake. 8. "Do you speak Spanish?" – "No, I never (study) ..... it." 9. "Do you know where they have gone?" – "No, they (sell) ..... their house and (not/leave) ..... their new address."

2 (A, B) Answer the questions. Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Perfect*.

Model: Is his article ready? (write)
Yes, he has written it.

1. Are her rooms clean? (do) – .....
2. Is our dinner ready, Mother? (cook) – .....
3. Does she know the poem? (learn by heart) – .....
4. Do you know this sort of pencil? (use) – .....
5. Does he know how nice the cake is? (eat) – .....
6. Do you know that your gloves are on the table? (find) – .....
7. Is Bobby's face clean? (wash) – .....
8. Do you know how beautiful these songs are? (hear) – .....

3 (A, B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Simple* and *the Present Perfect*.

1. Look! They (stop) ..... . 2. I (want) ..... to see you. I (not/see) ..... you for ages! 3. You (read) ..... this book?" – "Yes." – "What you (think) ..... of it?" 4. "You (know) ..... Nick?" – "Yes." – "How long you (know) ..... him?" – "I (know) ..... him for 10 years." 5. You (realize) ..... we (know) ..... each other for quite a period of time now? And this (be) ..... the first occasion you (ask) ..... me to come with you. 6. "You (know) ..... the girl who just (leave) ..... the shop?" – "Yes, that (be) ..... Bella York." – "She (be) ..... a customer of yours?" – "Not exactly. She (be) ..... here several times but she never (buy) ..... anything." 7. Come in, I (be) ..... awake since sunrise. 8. It'll be good to see him again. How long he (be) ..... away? It (seem) ..... ages. 9. I (know) ..... you nearly all my life but I never (see) ..... you so excited about anything.

4 (A, B) You are talking to a friend about the events in your family. Make sentences from the suggested words according to the model.

Model: My brother Greg/graduate/from University.
My brother Greg has graduated from University.

You know, Elinor, a lot has changed in our family since we last met.

1. Father/get/a new job/in South Africa. .....
2. He and Mother/leave/for Cape Town. .....
3. Mary/marry/an architect/from Canada. .....
4. I/pass/my/law/exams. .....
5. I/meet/the right man. .....

5 (A, B) Read the description of a situation and then write a suitable sentence. Use the verb in brackets.

Model: Hugh is listening to music. It is a new cassette. (buy)
Hugh has bought a new cassette.

1. Andrew is sleeping soundly. It is late morning. (oversleep) .....
2. You are going to sit down to dinner and discover there is no bread in the house. (run out of) We .....
3. Last weekend Jane went mountain-walking. Now she is in bed. (to catch a bad cold) .....
4. Your neighbours were playing their VCR very loud. Now it's quiet. (switch off) .....

6 (A, B) Answer the questions, using the words in brackets. Use *just* in your answers.

Model: Could you lend me your dictionary? (sorry, I/just/give/it/to Mike)
Sorry, I've just given it to Mike.

1. Has Mother come from the market? (yes/she/just/come/from the market)
.....
2. Have you phoned Jack yet? (yes/I/just /phone/him)
.....
3. Would you like some coffee? (no thanks/I/just/have/a cup)
.....

7 (A, B) Make sentences with *already* and *yet*.

Model: Don't forget to pack some warm clothes. – *I've already packed them.*
Have you typed the letters yet? – *Yes, I've already typed them.*
Have you bought that dress? – *No, I haven't bought it yet, but I'm going to buy it.*

1. Why don't you have a bath? – .....
.....
2. Shall I buy some newspapers? – No, ...
.....
3. Have you asked Jim yet? – Yes, ...
.....
4. Have you invited Larry and Sue? – No, I ..... but I am .....
5. Has the manager arrived yet? – Yes, ...
6. Has Jill written to Dad? – No, she .....
..... but she ..... tonight.

8 (A, B) Use the words in brackets to make questions according to the model.

Model: (he/ever/paint/people)
Has he ever painted people?

1. (you/ever/be/to Scotland?)
.....
2. (your parents/live/here all their lives?)
.....
3. (you/hear/this concert?)
.....
4. (how many times/you/ be married?)
.....
5. (he/ever/meet/the President?)
.....
6. (you/ever/visit/the White House?)
.....

9 (A, B) Use the verb in brackets to complete the answers to the questions.

Model: Is he handsome? (see)
Yes, he is the most handsome man I've ever seen.

1. Is it a fast car? (drive) – Yes, it's the fastest
.....
2. Is it a warm coat? (have) – Yes, it's the
.....
3. Are they nice people? (meet) – Yes, they are the .....

10 (A, B) Write questions and answers.

Model:

You and your friend are swimming in the open sea.
You ask: *Is this the first time you've swum in the open sea?*
Your friend:
Yes, I've never swum in the open sea before.
No, it's the second time I've swum in the sea this year.

1. Kate is skating. She's doesn't feel very confident.
You ask: Is this the first time .....
.....
Kate: Yes, I've .....
No, ...
2. You are playing volleyball. Ivy is not very good and is not sure about the rules.
You ask: .....
Ivy: Yes, ...
No, ...

3. You met Nat at a party in London. He is from America.
   You ask: .....
   Nat: Yes, ...
   No, ...

11 (A, B) Make questions, using the words in brackets.

Model: (anything/happen/recently?)
Has anything happened recently?

1. (you/read/any books/recently?)
   .....
2. (you/hear/from Tom/in the past few days?)
   .....
3. (you/buy/any new records/recently?)
   .....
4. (you/eat/anything/today?)
   .....
5. (you/see/any good films/recently?)
   .....
6. (it/snow/here this year/yet?)
   .....

12 (A, B) Translate the questions and answers.

Model: Когда ты в последний раз видел Аню? – Я не видел её с мая.
When did you last see Ann? – I haven't seen her since May.

1. Когда в последний раз шёл дождь? – Дождя не было целую вечность.
2. Когда они навещали вас в последний раз? – Они не навещали нас с июня.
3. Когда ты в последний раз играл в теннис? – Я уже давно не играл в теннис.
4. Когда ты в последний раз ела кокос? – Я никогда не ела кокос.
5. Когда ты в последний раз водил машину? – Я не водил машину шесть месяцев.
6. Когда ты в последний раз ездил в Канаду? – Я никогда не ездил в Канаду.
7. Когда она тебе писала в последний раз? – Она не писала с прошлого лета.

13 (A, B) Translate into English, using *the Present Perfect Tense*.

1. Они построили новый дом. Ты его видел? 2. Ты показал маме свою картину? – Нет, она ещё не готова. 3. Я посмотрел этот фильм. А ты? – Да. Это интересный фильм. 4. Ты был в Лондонском зоопарке? – Да. 5. Отец только что вернулся с моря. 6. Возьмите эти журналы. Я уже прочитал их. 7. Вы были когда-нибудь в Греции? – Да, это очень красивая страна. 8. Мы ещё не сделали опыт. 9. Она никогда не переводила такие трудные статьи. 10. Я звонил ему три раза сегодня. 11. Сегодня он уехал в Нью-Йорк. 12. Ты видел директора сегодня? – Нет.

14 (B, C) Translate into English. The first sentence has been done for you.

1. Я звоню тебе уже третий раз за вечер.
   It's the third time I've phoned you this evening.
2. Ты опоздала уже второй раз на этой неделе.
   .....
3. Машина ломается уже третий раз за месяц.
   .....
4. Я выпила уже пятую чашку кофе за вечер.
   .....

15 (B, C) John and Mary are going on holiday. Their taxi is coming in ten minutes. They want to check if everything is in order. Look through the information below and say what each of them has already done or has not done.



Mary

- put John's hiking boots in the suitcase,
- forget to pack his jumper,
- charge the batteries for the camera.

John

- (already) take their tickets (they are in his pocket),
- (already)check the windows several times,
- (just) switch off the TV set,
- also switch off the microwave oven.

B. Now restore the dialogue between Mary and John using the information from the table above.

Mary: Have you taken the tickets?
John: ..... .
Mary: And are the windows closed?
John: ..... . How about my hiking boots? ..... ?
Mary: I've already put your hiking boots into the suitcase.
John: And my jumper? ..... ?
Mary: Oh dear! ..... . It's over there. Give it to me, please. .....
..... the TV set?
John: Yes, ... and I also ..... .
Mary: And I ..... . Ok, I think we have done everything. Let's go then.

16 (B, C) Mr. Johnson has applied for the post of manager in one of the advertising companies and is going to have an interview with its managing director. Look through their notes. In pairs, act out the dialogue between Mr. Johnson and the managing director.

Questions to ask:

1. ever work in advertising?
2. get any promotion recently?
3. ever take part in any international conferences? If yes, what kind?
4. apply for the same post in any other companies?
5. If yes, pass the interview or not?

Applicant's personal information:

1. work in an advertising company (2 years),
2. get promotion several times (recently – post of marketing manager),
3. International conference on new advertising techniques (London),
4. send resumes to some other companies,
5. decided to start with this one as it is the most prosperous.

Model:

The Managing Director: *Have you ever worked in advertising?*
Mr. Johnson: *I've worked in an advertising company for two years.*

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



8.2 The Present Perfect and the Past Simple

a) Do not use ***the Present Perfect*** *(I have done)* when you are talking about a finished time in the past (for example: *last Tuesday*, *seven years ago*, *in 1995*, *when I was a student*).

Use ***the Past Simple***:

- I **lost** my English book *yesterday*. (not "has lost")
- **Did** you **see** the football match on television *last night*?
- Father **retired** from his job *a year ago*.
- I **swam** in the lake *when I was a child*.

To ask when something happened, use ***the Past Simple Tense***:

- *What time* **did** they **start**? (not "have they started")
- *When* **was** he born? (not "has he been born")

COMPARE:

- I **have lost** my English book. ***(The Present Perfect)***

Here I am not thinking of the past action; I am thinking of the present result of the action: I am without the English book now.

- I **lost** my English book *yesterday*. ***(The Past Simple)***

Here I am thinking of the action in the past. I do not say whether I am still without the book.

b) Now compare these sentences:

The Present Perfect *(I have done)*

- I'**ve seen** Margaret **today**.
  Today is a period of time which continues up to the present. It is not a finished time.
  So we use *the Present Perfect*.

The Past Simple *(I did)*

- I **saw** Margaret **yesterday**.
  Yesterday is a finished time in the past.
  So we use *the Past Simple*.

today

past — (unfinished time) — present

- I **haven't had** holidays *this year*.
- **Have** you **spoken to** Jill *this morning*? (It is still morning).
- **Have** you **been** ill *recently*?
- Brian **has lived** in Ireland *for 6 years* (He still lives there).
- I **have** never **ridden** a horse (in my life).

The Present Pertect always has a connection with the present.

yesterday

past — (finished time) — present

- I **didn't have** holidays *last year*.
- **Did** you **speak** to Jill *this morning*? (It is afternoon now).
- **Were** you ill *last week*?
- Brian **lived** in Wales *for 10 years* (He no longer lives there).
- I **didn't** ride when I was on holiday *last summer*.

The Past Simple tells us only about the past.

EXERCISES



17 **(A, B) Read the situation and then write a sentence.**

Model: Ten minutes ago Granny lost her glasses. Now she has them on her nose.
(lose/find) *Granny lost her glasses but now she has found them.*

1. Harry went to Egypt but now he is back in Ireland again.
(go/come back) Harry ..... but now ..... .
2. I lived in the centre but now I live in a new district.
(live/move) ..... .
3. Ten years ago I met Fran. We are great friends now.
(meet/become) I ..... and we ..... .
4. He travelled to the North last year. You can read about it in his book.
(travel/write) ..... .
5. They bought a house three years ago. Now other people live in it.
(buy/sell) ..... .

18 **(A, B) Read the sentences below and correct the wrong ones.**

Model: Have you written to Barry Lane yet? *RIGHT*
B. Shaw has written the play "Pigmalion". *WRONG – wrote.*

1. Newton has been an English physicist.
..... .
2. Oh, you have come just in time. We're beginning in a moment.
..... .
3. Who has invented the telephone?
..... .
4. Have you heard? Paul bought a new car!
..... .
5. Oh, I broke my pencil. Can you lend me yours?
..... .
6. My great-grandfather travelled to India once.
..... .

19 **(A, B) Put the verb in brackets into the correct form.**

Model: A.: There's a cat in the room. Who *has let* (let) it in?
B.: Well, it *was* (be) Ben, I'm sure.

1. A.: Your hedge is so trim now. .... (you/cut) it?
B.: Yes.
A.: ..... (you/cut) it yourself?
B.: No, Mr. Barry ..... (cut) it for me.
2. A.: ..... (you/speak) to Ellen yet?
B.: Yes. I ..... (phone/she) this morning. (It is evening now)
A.: What ..... (she/tell) you about her trip?

20 **(A, B) Make sentences, using the given words.**

Model: (I/write/letters/yesterday) *I wrote five letters yesterday.*
(How many letters/you/write/today?) *How many letters have you written today?*

1. (they/not/phone/so far/today)
..... .
2. (how many times/phone/you/him/yesterday?)
..... .
3. (he/come/to see us/three times/this month)
..... .
4. (it/not/rain/so far/this summer)
..... .
5. (how many shoes/you/buy/this season?)
..... .

21 **(A, B) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form, *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Simple*.**

Model: I first (see) *saw* him when he came to visit his aunt.

1. Mr. Hayes (work) ..... as a solicitor when he lived here. 2. The Darcies live in

Shancarrig. They (live) ..... there for 5 years now. 3. My grandparents are old. They (be) ..... married for 55 years. 4. When I last saw him, he (be) ..... 10 years old. 5. The summer (be) .... very hot so far, don't you think? 6. Mr. Blake left our town ten years ago. I (never/see) ..... him. 7. He doesn't know my husband. He (never/meet) ..... him.

22 (B, C) Choose the correct alternative.

1. I just *called/have called* him. 2. I haven't *called/didn't call* him yesterday. 3. She already *answered/has anawered* the letter. 4. She *has answered/answered* it on Tuesday. 5. My friends *went/have gone* away five minutes ago. 6. I *have read/read* the book during summer holidays. 7. I *didn't see/haven't seen* him for three years. 8. I *have met/met* him last week. 9. *Did/has* the newspaper come? — Yes, Ann is reading it now. 10. *Have/did* you shut the window? 11. I *read/have read* these books when I was at school. I *have enjoyed/enjoyed* them very much. 12. The clock is slow. — It isn't slow, it *stopped/has stopped*. 13. *Have* you *had/Did* you *have* breakfast yet? — Yes, I *had/have had* it at 8.00. 14. We *missed/have missed* the bus. Now we have to walk.

23 Put the verb in brackets into the correct form, *the Present Perfect* or *the Past Simple*.

I. (A, B)

1. A.: You ever (visit) Chicago?
   B.: Yes, I (be) there several times.
   C.: Yes, I (be) there a few years ago.
2. A.: You (be) at the Ryan's lately?
   B.: Yes, I ..... .
   C.: Yes, I (go) there last night.
3. A.: He (speak) to you about his plans recently?
   B.: No, he ..... .
   C.: No, he (go) to Vilnius last week and (not/arrive) yet.
4. A.: You (see) your brother this morning?
   B.: Yes, I ..... .
   C.: No, I (not / see) him since last Monday.
5. A.: You (be) here before?
   B.: Yes, I ..... .
   C.: Yes, I (be) here last year.
6. A.: You (go) to the theatre last week?
   B.: Yes, I ..... . I (go) to the Bolshoi Theatre.

II. (B, C)

1. I understand you (have) ..... an unpleasant experience at the week-end? What (happen) ..... exactly? 2. Do you remember the shell you (find) .... on the beach? 3. "What is going on here?" Mel sighed. "We (have) .... a storm for three days. It (ruin) .... everything here." 4. "Hello", the little girl said to her mother and looked at her companion. "Come and say 'How do you do' to Mr. Zappa." – "I (see) ..... him already." – "You can't have done, dear. He only just (arrive) .... here." – "I (see) .... him in the hall this afternoon." – "I'm sure you didn't. You (see) ..... my little daughter yet, Mr. Zappa?" 5. "I say, your cheek is like a grater (терка)! You (not/shave) ..... today." 6. You (not/hear) ..... what the pilot (say) .... ? 7. At school I (be) .... never good at languages but here I (pick) ..... up a bit of French. 8. "Good night. It (be) ..... nice to meet you," he (say) ..... and (go) ..... off to his car.

24 (A, B) Open the brackets, using *the Present Simple*, *the Present Continuous*, *the Past Simple* or *the Present Perfect Tense*.

1. In the morning, coming downstairs, Rosemary (see) ..... Tony lying in the sitting room: What you (do) ..... here? – I (sleep) ..... here. – I'm sorry we (take) ..... your room. 2. He's a night watchman. He works at night and (sleep) ..... in the daytime. It's noon now and he still (sleep) ..... . 3. I first (meet) ..... Richard a month ago and I (meet) .... him several times since then. 4. I usually (go) ..... to bed before midnight. 5. What's your brother doing? – He (play) ..... tennis with our neighbour, they (play) ..... it every day. 6. He wants to buy a car but first he must learn how

to drive so he (take) ..... driving lessons. 7. I (write) ..... to my parents a fortnight ago but I've not had a reply so I just (write) ..... again. 8. Where is my daughter? – She (talk) ..... to a policeman. – What (happen) .... ? – She has been driving without a license. 9. It's 3 p.m. and he (not/eat) .... anything today but he (eat) .... a good dinner last night. 10. I (read) ..... this book several times. I first (read) ..... it in 1990. 11. He often (read) ..... detective stories; he (read) ..... a very good one now. 12. She (not/have) .... a holiday since 1996, but she (have) ..... a very long holiday in 1995.

25 (A, B) Translate into English.

1 Я потеряла иголку. Я нигде не могу найти её. 2. Ты смотрел вчера фильм по телевизору? 3. Её родители купили ей машину на 21-й день рождения. 4. У неё теперь очень короткие волосы. Она сделала новую стрижку. 5. Вчера вечером он пришёл домой очень поздно. Он принял ванну и потом лёг спать. 6. Вы посетили много музеев, когда были в Лондоне? 7. Книги нет на полке. Кто-то взял её. 8. Когда твой отец бросил курить? 9. Машина выглядит очень чистой. Ты вымыл её? 10. Молли: Привет, Джеймс. Алан здесь?
Джеймс: Нет, боюсь, он вышел.
Молли: Какая жалость! Когда точно он вышел?
Джеймс: Около двадцати минут назад.

26 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Рад с вами познакомиться! Я читал все ваши статьи. 2. Я закончила картину. Взгляните на неё, пожалуйста. 3. Сегодня я ещё не читал газеты. 4. Сколько раз вы уже были в Лондоне? Я знаю, что вы ездили в Лондон в прошлом году. 5. Вас недавно навещал ваш внук? – Да, он приходил сегодня днём. 6. Лена дала мне очень интересный фильм на прошлой неделе, но я ещё не посмотрел его. 7. Вы послали за доктором? – Да, он скоро придёт. 8. Вы давно знаете Майю? – Я знаю её всю жизнь. 9. Я очень люблю путешествовать. Я побывала во многих столицах Европы. 10. Я не была в Новгороде с тех пор, как мы переехали в С.-Петербург. 11. За последнее время я встречал её несколько раз. Она очень изменилась. 12. Я встретилась с Томом у своих друзей три года тому назад, и с тех пор я о нём ничего не слышала. 13. Утро было холодное и дождливое, но с десяти часов погода изменилась, солнце ярко сияет. 14. Вы хорошо знаете этот город? – Нет, я никогда здесь раньше не была.

27 (B, C) Translate into English, using *the Present Simple*, *the Present Continuous*, *the Past Simple* or *the Present Perfect Tense*.

1. В пятницу на прошлой неделе шёл сильный дождь. 2. Я обычно завтракаю в половине восьмого. 3. Он уже построил дачу? – Нет, он всё ещё строит её. 4. Почему вы идёте так быстро? – Я иду быстро, потому что я боюсь опоздать на электричку. Я всегда хожу быстро утром. 5. В тот вечер я смотрел телевизор. 6. Каждый вечер я смотрю телевизор. 7. Когда я пришёл к Пете в прошлое воскресенье, он читал новую книгу. Как только он закончит читать её, он даст мне эту книгу. 8. Боюсь, я проиграл эту партию в шахматы (this game of chess). Я играл очень плохо. Обычно я играю намного лучше. 9. Лекция ещё не началась, и студенты разговаривают. 10. В школе он играл в баскетбол. Я не играл в волейбол с 1983 года. 11. Автор ещё молодой человек. Он написал свою первую пьесу в 1985 году.

A J☺ke

A Fine Compliment

The Bidwells are giving a party. Mrs. Bidwell wants to introduce Mr. Irving, a young film producer, to her girlfriend, an exceptionally nice-looking young person.

MRS. BIDWELL: May I introduce Mr. Irving to you, Nelly?

MR. IRVING: How do you do? Glad to meet you.

NELLY: How do you do?

MRS. BIDWELL: Mr. Irving **has just come back** from the Vienna film festival. He will tell you a lot about it.

NELLY: So you **have been** to Vienna. You saw the most beautiful women in the world there, I am sure.

MR. IRVING: I thought so yesterday but I **have just changed** my mind.

8.3 The Past Perfect Tense

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I **had** **worked**	I **had** **not** **worked**	**Had** I **worked**?
I'd worked	**I hadn't worked**	

The Past Perfect Tense denotes an action completed before a certain moment in the past. It is often used with the preposition *by* («к»).

- He **had finished** his work < when I called him. / **by** 5 o'clock yesterday.

When we have two past references, we often need ***the Past Perfect*** for the event that happened first to avoid ambiguity.

1 (Past Perfect) + 2 (Past Simple)

- When we **came** to the station, the train **left**. (i.e. at that moment)
- When we **came** to the station, the train **had** already **left**. (i.e. before we got there)

We often introduce ***the Past Perfect Tense*** with conjunctions *when*, *after*, *as soon as*, *by the time that*:

- **When/after** the guests **had left**, she closed the door and went upstairs.

NB! ***The Past Simple*** is used with the conjunctions *after*, *before*, *when*, if the succession of actions should be expressed.

- He **had** a short rest *before* he **went on** with his work.
- *When* I **wrote** the letter, I **posted** it.

The Past Perfect is not used to denote a succession of actions. In this case ***the Past Simple*** is used.

Past Simple , **Past Simple** , **Past Simple**

- He **got up**, **went** to the bathroom, **had** breakfast and **left** for work.

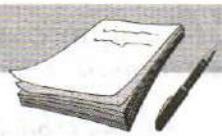
The Past Perfect is used with the conjunctions:

Hardly... / Scarcely... / Nearly... / Barely... + ***Past Perfect*** ... *when* + ***Past Simple***

No sooner + ***Past Perfect*** ... *than* + ***Past Simple***

- He **had** *hardly* **done** it *when* they came. (*Hardly* **had** he **done** it *when* they came.)
- *No sooner* they **had arrived** *than* it started to rain. (*No sooner* **had** they **arrived** *than* it started to rain.)

EXERCISES



28 (A, B) Use *the Past Perfect Tense*.

Model: Why didn't you listen to that play on the radio?
a) Because I had heard it before.
b) I didn't listen to that play on the radio because I had heard it before.

1. Why didn't you see Fred when you came to Moscow? (leave) .....
2. Why didn't Kate want to go to the cinema? (see the film) .....
3. Why didn't Jeff hear about Kate's examination? (pass /before) .....
4. Why did Fred come home so soon from his holiday? (spend all the money) .....
5. What did you learn about Bob? (get married) .....
6. What did he learn about Helen from the letter he received? (be ill for a month) .....

29 (A, B) Complete the sentences, using the verbs in brackets. You visited a friend and learned a lot of news about his family and other friends.

Model: His father didn't work in the bank anymore. He (retire) *had retired.*

1. His parents didn't live there any longer. They (go) ..... to live in the country. 2. His sister wasn't there, either. She (get) ..... married. 3. His house was larger. He (build) ..... the third storey. 4. Your friends, Mike and Brenda, were away. They (leave) ..... for Sweden.

30 (A, B) Complete the sentences, using the verb in brackets.

Model: I was very excited about visiting London because I (be) *had never been* there before.

1. The little boy couldn't wait to get to the sea. He (see) ..... before. 2. The teacher was late that morning. The class didn't know what to think. She (be/late) ..... . 3. Yesterday Larry taught Nell to play the guitar. She felt very unsure because she (play) ..... . 4. It was Miss Kelly's first day at school. She was very nervous because she (teach) ..... .

31 (A, B) Make sentences, using the words in brackets.

Model: His hair was wet. (He/just/have/a shower)
He had just had a shower.

1. There was nobody on the platform. (the train/ just/leave) .....
2. We didn't find anybody home. (everybody/ already/go out) .....
3. The children were playing in the garden. (they/ just/come/from school) .....
4. Bob wasn't at home when I arrived. (he/arrange/ to meet/some friends/at the club) .....
5. I couldn't recognize the child after all that time. (I/not/see/her/for seven years) .....

32 (A, B) Put the verb into the correct form, *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Simple*.

Model: Was Father at home when I phoned? –
No, he had already left.
Was Father at home when I phoned? –
Yes, but he left soon afterwards.

1. The flat was empty when he arrived. Everybody (go) ..... to the party. 2. There

were voices heard from the kitchen so I (go) ..... straight there. 3. He cannot take part in the competition. He (break) ..... his leg yesterday. 4. There was an accident on the mountain top. A skier (break) ..... his leg and the ambulance men were carrying him to the road. So we (stop) ..... to let them pass.

33 (A, B) Use *the Past Perfect Tense* of the verbs in brackets to complete the sentences.

Model: When John and I got to the river, the boat race (start already) *had already started.*

1. When she went to bed, she remembered that she (not/switch off the light) .....
2. She felt tired because she (walk a lot/that day) .....
3. She went for a holiday after she (pass the exams) .....
4. I didn't look at the present until after she (go) .....
5. He didn't start speaking until the children (leave/the room) .....
6. He understood the book only after he (read it/again) .....

34 (A, B) Combine the following pairs of sentences. Use the conjunctions from the box.

after as soon as before until till when

Model: a) They went to England. They left school. (after) *They went to England after they had left school.*

b) The sun set. They finished their work. (before) *The sun had set before they finished their work.*

1. The sun rose. He woke up. (before) – .....
2. I understood the problem. He explained. (as soon as) – .....
3. She wrote the letter. She went to the post office. (after) – .....
4. She read the message carefully. She wrote the reply. (before) – .....
5. He left the room. I turned on the radio. (as soon as) – .....
6. He had dinner. He went to the cinema. (after) – .....
7. We didn't say a word. He finished his story. (until) – .....
8. We reached the football ground. The game started. (when) – .....
9. John worked as a skilled builder. He began to study architecture. (before) – .....
10. Harold couldn't leave for home. He completed everything. (till) – .....

35 (B, C) Match the beginning of the sentence with its ending, putting the verbs in the correct form:

1. They hardly (go) ..... out
2. He scarcely (take) ..... a few steps along the street
3. No sooner he (start) ..... to play
4. No sooner they (come in) .....
5. No sooner the curtains (fall)
6. Hardly he (ask) ..... his questions
7. The rain nearly (stop) .....
8. He scarcely (say) ..... the first words

a) when three men (appear) ..... from around the corner.
b) than one string of the violin (break) ..... out.
c) than her sister (ring) ..... up about an accident with her little daughter.
d) when aunt Julia (wander) ..... slowly into the room.
e) when he (reach) ..... his hotel.
f) than he (rise) ..... to go.
g) when she (interrupt) ..... him.
h) when she (answer) them.

36 (B) Choose the correct form of the verb in these sentences:

1. She realized that she was going to faint. She *ate/had eaten* nothing since the picnic. 2. His wife *wasn't/hadn't been* in. She *went/had gone* out a quarter of an hour before. 3. After dinner Mr. Grag proposed a game of cards. He *didn't play/hadn't played* cards since his illness. 4. Dr. Lecter *was/had been* English, though he *lived/had lived* in America for thirty years. 5. His smile *was/had been* something she never *saw/had seen* before. 6. He decided to wait till he *talked/had talked* to the man himself. 7. He *came/had come* into the room a moment after I *got/had got* there. 8. When he *returned/had returned* at eleven o'clock, the telegram *arrived/had arrived*. 9. When they *went/had gone*, I *got/had got* busy at the desk. 10. When evening *fell/had fallen*, their son *left/had left* the house. 11. I hardly *was/had been* there five minutes when Mrs. Brown *came/had come* in with the coffee. 12. He *promised/had promised* to ring me up when he *got/had got* a definite answer. 13. Scarcely they *moved/had moved* into the new house when their friends *came/had come*. 14. The evening *went/had gone* off easier than she *expected/had expected*. 15. But the village he *showed/had shown* her *was/had been* the best she *ever saw/had ever seen*.

37 (B, C) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Simple* and *the Past Perfect*.

1. We (sit) ..... down to the table only when all the guests (arrive) ..... .
2. There (be) ..... a curious expression on his face I never (see) ..... before. 3. He (be) ..... a teacher at the University, as his father (be) ..... before him. 4. There (be) ..... silence after she (go) ..... . 5. From downstairs (come) ..... the sound of a radio playing a song he never (hear) ..... before. 6. Very deliberately and carefully Poirot (retell) ..... the conversation he (hold) ..... with Saitrana at Wessex House. 7. There (be) ..... something vaguely familiar about her face but I couldn't remember where I (see) ..... her before. 8. He (re-read) ..... what he (write) ..... . 9. When Val (leave) ..... them, Soames and Winifred (make) ..... their way to the Cheshire Cheese.10. She (be) ..... ill for two days when we (learn) ..... about it. 11. About twenty people already (arrive) ..... when they (enter) ..... the hall. 12. We (not/go) ..... far when we suddenly (notice) ..... the dark clouds on the horizon.

38 (B, C) Insert *the Past Simple* or *the Past Perfect* form of the verbs in brackets.

1. We hardly (leave) ..... town when it (begin) ..... to rain. 2. The moon (not / rise)..... . There was nothing to dispel the dark of the night. 3. When at his house, they (tell) ..... me that he (leave) ..... an hour before. 4. No sooner he (take) ..... a drink himself than Mrs. Fettle (look) ..... in. 5. When I (come) ..... to see my friend, I (find) ..... him lying in bed. He (look) ..... very pale as he (be) ..... seriously ill for a whole month. 6. He hardly (light) ..... another cigarette, when the General (come) ..... into the courtyard. 7. Presently the sounds of voices and footsteps approaching the house roused her from the dreamy state into which she (fall) ..... . 8. She was a woman of nearly fifty who (be) ..... obviously pretty once. 9. I (leave) ..... home at 8 o'clock but I (not/go) ..... far when I (remember) ..... that I (forget) ..... to lock my door. 10. Scarcely I (close) ..... the door when a gust of wind (open) ..... it again.

39 (B, C) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

1. When I (arrive) ..... , the lecture already (start) ..... 2.The rain (stop) ..... and the sun (shine) ..... brightly. 3. I (watch) ..... his eyes pretty closely while we (exchange) ..... these remarks. 4. When we (reach) ..... the field, the game already (start) ..... . 5. He suddenly (realize) ..... that he (travel) ..... in the wrong direction. 6. When I (look) ..... for my passport, I (find) ..... this old photograph. 7. He (not/be) there five minutes, when the storm (begin) ..... . 8. He (not/allow) ..... us to go out in the boat yesterday as a strong wind (blow) ..... . 9. I (call) ..... Paul at 7.00 but it wasn't necessary because he already (get) ..... up. 10. When I (hear) ..... his knock I (go) ..... to the door and (open) ..... it but I (not/recognize) ..... him at first because I (not/ wear) ..... my glasses. 11. As they (walk) ..... along the road they (hear) ..... a car coming from behind them. Tom (turn)..... round and (hold) ..... up his hand. The car (stop) ..... . 12. When I (arrive) ..... at the station, Mary (wait) ..... for me. She (wear) ..... a blue dress and (look) ..... very pretty. 13. While I (say) ..... goodbye to the rest of the guests, Isabel (take) ..... Sophie aside. 14. The men (say) ..... that they (work) ..... on the road outside my house and that they (want) ..... some water to make tea.

40 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Войдя в комнату, он увидел Анну там, где её оставил. 2. Я заметил, когда вошёл, что кто-то забыл свой зонтик на крыльце. 3. Он не прочёл и полкниги, как заявил, что она ему не нравится. 4. Когда гости ушли, она вошла в гостиную и выключила свет. 5. Дождь прекратился, но в воздухе был ещё легкий туман. 6. Я не знала, когда он ушёл. 7. Он не помнил его имени и не помнил, чтобы встречал его когда-либо раньше. 8. Прошло некоторое время, прежде чем они поняли, что ему нечего было сказать. 9. Когда экспедиция вернулась, они рассказали, что они видели в Арктике.10. Она закончила паковать вещи к тому времени, когда её сестра постучала в дверь. 11. Когда родители вернулись, я показала им, что я сделала. 12. Не успел он подойти к двери, как встретил своих школьных друзей. 13. Он опять вернулся в Москву, где жил с родителями в детстве. 14. Когда они наконец расстались, он вернулся в комнату и пошёл прямо к столу. 15. Было гораздо холоднее, чем она предполагала. 16. Я знал, что они встречались ещё до войны.

41 (B, C) A. Peter looks really exhausted. He has had a very stressful day. Look through the prompts below and make a story about Peter's day using *the Past Simple* and *the Past Perfect*. The first two sentences have been done for you.



When he woke up, his tooth started aching and he decided to go to the dentist.
After he went out of the dentist's, he realised that he had left his laptop at home.

wake up – tooth start aching – decide to go to the dentist
after go out of the dentist's – realise – leave his laptop at home
then take a taxi – get stuck in a traffic jam
after arrive home – understand – forget to buy the pills
so take his laptop – pop into the pharmacy – finally arrive to work
when arrive — colleague say – boss/ask for him several times
come to his boss – find out – boss/invite him to say – he may be free today

B. Write an e-mail to you friend as if you were Peter, telling about your stressful day.

create message

send

from : peter@mail.uk
to : mark@abc.com

Hi, Mark!
You know, I've had such a terrible day today! To start with, ...
.....
.....
.....

8.4 The Future Perfect Tense

AFFIRMATIVE				NEGATIVE					INTERROGATIVE			
I	**will**	**have**	**worked**	I	**will**	**not**	**have**	**worked**	**Will**	I	**have**	**worked**?
He	**will**	**have**	**worked**	He	**will**	**not**	**have**	**worked**	**Will**	he	**have**	**worked**?
She	**will**	**have**	**worked**	She	**will**	**not**	**have**	**worked**	**Will**	she	**have**	**worked**?
It	**will**	**have**	**worked**	It	**will**	**not**	**have**	**worked**	**Will**	it	**have**	**worked**?
We	**will**	**have**	**worked**	We	**will**	**not**	**have**	**worked**	**Will**	we	**have**	**worked**?
You	**will**	**have**	**worked**	You	**will**	**not**	**have**	**worked**	**Will**	you	**have**	**worked**?
They	**will**	**have**	**worked**	They	**will**	**not**	**have**	**worked**	**Will**	they	**have**	**worked**?

I'**ll have worked** I **won't have worked**

NOTE: *Will* is used for all persons (*I*, *we*, *he*, *she*, *you*, etc.). In British English, *shall* can be used for *I* and *we*.

The Future Perfect denotes an action completed before a definite moment in the future. It is often used with the preposition *by* («к»).

❑ He **will have finished** his work < when I call him. / **by** 5 o'clock tomorrow.

EXERCISES



42 **(A, B) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Future Perfect*.**

1. I (translate) ..... this letter by 6 o'clock this afternoon. 2. I (make) ..... this doll by her birthday. 3. He (not/learn) ..... his lesson by tomorrow if he has not yet begun to study it. 4. This work is so arduous that I (not/complete) ..... it in a year's time. 5. After you finish this book, you (come) ..... to some decision. 7. If she returns after July 1, I won't see her since I already (go) ..... to the South by the time.

43 (A, B, C) Answer the questions in *the Future Perfect Tense*, using the words in brackets.

Model: Will you still be busy if I call you at six? (finish) *Oh no, we will have finished by that time.*

1. Will they still be staying at the hotel tomorrow? (move to their new house)
   ..... .
2. Will you be discussing the plan at 2 o'clock? (make a decision)
   ..... .
3. Will your students be writing a test at ten in the morning? (finish)
   ..... .
4. Will your brother still be a student next autumn? (graduate)
   ..... .
5. Will you still remember me in five years? (forget)
   ..... .
6. Will he be at home on Saturday? (leave for Scotland)
   ..... .
7. Will she be expecting your call tomorrow morning? (receive my letter)
   ..... .
8. Will you be having a lesson when I come home? (go to the swimming-pool)
   ..... .

44 (B, C) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Simple*, *the Future Simple* or *the Future Perfect*.

1. He (be) ..... here for two hours by the time you (come) .... back. 2. "It (be) .... very late." – "They (be) .... back soon." 3. "There (be) ..... no planes tonight." – "Never mind, I (go) ..... by train." 4. You (be) ..... angry if I (talk) ..... to you about it? 5. By the time you (finish) .... cooking they (do) .... their work. 6. "I (be) .... afraid, my train (leave) .... by that time." – "(not/worry) ..... , I (drive) .... you to the station." 7. I hope it (stop) ..... snowing by tomorrow morning. 8. If you (think) .... it over, you (see) .... I am right. 9. If you (not/take) .... a taxi, you (be) .... late. By the time you (get) .... to the theatre the first act (be) ..... over and you (miss) ..... the most interesting dialogues.

45 (B) Translate into English.

1. К завтрашнему дню я закончу этот отчёт. 2. Мы сделаем эту работу к 3 часам дня, а потом пойдём в парк. 3. К 20 июня мы сдадим все экзамены. 4. Строители построят эту школу к 1 сентября. 5. Я напишу это письмо к тому времени, как придёт секретарь. 6. Поезд уже уйдёт к тому времени, когда мы придём на станцию. 7. Я переведу эту статью к понедельнику.

46 (B, C) Translate the following into English, using the proper forms of the verbs. The first two numbers have been done for you.

1. – Твои друзья будут в Англии, когда ты приедешь туда летом?
   – Will your friends be in England when you come there in the summer?
   – Я уверен, что они уже вернутся из Южной Африки.
   – I'm sure they will have already returned from South Africa.
2. – Ты будешь готовиться к экзамену в субботу?
   – Will you be reading up for your exam on Saturday?
   – Я уверен, что уже сдам его.
   – I'm sure I'll have passed it already.

3. – Ты будешь ещё готовить обед завтра в 12 часов?
   – .....
   – Уже закончу готовку.
   – .....

4. – Ты поможешь бабушке искать очки, когда вернёшься?
   – .....
   – Она их уже найдёт.
   – .....

5. – Ты увидишься с Джерри в Атланте, когда я вернусь?
   – .....
   – Я уверен, что он уже приедет.
   – .....

6. – Кит будет дома, если я позвоню в 8 часов?
   – .....
   – Он уже придёт.
   – .....

7. – Они будут обедать завтра в 6 часов?
   – .....
   – Они уже пообедают к этому времени.
   – .....

8. – Ты еще будешь чинить машину, если я зайду за тобой в 5?
   – .....
   – Уже починю её.
   – .....

47 **(B, C) Look through Paul's plans for tomorrow and compare them with his wife's plans. Use *the Future Perfect Tense*.**



Model: *By the time Paul has woken up, his wife will have cooked breakfast.*

Paul's plans for tomorrow:
9.00 – wake up
after breakfast – write a report
by 1 p.m. – finish his report
go to the office – return home at 6 p.m.
play games with the children

His wife's plans for tomorrow:
cook breakfast (about 9 a.m.)
bring the children to school
by 1 p.m. go shopping
take the children from school
cook dinner



.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

48 (B, C) Translate into English, using the proper forms of the verbs.

I

Завтра миссис Коллинз посетит школу своего сына Ника. Когда она придёт туда в два часа дня, он будет играть в игры, но это неважно, потому что сначала она пойдёт к его учителю. К тому времени когда они закончат разговор, урок закончится, и Ник примет душ и будет готов идти с мамой домой. Через два часа Ник сделает уроки и будет свободен. Когда я приеду к ним, Ник с родителями будет обедать. После обеда мы будем играть в компьютерные игры. К тому времени когда мы перестанем играть, миссис Коллинз приготовит кофе. Мы будем сидеть в гостиной и пить горячий кофе. Потом я отправлюсь домой.

II

Брат моего друга закончит занятия в университете к лету, и ему не терпится приступить к преподаванию. После того как он закончит университет, он начнёт преподавать в школе. Я думаю, он станет хорошим учителем, и дети будут его любить. Сейчас он упорно работает, потому что знает, что время летит быстро, и может случиться, что у него не будет времени повторить все основательно. Вчера мы занимались вместе, и я помогал ему с его дипломной работой. Завтра он будет работать весь день, а вечером мы пойдём в бассейн, потому что, я думаю, к тому времени он закончит всю свою работу.

9. The Perfect Continuous Forms

have been + -ing (Participle I)

9.1 The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

AFFIRMATIVE				NEGATIVE					INTERROGATIVE				
I	**have**	**been**	**reading**	I	**have**	**not**	**been**	**reading**	**Have**	I	**been**	**reading**?
He	**has**	**been**	**reading**	He	**has**	**not**	**been**	**reading**	**Has**	he	**been**	**reading**?
She	**has**	**been**	**reading**	She	**has**	**not**	**been**	**reading**	**Has**	she	**been**	**reading**?
It	**has**	**been**	**reading**	It	**has**	**not**	**been**	**reading**	**Has**	it	**been**	**reading**?
We	**have**	**been**	**reading**	We	**have**	**not**	**been**	**reading**	**Have**	we	**been**	**reading**?
You	**have**	**been**	**reading**	You	**have**	**not**	**been**	**reading**	**Have**	you	**been**	**reading**?
They	**have**	**been**	**reading**	They	**have**	**not**	**been**	**reading**	**Have**	they	**been**	**reading**?

I**'ve been reading**
She**'s been reading**

I **haven't been reading**
She **hasn't been reading**

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

Inclusive

Denotes an action which began in the past, has been going on up to the present and is still going on.

It is usually used with:
– **since,**
– **for.**

- I **have been learning** English *for* 10 years.
- I **have been learning** Spanish *since* we last met and have made some progress in it.

It is rendered in Russian by the Present.

Exclusive

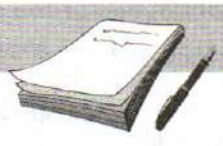
Denotes an action which was recently in progress but is no longer going on at the present moment.

- There are puddles everywhere. It **has been raining** hard.

It is rendered in Russian by the Past.

NOTE: The verbs not used in the *Continuous form* cannot be used in the *Perfect Continuous form*, either.
In this case we use the *Perfect form*:
- I **have known** him since last year.

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Perfect Continuous*.**

1. I (work) ..... on this problem for two months. 2. She (sleep) ..... all this time? 3. You (talk) ..... this nonsense all day long. 4. He says he (not/feel) .... well for the past week. 5. You are red all over. How long you (lie) .... in the sun today? 6. I (try) .... to get you all day, George! 7. I (not/sleep) ..... well for months. 8. We (see) .... each other regularly since the party at Helen's. 9. "Jack isn't working now." – "He (not/work) ..... for years."

2 **(A, B) Make up sentences, using *the Present Perfect Continuous*.**

Model: Suzy is in her riding boots. (she/ride) – *She has been riding.*
You are dirty all over. What (you/do) – *What have you been doing?*

1. Have a rest now. (you/work too hard/lately) .....
2. You are shivering. (you/stand/in this cold/long?) .....
3. Her hands are red and wet. (she/scrub/the floors/for three hours) .....
4. The children are quite voiceless. (they/sing at the top of their voices/since morning) .....

3 **(B) Translate into English.**

1. Ты давно меня ждёшь? 2. Вы опять дрались? 3. Как давно у вас болит нога? 4. Он занимается уже три часа. 5. Я учу испанский с сентября. 6. Анна ищет работу шесть месяцев. 7. Мой брат водит машину десять лет. 8. Они работают в Манчестере с 1 марта. 9. Какой глубокий снег! Сколько времени шёл снег? 10. У тебя глаза красные. Ты плакала? 11. С какого возраста ты играешь в шахматы? 12. Как давно вы живёте в этом городе?

9.2 The Present Continuous and the Present Perfect Continuous

COMPARE:

The Present Continuous	***The Present Perfect Continuous***
when? – (now)	**how long?**
❑ What **are** you **writing**? ❑ I **am writing** a letter.	❑ I **have been writing** it for an hour.

EXERCISES



4 **(B) Open the brackets, using *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Perfect Continuous*.**

1. What you (do) ..... here? 2. He (do) ..... his lessons since after lunch. 3. "Where's Fred?" – "He (work) ..... in the garden. He (plant) ..... rose bushes since dawn." 4. All things in the drawing-room are out of place. The children (play) .... hide-and-seek! 5. I (think) .... of your aunt's proposal since we last met. 6. We (stay) ..... at the Regent Hotel; won't you come and see us? 7. For a week now those mice (steal) .... food from the pantry. 8. Down by the pine woods they (lay) .... out a new road.

5 **(B, C) Open the brackets, using *the Present Continuous* or *the Present Perfect Continuous*.**

1. He had barely entered the room when his secretary said, "Somebody (ring) .... for you for the last five minutes." 2. "What the children (do) ..... ?" – "They (play) ..... games all morning and now they (learn) .... to tell time by the position of the sun." 3. "Our friends (leave) ..... ." – "How long they (stay) .... with you?" 4. "What you (think) ..... about?" – "I (not/ think) ..... , I (count) ..... the birds in the sky." 5. "Where's my daughter?" – "She (talk) .... to a policeman." – "What's happened?" – "She (drive) .... without a license." 6. "Florence, dear, I (look) ..... for you everywhere." – "What's happened?" – "Mr. Cusak (wait) ..... for you in the house."

6 **(B, C) The people below are in an office. What have they been doing since 9 o'clock this morning? Work in pairs, using the prompts below, as in the model.**



Model: Student A: *Mr. Sutton is having a teleconference.*
Student B: *Yes, he's been having a teleconference since 9 o'clock this morning.*

1) Mr. Sutton / have a teleconference
2) Miss Davis / prepare a presentation
   .....
3) Paul and Bob / discuss a future project
   .....
4) Steve and Tom / meet with two clients
   .....
5) Ann and Mary / talk
   .....
6) Helen / translate a document
   .....

7 **(B) Translate into English.**

1. «Мужчина у окна смотрит на нас». – «Ты его знаешь?» – «Я его встречаю в библиотеке в последнее время». 2. «Куда ты так торопишься?» – «Мама ждёт меня у метро уже пять минут». 3. Вы читаете эту газету? 4. «Которая из девушек Аня?» – «На ней красное платье». 5. Я ношу эти туфли уже два года. Они очень удобные. 6. Кого вы ждёте? 7. Давно вы его ждёте? 8. Что вы слушаете? 9. Она преподает английский с прошлого года. 10. Я готовился к экзамену весь день. 11. Я готовлюсь к завтрашнему экзамену. 12. Кому ты машешь (рукой)?

9.3 The Present Perfect and the Present Perfect Continuous

COMPARE:

The Present Perfect	***The Present Perfect Continuous***
– *Denotes a completed action, a result.* ❑ The bottle is empty. Somebody **has drunk** the lemonade. ❑ I **have read** this book. (= I've done it.)	– *Has an implication of incompleteness.* ❑ Somebody **has been drinking** from this bottle. It's half empty.

EXERCISES



8 **(B) Choose the correct form of the verb for each sentence.**

1. Many people believe that our climate *has changed/has been changing* very markedly. 2. I *have collected/have been collecting* the pictures with bridges since I graduated from university. Now I *have collected/have been collecting* enough to organize an interesting exhibition. 3. She *has read/has been reading* a fairy tale to the children since breakfast. They *haven't finished/haven't been finishing* yet. 4. Those people *have waited/have been waiting* for a tram for the last fifteen minutes. I'm afraid they don't know that the electricity *has gone/has been going* out. 5. What has

happened/has been happening to Mary? John has *rung/has been ringing* her up the whole evening and nobody *has answered/has been answering*. 6. "You *have come/have been coming* out at last," he said. "Well, I *have stood/have been standing* here long, and *have listened/have been listening* to the nightingale." 7. So you *have arrived/have been arriving*. We *have just spoken/have just been speaking* of you. 8. "How long *have you known/have you been knowing* about it?" – "I *have known/have been knowing* it all the time." 9. "Why *have you turned/have you been turning* off the music?" – "I *have played/have been playing* the CDs for hours; I'm tired now."

9 (B) Define the correct form of the verb for each word combination.

Model: (She/clean/the flat/for two hours) – *She has been cleaning the flat for two hours.*
(She/do/two rooms/so far) – *She has done two rooms so far.*

1. (I/translate/for three hours)
   .....
   (I/translate/two papers)
   .....
2. (John/draw pictures/since 10 o'clock)
   .....
   (He/draw/three pictures)
   .....
3. (My brother/ski/since childhood)
   .....
   (He/take part/in numerous championships)
   .....
4. (Father/write/children's poems/since he retired)
   .....
   (He/write/four books)
   .....

10 (B) Ask a question, using the correct verb form.

Model: He trains young athlets.
How many young athlets has he trained?

1. She is travelling in the East. How long .....
   ..... ?
2. He translates books. How many books .....
   ..... ?
3. He translates from Japanese. How long .....
   ..... ?
4. They are visiting the hospital. How many times
   ..... ?

11 (B) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous Tense*.

I

1. We (meet) ..... before? 2. I (try) ..... to catch the waiter's attention for about 15 minutes now. 3. She (study) ..... English for a year and (learn) ..... many words and expressions. 4. I (not/hear) .... about him since yesterday. 5. I (look) ..... for him since I finished my lesson but I (not/find) .... him. I (be) ..... to his office and to the laboratory but he isn't there. 6. I (be) ..... up here since about six. I (wander) ..... around for hours. 7. I expect these young men (inform) ..... you who I am. 8. I really don't know what you (do) .... there all this time. 9. I (love) .... you ever since I first saw you. 10. And that's where they (stay) .... ever since. 11. They (struggle) ..... with this problem for about a month and they (solve) .... it at last. 12. I (tell) .... you so for years but you never (pay) ..... any attention.

II

– Oh, I say, that's a nice clock. Where did you get it?
– I bought it in England last summer. You know I (buy) (1)..... clocks for fifty years now and I (build) (2)..... quite a big collection. Genuine antique clocks (acquire) (3)..... a great value since the time I started. The taxes (grow) (4)..... rapidly since then and the rate of inflation (not be stable) (5)..... ..... for a long time.
– You're right. That's what (make) (6)..... ..... antique-hunting less profitable nowadays.

12 **(B, C) Translate into English.**

1. Почему у тебя синие губы? – Я ела чернику. 2. Ты съел весь кекс? 3. Что вы делаете? – Мы собираем яблоки. – Сколько вы уже собрали? – Мы собрали пять корзин. 4. Я полирую этот стол с самого завтрака. Я очень устала. 5. Что ты делаешь в гараже так долго? – Я накачиваю шины (pump the tires). Я уже накачал три. 6. Ты знакома с Томом? – Я знаю его целую вечность. 7. Он только что продал две свои картины. – Ему повезло. Мой муж рисует уже пять лет и ещё не продал ни одной картины. 8. Я всё утро занимаюсь домашней работой и ещё ничего не сделал. 9. Куда ты девала мои ботинки? Я нигде не могу их найти. – Майк только что ушёл в них. 10. Тот человек стоит на автобусной остановке последние полчаса. Сказать ему, что последний автобус уже ушёл? 11. Мой муж собирает картины современных художников с тех пор, как мы поженились. Он уже собрал так много, что не знает, куда их повесить.

9.4 Revision

13 **(B) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Continuous*, *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous*.**

1. A.: What you (look) ..... for?
   B.: We (look) ..... for school things. We (not/buy) .... everything yet.
   A.: I (buy) ..... everything.
2. A.: What you (do)..... , Jane?
   B.: I (read) ..... .
   A.: But it (be) ..... late. What you (read) ..... all this time?
3. A.: Where (be) ..... John?
   B.: He (work) ..... in the garden.
   A.: He must be too tired. He (work) ..... there all day.
4. A.: Who you (wait) ..... for?
   B.: I (wait) ..... for Jack. I (wait) ..... for him since 11 o'clock.
5. A.: They (stand) ..... there for the last 20 minutes.
   B.: What they (talk) ..... about all this time?
6. A.: What you (think) ..... of?
   B.: I (think) ..... of our journey.
7. A.: The girls (sing) ..... in the sitting-room.
   B.: They (sing) ..... since I (walk) ..... in.

14 **(B) Open the brackets. Use *the Past Continuous*, *the Past Simple*, *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous*.**

1. Greg (return) ..... at last. Mary (wait) ..... for him so long. 2. Margaret, you (read) ..... my letters. Don't deny it. 3. When I (come) ..... home, Mother (make) ..... breakfast and Father (have) ..... his morning tea. 4. When you (discuss) ..... it? I never (hear) ..... the subject mentioned. 5. No, you can't go to the Smiths'. You (be) ..... there twice this week. 6. Why, you (not/change) ..... at all. I (recognize) ..... you the moment I (see)

..... you. 7. When you (go) ..... to bed? 8. My dear girl, you (overeat) ..... for years. You (lose) ..... your looks, you (lose) ..... your figure. You can't get back to normal overnight. Remember what doctor Lecter (tell) ..... you on Monday. 9. I (see) .... her when I (drive) ..... past their house on my way to work. 10. He (not/say) ..... a single word to me yet and he (get) .... that letter on Sunday.

15 (B, C) Open the brackets. Use *the Present Simple*, *the Present Continuous*, *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous*.

1. Andy, you (hear) ..... me? I (talk) ..... to you for a minute already. 2. I want to see how much the place (change) ..... since I was there last. 3. We (not/see) ..... them ever since. 4. I don't want to take a cure at all. I am perfectly happy. All my life I (be) ..... perfectly happy. 5. Here's my key. I (leave) ..... . 6. I (go) ..... to the shops, (not/begin) ..... cutting the material until I (come) ..... back. 7. Wait till you (see) ..... Moose and (talk) ..... to him. 8. The children (live) ..... with their aunt since their mother (be) ..... ill. 9. I must not let my eyes get all red and swollen, or Henry'll know I (cry) ..... . 10. The train (not/arrive) ..... yet but a lot of people (stand) ..... on the platform. 11. I (know) ..... him very well. We (know) ..... each other since I came to live in this house. 12. He says he (listen) ..... to the same tunes for fifteen years. 13. What are you going to say to the President if he (ask) ..... .

16 (B) Translate the sentences into English.

1. «Как дела у вашего сына?» – «Очень хорошо. Я только что ему звонила по телефону». 2. «Вы давно здесь работаете?» – «Около трёх лет». 3. «Вот и вы», – сказал он. – «Я давно вас жду». 4. Я со вчерашнего дня думаю о том, что вы сказали. 5. Тэд, я вас ищу повсюду. Что вы делали всё это время? 6. Входи, дорогой. Я целое утро пытаюсь найти тебя. 7. Мальчики в саду. Они уже с полчаса наблюдают за птицами. 8. Скажите, когда придёт механик? Я жду его с 10 часов. 9. Дождь идёт уже три дня. 10. Я его только что видела. Он переходил улицу. 11. Когда он приходил?

17 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Он тренирует эту команду всего полгода, но они сделали большие успехи. 2. Кто взял мой словарь? Я его вчера здесь на полке оставила. 3. Он посмотрел на меня и ничего не сказал. Он ждал кого-то. 4. Они спорят уже полчаса, и я потеряла всякий интерес. 5. Почему ты с ней так разговаривал? 6. Вы давно его знаете? 7. Давно вы меня ждёте? 8. Когда вы начали изучать английский язык? 9. Он уехал на прошлой неделе. 10. Он подошёл к окну, открыл его и помахал кому-то рукой. 11. Боюсь, что она передумала. Она мне ничего не сказала, когда я видела её в последний раз.

9.5 The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I **had been reading**	I **had been reading**	**Had** I **been reading?**
I'd been reading	**I hadn't been reading**	

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

Inclusive

Denotes an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment.

It is used with:
– since,
– for.

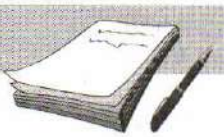
- We **had been climbing** *for* six hours when at last we reached the summit of the mountain.

Exclusive

Denotes an action which was no longer going on at a definite moment in the past but which had been in progress not long before.

- Outside everything was in deep snow. It **had been snowing** hard all night. (not at that moment)

EXERCISES



18 **(B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Simple*, *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Perfect Continuous*.**

1. When I (leave) ..... home, the snow already (stop) ..... .
2. It (be) ..... 6 p.m. and Jack (be) ..... tired because he (work) ..... hard all day.
3. He clearly (listen) .... to our conversation and I (wonder) ..... how much he (hear)..... .
4. She (say) ..... she (teach) ..... at this school for twenty years.
5. He (say) ..... he just (finish) ..... the book he (read) ..... all this time.
6. The postman (come) ..... after lunch and (bring) ..... me a letter which I (expect) .... for a long time.
7. It (rain) .... since the morning and the fields (be) ..... quite muddy.

19 (B) Answer the questions.



Model: Did you work at your English yesterday? *Yes, I did.*
How long had you been working at your English before you went for a walk? (for an hour) *I had been working at my English for an hour.*

1. Did it rain yesterday? .....
   How long had it been raining when you left home? (for 3 hours) .....
   .....
2. Did she work at the University before she retired? .....
   How long had she been working there before she retired? (for 25 years) .....
   .....
3. Did you stay at the hotel when you were in London? .....
   How long had you been living there when Jane arrived? (for a fortnight) .....
   .....
4. Did they study French before they went to France? .....
   How long had they been studying it before they went there? (for 5 years) .....
   .....
5. Did they work on their book last year? .....
   How long had they been working on it before they sent it to the publishing house? (for 2 years) .....
6. Did the children walk in the wood in the morning? .....
   How long had they been walking before you called them back? (for 2 hours) .....
   .....

20 (B) Make up sentences according to the pattern.

Model: I started on my journey. After an hour a tyre went flat.
I had been driving for an hour when a tyre went flat.

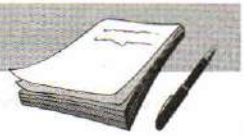
1. The lecturer began to speak. After 15 minutes the Dean came in.
   The lecturer ..... for 15 minutes when ..... .
2. Larry had arranged to meet Amy at her hotel in London. He had lost the address but he thought it was the Savoy. So he went there. After waiting for half an hour he realized that he had come to the wrong hotel.
   Larry ..... when ..... .
3. His grandfather went to work in America in 1943. Two years later the war ended.
   His grandfather ..... when ..... .

9.6 The Past Continuous and the Past Perfect Continuous

COMPARE:

The Past Continuous	***The Past Perfect Continuous***
– *Denotes an action going on at a definite moment in the past, no previous duration is expressed.*	– *Expresses the previous duration.*
❑ I looked out of the window. It **was raining**.	❑ It **had been raining** for days.

EXERCISES



21 **(B) Complete the sentences with the verb from the box in the correct form: *the Past Perfect Continuous* or *the Past Continuous*.**

stand *run* *write* *wait (+2)* *talk*

1. The boy was leaning against the tree, out of breath. He ..... very fast.
2. He came into the kitchen. His parents stopped talking. They ..... about him.
3. She came into the room. Her husband was at his desk. He ..... .
4. When the newly weds arrived at the restaurant, their guests ..... for them. They felt rather hungry because they ..... for a long time.
5. Julia ..... at the bus stop for twenty minutes when Ivo drove up and got out of the car.

22 **(B, C) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous*, *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Perfect Continuous*.**

1. Mary (speak) ..... to Mr. Boxwell when I (see) ..... her in the corridor this morning. 2. John (park) ..... the car in 5th Avenue when a young man in black glasses (appear) ..... from nowhere and (stand) ..... before him. 3. He again (come) ..... to the village where he (live) ..... in his childhood. 4. While we (talk) ..... , there (come) ..... a loud knock at the door. 5. He (look) ..... into the drawing-room. The old man (sleep) ..... peacefully in the armchair at the fire-place. 6. While she (read) ..... this notice, a middle-aged woman (appear) ..... in the doorway. 7. When he (come) ..... back to the conference room, he (see) ..... that the situation (change) ..... . 8. She (sit) ..... at the table only for five minutes when a car (come) ..... . 9. Their father (be) ..... still silent, even when they (have) ..... coffee. 10. He scarcely (get) ..... outside the door when he (hear) ..... Wardle's voice talking loudly. 11. I knew right away that that was the place I (look for) ..... all my life.

23 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. На старой даме было бархатное платье, которое не видело света двадцать лет. 2. Гости ушли. Теперь они сидели одни перед камином в гостиной. 3. Она больше не получала от него писем. Он перестал писать за три года до этого. 4. Она изучала искусство рисования три года, прежде чем стала работать в издательстве. Когда я попросил её сделать иллюстрации к моей книге, она заканчивала иллюстрировать свою первую книгу. 5. Перед отъездом мы зашли к миссис Чандлер. Мы не видели её некоторое время, и моя сестра заметила, что она сильно изменилась. 6. Не успели они проехать и пяти миль, как их остановила полиция. 7. Он путешествовал уже два дня, но выглядел свежим и не чувствовал усталости. 8. Буря утихла, небо прояснилось, и опять светило солнце.

9.7 The Future Perfect Continuous Tense

AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	INTERROGATIVE
I **will have been reading**	I **will not have been reading**	**Will** I **have been reading?**
He **will have been reading**	He **will not have been reading**	**Will** he **have been reading?**
She **will have been reading**	She **will not have been reading**	**Will** she **have been reading?**
It **will have been reading**	It **will not have been reading**	**Will** it **have been reading?**
We **will have been reading**	We **will not have been reading**	**Will** we **have been reading?**
You **will have been reading**	You **will not have been reading**	**Will** you **have been reading?**
They **will have been reading**	They **will not have been reading**	**Will** they **have been reading?**

I'**ll have been reading** I **won't have been reading**

NOTE: *Will* is used for all persons (*I*, *we*, *he*, *she*, *you*, etc.). In British English, *shall* can be used for *I* and *we*.

The Future Perfect Continuous Tense denotes an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment.

- By next August she **will have been teaching** English for 30 years.

EXERCISES



24 (A, B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Future Perfect Continuous*.

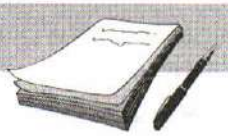
1. By the end of this month we (learn) .... this language for ten years. 2. When my daughter goes to school we (live) .... here for over five years. 3. When the new century begins, they (reconstruct) ..... this church for nearly 25 years. 4. We can get there at 7 at the earliest. They will be painting the fence. If we arrive at 8.30, they (paint) ..... it for 3 hours at least; and if we come at 9.30, they will have probably finished the work.

25 **(B, C) Translate into English.**

1. К тому времени как он закончит университет, его родители проработают в Южной Африке два года. 2. Мы будем рекламировать эти товары несколько месяцев к тому времени, как они появятся на рынке. 3. На будущий год к этому времени она будет изучать французский уже два года. 4. К тому времени когда она приедет, я уже буду жить здесь в течение двух лет. 5. Сколько времени они будут показывать этот фильм, пока ты не привезёшь новый? 6. Сколько ты проработаешь в лаборатории к этому времени на следующий год?

10. Revision on Tenses

EXERCISES



1 **(B) Put the verb in brackets into *the Present Continuous*, *the Present Simple*, *the Past Simple*, *the Present Perfect* or *the Present Perfect Continuous*.**

1. He (not/phone) ..... him since he (arrive) ..... .
2. I (think) ..... your daughter (become) ..... a real beauty since I (see) ..... her last. 3. What you (do) ..... with the knife? The point is broken off. 4. For these last three years I (save) ..... nearly every penny for my trip to that country. 5. Well, dear, what you (do) ..... all day long? You (look) ..... tired. Come and sit here by the fire. 6. "Hello," he (say) ..... holding out his hand, "I (look) ..... for you for a long time. I never (have) ..... the chance to thank you for what you (do) ..... for my brother." 7. You see, I (do) ..... this kind of thing for the last thirty years. 8. I (think) ..... of it ever since Molly (tell) ..... me about your decision to go to the sea. 9. Do come in and join us. We (have) ..... coffee and (watch) ..... TV.
10. A.: I hear your brother (come) ..... back. He (be) ..... in the East all this time?
    B.: No, he (be) ..... in Europe for the last year.
11. A.: I just (be) ..... to the cinema. You (see) ..... the last film by N. Mikhalkov?
    B.: Yes.
    A.: When you (see) ..... it?
    B.: A week ago.
    A.: Who you (go) ..... with?
    B.: With Tanya.
12. A.: The children (return) ..... yet?
    B.: Yes, Tom Burton (bring) ..... them back in his car five minutes ago.
    A.: Well, then we can have dinner now.
    B.: No, we can't. I (not/cook) ..... it yet.
    A.: What you (do) ..... all this time?
    B.: Worrying.

2 (B, C) Comment on the use of *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous*, *the Past Perfect* and *the Past Perfect Continuous*.

1. Where were you going when I met you in the street yesterday? – I was going to tell the watch-maker that he had forgotten to send my watch. 2. This, however, enabled him to add some ideas which he had omitted in the first copy. 3. They decided to rebuild the church when they found that the cement they used had begun to crumble. 4. He was so ill that he found himself unable to complete the work he had begun. 5. She turned the light back on, lay on the sofa and took up the book she had been reading. 6. His secretary took the paper from the table where he had put it and went out. 7. It was near midnight when they came in from dinner, still laughing at something he had said in the dining-room. 8. It was two o'clock. Eliza was suddenly thoroughly awake. She sat up in her bed and circled her knees with her arms. It was raining, the way it had been raining for days. 9. In his turn Jolyon looked back at his son. He wanted to talk about many things that he had been unable to talk about all these years. 10. She was at the station after all, standing just as he had imagined, apart from the others. 11. He came back on Saturday, as he had promised. They all were waiting for him in the sitting-room. When he entered, everybody rushed forward to him to embrace and hug him in greeting.

3 (B, C) Put the verb in brackets into *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous*, *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Perfect Continuous*.

1. He was up before the sun on the last day. A gale from the west (blow) ..... all night, making him wakeful. 2. It (be) ..... a cold, harsh, winter day. There (be) ..... snow some hours before and it (lie) ..... not deep but hard-frozen on the ground. 3. He (try) ..... to catch what they (say) ..... but they (be) ..... too far from him and (speak) ..... in very low voices. 4. As the wet twilight (deepen) ..... I (stop) ..... in a solitary bridle-path (верховая тропа), which I (pursue) ..... an hour or more. 5. He (not/be) ..... so much surprised to see me as I (expect) ..... . 6. I (go) ..... to bed and (fall) ..... asleep when my guardian (knock) ..... at the door of my room and (beg) ..... me to get up directly. 7. I (have) ..... a wash and brush-up before starting out to go to the luncheon Elliot (invite) ..... me to when they (ring) ..... up from the reception to say that he (be) ..... below. 8. Mrs. Bedwin, who (listen) ..... at the parlour door, (hasten) ..... into the corridor in a breathless state. 9. Sara (be right) ..... in her prediction. Madam Sharon's face (be) ..... a picture the next morning when she (find) ..... out that Sara (go) ..... .

4 (B, C) Comment on the use of *the Present Simple*, *the Present Continuous*, *the Present Perfect*, *the Past Simple* and *the Past Continuous*.

Laying the telephone down on the desk, I went to the door and called Amos. I went back to the couch and stretched out as he picked up the phone. He shot a peculiar look at me when he heard her voice. He was silent for a while, listening to her. When he spoke again, he was smiling. "That's wonderful! When are you leaving? Soon I'll also fly to New York when this job is finished. We'll have a celebration then. Give my love to your daughter."

He put down the telephone and came over to me. "That was Monica," he said, looking down at me.

"I know," I said.

"She is leaving for New York this afternoon. She is taking her daughter back with her. You have not seen the kid for a long time now, have you?"

"No, I have not."

"You ought to see her. The kid is turning into a real beauty." *(After H. Robbins)*

5 (B, C) Complete the gaps with the appropriate word from the box. Do not forget to put the verb into the correct form.

pull (+2) *try* *become* *fill* *fall*

Stifling a huge yawn, Petra (1)..... herself up into a sitting position and (2)..... to free her mind from the clog of sleep. Slowly she (3)..... aware that Sara (4)..... her suitcase from under the bed and (5)..... it by the simple method of taking out drawers of clothes and turning them upside down so that the contents (6)..... into the case. *(from S. Wentworth)*

6 (B, C) Choose the correct form of the verbs.

He *looked/had looked* at his watch. In a quarter of an hour he *was/had been* due at the General Meeting of the New Colliery Company – one of Uncle Jolyon's concerns; he should see Uncle Jolyon there, and say something to him about Bosinney – *didn't make/hadn't made* up his mind what, but something – in any case he should not answer this letter until he *saw/had seen* Uncle Jolyon. He *got/had got* up and methodically *put/had put* away the draft of his defence. Going into a dark little cupboard, he *turned/had turned* up the light, *washed/had washed* his hands with a piece of brown Windsor soap, and *dried/had dried* them on a roller towel. Then he *brushed/had brushed* his hair, *turned/had turned* down the light, *took/had taken* his hat and ... *left/had left* the house. *(After J. Galsworthy)*

7 (B, C) There are six grammar mistakes in the text below. Read the text and correct them.

He had placed a picture on the easel and let me look at it for a minute or two; then he had taken it down and put another one in its place. He had been showing me about thirty canvases. It was the result of the six years during which he had painted. He never sold a picture. The canvases had been of different sizes. The smaller were pictures of still-life and the largest were landscapes. There were about half a dozen portraits. *(After S. Maugham)*

8 (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Simple*, *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

We just (finish) (1)..... lunch. Mrs. Leidner (go) (2)..... to her room to rest as usual. I (settle) (3)..... her on her bed with plenty of pillows and her book, and (leave) (4)..... the room when she (call) (5)..... me back.

"Don't go, nurse, there (be) (6)..... something I (want) (7)..... to say to you."

I (come) (8)..... back into the room.

"Shut the door."

I (obey) (9)..... .

She (get) (10)..... up from the bed and (begin) (11)..... to walk up and down the room. I could see that she (make) (12)..... up her mind to something and I (not/like) (13)..... to interrupt her. She (be) (14)..... clearly in indecision of mind. *(A. Christie)*

9 (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

He (not/cover) [1] ..... the first of those miles, however, when the luck (favour) [2] ..... him at last. He (meet) [3] ..... a cart turning in his direction out of a field and this time he (be) [4] ..... able to beg a lift, though it (take) [5] ..... several minutes to explain to the driver, a little old whiskered fellow nearly as deaf as one of his own sacks, exactly what he (want) [6] ..... . And by the time he (make) [7] ..... it plain to his companion that he (travel) [8] ..... about, that he (want) [9] ..... a wash and brush-up and some breakfast, Everwell itself (be) [10] ..... in sight. It (be) [11] ..... a little place that (look) [12] ..... somehow as if it had been dropped there. *(After J. Priestley)*

10 (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous* or *the Present Perfect*.

Later that afternoon Miss MacDonald (tell) [1] ..... Tom that Hopkins would like to see him that evening at 7 o'clock. At two minutes after the hour, Tom (knock) [2] ..... at Hopkins door. Hopkins (open) [3] ..... it. He (be) [4] ..... alone, and, to Tom's surprise, he (look) [5] ..... tired. He (pace) [6] .... restlessly up and down the room jingling the change in his pockets and gesticulating as he (talk) [7] ..... . The first thing he (say) [8] ..... after greeting Tom (be) [9] ..... , "I definitely (decide) [10] ..... to go ahead with this mental health committee." *(S. Wilson)*

11 (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

After Pitty (go) [1] ..... , Scarlett (go) [2] ..... wearily into the downstairs hall and (light) [3] ..... a lamp. The house (feel) [4] ..... steamingly hot, as though it held in its walls all the heat of the noontide. Some of her dullness (pass) [5] ..... now and her stomach (clamour) [6] ..... for food. She (remember) [7] ..... she (have) [8] ..... nothing to eat since the night before except a spoonful of hominy (варёная кукуруза; мамалыга) and picking up the lamp she (go) [9] ..... into the kitchen. The fire in the oven (die) [10] ..... but the room (be) [11] ..... hot. She (find) [12] ..... half a pone of bread (*зд.* полкаравая кукурузного хлеба) and (eat) [13] ..... quickly while she (look) [14] ..... about for other food. There (be) [15] ..... some hominy left in the pot and she (eat) [16] ..... it with a big cooking spoon, not waiting to put it on a plate. It (need) [17] ..... salt badly but she (be) [18] .... too hungry to hunt for it. After four spoonfuls of it, the heat of the room (be) [19] ..... too much and, taking the lamp in one hand and a piece of bread in the other, she (go) [20] ..... out into the hall. It (be) [21] ..... so much cooler here, even the night was drowned in soft warmth. She (sit) [22] ..... down on the steps in the circle of faint light thrown by the lamp and (continue) [23] ..... eating the bread.

When she (finish) [24] ..... it, a measure of strength (come) [25] .... back to her. *(After M. Mitchell)*

12 (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Simple*, *the Past Continuous* or *the Past Perfect*.

I (not/be) [1] ..... in Tahiti long before I (meet) [2] ..... Captain Nichols. He (come) [3] ..... in one morning when I (have) [4] ..... breakfast on the terrace of the hotel and (introduce) [5] ..... himself. He (hear) [6] ..... that I (be) [7] ..... interested in Charles Strickland, and (announce) [8] ..... that he (come) [9] ..... to have a talk about him.

I (ask) [10] ..... the stranger if he (have) [11] ..... breakfast. "Yes," he (answer) [12] ..... . When he (smile) [13] ..... he (show) [14] ..... broken and discoloured teeth. He (be) [15] ..... a very lean man, with grey hair cut short and a grey moustache. He (not/shave) [16] ..... for a couple of days.

"I knew Strickland well," he (say) [17] ..... , as he (lean) [18] ..... back in his chair and (light) [19] ..... the cigar I (offer) [20] ..... him.

"Where you (meet) [21] ..... him?" I (ask) [22] ..... .

"In Marseilles!"

"What you (do) [23] ..... there?"

He (smile) [24] ..... and (say) [25] ..... , "Well, I guess I (be) [26] ..... on the beach." *(After S. Maugham)*

13 (C) Use the required *Present* or *Past Tense forms* in the following texts. Comment on their use.

I

"But when you (meet) [1] ..... him?"

"Tonight. He (pick) [2] ..... me up in a bar in the Champs Elysées and (insist) [3] ..... on taking me to Maxim's.

I (have) [4] ..... a wonderful time, the best I (have) [5] ..... since we (come) [6] ..... to work in Paris."

"I (think) [7] ..... you (go) [8] ..... out with Jean-Paul tonight?"

"Well, I did start out with him. But, honestly, Petra, he (get) [9] ..... to be really boring, so when I (see) [10] ..... Carlo giving me the high sign I (decide) [11] ..... to go with him instead."

"Carlo? It (not/sound) [12] ..... very French."

"It (not/be) [13] ..... . He (be) [14] ..... Italian. And that (be) [15] ..... where I (go) [16] ..... – to stay in his Palazzo, no less... He (be) [17] ..... the kind of man I (look) [18] ..... for all my life... He just (sweep) [19] ..... me off my feet."

"Most of the men you (meet) [20] ..... seem to sweep you off your feet."

II

At the end of the week, when there (be) [1] ..... still no telephone call or letter from Sara, Petra (wait) [2] ..... until Monsieur and Madam Charron (go) [3] ..... out one evening and the children (be) [4] ..... safely in bed, then she (sneak) [5] ..... into the study, (pick) [6] ..... up the phone and (ask) [7] ..... the operator to give her the number of the Palazzo Berini in Venice.

"Hello. (be) [8] ..... that Carlo Berini?"

"Yes, I (be) [9] ..... Count Berini." The voice (be) [10] ..... authoritative.

"My name (be) [11] ..... Petra Thornton. We (not/meet) [12] ..... , but I (be) [13] ..... a friend of Sara's."

There (be) [14]..... a few seconds of silence before Carlo Berini (say) [15]..... , "I (not/know) [16]..... who you (talk) [17]..... about."

"But you do," Petra (protest) [18]..... . "You (take) [19]..... Sara to Venice with you two weeks ago to stay at your Palazzo. You (meet) [20]..... her in Paris. You must remember."

His voice (grow) [21]..... annoyed. "Either you (get) [22]..... the wrong number, or this (be) [23]..... some kind of joke. I (not/know) [24]..... your friend and she certainly never (stay) [25]..... in this house." *(after S. Wentworth)*

14 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. What are you doing? – Я делаю домашнее задание по английскому языку. – Разве ты готовишь уроки по утрам? – Yes, I always do my English homework после того, как позавтракаю. 2. Вы нашли ключ, which you lost yesterday? – Да, нашла. – Where did you find it? – Он всё время был в моём кармане. 3. Мы с ним вместе учились в школе, and we have stayed friends ever since. 4. «Ваши гости уже приехали». – "I know." 5. Когда я напишу письмо, I'll go and mail it but I don't know, когда она его получит. 6. What's the matter with your hands? – Я чистила картошку. 7. Я в этом городе уже пятнадцать лет. Our family moved here, когда мне было 10 лет. 8. Do they write to you? – Да, мы переписываемся уже шесть лет. 9. Я их не видела с тех пор, since he left for Moscow. 10. Я пишу эту книгу полгода и I am very tired. 11. О нём весь город говорит с тех самых пор, как он уехал.

15 (B, C) Translate the following sentences into English, concentrating on the use of tense-aspect forms.

1. Тебе нравится готовить? – Я люблю это. Это одно из моих хобби уже много лет. 2. Давай обсудим это дело здесь, в кафе. В офисе будет постоянно звонить телефон. 3. Они возвращаются. – Я полагаю, они остановятся в гостинице на этот раз. 4. Она заперлась и не сойдёт вниз, пока они не уйдут. 5. Я знаю имена всех в деревне. Я живу здесь всю свою жизнь. 6. Как давно ты так себя чувствуешь? 7. Он не придёт. Я только что разговаривал с ним по телефону. 8. К концу недели я закончу этот перевод. 9. Кто открыл Австралию? 10. На будущий год в это время мы будем плыть назад в Америку. 11. Его жена, которая только что уложила спать их малышку дочь, сидела в гостиной с книгой. 12. Мы прожили у Харрисонов два дня и вернулись в Лондон поездом. 13. Не успел я дойти до угла, как услышал чьи-то шаги сзади. 14. Я велю ему принести ключ, когда он осмотрит дом. 15. Мы ехали около часа и потом остановились у небольшого кафе.

16 (C) Translate the verbs in bold type into English.

A
Несчастный случай

Это **была** очень уютная и чистая кухня. Солнце **сияло** сквозь чистые стёкла, пол **блестел**, на плите **кипел** чайник, и толстый чёрный любимец миссис Браун сладко **спал** на подоконнике. Миссис Браун **сидела** в кресле и **читала**.

Вдруг сильный взрыв **потряс** маленький домик. Миссис Браун **взглянула** в окно. По улице **бежали** люди. Кто-то **крикнул**: «Это на фабрике! Котёл **взорвался**!»

Миссис Браун **побледнела**, **закрыла** лицо руками и **опустилась** в кресло.

Её муж **работал** в котельной.

«Я **была** ему плохой женой,» – подумала она. – «Только вчера я **выбранила** его за то, что он **не вытер** ноги, когда **вошёл** в кухню. А теперь я его никогда не увижу».

Хлопнула дверь, кто-то **вошёл** в комнату.

«Не плачь, Мэри!» – **услышала** она голос мужа. – «Ничего особенного **не случилось**. Никто не ранен».

Миссис Браун подняла голову.

«О Стивен!» – сказала она. – «Сколько раз я тебе **говорила**: вытирай ноги, когда **входишь** в дом».

В
Покупая книги

В прошлом году я **поссорился** с женой. Она **говорила**, что я слишком много денег **трачу** на книги. Я **понял**, что она **права**, и **пообещал**, что больше этого делать не буду.

Однако, когда я **шёл** на работу, я **увидел** очень интересную книгу в киоске.

«На этой неделе я ещё ничего **не покупал**», – подумал я. – «Если я **напишу** на этой книге: «За участие в любительском спектакле», то жена ничего **не скажет**».

«Так ты **участвовал** в спектакле?» – удивилась жена. – «Почему я тебя **не видела**?»

«Я **держал** на плечах балкон для Ромео и Джульетты», – **ответил** я.

На следующей книге я **написал**: «С любовью и наилучшими пожеланиями, твой любящий дядя Джордж».

«Что это за дядя?» – **спросила** жена. – «Почему я с ним **не знакома**?»

«Бедный, милый дядя», – **ответил** я. – «Он **дарит** мне книги с тех пор, как я **научился** читать. Он уже 20 лет **живёт** в Глазго и ни разу **не выезжал** оттуда из-за своего здоровья».

Потом разные писатели **начали дарить** мне свои книги из любви и уважения ко мне. Однажды я **пришёл** домой с книгой, которую **подарил** мне Золя. Жена **стояла** перед зеркалом. На ней **было** новое платье.

«Ты **купила** платье?» – спросил я.

«Нет», – **ответила** она. – «Мне **подарил** его твой друг».

«Какой друг?» – **закричал** я.

«Тот, который **подарил** тебе столько книг. Чарльз Диккенс».

«Теперь мне ясно, почему последнее время у нас **были** такие плохие **обеды**».

11. Tests

I

1. Она много путешествует. Летом она ездила во Францию. Она уже вернулась в Москву.
2. Ты читал поэмы Байрона? – Да, мы читали их в прошлом году. – Тебе они нравятся?
3. Ты играешь на пианино? Послушай, Джон играет. Он всегда играет хорошо.
4. Когда мы были в Крыму, мы часами гуляли в горах.
5. Какую книгу ты сейчас читаешь? – Я не читаю книг, я люблю газеты и журналы.
6. Я не видел его в последнее время. – А я только что встретил его. Он шёл в библиотеку.
7. Ты часто ходишь в кино? – Нет, я не был в кино с лета.
8. Я купила это платье 3 года назад. Оно было очень дешёвое. Цены сейчас растут.
9. Тебе купить билеты в театр? – Нет, спасибо. Мама уже купила. Мы идём в театр завтра.
10. Ты будешь свободна сегодня вечером? – Нет, я встречаюсь со своей подругой в 7.

II

1. Ты сейчас делаешь эту работу? – Да, но я только что её начал.
2. В последнее время он не заходил в наш магазин. Я знаю, что он покупает продукты в этом магазине. Он стал очень важным.
3. Ты ездил за город в эти выходные? – Нет, мы были очень заняты. Мы убирали дом.
4. Я ещё не приготовила обед. – Тебе помочь? – Да, спасибо. Гости приходят в 7.
5. Где ты был вчера? Мы искали тебя весь вечер. – Я сидел дома.
6. Ты позвонишь мне? – Конечно, я ведь всегда звоню тебе по вечерам.
7. Ты знаешь этого человека? – Да, я встречала его до войны, но я не видела его с тех пор.
8. Я думаю, тебе понравится это платье. – О, я мечтала о нем весь год.
9. Я хочу пригласить Джима на обед. – Я уже пригласила его. Ты мне вчера сказала об этом.
10. Я часто встречаю этого человека. Вот и сейчас он идёт по улице.

III

1. Вы когда-нибудь бывали в Париже? – Да, я был там в прошлом году. Я часто езжу во Францию.
2. Когда уехала Мэри? – Она уехала до того, как вы позвонили. Она ждала вас целый час.
3. Мы уже встречались. – Когда мы встречались? – Я не помню. По-моему, мы встречались 3 года назад.
4. Мы обедали, когда Джон пришёл. Он не хотел обедать с нами. Он сказал, что уже пообедал. Он ел в 5, а мы всегда обедаем в 7.
5. Чем он занимается? – Он играет в теннис. Он играет очень хорошо. Сейчас он играет во Франции.
6. Вчера, когда я выходил из офиса, шёл дождь. У меня не было зонта. Я не заметил, что начался дождь.
7. Он закончил работу до того, как мы пришли.
8. Мы закончим эксперимент к концу следующей недели.
9. В Англии часто идёт дождь? – Да, когда мы приехали, шёл дождь. – А мы приехали до того, как начались дожди. – А вы когда-нибудь бывали в Лондоне? – Да, я посетил Лондон в прошлом году.
10. Завтра в это же время мы уже будем плыть на пароходе (sail).

IV

1. Он пишет книгу. – Он уже закончил работу? – Да, он закончил её на прошлой неделе.
2. Что вы здесь делаете? – Я жду своего друга. Он работает в этом университете.
3. Дождь ещё не прекратился, когда мы вышли из дома. Дождь шёл целый день.
4. Он студент? – Да, он учится в нашем университете. Он работал на нашем заводе до того, как поступил в наш университет. Сейчас он не работает.
5. Вы часто ходите в театр? – Я люблю театр, но в прошлом году я не ходил в театр. Я болел. Вы видели эту новую пьесу?
6. Вы поедете в Москву на следующей неделе? – Я не знаю. Я жду очень важное письмо из Москвы.
7. Моя сестра ещё не спала, когда я встал. – Вы встаете рано? Когда начинается ваш рабочий день?
8. Не приходите завтра в 2, я буду стирать. – Когда я могу прийти? – Мы обычно пьём чай в 5. Вы хотите зайти в 5?
9. Он обычно играет в теннис очень хорошо, но сегодня он играет плохо. А вы играете в теннис? – Я играл, когда был студентом.
10. Вы уже видели этот фильм? – Да, я видела его на прошлой неделе. – Вы пойдёте со мной в кино завтра?

MODAL VERBS

1. Definition

Modal verbs are used to show the speaker's attitude towards the action. We use them with other verbs. There are 10 modals: ***can***, ***may***, ***must***, ***shall***, ***should***, ***will***, ***would***, ***ought to***, ***need***, ***dare***. Modal verbs are not "complete" verbs. They are called defective because they lack (except *dare* and *need*) compound tenses, the passive voice, the verbals and have some other peculiarities:

1. We cannot use them as *to*-infinitives: *to go*, *to speak*.
2. We do not use the *to*-infinitives after modals:
   - ❑ You **mustn't phone** now. It's late.
3. There is no *-(e)s* in the 3rd person singular:
   - ❑ The boss **can see** you now.

In their **first use** modal verbs have basic meanings which are given in dictionaries:

can/could – ability	❑ I **can** lift 25 kg / I **can** type.
may/might – permission	❑ You **may** leave early.
shall/will/would – prediction	❑ It **will** rain soon.
should/ought to – duty	❑ You **should/ought to** help the old.
must – total obligation	❑ You **must** be quiet.
needn't – no obligation	❑ You **needn't** wait.

The **second use** of modal verbs is to express degrees of certainty or uncertainty.

QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES

Can you play chess?
Must I go there now?
You **shouldn't** miss your classes.
I **can't** understand a word.

THE CONTRACTED FORMS

can't [kɑ:nt]	oughtn't [ɔ:tnt]
couldn't [kudnt]	mayn't [meɪnt]
needn't [ni:dnt]	mustn't [mʌsnt]
shouldn't [ʃudnt]	

2. "Can"

Forms and Meanings

MODAL VERB / Equivalent	PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
can / **to be able to...**	***can*** / **am** / **is** / **are** | able to...	***could*** / **was** / **were** | able to...	– / **will be** able to...

In Its First Meaning *Can* Expresses:

1. Mental, physical, circumstantial ability	**Can** you **lift** this box? He **can solve** the most difficult problems. They **can get** there by bus.
2. Permission ***можете*** + *инф.*	You **can go** now. You **can play** with the boys here.
3. Request	**Can** you **get** me a glass of water? (informal, we know the person very well) **Could** you **get** me a glass of water? (more polite, more formal, used in more distant relationships)
4. Prohibition ***нельзя*** + *инф.*	You **can't cross** the street here.

NOTES:

1. We use *could/couldn't* to describe *"general ability"* in the past:

- ❑ I **could run** very fast when I was a boy.
- ❑ I **could read** when I was 5.

BUT if we mean that someone *managed* to do something in the particular situation, you have to use:

was/were able to do smth (not *could*)

- ❑ The fire spread throughout the building very quickly but everyone **was able to escape**. (= managed to escape)
- ❑ They didn't want to come with us at first but in the end we **were able** (= managed) **to persuade** them.

was/were able to = managed («смог», «удалось»)

The negative *couldn't* is possible in all situations:

- ❑ My grandfather **couldn't swim**.
- ❑ We tried hard but we **couldn't persuade** them.

2. We use *could (do)* in a number of ways:

a) it is a past of *can (do)*, expressing general ability in the past:
- ❑ My grandfather **could speak** five languages.

b) sometimes we use could to speak about possible future actions. In this case it has a present or future meaning:
- ❑ What **shall** we **do** this evening?
  We **could go** to the cinema.
  Мы *могли бы* пойти в кино.
- ❑ When you go to New York, you **could stay** with Linda.
  ...ты *могла бы* остановиться у Линды.

In this meaning the past of *could (do)* is *could have (done)*. We use *could have (done)* to say that we had the ability or opportunity to do something but did not do it:

- ❑ We didn't go out last night. We **could have gone** to the cinema but we decided to stay at home.
  ...*могли бы* пойти в кино, но решили остаться дома.
- ❑ Why did you stay at a hotel in New York? You **could have stayed** with Linda.

3. We often use *can* + *verb* in place of *the Simple Present* with the verbs of perception:
   - ❑ I **can see** a bird in that tree. (= I see)
   - ❑ **Can** you **see** it? (Do you see it?)
   - ❑ I looked up but **couldn't see** anything. (= didn't see)
   - ❑ I **can smell** something burning.
   - ❑ I **can understand** what he means.
   - ❑ I **couldn't understand** what he said.
   - ❑ I **can't see** anyone.

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Explain the meaning of *can* (ability – A, permission – P, request – R, prohibition – Pr, possible action – PA) in the following sentences.**

1. She is unwell, she *can't* leave her room. ...*A*... 2. *Can* I smoke here, Mrs Right? ..... 3. The teacher said they *could* all go home. ..... 4. A policeman arrived and told him he *couldn't* park there. ..... 5. My son is not in town; but he'll be here before long. – *Can* I give him any message? ..... 6. We *can* discuss it now. ..... 7. I *could* never understand what made her behave as she did. ..... 8. If you are tired you *can* lie on the sofa for a bit. ..... 9. We are in charge of this great business. We *cannot* leave our responsibility to others. ..... 10. He was surprised that she *could* paint so well. ..... 11. She is not married, though she *could* marry anybody she chose. .....

2 **(A, B) Complete the sentences, pointing out all the advantages and disadvantages of living in the country.**

The Cottage I've Bought Is Wonderful. I Want to Move in Next Week

Model: *I'll be able* to get my vegetables from the farm nearby.

1. I ..... cycle to work. It's too far.
2. I ..... visit my friends so often as it's a long way from the city.
3. I ..... have friends here for the weekend as I've got a spare room.
4. I ..... sit in the garden when the weather is fine but I ..... go to my tennis club so often. It's just too far away.
5. I ..... enjoy peace and quiet when I need it. But it could be a bit too quiet!



3 **(A, B) Fill in the blanks with *could* or *was/were able to*; *will be able to* or *will not (won't) be able to*.**

1. When her arm is better, she ..... play the piano again. 2. I'm sorry but I .... come to your birthday party next week. 3. He ..... eat everything when the doctor allows him. 4. He suddenly felt ill but he ..... finish his speech, although at the end he could hardly stand. 5. My sister .... go out to dances until she is seventeen. 6. Why do you sit at the back of the class if you can't hear well? You ..... hear better if you sit in the front. 7. He was very strong; he ..... ski all day and dance all night. 8. I was a long way from the stage. I .... see all right but I ..... not hear very well. 9. The town was full of visitors and we didn't know where we would spend the night but at last we ..... find two vacant rooms in a small hotel. 10. Before his illness, he ..... work fourteen hours a day if he had to. 11. When I arrived, everyone was asleep. Fortunately, I ..... wake my sister and she let me in.

4 (B, C) Translate the words in brackets, using the verb *can*.

1. Of course I (могу) ..... translate this article. 2. I think I (мог бы) ..... show you how to do it. 3. You (можно) .... go and tell her about it. 4. (Можно) ..... I see the doctor now? 5. He (мог бы помочь) ..... you but he didn't want to bother. 6. You (можете) ..... easily get there in 20 minutes. 7. You (сможете) ..... do it directly on return. 8. (Можно) ..... I have some cream with my tea? 9. You (нельзя) ..... discuss the subject with your friends. 10. She was in a hurry, she (не могла) ..... wait for us. 11. There is a sign. You (нельзя) .... take pictures here. 12. The swimmer was very tired but he (смог) ..... reach the shore. 13. Before her illness, she (могла) ..... work fourteen hours a day. 14. When they buy a car, they (смогут) .... visit their friends more often.

5 (B, C) Choose the correct alternative.

1. Why did we listen to you? John *can be/could have been* in hospital at the moment instead of lying here and waiting for the ambulance. 2. Excuse me, Madam, *can you/could you* turn off the light, please? 3. I couldn't have *watched/haven't been able to watch* this film for years. It's dishonest! 4. Finally, they *could/were able to* visit their birthplace. 5. You could have *helped/could help* your brother instead of watching TV. 6. The trip insurance cost $700 but I *could buy/was able to buy* it for $650 because my sister worked in the travel industry. 7. *Can you/could you* lend me some money, Dad? 8. I haven't the least notion where your mobile phone is. It *can be/could be* in the bedroom, that's all I know. 9. I wish I had married her, I *could have been/can be* in Italy now. 10. He was *able to find/could find* his sister in the crowd, I don't know how.

6 (A, B) Tell about the things which were possible but did not happen. Complete the sentences using *could* or *could have* with a suitable verb from the box.

join go hurt paint

Model: *I don't know where to go on holiday. I could go to America.*

1. In the holiday I ..... my room but I spent my time with friends instead. 2. You ..... your room blue if you want. 3. I suppose I ..... the tennis club this year. 4. Sam didn t know what to do last night. He ..... to the cinema but he stayed at home. 5. When Sam was climbing that tree, he fell down. He ..... himself badly but he was lucky. He only banged his knee.

7 Translate the sentences into English, using the verb *can*.

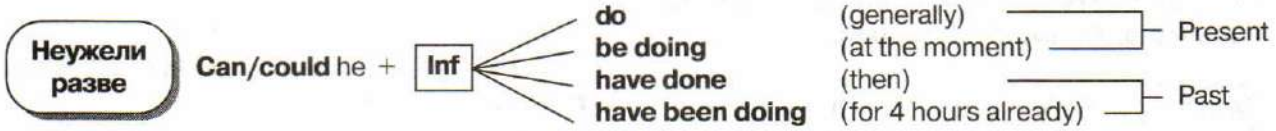
I. (A, B)

1. Он сможет говорить по-французски свободно (fluently), когда вернётся из Парижа. 2. Можно мне взять твою ручку? – Да, пожалуйста. 3. Вы умеете кататься на коньках? 4. Когда он был молодым, он мог пройти 20 километров в день. 5. Никто не мог мне помочь. 6. Ты сможешь сделать эту работу завтра? 7. Я умел плавать, когда мне было пять лет. 8. Ты мог бы перевести этот текст? 9. Эту книгу можно купить в любом магазине. 10. Мы сможем поехать в горы в следующем году.

II. (B, C)

1. Несмотря на шторм, он смог доплыть до берега. 2. Он не мог показать нам расчёты, так как они не были готовы. 3. В комнате темно, я не могу найти свои вещи. 4. Можно мне чаю? 5. Я могу вернуться на автобусе. 6. Он даже не представлял, что она может так хорошо рисовать. 7. Там было так душно, что мы едва могли дышать. 8. Почему ты не можешь признать (admit), что был неправ? 9. Вы можете доказать (prove) его невиновность? 10. Можно повесить это объявление в коридоре?

2.1 *Can* – to Express Strong Doubt or Astonishment



- **Can** he **know** it? – *Неужели* он знает это?
- **Can** he **be working** now? – *Неужели* он сейчас работает?
- **Can** he **have been waiting** for us all this time? – *Неужели* он ждал нас всё это время?



- "Oh!" cried Fleur. "You **can't have done it**!" – *Не может быть*, чтобы вы это сделали!
- She **can't be still waiting**. – *Не может быть*, чтобы она всё ещё ждала вас.

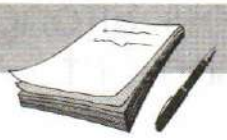
We Can Express Strong Doubt about Negative Statements:

«Неужели он не...», «он не мог не...», «не может быть, чтобы он не...»

Model:

1. *He didn't notice you.*
   a) **Can/could** he **have failed** to notice you? – *Неужели* он *не заметил* вас?
   b) He **can't have failed** to notice you. – Он *не мог не заметить* вас.
   Не может быть, чтобы он *не заметил* вас.
2. *He doesn't like it here.*
   a) **Can** he **dislike** it here? – *Неужели* ему здесь *не нравится*?
   b) He **can't dislike** it here. – *Не может быть, чтобы* ему здесь *не нравилось*.
3. *He didn't see your letter.*
   Can he **have never got** my letter? – *Неужели* он *не получил* моего письма?

EXERCISES



8 (B) Express strong doubt about the statements. Translate the sentences.

Model 1: ❑ He knows English well.
a) Can (could) he know English well?
b) He can't know English well.
❑ He is waiting for somebody.
a) Can he be waiting for somebody?
b) He can't be waiting for somebody.

1. They know how to get there.
.....
2. She is crying.
.....
3. It is Tuesday today.
.....
4. Our children like to clean the house.
.....
5. My grandfather plays football.
.....

Model 2: ❑ She knew about it.
a) Can she have known about it?
b) She can't have known anything...

1. There was a public meeting in the town.
.....
2. He was dismissed.
.....
3. He has greatly changed.
.....
4. I don't believe it. Phil would have never done such a thing.
.....

9 (B, C) Express strong doubt. Use the appropriate Infinitive.

1. Can it (be) ..... so late now? 2. Can he (tell) ..... the truth then? 3. Surely it can't (be) ..... Jim. I know him quite well. 4. But she can't (say) .... it. I am sure she didn't mean it. 5. I'll try to do it myself. It can't (be) ..... so difficult after all. 6. Who told you about it? You can't (know) ..... about it before. 7. Could it (be) ..... a joke? She felt rather hurt. 8. You can't (see) .... him at the meeting. He was ill then. 9. He can't (forget) ..... your address, he has visited you several times.

10 (B, C) Translate into Engish, using the verb *can*.

1. Не может быть, чтобы он опоздал. Он всегда такой пунктуальный. 2. Он не мог прочитать эту книгу так быстро; она трудна для него. 3. Вряд ли она забыла об этом; я об этом ей напоминала только вчера. 4. Неужели вы не помните, что я возвратил вам эту книгу? 5. Разве мог кто-нибудь подумать, что эта команда займёт первое место? 6. Неужели они проиграли? 7. Не мог он этого сказать. 8. Неужели было так холодно? 9. Не может быть, чтобы он был дома сейчас. 10. Неужели он так хорошо знает китайский язык? 11. Неужели он отказался поехать туда? 12. Не может быть, чтобы он потерял эти документы. 13. Не может быть, чтобы они уехали, не попрощавшись с нами.

11 (C) Express strong doubt about these negative statements.

Model: ❑ He didn't notice you.
Can he have failed to notice you? –
Неужели он *не* заметил ... ?
He can't have failed to notice you. –
Он *не мог не* заметить...
❑ He doesn't like it here.
Can he dislike it here?
He can't dislike it here.

1. You didn't understand me.
.....
2. She didn't like the play.
.....
3. They don't trust him.
.....
4. They didn't notice the mistake.
.....
5. They didn't receive the telegram in time.
.....
6. They didn't realise the importance of the event.
.....
7. She didn't see you.
.....

12 (C) Translate into English.

1. Неужели вы его не увидели? 2. Не мог он этого не заметить. 3. Неужели вы об этом не знали? 4. Не может быть, чтобы он не одобрял вашего решения. 5. Не может быть, чтобы она вам об этом не рассказала. 6. Неужели он верит (не верит) этому? 7. Не может быть, чтобы ей не нравились эти картины. 8. Не может быть, чтобы я неправильно вас понял. 9. Не может быть, чтобы она не нашла вашего дома. 10. Неужели вы не нашли мою книгу?

2.2 Revision

13 Translate into English.

I

(A)

1. Ты можешь говорить по-французски? – Нет, только по-английски. 2. Ты можешь кататься на лыжах? – Да, но я не смогу принять участие в соревнованиях (competition). 3. Я не смог перевести этот текст, хотя вы объяснили все правила (rules). 4. Ты представляешь, моя мама сама смогла починить утюг. 5. Здесь нельзя останавливаться. 6. Когда мы сдадим экзамены, мы сможем поехать в деревню. 7. Он не смог сдать последний экзамен, он заболел. 8. Вы не можете идти домой, вы не закончили работу. – Я старалась (try hard), но не смогла её закончить.

II

(B, C)

1. Я не могу закончить работу сегодня. 2. Можете ли вы перевести эту статью на французский язык? 3. Я думаю, что я смогу помочь вам. 4. Он смог починить свой велосипед. 5. Мы смогли закончить работу за пять дней. 6. Не может быть, чтобы там сейчас было холодно. 7. Я очень рад, что смог помочь ему. 8. Вряд ли он забыл о своём обещании. 9. Я знал, что он сможет сделать эту работу. 10. Разве вам не сообщили о заседании? 11. Эту работу невозможно сделать в такой короткий срок. 12. Неужели вы не узнали меня? Мы учились с вами в одной школе. 13. Эти цифры можно найти в любом справочнике. 14. Не может быть, чтобы он так и не появился (пришёл). 15. Неужели твоим родителям не понравилась эта милая девушка? 16. Почему вы не пришли вчера в контору? Вы могли (могли бы) поговорить с директором по этому вопросу.

A J☺ke

– Waiter, I **can't** eat this soup.
– I'm sorry, sir. I'll get the manager.
(Manager arrives.)
– I'm afraid I **can't** eat this soup.
– I'm sorry, sir. I'll call the cook.
(Cook arrives.)
– I'm sorry but I **can't** eat this soup.
– Why not, sir?
– Because I don't have a spoon!



3. "May"

Forms and Meanings

MODAL VERB Equivalent	PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
may **to be allowed to...**	***may*** **am / is / are** | **allowed to...**	***might*** **was / were** | **allowed to...**	— **will be allowed to...**

We Use *May/Might*:

1. to ask permission / give permission ***(можно)***	**May** I **borrow** your umbrella, please? You **may see** the garden if you like.
2. to talk about possible happenings in the future ***(возможно, может быть)***	I'm not sure where to go for my holiday. I **may go** to Italy. (= perhaps *I will go*) The weather forecast is not very good. It **might rain** this afternoon. (= perhaps *it will rain*)
3. to talk about possible plans ***(могу, возможно)***	I am going to Italy in July. (for sure) I **may/might go** to Italy in July. (it is possible)
4. reproach (only *might*) ***(мог бы)***	You are becoming forgetful. You **might have reminded** me about it.

NOTES:

1. We also use *can/could* to ask or refuse permission.
Can is the commonest and most informal:
- ❑ You're visiting your friend and want to make some coffee. You say:
  Can I **make** myself a cup of coffee?

Could is more polite than *can*:
- ❑ **Could** I **make** a phone call, please?

2. Permission/prohibition in other tenses than the Present or Future.
May is not a "complete verb", so we use *to be allowed/to be permitted* to make up for the missing tenses:
- ❑ The children **were allowed to** watch TV last night.
- ❑ He **has** just **been allowed to** go home after 3 hours at the police station.
- ❑ His doctor **hadn't allowed** him **to** take any exercises in the year before he died.

3. We refer to "some other authority" that gives/refuses permission like this:
- ❑ You **are allowed to/not allowed to**
- ❑ You **are permitted to/not permitted to** — smoke here.
- ❑ You **mustn't/you are forbidden to**

We can ask for permission like this:
- ❑ **Can/could/may/might** I borrow your umbrella?

- ❑ **Do you think I could/might** borrow your umbrella?
- ❑ **I wonder if I could/might** borrow your umbrella?

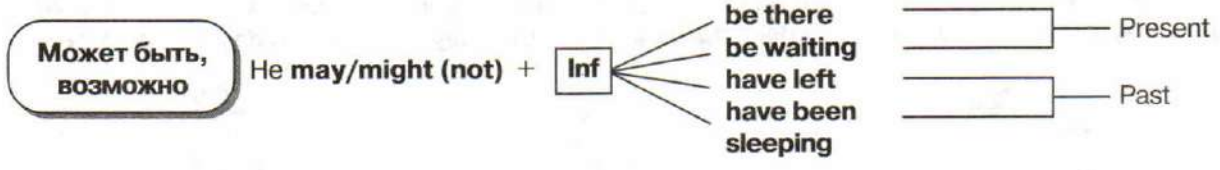
4. *Might* instead of *may* is used because of the Sequence of Tenses:
- ❑ "**May I read** the letter?" – He asked if he **might read** the letter.

The Negative Answer to the Question Containing a Request for Permission

1. No, don't, please. **I'm afraid not.**	*Don't* is less strict than *may not*. It is rather asking somebody not to do something.
2. No, you may not. ***(нет, нельзя = не смей)***	Actually prohibiting something.
3. No, you must not. ***(запрещено, нельзя)***	Means that it is not the person who prohibits the action but there are facts, rules or circumstances prohibiting it.
4. No, you can't. **I'm sorry, you can't.**	It denotes the absence of possibility depending on circumstances, rules, laws, etc.

3.1 *May* – to Express Uncertainty, Strong Doubt

In its second **meaning** *may/might* is used to express uncertainty, supposition implying strong doubt. We use *may/might* when we want to indicate that we are not certain whether something is possible but we think it is. *May* denoting uncertainty is used with all forms of the Infinitive.



NOTES:

1. There is no important difference between *may* and *might* in this meaning. Sometimes *might* expresses greater uncertainty than *may*:
- ❑ He **may/might be** in his office now. (I'm not sure.)
- ❑ I can't find my bag anywhere. – You **might have left** it in the shop.

2. We can express uncertainty, strong doubt about negative statements:

«Он, возможно, не...»

- ❑ He **may not know** about it. – Он, может быть, не знает об этом.
- ❑ He **may not have noticed** you in that crowd. – Он, возможно, не заметил тебя в толпе.

EXERCISES

1 **(A, B) Rewrite these sentences, using *may* or *might*. Where two answers are possible, write them both.**

1. Maybe we'll get the letter tomorrow.
   We may/might get the letter tomorrow.
2. Do you think I could have one of these cakes?
   May I have one of these cakes?
3. Maybe there is some milk in the fridge.
   .....
4. Would you mind if I ask you your address?
   .....
5. Visitors are not allowed to stay in the hospital after 10 p.m.
   .....
6. Do you think I could have one of these pictures?
   .....
7. I think Mother is still at work.
   .....
8. Is it all right if I use your phone?
   .....
9. Maybe she's moved to New York.
   .....
10. There is a possibility that she'll be invited to the party.
    .....

2 **(A, B) Fill in the blanks with *can/could* or *may/might* (or the negative forms).**

I

1. ..... we leave the room? Is the lesson over? 2. ..... you stand on your head? – I ..... when I was at school but I ..... now. 3. ..... I smoke here? – No, you ....., smoking is not allowed. 4. ..... you type? – Yes, I ..... type but I ..... do shorthand. 5. ..... I come in? – Please do. 6. Where ..... I buy fruit? 7. He ..... answer the teacher's questions yesterday but he ..... answer the same questions today. 8. When I first went to Spain, I ..... read Spanish but I ..... speak it. 9. There was a lot of noise in the street last night, and I ..... sleep. 10. ..... I borrow your umbrella? 11. The boys ..... wait for him, they have no time for that. 12. It's very cold. ..... I shut the windows?

II

1. I ..... be away from home tomorrow. 2. He ..... have been hurt. 3. It was so dark, we ..... see nothing. 4. ..... you lend me a shilling? 5. ..... you hear what he is saying? 6. ..... this be true? 7. Mother says I ..... not go out. 8. Sorry, Sir, you ..... smoke here. 9. ..... I have some more bread? 10. The letters ..... have been written in this very house.

3 **(B, C) Sometimes you see people in the street and you think you know where they are going. Where are these people going? What do you think they are doing? Use *may/might do/be doing/have done*.**



1. *be on his way to*



2. *do the shopping*



3. *finish his work*



4. *go to the theatre*



5. *(just) arrive to the city*



6. *wait for his date*



7. *go to her office*

1. He might be on his way to the dentist.
2. She might have done the shopping.
3. .....
4. .....
5. .....
6. .....
7. .....

4 (A, B) Translate the sentences.

1. Вы, возможно, встретите его на станции. 2. Может быть, он оставил нам записку. 3. Вы, возможно, забыли свои перчатки дома. 4. Она, возможно, поймёт это позже. 5. Может быть, дверь была не заперта. 6. Возможно, они не хотят видеть нас. 7. Она, может быть, напишет вам. 8. Она, возможно, всё уже забыла.

5 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Можно мне здесь подождать? – Да, конечно. 2. Ты мог бы остаться дома хотя бы на один вечер. 3. Может быть, он уже ушёл. 4. Может быть, он ещё ждёт. 5. Студенты могут получить эту книгу в библиотеке. 6. Иногда отсюда можно видеть море. 7. Могу я помочь вам? 8. Можно мне пользоваться словарём? 9. Нельзя пользоваться словарем во время контрольной работы. 10. Вы могли бы приходить вовремя. Вы всегда опаздываете. 11. Я не могу вспомнить его адрес. – Неужели ты даже улицу забыл? 12. Здесь нельзя купаться. 13. Давай позвоним Майку, нам может понадобиться его совет. 14. Они, может быть, приедут завтра.

6 (B) Underline the correct word(s).

1. *Can/Might* I have an apple, Mum? – Of course, help yourself. 2. Excuse me, Sir. *Can/May* I leave the room? – Yes, but don't be too long. 3. *Am I allowed/Might* I borrow these dictionaries for a moment, Sir? – Certainly, take whatever you need. 4. *Can/Might* I use your pen, Bob? – Of course, you *may/might*. 5. *May I/Am I allowed* to smoke in the office? – I am afraid you are not.

4. "Must"

Forms and Meanings

MODAL VERB / Equivalent	PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE
must	***must***	—	—
have to...	**have / has** **to...**	**had to...**	**will have to...**
be to...	**am / is / are** **to...**	**was / were** **to...**	—

Must Expresses:

1. obligation, necessity *(= have to...)* ***(должен)***	Well, it's 10 o'clock, I **must/have to go** now.
2. a command, an urgent request **(побудительное предложение)**	You **must leave** the room at once. – *Немедленно выйдите* из комнаты.
3. prohibition ***(нельзя, запрещается)***	You **mustn't speak** to a prisoner in a foreign language.

To Have To Expresses:

obligation or necessity arising out of circumstances ***(должен = приходится, вынужден)***	I **have to get up** at 6 every day. My working day begins at 8. Last night Den suddenly became ill. We **had to call** the doctor.

To Be To Expresses:

1. an agreement or arrangement, part of a plan ***(должен)*** (see "Talking about the Future")	We **were to meet** at the entrance to the theatre at a quarter to nine. They **are to go** to Spain in July.
2. a strict order/prohibition **(побудительное предложение)**	You **are to go** straight to your room. – *Сейчас же иди* в свою комнату. You **are not to get** your feet wet. – *Не смей* мочить ноги.
3. something thought as unavoidable ***(предстоит, суждено)***	Sally wanted Morris to be friendly with her but evidently it **was not to be**. He went about thinking of his life and what **was to become** of him.

NOTES:

1. The absence of necessity is expressed by *needn't*:

- **Must I go** there tomorrow? — **Yes**, you **must**. / **No**, you **needn't**. (Нет, не нужно.)

2. There is sometimes a difference between *must* and *have to*. With *must* the speaker is giving his own feelings, saying he thinks it necessary:

- I **must visit** my friend. He is ill.
- I **must write** to Ann. I haven't written to her for ages.

3. We can only use *must* to talk about the present and future; *have to* can be used in the three tense forms:

- I **had to** go to hospital.
- I am afraid I can't come tomorrow. I **will have to** work late.

We use *do/does/did* with *have to* in Present and Past questions and negative sentences:

- **Did** you **have to walk** all the way home?
- No, I **didn't have to walk**, I took a tram.

EXERCISES



1 **(B) Translate the sentences, explain the use of *must* or *have to* in them.**

1. I must go and lay the table myself. 2. We had to walk all the way to the station. 3. She had to change her shoes after walking in the garden. 4. She pretended she didn't understand anything. Mother had to tell her plainly what she thought of it. 5. We'll have to run. 6. The shoes are a size too small. I'll have to go to the shop and have them changed. 7. She was running high temperature. I had to put her to bed at once. 8. You'll have to do something about it. 9. Someone will have to stay and warn them.

2 **(A) What Jenny must/mustn't do. When Tom rings up his friend Jenny, she tells him what she *must* or *mustn't do*.**

1. Don't go to school.
2. Stay in bed.
3. Don't watch too much TV.
4. Take your temperature every morning.
5. Take your medicine.
6. Come to my surgery again on Monday at 4 o'clock.
7. Don't play with your friends.



1. I mustn't go to school.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

3 **(A, B) Complete the sentences with *mustn't* or the correct form of *not have to*.**

1. You mustn't smoke at petrol stations. 2. She doesn't have to come if she doesn't want to. 3. We ..... miss the train. It is the last one. 4. I ..... do this work tonight. I can do it tomorrow. 5. I ..... clean the floor today. I cleaned it yesterday. 6. I .... forget to lock all the doors before we go away. 7. They ..... sit in the sun for too long. They might get burnt.

4 **(A, B) Use the infinitives in brackets with *must*, *have* + *Infinitive* if the action is only necessary; with *be* + *Infinitive* if it is expected.**

1. This is Dora. She (share) ..... your room. 2. I must leave you now. I (do) ..... the cooking. 3. Who (meet) ..... you there? 4. I'm afraid you (go) ..... there alone, darling. I've such a headache! 5. When the lecture (begin) ..... ? 6. Two more apartment houses (be built) ..... here. 7. Well, children, who (do) ..... the dishes to-night? 8. Sorry, I've got to rush. I (meet) ..... Mother at the metro station at 6 sharp. 9. I (write) ..... a letter to my sister. I am worried about her. 10. She (wear) ..... glasses as her eyesight is very weak. 11. It is raining. You (put on) ..... your raincoat. 12. It was planned that we should wait for them after the performance. We (wait) ..... for them at the entrance.

The Functions of the Verb *to Have* in a Sentence

1. The full verb	«иметь»	**(*have* + noun)**	❑ I **have** a dog.
2. Auxiliary verb		**(*have* + Participle II)**	❑ I **have done** the work.
3. The equivalent of the modal verb *must*	«должен»	**(*have* + *to*-Infinitive)**	❑ I **have to do** this work on time.

5 **(B, C) Analyse the meaning of the verb *to have*.**

1. King Lear had three daughters. 2. Have a look at the picture. I think it is a Magritte. 3. I have to answer many letters. 4. I have some information to pass on to you. 5. During our trip we had an accident in which I had my leg badly hurt. 6. He has just come from abroad. 7. You will have to leave at 6 to catch the train. 8. I have never made a speech in my life.

6 **(A, B) Change the following into the interrogative and negative.**

1. Mother has to cook dinner after work.
   Does Mother have to cook dinner? Mother doesn't have to...
2. He had to sit up late with this work.
   .....
3. You will have to get up very early tomorrow.
   .....
4. The girl had to take care of her younger sisters and brothers.
   .....
5. She will have to do it once over again.
   .....
6. These documents have to be filed.
   .....
7. They had to cover the whole distance on foot.
   .....
8. We will have to speak to him about it.
   .....

7 (B, C) Translate the sentences, showing the absence of necessity.

1. Ему не надо приходить сюда каждый день. 2. Мне не нужно будет сдавать этот экзамен. 3. Мне не надо было поливать цветы, потому что ночью прошёл дождь и земля была ещё мокрая. 4. Тебе нечего торопиться. Она только что позвонила и сказала, что выезжает. 5. Я хорошо отдохнула в воскресенье, так как мне не надо было заниматься. 6. Мне не надо вставать рано сегодня. У меня сегодня выходной день (day off).

8 (B, C) Translate the words in brackets.

1. He (пришлось) ..... take the documents to the police station. 2. You (должны) ..... try to find the mistake and correct it. 3. If you want to become a good football player you (должны) ..... be an all-round athlete. 4. I (вынужден был) .... read the letter twice before I understood it. 5. When (должны) ..... they dock? Have they written? 6. You (должны) .... think of others. 7. The lecture (должна) ..... begin at 8 o'clock. 8. It has been arranged that she (должна) .... come and help the old lady. 9. It is necessary that you should do it. You simply (должны) ..... do it. 10. If you (должен) ..... meet Mother at 6, you must hurry.

9 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

I

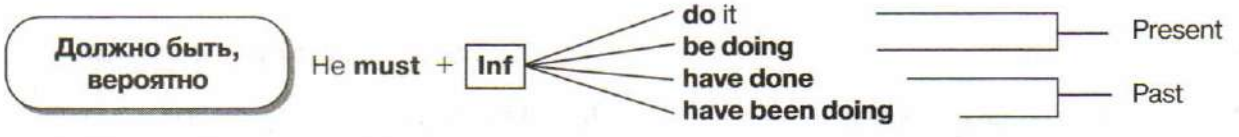
1. Мне надо видеть его сегодня же. 2. Мне пришлось идти туда самому. 3. Вам придётся немного подождать. 4. Когда же он должен прийти? 5. Вы должны вставать рано каждый день? 6. Мы должны были встретиться в театре. 7. Мне не пришлось ждать его долго. 8. Вам придётся поговорить с ней. 9. Им пришлось очень долго идти пешком. 10. Ему надо переписать сочинение. 11. Когда вы должны быть в университете завтра? 12. Мне надо идти туда сейчас?

II

1. Вам придётся написать ему ещё раз. 2. Им пришлось долго ждать автобуса. 3. Я должен был окончить работу вчера, но не смог этого сделать. 4. Чья очередь (turn)? Кто должен идти за водой? 5. Тебе придётся взять пальто. Становится холоднее. 6. Было уже поздно, и нам пришлось поехать на метро. 7. Подожди немного, я должна дочитать главу до конца. 8. Вам придётся зайти позже. Её ещё нет. 9. Тебе обязательно надо ехать сегодня? 10. Когда он должен приехать? 11. Отец не разрешает ей приходить домой поздно, она должна быть дома к девяти часам каждый вечер. 12. Вчера вечером автобус был полупустой (half empty), и мне не пришлось стоять.

4.1 *Must* – to Express Probability, Near Certainty

In its second meaning *must* denotes probability or supposition bordering on assurance, almost a conviction (probably, obviously, evidently). We use *must* or *must have (done)*, when we are fairly sure that something is the case. In this meaning it is used in affirmative sentences only.



- He **must be** at home at this hour.
- Oh! You **must be** Sylvia's husband.
- We **must have taken** the wrong road.

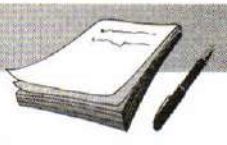
In negative sentences and sentences referring to the future supposition is expressed by means of the modal words *evidently*, *probably*:

- **Evidently**, she didn't know my address.
- She will **probably** come tomorrow.
- She **is not likely** to come so late.

Compare the Following Patterns:

TIME OF THE ACTION	NECESSITY	NEAR CERTAINTY
PRESENT	**Must wait** *Должен* ждать **Must know** *Должен* знать	**Must be waiting** *Должно быть*, ждёт **Must know** *Должно быть*, знает
PAST	**Had to wait** *Должен был* ждать *Пришлось* ждать **Had to know** *Должен был* знать *Надо было* знать	**Must + have been waiting** *Должно быть*, ждал **Must + have waited** *Должно быть*, подождал **Must have known** *Должно быть*, знал
FUTURE	**Will have to wait** *Придётся* ждать **Will have to help** *Придётся* помочь	

EXERCISES



10 **(A, B) In the following statements of near certainty change the form of the Infinitive to refer to the past. Add appropriate time references.**

Model:
- They *must know* him.
  Должно быть, они его *знают*.
  They *must have known* him, then.
  Должно быть, они его *знали*.
- They *must be waiting* for you.
  Должно быть, они *ждут* вас.
  They *must have been waiting* for you yesterday.
  Должно быть, они *ждали* вас вчера.

1. It must be raining.
   .....
2. She must be pleased about it.
   .....
3. She must be really fond of you.
   .....
4. They must be always trying to help him.
   .....
5. She must know nothing about it.
   .....
6. She must be out shopping.
   .....

7. This must be the prettiest garden in the village.
.....
8. She must be the youngest child in her class.
.....

11 (B, C) Paraphrase the following sentences, using *must* + *Infinitive* to express near certainty. Use the Simple Infinitive when speaking about the present, the Perfect Infinitive when speaking about the past.

Model: ❑ Of course, he is somewhere here. – He *must be* somewhere here.
❑ Certainly, she knew that something was wrong. – She *must have known* that something was wrong.

1. I am sure the information was wrong.
.....
2. She was obviously upset by something.
.....
3. Probably, he recognized you by your photo in the papers.
.....
4. He is sure to be in at this time.
.....
5. Of course, she is trying to help you.
.....
6. She is certain to be waiting for you at home.
.....
7. Probably, the play is over by now.
.....
8. There is nobody in. Evidently, they have gone shopping.
.....
9. No doubt, she knew what she was about to do.
.....
10. I'm sure she is very fond of the child.
.....
11. They are sure to have taken the wrong turning.
.....
12. Probably, the dog was hungry.
.....
9. Somebody must be trying to get you on the phone.
.....
10. The children must be at school now.
.....

12 (B, C) Write comments with *must* after the following sentences.

1. You have not eaten for the whole day? (you/starve) You must be starving.
2. They have been travelling all night? (they/be exhausted)
.....
3. He has passed his exam? (he/delighted)
.....
4. Your wife is in hospital? (you/very worried)
.....
5. Your son has won a scholarship? (you/very proud of him)
.....

13 (B, C) Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1. George must (be) ..... pleased that he has passed his examination. 2. I found this baby bird at the foot of the tree. It must (fall) ..... out from a nest. 3. If Fred left here at four o'clock, he must (be) ..... home by now. 4. Look, there's a tree right across the road! It must (be) ..... blown down by the gale last night. 5. I sat on a seat in the park and now my coat is covered with green stripes. The paint must (be) ..... wet. 6. I don't know at what time I went to bed last night, but it was late. It must (be) ..... after midnight. 7. Look, the streets are wet; it must (rain) ..... now. 8. He must (be) ..... very careless if he makes such mistakes. 9. The baby woke up when she went into the bedroom. She must (make) ..... noise. 10. The taxi-driver got to the airport in half an hour. He must (drive) ..... very fast. 11. He never got the letter. I must (send) ..... to the wrong address.

14 (A, B) Make assumptions. Complete the sentences, using the words from the box. Translate the sentences into Russian.

can't
must have done
might

1. Someone ate all the chocolate cakes before the party started.
John ..... it, he wasn't there.
Doris .... it, she likes chocolate very much.
Fred .... it, he's got chocolate all over his face.



2. Someone stole $1,000,000 from the bank.
Anna ..... it, she wanted to buy a big new house.
Thomas ..... it, he'd never do a thing like that.
Diana ..... it, she ran away to South America last night.

3. Someone broke the window in the neighbour's house.
Christine ..... it, she was at home all day.
Paul ..... it, he's got bits of glass in his hair.
The boys ..... it, they were playing football near there.



15 (B, C) We are all consumers and should know our rights. Fill in *may*, *must*, *can* in the Consumer Protection Act.

§ 223. A merchant ..... show the price clearly on everything in his store.
§ 224. No merchant, manufacturer, advertiser ..... charge more than the advertised price.
§ 231. No merchant, manufacturer, advertiser ..... advertise a product when he doesn't have enough in stock.
§ 248. No commercial advertising ..... be directed at people under 13 years at age.

16 (B, C) Translate the following negative sentences into English.

Model 1: ❑ Она, *должно быть*, *не* дала ему возможности возразить.
She must have given him no opportunity to object.

1. Должно быть, он не сделал ошибки.
.....
2. Должно быть, они не обедали.
.....
3. Должно быть, она не имела опыта.
.....
4. Должно быть, он не дал ответа.
.....
5. Должно быть, они не принимают мер.
.....
6. Должно быть, она не обращает внимания на это.
.....
7. Должно быть, у них нет книг.
.....
8. Он, должно быть, не получил ответа.
.....
9. Должно быть, денег за работу они не получили.
.....
10. Она, должно быть, не старалась (take the trouble) сделать это правильно.
.....

Model 2:
- ❑ *Должно быть*, он об этом *не* знал. *Evidently, he didn't know about it.*
- ❑ Он, *вероятно*, *не* знает. *He probably doesn't know.*

1. Должно быть, они ещё не пришли.
   .....
2. Вероятно, они этого не знают.
   .....
3. По-видимому, это не было сделано вовремя.
   .....
4. Вероятно, это не здесь.
   .....
5. Это, должно быть, не заняло много времени.
   .....
6. Должно быть, он не придёт завтра.
   .....

17 (C) Translate the sentences.

1. Должно быть, он хорошо знает язык. 2. Должно быть, он ещё здесь. 3. По-видимому, он унёс бумаги с собой. 4. Очевидно, здесь уже кто-то был. 5. Вероятно, они над нами смеются. 6. Должно быть, они тогда жили здесь. 7. Должно быть, идёт дождь. 8. Вероятно, дождь уже прекратился. 9. Должно быть, он как раз чинил пробки (fuse).

18 (B, C) Translate into English, using the verb *to have* in its modal meaning.

1. Мне сейчас приходится много работать, так как я болела и отстала от группы.
2. Вам придется поговорить с ним лично.
3. Нам пришлось переждать дождь на станции.
4. Я вынужден был извиниться, хотя мне это было неприятно.
5. Книгу необходимо переплести, иначе некоторые страницы могут потеряться.
6. Вам приходится очень рано вставать, не так ли?

4.2 Revision

19 (B, C) Paraphrase the sentences, using the verb *must*.

1. Probably, that building in the distance is the station. That building in the distance must be the station. 2. The boy was evidently reading something funny. He was smiling all the time. 3. They have most likely not realized what opportunity they were losing. 4. I shan't bother you any longer; no doubt you are tired of my talking. 5. I see something is eating him. He looks worried. 6. It was clear the family were expecting some guests: Mother was bustling about the house tidying up the rooms. 7. He surely did not find out the real reason for their silence. 8. I am sure he has got all he needed.

20 (B, C) Combine the verb *must* with the proper form of the Infinitive in brackets.

1. I feel I must (to do) ..... something before it is too late. 2. You must (to follow) ..... my advice. There is no other way out for you. 3. "The hotels must (to do) ..... a tremendous business," old Jolyon thought. "A few years ago there had been none of these big hotels." 4. She must (to be) ..... angry with you. She does not even look in your direction. 5. She must (to get) ..... angry with me. She left without saying good-bye. 6. Mary must (to be) ..... ill, otherwise she would have come. 7. She turned pale. She must (get frightened) ..... .

21 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Я должна прочесть эту книгу. 2. Она, должно быть, читает эту книгу. 3. Мама была больна, и мне пришлось готовить обед. 4. Должно быть, она готовила обед, когда пришёл брат. 5. Я должен был

зайти в деканат. 6. Должно быть, он заходил в деканат. 7. Вы должны поговорить с ней. 8. Должно быть, он сейчас разговаривает по-английски. 9. Мне пришлось написать об этом сестре. 10. Она, должно быть, написала сестре. 11. Она, должно быть, писала сестре, когда вы её увидели.

22 (C) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Она, должно быть, ждёт нас в университете. 2. Она должна ждать нас в университете. 3. Доктор сказал, что он должен жить на юге. 4. Он, должно быть, живёт на юге. 5. Он должен много читать вслух, чтобы исправить своё произношение. 6. Он, должно быть, много читает вслух; у него хорошее произношение. 7. Я должен оставаться здесь до зимы. 8. Она, должно быть, гостит у своих друзей, так как она писала, что проведёт отпуск у них. 9. Они, должно быть, ждут меня, а я никак не могу дать им знать о себе. 10. Книга распродана; надо её поискать в букинистических магазинах. 11. Он, по всей вероятности, забыл, что обещал прийти. 12. Они, наверно, пишут сочинение уже около двух часов и скоро должны закончить.

23 (C) Translate into English using the verbs *must*, *to be (to)*, *to have (to)*. (Dictation-translation)

1. Сказал ли преподаватель, что мы должны выучить этот текст наизусть? 2. Я не знал, что этот текст не надо учить наизусть. 3. Не шумите: дети, должно быть, спят. 4. Никто, наверно, не сказал ему об этом. 5. Они должны были прийти в 5, а уже 6 часов. 6. Они, наверно, забыли, что должны были прийти в 5 часов. 7. Надеюсь, вам не пришлось долго ждать, да? 8. Надеюсь, нам не придётся ждать.

24 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Спектакль должен был начаться в 6 часов, но его пришлось отложить, так как один актёр заболел. 2. Мне надо было (пришлось) остаться дома вчера, так как у меня было очень много работы. 3. Вы должны вставать рано каждый день? 4. Мы договорились встретиться в театре. Он должен был приехать к половине восьмого и ждать меня у входа. 5. Он вчера был дома, так как ему не нужно было идти в университет. 6. Я вернулся домой раньше обычного, так как мои друзья должны были зайти ко мне в 7 часов. 7. Я должен был закончить эту работу вчера, но не смог этого сделать. Мне придётся закончить её сегодня. 8. В котором часу вы должны быть в университете завтра? 9. Ей пришлось перепечатывать письмо несколько раз. Она, должно быть, устала и сделала много ошибок. 10. Это, должно быть, магазин, там много людей. 11. Вы бледны, вы, вероятно, устали. 12. Вода холодная, озеро, должно быть, очень глубокое.

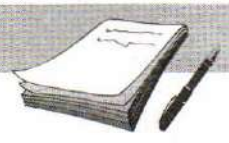
5. "Should" and "Ought to"

There is hardly any difference between these verbs, very often they are interchangeable. There is a difference in construction: *ought* is always followed by the *to*-Infinitive. Moral obligation or duty is more often expressed by *ought to*. It is a little stronger than *should*.

Forms and Meanings

MEANING		EXAMPLES
1. moral obligation	**Present/ Future**	A man **should help** his parents when they become old.
2. advice		You **should be** more careful.
3. disapproval		You **shouldn't treat** me like this.
4. criticism of the past action, disapproval	**Past**	She was feeling unwell yesterday, she **shouldn't have gone** to her office.
5. reproach		You can't remember what I said, you **should have listened** more carefully.
6. regret		It was his birthday yesterday. I **should have sent** him a birthday card.

EXERCISES



1 **(B) Analyse the meaning of the modal verb *should* and translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. He looked more than ever out of place; he should have stayed at home. 2. The children were out dancing when they should have been learning their lessons. 3. "I am having trouble with my leg." – "I see. Well, I think you should go and see the doctor I know." 4. I'll speak to Maurice. He should not behave like that. 5. He came out of the water, smiling. "You should have come earlier," he said. 6. You should have chosen a more suitable time to tell me that dreadful news.

2 **(A, B) Fill in the blanks with *should* or *shouldn't*. Translate the sentences into Russian. Mind the meaning of *should/shouldn't*.**

1. You ..... work more; you ..... miss the lessons. 2. What are you doing here? You ..... be in bed. It is very late. 3. That hat doesn't suit you; you ..... wear it. 4. There are too many accidents. Everyone ..... be much more careful. 5. You ..... have followed the instructions of your coach. Then you would have won the game. 6. She told her children that they ..... always say "Please" and "Thank you". 7. It is dark in the room, you ..... switch on the light.

3 **(B) Make remarks according to the model.**

Model: A.: I only told Peter.
B.: *You shouldn't have told anyone.*

1. I only asked Mike.
   .....
2. I only invited Jack.
   .....
3. I only argued with Tom.
   .....
4. I only discussed it with Alec.
   .....
5. I only talked about it with Arthur.
   .....
6. I only wrote to Bill.
   .....
7. I only complained about Mark.
   .....
8. I only woke George.
   .....

4 **(B, C) Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. I don't feel well now. I should (remember) ..... to take the medicine yesterday. 2. Children should (obey) ..... their parents. 3. It's three o'clock and I'm feeling very hungry; I should (eat) ..... more for lunch. 4. The little boy was playing with his father's typewriter and of course he broke it; he shouldn't (allow) ..... him to play with it. 5. I was very tired last summer and I should (take) ..... a holiday but there was too much work to do. 6. When he went for a walk he should (take) ..... his umbrella, it looked like rain (but he didn't) ..... . 7. The workmen are very slow; the job should (finish) ..... a week ago. 8. You shouldn't (go) ..... out yesterday without a coat. No wonder you caught cold. 9. He should (check) ..... that his brakes were working properly (but he didn't) ..... . 10.Tom's had another accident. It sounds like Tom's fault. He should (wait) ..... till the main road was clear.

5 **(C) Fill in the blanks with *must*, *should* or *ought to*. Use the correct form of the Infinitive.**

1. Your questions surprise me, you (know) ..... this. 2. You (to be) ..... absent for such a long time. Everyone forgot you. 3. Though it is a very unpleasant mission, I feel I (tell) ..... you the truth. 4. We had a wonderful time at that party. You (to be) ..... there. 5. Let's tell him all as it is. He (understand) ..... . 6. You (apologize) ..... when you saw that his feelings were hurt. 7. She is a very experienced doctor. You (to consult) ..... her. 8. She (not to say) ..... such things in the child's presence. Now you see the results. 9. I (know) ..... that it might come to that. 10. If they had been warned in time, they (be) ..... there by now. 11. He gave you just the feeling of assurance, of confidence that a doctor (to give) ..... .

6 **(C) Fill in the blanks with *ought to*, *to have to*.**

1. Don't contradict her, you ..... to respect her age. 2. She is not a bad sort, if somewhat capricious; so you sometimes ..... to put up with her whims. 3. The situation grew awkward. He felt that something ..... to be done, or else the party would break up.

7 **(C) Fill in the blanks with either *should* or *must*. Translate into Russian.**

1. a) You look fresh! You ..... have had a good sleep at night.
   b) You look tired! You ..... have a good sleep at night.
2. a) They ..... have studied the subject more thoroughly; they will regret it later on.
   b) They ..... have studied the subject thoroughly; they answered every question.
3. a) You ..... have ignored the traffic regulations. That's why you were fined.
   b) You ..... have followed the traffic regulations, then you would not have been fined.
4. a) He ..... be working at his problem now.
   b) He ..... work at the problem, it hasn't been solved yet.
5. a) I ..... have taken Grandfather's spectacles. I cannot see anything through them.
   b) I ..... have taken my opera-glasses. I don't see anything.

8 **(C) Use *should* or *had to* with the correct form of the Infinitive in brackets.**

1. I (to send) ..... a telegram because it was too late to send a letter. You (to remind) ..... me to do it earlier. 2. I ..... not (to tell) him the news; he was so much upset, but I really (to do) .... so, for the circumstances demanded it. 3. The agreement was that if Johny White could not repay the money he had borrowed, then Luke Flint (to have) ..... the right to sell the land. 4. It was very hard work but we (to do) .... it. 5. She (not to let) ..... it pass like that, she (to explain) ..... to him that he was wrong. 6. Although it was

unpleasant to her, she (to tell) ..... him that he was wrong.

9 **(B, C) Some people have done wrong things. Use *should/shouldn't have* to say what went wrong.**

1. Sue had a party. There was a terrible mess. It took hours to clear up. Her friends didn't help. *They shouldn't have made such a terrible mess. The friends should have helped.*
2. I went on holiday with my friends. We stayed at a campsite.When we went to the beach, we left our money in the tent. There was a security man but somebody stole everything.
   .....
   .....
   .....
3. A top athlete thought she would do better if she took some steroid drugs. The Athletics Association found out about the drugs. Now she has lost her world records.
   .....
   .....
   .....

10 **(C) Translate into English, using *must*, *to be to*, *have to*, or *should*, *can*.**

1. Ты, должно быть, пропустил его. Ты должен был быть более внимательным. 2. Вы, должно быть, с ним уже поговорили. Я вижу, вы всё знаете. 3. Он не должен был так грубо разговаривать. Это могло обидеть его. 4. Она не должна была закрывать окно так быстро, надо было проветрить (air) комнату получше. 5. Это должно было случиться. Всем известна его рассеянность. 6. Простите, что я опоздал. Вам долго пришлось ждать меня? 7. Надеюсь, ты не должна теперь так рано вставать; ты ведь теперь работаешь в десяти минутах ходьбы от дома. 8. Она, очевидно, была очень приятной женщиной. Все говорят о ней с такой любовью. 9. Я никуда не выходил в тот вечер, так как после работы ко мне должен был зайти Джордж. 10. Там, наверно, идёт дождь: смотри, какое тёмное небо. 11. Тебе не надо сегодня готовить обед, так как мы обедаем в гостях. 12. Они, вероятно, что-то горячо обсуждали; они даже не заметили, как мы вошли.

6. "Need"

Need expresses necessity. It is mostly used in negative and interrogative sentences. We use *needn't* to say that it is not necessary to do something.

Forms and Meanings

MEANING	EXAMPLES	EQUIVALENTS
absence of necessity	She **needn't get** up early. The lessons begin at ten. ***(Можно не...)***	***don't have to...*** She **doesn't have to** do it.
something that has been done was unnecessary	The water was clean. You **needn't have boiled** it. ***(Можно было и не... ; зря; напрасно)***	***Didn't have to*** is no longer an equivalent. It denotes the absence of necessity without implying that the action was performed.

NOTES:

1. When *need* is used in the meaning *"to be in want of something"*, it is treated as a normal verb:
   - ❑ He **needs** a pair of shoes.
2. *Need* as a modal verb has only one tense form – the Present.

Study the Following Chart. Translate the Sentences into Russian

***Needn't* (the meaning: absence of necessity)**	
with **a Non-Perfect Infinitive**	with **a Perfect Infinitive**
1. He **needn't** get up early. His work begins at nine. ***(Не нужно...)***	1. He must be in his office at nine o'clock, but he got up yesterday at six. He **needn't have got** up so early. ***(Не надо было...)***
2. I **needn't go** to the shops today. There is plenty of food in the house.	2. The water was clean and fit to drink; it **needn't have been boiled**.

Use of Modal Verbs to Express Necessity

TIME OF THE ACTION	NECESSITY CAUSED BY CIRCUMSTANCES	ABSENCE OF NECESSITY	NECESSITY AS A RESULT OF PLAN, AGREEMENT, GENERAL ARRANGEMENT, TIME-TABLE
PRESENT	You **must hurry**. It's five to ten already. I **have (got) to leave** you now. Here goes the bell.	You **needn't** hurry. There is plenty of time. I **don't have to leave** you yet. The bell won't go for another five minutes.	I **am to meet** Mother at the doctor's at five sharp. When **is** the lecture **to begin**?
PAST	I **had to leave** her as the interval was over.	You **needn't have hurried**. There was plenty of time. I **didn't have to leave** her at once, for the interval was only beginning.	I **was to come** to the University an hour before the time and wait for her in the hall.
FUTURE	**I'll have to hurry** to catch the five-thirty train.	I **won't have to hurry**. There'll be plenty of time.	

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Practise the following according to the model.**

Model: A.: You took the lift, I suppose? (walk up the stairs)
B.: *No, I walked up the stairs.*
C.: *You needn't have walked up the stairs. You could have taken the lift.*

1. You went by bus, I suppose? (walk)
   .....
2. You borrowed the books, I suppose? (buy)
   .....
3. You phoned him, I suppose? (write)
   .....
4. You went by taxi, I suppose? (take a bus)
   .....
5. You went second class, I suppose? (go first class)
   .....
6. You left your heavy case at the station, I suppose? (take it with me)
   .....
7. You sent the sheets to the laundry, I suppose? (wash them myself)
   .....

2 **(B, C) Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. You needn't (send) ..... the car for us, we could have walked. 2. She washed up all the plates, she needn't (wash) ..... them up, because they had a dishwasher. 3. Why do you want to press the skirt? It is not creased at all. You needn't (press) ..... it at all. 4. I knew I had to be at the office on Saturday; I needn't (remind) ..... . 5. You needn't (help) ..... him. (You helped him but he didn't need your help.) 6. He was wide awake when his mother called him at seven o'clock this morning; she needn't (call) ..... .

3 **(B, C) Paraphrase the following, using the modal verb *need*.**

Model: Is it quite necessary for you to do the work instead of him? – *Need you do the work instead of him?*

1. It is not necessary to copy the composition. I can read it as it is.
   You needn't copy the composition.
2. It was not necessary for her to carry the bags all by herself: there were porters at the station.
   .....
3. Why do you want to buy a new bag? I could have lent you mine.
   .....
4. There is no use worrying about her; she is quite able to take care of herself.
   .....
5. What's the use of reproaching yourself?
   .....
6. I don't think there is any need to bother them.
   .....

4 **(B, C) Use *should* or *need* with the correct form of the Infinitive in brackets.**

1. We (not to hurry) ..... we have half an hour before the train starts. 2. You (not to come) ..... so early, now you will have to wait. 3. You (not to give) .... the child so much money. It will spoil him. 4. You (not to return) ..... the money so soon. I could wait. 5. You (not to help) ..... him with this work. He could have managed it himself. 6. You (not to go) ..... into this at present. They've clean forgotten about it.

5 **(C) Translate into English, using *(don't) have to, needn't (have)*.**

1. Можете сегодня туда не ходить. Товар (the goods) ещё не доставили. 2. Вам незачем идти на улицу: у соседей есть телефон. 3. У нас теперь построили стадион, и детям не придётся ездить далеко. 4. Им незачем ездить так далеко, можно заниматься в нашем читальном зале. 5. Не обязательно вам ходить самому. Можете прислать кого-нибудь. 6. Ни к чему было покупать эту книгу,

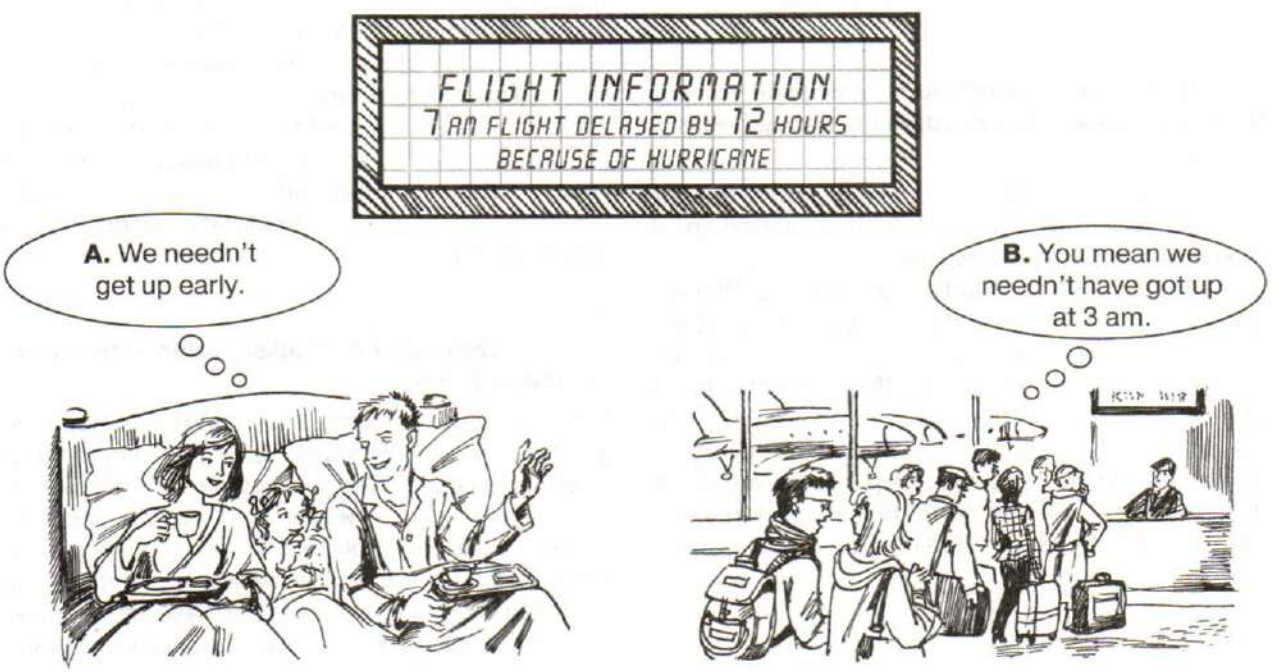
она есть в библиотеке. 7. Те, кто сделал эту работу, могут не оставаться в аудитории. 8. Оказалось, что у меня есть этот словарь, так что не пришлось покупать новый. 9. Вам не нужно было покупать этот словарь, у меня есть лишний экземпляр, и я с удовольствием дал бы его вам, если бы вы только попросили. 10. Он мог и не приходить, всё уже было сделано. 11. Все слова в тексте были знакомы, и им незачем было пользоваться словарём; это только отняло у них больше времени. 12. Все слова в тексте были настолько хорошо знакомы, что мне даже незачем было пользоваться словарём.

6 (B, C)

I. Who went to school today: A or B? – ☐

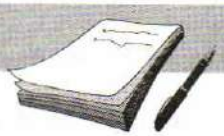


II. Who didn't phone the airline: A or B? – ☐



7. Revision

EXERCISES



1 **(B, C) Match each modal verb with its meaning.**

Model: You can (play chess). – *It is possible for you (to play chess).*

1.	You may...	a)	You are advised to...
2.	You must...	b)	You are allowed to...
3.	You mustn't...	c)	It isn't necessary to...
4.	You should...	d)	It is necessary/essential to...
5.	You shouldn't...	e)	You are advised not to...
6.	You needn't...	f)	It is forbidden / You are not allowed to...

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

2 **(B) Paraphrase the following sentences, using the modal verbs. Each modal verb can be used only once.**

Model: You are allowed to use mobile phones only outside the building.
You may use mobile phones only outside the building.

1. It is possible for his friends to rent a car with a 20% discount. .....
.....
2. Examinees are advised to read all the questions carefully. .....
.....
3. It is essential for all participants to register 3 days in advance. .....
.....
4. They are advised not to eat this dish until it gets cold. .....
.....
5. It isn't necessary to buy this CD, you can just borrow it. .....
.....
6. Sportsmen are not allowed to argue with referees. .....
.....

3 **(B, C) You have a part-time job in pizza delivery. Your friend Mike needs a part-time job too. He has written you an e-mail asking for some details. Read his e-mail and answer his questions.**

create message X

send

from : mike@mail.uk
to :

Hi, ... ,
I know that you work in pizza delivery, don't you? I want to get some information about it, cos I need to save up some money. So, I want you to answer some of my questions.
First, is it necessary to pass physical examination? If yes, where is it possible to do? Am I allowed to work if I don't pass it?
The problem is that I don't have a car. But as far as I know it is recommended to have your own car, am I right?

Is it possible to work only 2–3 hours a day? I will be disappointed if this Pizza Hut has long working hours.
How about tips? Is it possible to get any?
Looking forward to your answer,
Mike



Look through the prompts below and answer Mike's e-mail, using the modal verbs.

create message

send

from :
to : mike@mail.uk

Hi, Mike,
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

necessary / pass physical examination
not allowed / work / without it
not necessary / pass in any special place
possible / do wherever one wants
recommended / have your own car
in case you / not have it / will be provided
possible / work 2–3 hours a day
If / have your own car / allowed /
work as much as you wish
No one is against tips.

4 (B, C) Fill in the blanks with *can*, *may*, *must*, *should*, *ought to*, *have to*, *be to*, *be able to* (or the negative forms) or *needn't*.

1. "Oh, Nurse, ... I stay here?" – "Stay here? Of course, you ..... ." 2. A man ..... help his parents when they become old. 3. There are no buses or taxis so we ..... walk. 4. No, Moira, you ..... have another potato. You've had two already. 5. I ..... get up too early tomorrow so I ..... go to bed late tonight. 6. You ..... not walk all the way to the station. You ..... take a bus round the corner. 7. Tom's father told him that he ..... ask silly questions. 8. The matter ..... be discussed in tomorrow's debate. 9. You ..... sit there in your wet clothes; you will catch cold if you do. 10. They ..... do all the exercises; it will be sufficient if they do four of them. 11. I ..... read to the end of the story because I want to see who gets the treasure. 12. Go right in. You ..... report at once. 13. ..... I use your phone? – You ..... ask for permission; you ..... use it whenever you like. 14. Is she waiting? She ..... wait for me at home. We've arranged so.

5 (B) Complete the sentences, using the modal verbs *can*, *may*, *must*.

1. The performance (be over) ..... as there are many people leaving the theatre.
2. I don't believe that he said it. He (say) ..... such a thing.
3. I am sure they knew everything about it. Mary (tell) ..... them. She can't keep her word.
4. Perhaps it was true, I am not sure. She (be ashamed) ..... to tell you the truth.
5. There was probably some misunderstanding. They (send) ..... the contract to the wrong address.
6. ..... you really mean it?
7. It is impossible. They (leave) ..... already. I was watching the door of the house.

8. His teacher (help) ..... him; his English is quite decent now.
9. My students (be) ..... at a lecture now. They never miss classes.
10. I don't believe it. He (write) ..... the letter but the signature is certainly not his.
11. ..... this old man (be) your brother?
12. ..... you (not remember) our talk?

6 (C) Translate into English.

1. Он должен быть там завтра. 2. Он может быть там завтра. 3. Он, возможно, будет там завтра. 4. Он, возможно, был там вчера. 5. Он должен был быть там вчера. 6. Не может быть, чтобы он был там вчера. 7. Возможно ли, чтобы он был там вчера? 8. Неужели он там был вчера? 9. Не может быть, чтобы это была правда. 10. Неужели это правда? 11. Это, должно быть, правда. 12. Возможно, это правда. 13. Возможно, это была правда. 14. Это, очевидно, была правда.

7 (B, C) Translate into English the parts of the sentences in brackets, using the modal verbs.

1. I know he (мог бы) ..... read classics. He (не обязательно) ..... change to something else. 2. If you help me now, I (может быть, смогу) ..... help you later. 3. (Могу ли я сделать) ..... as I like or (я должна делать) ..... as you like? 4. "Now listen to me!" he said; "I'll tell you a few things that you (должен был бы спросить) ..... before starting out." 5. If your mother calls, tell her I (возможно, придётся) ..... be a little late. 6. When you came here, I told you you were free to come and go as you please but you (не должна была навещать) ..... Old Tante. 7. "I shall wait to hear what Lily (может) ..... say about it." "You (может быть, придётся) ..... wait a long time." 8. Mr. Zappa, the carrier (должен был заехать) ..... for me in the morning at nine o'clock. 9. That book was one of those that one (должен был бы прочитать) ..... . 10. Somebody has been talking; (кто бы это мог быть) ..... ? 11. (Незачем было волноваться) ..... , everything has turned out all right. 12. Frequently he (можно было застать) ..... in the garden, bent over his flowers. 13. I believe he was always afraid they (могут посмеяться) ..... at him.

8 (C) Translate into English. (Dictation-translation)

I

1. Мне очень жаль, но я должен идти. Я должен встретить Бетти у кино. Уже без четверти семь! Она, должно быть, уже ждёт меня. Мне придётся сесть на автобус. 2. Их дом должны были снести (knock down), и ему пришлось переехать в другой район. 3. Вы могли бы предупредить меня, что не придёте; мне не пришлось бы так долго вас ждать. 4. Незачем вам было ходить туда, они могли бы сами прийти. 5. Не надо было так разговаривать с ним: всё же он постарше вас. 6. Надо было подумать об этом раньше; теперь этого уже не исправишь. 7. Ты зря заказал номер в гостинице. У нас есть комната для гостей.

II

1. Он должен был подвинуться поближе, чтобы услышать её. 2. На следующий день Барт взял меня с собой на прогулку, а вечером мы должны были обедать с Гринами. 3. Тебе придётся много заниматься. Ты мог приходить ко мне по воскресеньям. 4. Он, должно быть, не сказал им ничего, и они, возможно, упаковывают вещи. 5. В прошлом году я жил недалеко от университета, и мне не приходилось вставать так рано. 6. Я думаю, что вам не следует обращать на это внимания. Незачем беспокоиться о пустяках. 7. Вы, должно быть, все читали эту книгу. Если нет, то вам следовало бы её прочесть. 8. Зря ты так разговаривал с ним. Он мог обидеться.

9 **(C) Translate into English.**

1. Вы, наверное, положили ключ не на то место, и я не смог войти в дом. 2. Я был удивлен, увидев так много народа в зале, где я должен был выступать. 3. Может быть, она и была на концерте, но я её не видела. 4. Напрасно ты сказала ей об этом. Тебе надо было промолчать. 5. Неужели он не слышал о нашем решении? 6. Больного должны были оперировать 10-го, но ввиду его плохого состояния операцию пришлось отложить. 7. Он, должно быть, приготовил перевод заранее. 8. Он, должно быть, не готовил перевод заранее. 9. Не могли бы вы помочь мне закончить работу? Мне, может быть, придется уехать завтра вечером.

A J☺ke

Seeking for Information

TOURIST: How long is this lake?
PASSER-BY: It **must** be more than twenty miles long.
TOURIST: Twenty miles! It **can't** be so long as that!
PASSER-BY: I think it **may** be about twelve.
TOURIST: It **mustn't** be more than four.
PASSER-BY: Indeed, Sir, it **can't** be more than four.
TOURIST: Well! I don't think you know anything about the matter.
PASSER-BY: And right you are, Sir, for I see it for the first time in my life.

8. Tests

I

1. Вам приходится очень рано вставать, не так ли?
2. Я не должен был говорить с ней таким тоном, мой тон, должно быть обидел её.
3. Вероятно, родители запретили ему ехать на юг с вами. Вам следовало самим поговорить с ними.
4. Ты напрасно спрашивала соседей, я нашёл эту книгу на твоём письменном столе.
5. Возможно, какая-нибудь срочная работа задержала его, или, может быть, он забыл, что должен прийти сюда.
6. Вы могли бы ему подробно объяснить ваш план. Неужели вы забыли, что он не знаком с этим вопросом?
7. Почему ты вернулся так рано? – Нам не пришлось долго обсуждать этот вопрос.
8. Может быть, она и была на концерте.
9. Он не должен быть в это время дома, он, очевидно, ещё работает.
10. Группа туристов должна прибыть завтра утром.

II

1. Нам не пришлось провожать их в гостиницу, они сами хорошо знали дорогу.
2. Мы, должно быть, пропустили его; мы должны были прийти пораньше, мы ждём его целый час.
3. Он должен был прийти в 5, а он ещё не пришёл.
4. Не обязательно (не нужно) вам приходить самому, вы можете прислать кого-нибудь.
5. Он не так уж застенчив; возможно, ваш вопрос был неожиданным, и он не смог на него ответить.
6. Вы могли бы предупредить его заранее, что он должен был прийти в 5.
7. Почему её нет? Неужели она обиделась и решила не приходить?
8. Мне не пришлось долго искать твой дом, так как я встретил твоего соседа и мы пошли вместе.
9. Несмотря на шторм, он смог доплыть до берега.
10. Я должен был дать ответ до двух часов дня.

III

1. В темноте я не могла разобрать, сколько там людей.
2. Не может быть, чтобы он забыл своё обещание. Он, вероятно, очень занят сейчас.
3. Неужели вы не встретились с ним на конференции на прошлой неделе?
4. Может быть, она уже приехала. Тебе следует позвонить ей.
5. Кто должен был вас встречать?
6. Вам пришлось взять такси, не так ли?
7. Должно быть, она проводит там много времени.
8. Напрасно ты торопился. Она ещё не приехала.
9. Тебе следует встретиться с ним и подробно обсудить этот вопрос.
10. Вы не могли бы дать мне ещё один пример?

IV

1. Посидите здесь, пока он занят. Я думаю, вам не придётся долго ждать.
2. Неужели мы с вами встречались на конференции в прошлом году?
3. Возможно, он забыл о нашей встрече. Он должен был прийти в 10, а сейчас уже 12 часов.
4. Зря вы бросили эту работу. Вы были так близки к цели.
5. Тебе следует пробыть в С.-Петербурге дольше, чтобы осмотреть весь город.
6. Он мог бы сходить туда сам; ему незачем было посылать вас.
7. Несмотря на то что у нас было мало времени, мы смогли подготовить этот доклад.
8. Не может быть, чтобы она была на конференции.
9. Ему пришлось поговорить с ней, не так ли?
10. Тебе нечего торопиться. Она только что выехала.

THE PASSIVE VOICE

1. Formation of the Passive Voice

to be + Participle II

	TENSE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	NOTE: *the action is done to the subject*
Simple	Present	**ask(s)**	**am / is / are asked**	He **asks**/ He **is asked** *Он* спрашивает/ *Его* спрашивают
	Past	**asked**	**was / were asked**	
	Future	**will ask**	**will be asked**	
Continuous	Present	**am / is / are asking**	**am / is / are being asked**	He **is asking**/ He **is being asked** *Он* сейчас спрашивает/ *Его* сейчас спрашивают
	Past	**was / were asking**	**was / were being asked**	
	Future	**will be asking**	–	
Perfect	Present	**have / has asked**	**have / has been asked**	He **has asked**/ He **has been asked** *Он* уже спросил/ *Его* уже спросили
	Past	**had asked**	**had been asked**	
	Future	**will have asked**	**will have been asked**	

Modal Verbs

can/could may/might must/have to should/would needn't	**be done** **have been done**

Study These Examples:

Simple	1. A lot of rice **is eaten** in Asia. 2. These houses **were built** about twenty-five years ago. 3. Our class **will be taught** by another teacher next year.
	4. Lions and tigers **can be seen** in zoos. 5. When he was in hospital, he **had to be fed**; he couldn't eat himself. 6. The books **may be kept** for two weeks. After that they **must be returned** to the library.
Continuous	7. The little girl has been very ill and the doctor says she mustn't go to school, so she **is being taught** at home. 8. I couldn't use my car last week, it **was being repaired**.
Perfect	9. This room **hasn't been swept** for a fortnight. 10. He said the newspaper **had been thrown** away.

2. Uses of the Passive Voice Peculiar to the English Language

1. We use the passive when it is not so important (or unknown) who or what did the action:
- ❑ My article **was published** yesterday.
- ❑ Rome **wasn't built** in one day.
- ❑ The origin of the Universe **will never be explained**.

2. It's wrong to consider the passive to be another way of expressing a sentence in the active voice. We use it only when we don't know or don't want to say who did it:
- ❑ Helen **likes** English. (But not *"English is liked by Helen"*. It sounds funny in English).

3. Only the verbs which take an object can go into the passive. Intransitive verbs can't be used in the passive voice. They are as follows:
- *– to fly, to arrive*
- *– to be, to become*
- *– to have, to lack, to possess, to consist, to belong*
- *– to hold, to suit, to resemble, to fit*
- *– to appear, to seem, to come, to go, to last*
- ❑ The hall **holds** 500 people.
- ❑ They **have** a nice house.
- ❑ My shoes **don't fit** me.
- ❑ Sylvia **resembles** a Greek goddess.

4. There are sentences in the active having a passive meaning:
- ❑ This shirt **irons** well.

- Your book **reads** well.
- This coat **will wear** a lifetime.

5. If you want to say who did it or what caused the action, use *by* or *with*. *BY* – with animated things and elements, *WITH* – for instruments, tools, weapons, materials.

- The house was built **by** my grandfather.
- It was destroyed **by** fire.
- The room was filled **with** smoke.
- The wood can be cut **with** a knife.

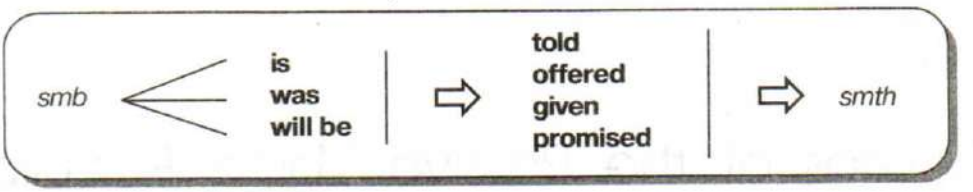
6. We use the Infinitive after modal verbs and a number of other verbs. The Passive Infinitive is *to be done/to have been done*:

- I **want to be left** alone.
- The music **could be heard** far away.
- My bicycle has disappeared. It **must have been** stolen.

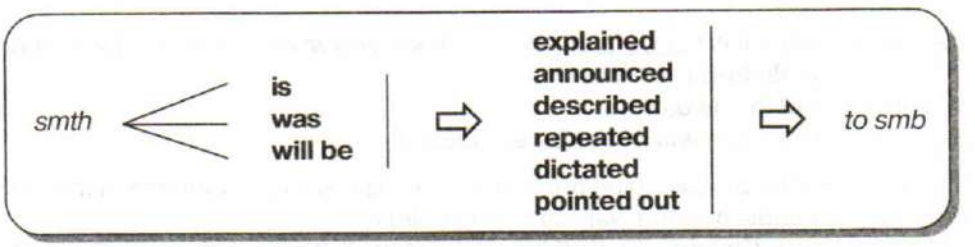
7. If it is possible to make two different passive sentences, it is more usual for the passive sentence to begin with the person:

- **Ann** *wasn't offered* the job.
- The job *wasn't offered* to **Ann**. (seldom used)

Study the Pattern



8. Some verbs can be used only in the following type of passive constructions:



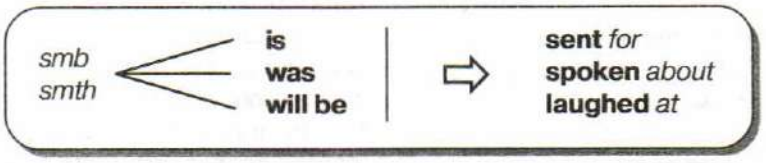
- The news **was announced** to everybody.
- Everything **will be explained** to you later.

9. Passive constructions with the verbs *to advise*, *to allow*, *to ask*, *to award*, *to deny*, *to forbid*, *to forgive*, *to grant*, *to offer*, *to order*, *to pay*, *to promise*, *to refuse*, *to show*, *to teach*, *to tell*, etc. present some difficulties. In English the subject of such constructions corresponds to the Russian indirect object. The centre of a passive construction in English is not changed. Pay attention to the following difference:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Russian	*Я* просил ... *Я* сказал ему ...	*Меня* попросили ... *Мне* сказали ...
English	I asked ... I told him ...	I was asked ... I was told ...

- He **was given** a ten days' leave. – Ему дали десятидневный отпуск.
- **Have** you **been shown** the documents? – Вам показали документы?
- They **were told** to wait. – Им велели подождать.

10. The verbs which take prepositional objects can form passive constructions of the following pattern: (the list of such verbs is given below)



- The film *was much spoken* **about**.
- The doctor *was sent* **for**.

Mind the place of the preposition in Russian and English:

RUSSIAN	ENGLISH
Над *ним* часто смеются.	He is often laughed **at**.
О *нем* много говорили.	He was much spoken **about**.

The verbs taking prepositional objects. It should be remembered that not all of them retain this preposition in Russian.

A

to agree to/with	– соглашаться с чем-то
to agree on/upon	– прийти к соглашению
to arrive at an agreement	– прийти к соглашению
to arrive at a compromise	– прийти к компромиссу
to arrive at a conclusion	– прийти к заключению
to arrive at a decision	– прийти к решению
to call for/on	– зайти за кем-то
to count on	– надеяться, рассчитывать на кого-либо
to deal with	– иметь дело с
to find fault with	– придираться к
to hear of	– слышать о
to insist on/upon	– настаивать на
to interfere with	– вмешиваться в, мешать
to laugh at	– смеяться над
to look after	– ухаживать за
to look at	– смотреть на
to make fun of	– насмехаться над
to pay attention to	– обращать внимание на
to put up with	– примириться с
to refer to	– ссылаться на
to rely on/upon	– полагаться на
to send for	– посылать за
to speak about/of, to	– говорить о, с
to take care of	– заботиться о
to talk about	– говорить о
to think of	– думать о
to write about	– писать о

B

to account for	– объяснять
to comment on	– комментировать
to listen to	– слушать
to look for	– искать
to lose sight of	– потерять из виду
to make a fool of	– дурачить
to make use of	– использовать
to operate on	– оперировать
to provide for	– снабжать
to put an end to	– положить конец
to take (no) notice of	– (не) замечать

- The boat *was* soon *lost sight* **of**.
- The child *should be taken care* **of**.
- His remark *was taken no notice* **of**.

EXERCISES



1 **(A) Put the sentences into the Passive Voice where possible.**

1. Someone will drive you to the airport.
   .....
2. Goldfish live in fresh water.
   .....
3. The Egyptians built pyramids.
   .....
4. We walked 4 miles yesterday.
   .....
5. They arrived at 7 last night.
   .....
6. They informed me about it.
   .....
7. I slept till 8.
   .....
8. It's raining.
   .....
9. You must obey the rules.
   .....
10. He's sneezing again.
    .....
11. You can buy videos like this anywhere.
    .....
12. Someone has to write the history of this place.
    .....
13. They have sold their car to pay the debts.
    .....
14. They hold a meeting in the village hall once a week.
    .....
15. They have proved that there is no life on the Moon.
    .....
16. They owe a lot of money to the bank.
    .....

2 **(A, B) Put the verbs in brackets into *the Past Simple* or *Past Continuous Passive*.**

(Model:) 1. They (shut) the window. *The window* ***was shut***.
2. A beautiful melody (play). *A beautiful melody* ***was being played***.

1. The student (ask) ..... to tell the story again. 2. Such mistakes (make) .... by even the best students. 3. A modern tune (play) ..... when we came into the hall. 4. Every morning the workers (tell) ..... what they had to do. 5. Tom (attend) ..... by the salesman when his mother came into the shop. 6. Yesterday the problem (solve) ..... to everyone's satisfaction. 7. She couldn't leave the house because her front door (repair) ..... . 8. A week ago two students of our group (choose) ..... for jury service. 9. A special rule (make) ..... for students to be taken to University. 10. Last Friday he (meet) .... at the railway station. 11. Why don't you use your car? – It (repair) ..... now, I had a bad accident a week ago.

3 **(B) Express the following sentences in the Passive. Do not mention the subjects of the Active verbs.**

(Model:) They asked me my name and address.
I was asked my name and address.

1. She always tells us very funny stories.
   .....
2. The people gave him a hearty welcome.
   .....
3. They have offered my brother a very good job.
   .....
4. The house agents will show us some very nice flats.
   .....
5. The secretary didn't tell me the exact time of my appointment.
   .....
6. They have never taught that rude boy good manners.
   .....
7. The teacher hasn't asked Peter any questions at this lesson.
   .....
8. People usually wish a newly married couple a long and happy life.
   .....
9. They never tell me the family news.
   .....

10. The examiners didn't give us enough time to answer all the questions.
.....
11. A guide will show the tourists most of the sights of London.
.....
12. He didn't tell me the whole truth.
.....

4 (A, B) Write the sentences in the Passive.

Model: (my sister/operate on/a distinguished surgeon) *My sister will be operated on by a distinguished surgeon.*

1. (a sound of violin/hear/in the hall)
.....
2. (he/praise/his father/hard work)
.....
3. (I/wake up/at 7 o'clock/my mother)
.....
4. (this book/buy/a week ago)
.....
5. (the picture/paint/great artist)
.....
6. (the window/break/the other day)
.....
7. (the letter/post/tomorrow)
.....
8. (your report/discuss/next week)
.....
9. (the time-table/change/in a week)
.....
10. (the letter/bring/recently)
.....
11. (milk/spill/just/Jack)
.....
12. (the doctor/already/send for)
.....
13. (the teacher/always/listen to/attentively)
.....
14. (his speech/speak about/much)
.....
15. (this article/refer to/often)
.....
16. (the plan/agree upon)
.....
17. (this house/live in/never)
.....

5 (B) Read about the situation and write a sentence. Use the words in brackets.

Model: 1. He seldom keeps his promise. (he/can/rely on) *He can't be relied on.*
2. He's very sensitive. (he/not like/to laugh at) *He doesn't like to be laughed at.*

1. The child is very ill. (The doctor/send for)
.....
2. The old car is in excellent condition. (it/look after/well)
.....
3. He was speaking for two hours. (he/listen to/in silence)
.....
4. She is going into hospital tomorrow. (she/take good care of)
.....
5. This little boy is always dirty. (he/look after/properly)
.....
6. She is always breaking things in the kitchen. (she/speak to/about her carelessness)
.....
7. He's a sensible man. (his advice/listen to/carefully)
.....
8. The dentist said her teeth were very bad. (they/take care of)
.....
9. He never broke a promise in his life. (he/can/rely on)
.....
10. Shakespeare was born more that 400 years ago. (he/look upon/as the greatest of English poets)
.....

6 (B) Put the following into the Passive, mentioning the agent where necessary.

1. You can't wash this dress. (it/dry-clean)
It should be dry-cleaned.
2. They discuss unimportant things. (a lot of time/waste)
.....
3. They will type your letters in a minute. (the letters/type/in the other office)
.....
4. I can't play now. (my piano/repair/at the moment)
.....

5. The guests ate all the sandwiches and drank all the lemonade. (nothing/leave)
.....
6. I can't find my parcel anywhere. (it/post?)
.....
7. I have no information. (I/inform/of the change of the plan)
.....
8. I'm afraid we have sold all our copies but we have ordered more. (more/order)
.....
9. The letter can't be mailed. (it/not stamp)
.....
10. I would like to meet her mother. (I/not introduce/ yet)
.....
11. The town is in ruin. (it/destroy/earthquake)
.....
12. It is difficult to do (it/more easily/do/machine)
.....
13. Umbrellas and sticks are not allowed. (they/ leave/in the cloakroom).
.....

7 (B, C) Give the corresponding passive construction.

1. We looked through all the advertisements very attentively.
.....
2. The gardener gathered all the dry leaves and set fire to them.
.....
3. People will talk much about the successful debut of the young actress, no doubt.
.....
4. You can rely upon your guide's experience.
.....
5. You should send the sick man to hospital. They will take a good care of him.
.....
6. When he arrived, Mark gave him some special warm clothes.
.....
7. He was very glad that nobody took notice of his late arrival.
.....
8. He was a brilliant speaker, and, whenever he spoke, the audience listened to him with great attention.
.....
9. Nobody ever referred to that incident again.
.....

8 (B, C) Rewrite the following questions in the Passive.

1. Why did they laugh at him?
.....
2. Why didn't the speaker dwell longer upon this question?
.....
3. Has he sent his Mother a birthday card yet?
.....
4. Is Tom cooking this salad?
.....
5. Did they show the tourists an old manuscript?
.....
6. Do they often make fun of him?
.....
7. Had Mary checked her e-mail before she left home?
.....
8. Has someone stolen your car?
.....
9. Are they laughing at his jokes?
.....
10. Will they discuss these questions tomorrow?
.....

9 (B, C) Put in the correct forms, active or passive, of the verbs in brackets.

How the Other Half Lives

Lord Manners was a rich and famous banker. When he (die) [1]..... , he (give) [2]..... a magnificent funeral which (attend) [3]..... by hundreds of famous people. The funeral was going to (hold) [4]..... in Westminster Abbey. Many ordinary people (line) [5]..... the streets to watch the procession. The wonderful black and gold carriage (draw) [6]..... by 6 black horses. The mourners (follow) [7]..... in silence. Lord Manners (give) [8]..... a royal farewell. Two tramps were among the crowd, they (watch) [9]..... the procession. As solemn music (can/hear) [10]..... in the distance, one of them (turn) [11]..... to the other and (whisper) [12]..... in admiration, "Now, that's what I call really living!"

10 (B, C) Open the brackets, using the correct form in the Passive Voice.

1. Dictionaries may not (use) ..... at the examination. 2. This copy (not read) ..... . The pages (not cut) ..... . 3. I'm not wearing my black shoes today. They (mend) ..... . 4. This room (use) .... only on special occasions. 5. Bicycles must not (leave) ..... in the hall. 6. He was taken to hospital this afternoon, and (operate on) ..... tomorrow morning. 7. The damaged buildings (reconstruct) ..... now, the reconstruction (finish) ..... by the end of the year. 8. The paintings (exhibit) ..... till the end of the month. 9. She heard footsteps, she thought she (follow) ..... . 10. Normally this street (sweep) ..... every day, but it (not sweep) ..... yesterday. 11. She is very selfish, she (spoil) ..... by her parents. 12. Thousands of new houses (build) ..... every year.

11 (B, C) Open the brackets. Use the necessary tenses in the Passive Voice.

1. The living-room (sweep) ..... , (mop) ..... and (dust) .... It is clean now. 2. We (tell) .... to wait because the man (question) in the room. 3. If he comes in you (find) .... looking through his papers. 4. For the first two minutes he (occupy) ..... with eating; then as his appetite (quiet) .... , he took his time. 5. Why nothing (do) ..... about it at the time? 6. You can't go in. She (interview) ..... for the TV. 7. She promised that nothing (do) ..... till he came back. 8. I had a most unpleasant feeling that I (watch) .... 9. She looked a different girl. Her face (wash) ..... , her hair (comb) .... All traces of tears (remove) .... 10. We could still see the tracks where the car (drag) ..... off the road.

12 (B, C) Use the verb in brackets in the appropriate form.

1. You can't use the office at the moment, it (redecorate) ..... . 2. A new metro line (construct) ..... now. One of its stations (build) ..... in our street. 3. Like many medieval cities, Moscow developed round the walls of a stronghold. First a brick wall (build) ..... around the merchants' quarter which (know) ..... as Kitai-gorod, then, in the 16th century, a new wall (erect) ..... round the so-called Bely Gorod. 4. Maize (use) ..... by many peoples of the world to make their bread. 5. The house (lock) ..... up before they set off. 6. Wherever I went, I found evidence that the camp (leave) ..... only a short time before we arrived. 7. Everybody was busy as a welcoming party (prepare) ..... in honour of the distinguished visitors. 8. The place looked wonderful. Everything (prepare) .... for the ball. The front lawn (floor) ..... and (tent) .... ; palms and azaleas (place) ..... round it. 9. Evidently, the tea (sweeten) ..... before I put sugar into it.

13 (C) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form in the Active or in the Passive.

1. What a mess! This room (redecorate) .... ? 2. From the clink of dishes one could tell the supper (prepare) ..... . 3. The front door of his house (unlock) as he (leave) .... it. 4. Mrs Fripp (come) to inform her that dinner already (serve) ..... . 5. His phrase (greet) ..... by a strange laugh from a student who (sit) ..... near the wall. 6. A note (bring) ..... in, addressed to Eleanor, and (put) ..... on the table to await her. 7. What a lovely bike! It (buy) ..... yesterday? 8. To his knowing eyes the scene below easily (explain) .... 9. The door (shut) behind him. 10. Finally, his name (call) ..... and the boy (push) ..... forward to her. 11. The dishes (wash) ..... yet ? Who (do) .... it? 12. At lunch nothing (discuss) ..... but the latest news. 13. "Will you work on this new job all your life?" The question (ask) ..... with sincere interest. 14. She (tap) ..... on the door. John (open) ..... it. 15. Look! There's nothing here. Everything (take) ..... away.

14 (B, C) In Glasgow students have set up a recycling scheme. Use the ideas below and write what they do to stop waste.

Model: paper – collect from classrooms
At school, paper is collected from all the classrooms. It is taken to a recycling center.

IDEAS	ACTIONS
kitchen waste	compost for organic school garden
.....	.....
ink catridges	re-use
.....	.....
art work	create out of colourful rubbish
.....	.....
plastic carrier bags	not use
.....	.....
cans, glass, bottles	separate
.....	.....
fruit and vegetables	buy from local farmers to save fuel
.....	.....
ideas	turn into posters
.....	.....



Only 11% of UK rubbish is recycled. It is time to do something!

15 (A, B) Translate into English.

1. Кто построил это здание? 2. Где сейчас строят это здание? 3. Как долго строится это здание? 4. Где строятся такие здания? 5. Когда будет построено это здание? 6. Опять обсуждается этот вопрос? 7. Часто у вас обсуждаются подобные вопросы? 8. Давно уже этот вопрос обсуждается? 9. Обсуждался ли где-нибудь этот вопрос до того, как он был передан в комитет?

16 (A, B) Translate into English.

Use the Model:

smb ← is asked / was envied / will be forgiven → *smth*

1. Её не простили. 2. Меня не спрашивали. 3. Этот вопрос не задавали. 4. Его ошибка была прощена и забыта. 5. Ей многие завидовали. 6. Её успеху завидовали меньше, чем она ожидала. 7. Её отсутствие можно извинить. 8. Ну, я прощён? 9. Этот вопрос могут задать. 10. Тебя могут спросить. 11. Её волосам можно позавидовать. 12. Такое нельзя простить.

17 (A, B) Translate into English.

Use the Model:

smb ← is / was / will be | told / given / offered / promised / shown | *smth*

1. Мне показали, как это делается. 2. Ей пообещали хорошую работу. 3. Ему дали новое задание (mission). 4. В отеле вам будут давать завтрак и ужин. 5. Вам покажут эту статью. 6. Никаких объяснений мне не дали. 7. Эту работу дали кому-то другому. 8. Нам картину не показали. 9. Когда вам рассказали эту историю? 10. Вам показали этот каталог? 11. Вам предложили что-нибудь поесть? 12. Почему нам этого не сказали? 13. Когда будет показан этот фильм?

18 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Лекции этого профессора всегда слушают с большим интересом. 2. Меня прервал Джон. 3. Его всегда любили, и ему всегда доверяли. 4. О ней

заботятся её друзья. 5. Я уверен, что записка была написана карандашом (in pencil). 6. Об этом фильме много говорят. 7. Пока готовился завтрак, мать подошла к постели ребёнка. 8. Ей продиктовали письмо и задали несколько вопросов. 9. Аню спрашивали, когда я вошла в комнату, где шёл экзамен. 10. Ей дадут квартиру в этом доме. 11. К концу этой недели работа будет завершена. 12. Его давно не видели. 13. Мне сказали, что около железнодорожного моста строятся два новых дома. 14. Мне рассказали, как должно быть приготовлено это блюдо (dish).

19 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Мне показали, как это было сделано. 2. О ней очень хорошо отзываются. 3. Ей объяснили новые правила работы. 4. Вода в квартире была выключена (cut off), и послали за сантехником (plumber). 5. В библиотеке ему предложили целый ряд статей на эту тему. 6. Можно ли положиться на эти цифры? 7. Мне много раз повторяли, что мне надо бросить (give up) курить. 8. Задавали ли вам дополнительные вопросы на экзамене? 9. Их тепло поблагодарили за помощь. 10. Ему посоветовали побольше бывать на воздухе. 11. Почему вам запретили играть в футбол? 12. Когда вам продиктовали это письмо?

20 (B, C) Dictation-translation.

1. Детей часто водят (take) в кино и театр. 2. Ей объявили, что поезд уже ушёл. 3. Его попросили не вмешиваться. 4. Ей задали несколько вопросов и велели подождать. 5. Будет ли нам предоставлен отдельный номер в отеле? 6. Его выбор был всеми одобрен. 7. Ей продиктовали несколько писем. 8. Кому дадут эту работу? 9. Какие меры будут приняты? 10. Тогда как раз строилась школа. 11. Ну, что-нибудь уже решено? 12. Там за ним будет хороший уход. 13. Что говорили на эту тему? 14. Их учат английскому языку около года. 15. Когда это надо сделать? 16. Почему это нельзя сделать сегодня? 17. Когда вам сообщили это известие? 18. Почему ничего ещё не сделано?

21 (B, C) Translate into English, using the Passive Voice.

I

1. Во время экскурсии по городу нам показали завод, где производится сталь. 2. Со мной так никогда ещё не разговаривали. 3. Когда мы приехали в Киев, это здание было только что восстановлено. 4. В прошлом месяце, наконец, вышла новая книга. Сейчас её широко обсуждают в прессе. 5. Не говори таких вещей, а то над тобой будут смеяться. 6. Мне ещё ничего об этом не говорили. 7. Ваш проект уже принят? – Нет, он всё ещё рассматривается. – Сколько же времени его уже рассматривают? 8. Вчера ему предложили новую работу, а она ему не нужна. 9. Я не знал, кому меня представляют. 10. На приёме на профессора не обратили внимания, а вокруг его хорошенькой жены развели суету (make fuss of).

II

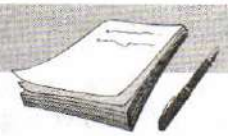
1. Что-нибудь делается, чтобы восстановить это здание? 2. Его ещё никогда не принимали за англичанина. 3. За каждый цент нужно отчитаться (account for). 4. Вас когда-нибудь учили, как надо вести себя? 5. Детей угостили (treat to) мороженым. 6. У меня украли коллекцию марок. 7. Надо что-то сделать для этих людей. 8. Боюсь, что эту вазу нельзя починить. 9. О его приятеле хорошо отзываются. 10. Моего дядю произвели (promote to) в капитаны. 11. Тебе скажут, когда отправляется поезд. 12. Будет так темно, что меня совсем не будет видно. 13. Почему так прохладно в зале? – Его как раз проветривают (air). Читальный зал, как вы знаете, проветривается несколько раз в день.

III

1. Больного не будут оперировать без его согласия. 2. Телеграмма была принята поздно ночью, и, так как она была очень важной, капитана тут же разбудили. 3. Факты, на которые ссылался свидетель, заинтересовали адвоката. 4. Проект был в основном одобрен, но архитектору указали на отдельные недостатки. 5. Советую вам пойти на этот концерт: будут исполнены ваши любимые произведения. 6. Нам объяснили новое правило, затем продиктовали несколько примеров. 7. Не беспокойтесь, о вашем багаже позаботятся и он будет доставлен в номер. 8. Он не слышал, что в это время говорилось. 9. Мы узнаем, хорошо ли за ним смотрели. 10. Ему дали первоклассное образование.

3. Revision

EXERCISES



1 **(B, C) Fill in the required passive forms of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Meg (look) ..... upon as a perfect wife for a clergyman. 2. "I'm not prepared," my father said, "to listen to your suggestions that you never (treat) ..... fairly at school." 3. "Remember I (pay) ..... by the hour," grumbled the driver. 4. But there were signs that order (restore) ..... in the town. 5. Please find out if our father (see) ..... to leave. 6. She could have gone to Cambridge if she had wanted to, she (offer) ..... a scholarship. 7. On Friday she (give) ..... two weeks' notice at the Works. 8. Then the voice announced that the passengers (ask) ..... to pass through the Customs. 9. I found the idea of going to Hereford very upsetting because I (promise) ..... a very nice job a couple of weeks before. 10. Not far away she noticed the film manager in whose office she once (make) ..... to feel so ridiculous.

2 **(B, C) Fill each of the numbered blanks in the following passage with one of the verbs (A, B, C) below.**

The reception was all that (expect) [1] ..... . When we arrived we (show) [2] ..... into some kind of hall where we (detain) [3] ..... with the rest of the actors. Apparently, we (not/allow) [4] ..... yet to mingle with the other crowd. As the guests assembled in the room, it was plain to me that they (choose) [5] ..... carefully. Looking around, I recognised Anthony Blanche. He (point) [6] ..... out to me often in the streets. I (interrupt) [7] ..... in my observation by a woman reporter whom the manager had led up to me. I (warn) [8] ..... against the dangers of being interviewed by strangers. As we (introduce) [9] ..... , I made up my mind to avoid it at any cost.

	A	B	C
1.	was expected	had been expected	is expected
2.	were shown	had been shown	would be shown
3.	were being detained	were detained	had been detained
4.	would not be allowed	are allowed	were not allowed
5.	were chosen	would be chosen	had been chosen
6.	had been pointed out	was pointed out	would be pointed out
7.	had been interrupted	was interrupted	was being interrupted
8.	had been warned	was warned	warned
9.	had been introduced	were being introduced	were introduced

3 **(B) Choose the right verb.**

The Connolly children *had been found/were found* lurking under the seats of a carriage when the train *was being emptied/was emptied*. They *had been dragged/were dragged* out and *were stood/stood* on the platform. Since they could not *were left/be left* there, they would *be included/were included* in the party that *will be sent/was being sent* by bus to the village. From that moment, their destiny for ever *will be connected/was connected* with that of the village. Nothing ever *was discovered/would be discovered* about the children's parents.

4 (B, C) Use the required passive forms.



Bridgehampton. Friday. A disastrous fire broke out on the top floor of the Grand Hotel, Washington Road, in the small hours of the morning.
The alarm (give) [1]..... by the night porter. His attention (draw) [2]..... to smoke issuing from one of the top floor windows by a group of young people who were returning late from a dance.
Within five minutes the town Fire Brigade was on the spot. The work of fighting the fire and evacuating the guests seriously (hamper) [3]..... by the non-operation of the lifts.
It (believe) [4]..... that the fire (cause) [5]..... by a short circuit in the lift machinery and had extended to the whole floor before it (observe) [6]..... . The flames (bring) [7]..... under control in two hours. Two of the guests staying at the hotel lost their lives. They (trap) [8]..... in their rooms and evidently (overcome) [9]..... by fumes before the rescuers could reach them. A third guest (take) [10]..... to hospital with multiple burns. His condition (report) [11]..... as being serious.

5 (C) Use the required active or passive tense forms.

I once (know) [1]..... a village teacher who was partially blind. He (deprive) [2]..... of one eye as the result of infection. His blind eye (take) [3]..... out, and a glass one (insert) [4]..... in its socket instead.
One day the teacher (need) [5]..... to leave his class of small children alone for half an hour or so. But he (hold) [6]..... back by one consideration. The children of the class (be) [7]..... really unruly. He (know) [8]..... that if they (leave) [9]..... alone for any length of time they (become) [10]..... violent and complaints (make) [11]..... by their parents.



Suddenly he (strike) [12]..... by an idea. In a moment his glass eye (take) [13]..... out of its socket and (place) [14]..... on the table. "Now, children," he said, "I (go) [15]..... out for a few minutes but you (observe) [16]..... ..... all the time by my eye. If anything (do) [17]..... which (not approve) [18]..... ..... by me, it (see) [19]..... by my eye, and the child (punish) [20]..... when I (return) [21]..... ."
The children (impress) [22]..... very much and the teacher (go) [23]..... off.
But when he (return) [24]..... an hour later it (seem) [25]..... that a hurricane (pass) [26]..... through the classroom. The teacher (astound) [27]..... . "Evidently", he thought, "I (outwit) [28]..... . I wonder how."
In the classroom the tables (overturn) [29]..... , the walls (spatter) [30]..... with ink from ink-bombs which (throw) [31]..... during the battle which still (fight) [32]..... out as a manifestation of high spirits. In fact, a good time (have) [33]..... by all.
The teacher (wonder) [34]..... why the presence of his glass eye (not respect) [35]..... .
He (look) [36]..... round for it and (see) [37]..... that it (cover) [38]..... by a hat.

6 (C) Translate the verbs in bold type into English.

A

Молодой писатель **ходил** взад и вперёд по комнате. Он **пытался** найти тему для рассказа. Рассказ был давно **обещан** редактору. Срок **подходил**, а ничего ещё **не было сделано**. Молодой писатель **посмотрел** на книжные полки. «Сколько уже **написано**, – **подумал** он. – Все хорошие темы уже много раз **использованы**. Вот хотя бы эти рассказы. Они **были написаны** до моего рождения. И это хорошие рассказы. Без сомнения, их в свое время **читали**, они **нравились**, и о них **говорили**. Но сейчас они совершенно **забыты**. А что, если...»

К концу дня один из забытых рассказов **был перепечатан** и **отослан** в редакцию. На следующий день пришло письмо из редакции журнала.

«Это безобразие, – писал редактор. – Такие поступки нельзя **ни простить**, **ни понять**. Ведь этот рассказ **был опубликован** в нашем журнале только месяц тому назад».

B

Частная жизнь Хэмфри Богарта

Наш старый бухгалтер **ушёл** на пенсию, и на его место **взяли** нового. Через неделю его уже **знали** все, и всем он **нравился**. **Выяснилось**, что он **женат**, и у него **есть** ребёнок. **Было решено**, что он хороший человек, тихий и скромный. Мы тогда и **не думали**, что через несколько недель о нём **будет говорить** вся контора.

Случилось это так. Весна в прошлом году **пришла** рано. В одно прекрасное утро контора была полна перешёптываний. Богарта **видели** в ресторане с девушкой. Они **ели** мороженое, и он **смотрел** на неё влюблёнными глазами.

Через несколько дней его **видели** с этой же девушкой в самом тёмном углу парка. Они **целовались**. Через неделю их **встретили** на пляже.

– Что-то надо **сделать**, – было общее решение. – Ему надо **сказать**, его надо **остановить**, ему надо **объяснить**.

Наконец ему **велели** сейчас же идти в кабинет директора. Там его **встретила** целая комиссия.

– Хэмфри Богарт, – сказал директор. – Вас много раз **видели** с молодой женщиной...

Потом Богарту **велели** на следующий же день привести эту молодую женщину к директору для серьезного разговора.

– Но, – сказал он. – Завтра нельзя. Она **поведёт** ребёнка к врачу.

– Так там уже есть ребёнок! – воскликнул профорг.

– Конечно, – ответил он. – Я **думал**, что все уже **знают**.

– Значит, это была ваша жена! – сказали мы. – Почему же вы этого сразу **не сказали**?

– Меня **не спрашивали**, – ответил он.

(From "Practical English Grammar by Correspondence" by E.A. Nathanson)

4. Tests

I

1. Покажите мне, где в вашем городе строится новый театр.
2. Зимой свет зажигается рано.
3. За билеты давно уплачено.
4. Его можно было видеть в саду в любую погоду.

5. Нам в лагерь регулярно доставляют провизию и почту.
6. Жаль, что на конференции таких вопросов не касались.
7. Об этой книге уже написано много статей.
8. Над ним всегда смеялись, когда он был школьником.
9. Ничего удивительного, что цветы завяли (fade), их не поливали целую неделю.
10. После ланча я слышал, что за Чарльзом послали.

II

1. Вниз по этой улице строится новый квартал домов.
2. Тебя интересует работа, которую тебе предложили?
3. Его пришлось прооперировать.
4. Посмотри! Разбили наше окно.
5. Уроки нужно делать более интересными.
6. Студентам велели подождать за дверью.
7. Посторонних просят уйти с собрания (leave).
8. Я почувствовал, что ему уже задавали этот вопрос.
9. Об этой картине много говорят. Мне её очень хорошо описали.
10. Эти недостатки можно легко устранить (eliminate).

III

1. Эта звезда хорошо видна только после захода солнца.
2. Нам сообщили об этом только перед началом собрания.
3. Тётю Дашу в семье моего отца не любили, считали её глупой.
4. Я прислушался, в зале играли концерт Моцарта.
5. Меня приняли прекрасно и угостили обедом.
6. Я не мог сказать ему, что потратил деньги, которые мне дали на учебники.
7. Он прибыл после того, как погасло (cut off) электричество.
8. Мы наблюдали, как разгружались (unload) корабли.
9. Её нигде не было видно.
10. Я уверен, что за ним последуют многие.

IV

1. Его никогда не приглашали на вечеринки.
2. Многие старые здания в городах сейчас заменяются (replace) новыми зданиями.
3. Если этот процесс не контролировать, города скоро потеряют свой уникальный облик (character).
4. Когда Морган умер, его коллекция картин была распродана (sell out).
5. Этот документ должен быть подписан.
6. Окно было разбито ветром прошлой ночью.
7. Здесь ремонтируют туфли и ботинки.
8. Нам постоянно напоминают об опасности загрязнения (pollution) окружающей среды.
9. Скоро даже самые отдаленные (remote) острова будут посещаться туристами.
10. Этого никто не ожидал (expect).

QUESTIONS AND NEGATIVES

GENERAL RULE: In questions we normally put an auxiliary verb before the subject. If there is no auxiliary, we use *do*.

Auxiliary Verbs

The auxiliaries *be*, *have* and *do* are used in forming tenses, negatives and questions.

1. The auxiliary *be* is used in forming the continuous tenses (***is*** *reading*, ***was*** *working*) and the passive (***is*** *built*, ***was*** *made*).

- ❑ He **is living** in Germany now.
- ❑ We **were going** to phone you.
- ❑ These cars **are made** in Japan.
- ❑ The walls of his room **were covered** with posters.

2. The auxiliary *have* is used in forming the perfect tenses (***have*** *seen*, ***had*** *come*, ***have*** *been working*).

- ❑ I **haven't seen** Peter since last night.
- ❑ He **has been working** very hard recently.

3. The auxiliary *do* (the past form *did*) is used in making negative and question forms from sentences that have a verb in simple tenses (the Present Simple, the Past Simple: *speak*, *goes*; *asked*, *went*).

- ❑ **Do** you *like* her new haircut?
- ❑ **Does** anyone *have* a question?
- ❑ **Did** you *see* her at the party yesterday?
- ❑ He **doesn't** *have* any money.
- ❑ She **didn't** *buy* the house.

Questions

I. Questions which can be answered *"yes"* or *"no"* are called **GENERAL QUESTIONS**.

1. If the main verb is the Present Simple or the Past Simple of the verb *to be*, we put the verb at the beginning of the sentence, before the subject.

- ❑ **Are** you ready?
- ❑ **Was** it a nice party?

2. If the verb group has more than one word (compound tenses), the first word (auxiliary verb) comes at the beginning of the sentence, before the subject. The rest of the verb group comes after the subject. When asking a question, we place the modal verb before the subject, too.

- ❑ **Is** he **coming**?
- ❑ **Has** he **been working** since morning?
- ❑ **Can** John **swim**?

3. If the verb group consists of only a main verb (simple tenses), we use the auxiliary verb *do*, *does*, *did* at the beginning of the sentence, before the subject.
After the subject we use the base form of the verb.

- ❑ **Do** the British **love** sport?
- ❑ **Does** your **wife** work?
- ❑ **Did** you **go** out last night?

NOTE: a) when the main verb is *do*, you still have to add *do*, *does*, *did* before the subject.
- ❑ **Do** they **do** the work themselves?
- ❑ **Did** you **do** the "A level" examination last term?

b) if the main verb is *have*, we usually put *do*, *does*, *did* before the subject.
- ❑ **Does** anyone **have** a question?
- ❑ **Did** you **have** a good time?

Negatives

To make negative verb forms, we put *not* after an auxiliary verb or *be*. If there is no other auxiliary, we use *do* ***(don't, doesn't, didn't)***.
- ❑ That **isn't** right.
- ❑ It **wasn't** raining.
- ❑ She **can't** sing.
- ❑ I **haven't** forgotten about the appointment.
- ❑ She **doesn't** eat sweets.

EXERCISES



1 **(A) Expand the *"what about ... ?"* phrases to make *yes/no*-questions.**

1. Jack can dance. What about Henry? Can Henry dance?
2. I've read the newspaper. What about you? .....
3. Pete often goes to the swimming-pool. What about Jane? .....
4. He'll be home for dinner. What about you? .....
5. I never learnt German at school. What about you? .....
6. Nick is here. What about Joe? .....
7. Mother does most of the cooking at home. What about you? .....
8. John and Kate are at University. What about your kids? .....

2 **(A) Here are some questions. First complete the questions, then match the questions with the answers.**

1.	..... you like living in Moscow?	A.	Sorry, I haven't got a watch.
2.	..... you finished yet?	B.	Yes, but I don't like the noise.
3.	..... anyone know Jack's address?	C.	He was at the library a minute ago.
4.	..... you seen Mark?	D.	No, I'll be another ten minutes.
5.	..... you know what time it is?	E.	No, I didn't. I hadn't got a minute to spare.
6.	..... you go to the cinema yesterday?	F.	I do, but I've left my address-book at home.

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

3 **(A) Correct the sentences by making them negative.**

1. The Sun goes round the Earth. The Sun doesn't go round the Earth.
2. Daisies are green. .....
3. Cats can fly. .....
4. Spring will come after autumn. .....
5. The Sun shines when it rains. .....

II. When you want someone to give you more information, you ask a "wh"-question, which begins with a "wh"-word: **WHO, WHAT, WHERE, WHEN, WHICH, WHOSE, WHOM, WHY, HOW, HOW MANY/MUCH**.

Such questions are called **SPECIAL QUESTIONS**.

1. The "wh"-word comes first, then you follow the rules for the general question.

❑ **What** is the time, please? ❑ **Why** did you do it? ❑ **Where** have you been hiding lately?

2. When a "wh"-word is the subject of a question, the question word comes first, then the verb group. You do not have to add *do*, *does*, *did* as an auxiliary.

❑ **Who** is that man over there? ❑ **What** happened? ❑ **Who** could have done it?

3. You can also use *what*, *which*, *whose*, *how many/much* with a noun: **What colour..? What size..? How much money..? Whose idea..? Which book..?**

❑ **What time** does the film start? ❑ **What make** is your car? ❑ **How many** students were there?

4. If there is a preposition, it comes at the end.

❑ Where does he come **from**? ❑ What are you talking **about**?

Question Word Order

WH-WORD	AUXILIARY VERB	SUBJECT	MAIN VERB	OTHER SENTENCE PARTS
What	are	you	doing	here?
Where	does	he	live?	
When	did	they	arrive	in London ?
Who	–	–	said	it?

EXERCISE



4 **(A, B) Rearrange these phrases to make questions.**

1. your homework / finished / yet / have you? – *Have you finished your homework yet?*
2. French / how well / speak / do you? .....
3. next Friday / will you / at school / be? .....
4. who / next to you / in class / sits? .....
5. who / next to / do you / in class / sit? .....

Question Tags

1. A question tag is a short phrase that is added to the end of a statement to turn it into a question. These are used to ask someone to confirm or disagree with what you are saying or when you want to sound more polite.

2. A question tag consists of a verb and a pronoun. The verb in a question tag is chosen the same way we do it in a general question.

3. With a positive statement we usually use a negative question tag, ending in **-n't**. With a negative statement we always use a positive question tag.

❑ He **is** very clever, **isn't** he?
❑ She **made** a remarkable progress, **didn't** she?
❑ You **haven't** been to Australia, **have** you?
❑ You **are not** coming tomorrow, **are** you?

STATEMENT	QUESTION TAG	ANSWER	
		Agreement	Disagreement
Positive	**Negative**		
She **is** very busy,	**isn't** she?	**Yes**, she **is**.	**No**, she **isn't**.
You **can** swim,	**can't** you?	**Yes**, I **can**.	**No**, I **can't**.
Peter **works** hard,	**doesn't** he?	**Yes**, he **does**.	**No**, he **doesn't**.
Your sister **went** to London,	**didn't** she?	**Yes**, she **did**.	**No**, she **didn't**.
Negative	**Positive**		
You **won't go** to Moscow,	**will** you?	**No**, I **won't**.	**Yes**, I **will**.
He **hasn't finished** his work,	**has** he?	**No**, he **hasn't**.	**Yes**, he **has**.
You **shouldn't stay** in bed,	**should** you?	**No**, I **shouldn't**.	**Yes**, I **should**.

1. The negative question tag with *I* is *aren't*:
- ❑ I'm no fool, **aren't I**?

2. We use *they* in question tags after *anybody*, *anyone*, *everybody*, *everyone*, *nobody*, *no one*, *somebody*, *someone*:
- ❑ **Everyone** will be leaving on Friday, won't **they**?
- ❑ **Nobody** had bothered to help, had **they**?

We use *it* in question tags after *anything*, *everything*, *nothing*, *something*:
- ❑ **Something** should be done, shouldn't **it**?
- ❑ **Nothing** ever pleases her, does **it**?

EXERCISES



5 (A, B) Use question tags to complete these sentences.

1. You've met George, haven't you?
2. They won't be too late, ...?
3. Helen left a message for me, ...?
4. There isn't time for another game, ...?
5. Nobody saw what happened, ...?
6. Something is wrong, ...?
7. Somebody has made a mistake, ...?
8. You didn't do it, ...?
9. I'll see you tomorrow, ...?
10. He knows where you are, ...?

6 (B, C) Read the news story. Use the underlined sections of the article to write the reporter's questions.

BOND STREET JEWELLER ROBBED

A robber got away with a carrier bag full of jewellery from (1) Howard Goodwin, the Bond Street jewellers, (2) yesterday.

(3) A well-dressed man entered the shop at about 3.30 p.m. (4) He pointed a gun at an assistant, handed him a Harrods carrier bag and asked him to fill it with jewellery from inside the shop and from the windows.

When the assistant hesitated, (5) the man said in a soft voice, "I would hate to use this gun on you, so please hurry up."

A Goodwin spokesman said later, "Among the pieces was a (6) diamond necklace worth (7) $500,000. We very much regret its loss."

(8) Detective Chief Inspector Peter Turnbull said, "The man spent (9) about five minutes in the shop, then he walked out into (10) Old Bond Street and disappeared into the crowd. He (11) was aged between 25 and 35 and was wearing (12) a light-coloured Burberry raincoat."

1. What shop ..... ?
2. When / happen ..... ?
3. Who ..... ?
4. How / make the assistant fill ..... ?
5. What / say ..... ?
6. Which / steal ..... ?
7. How much/ cost ..... ?
8. Who / investigate ..... ?
9. How long / spend ..... ?
10. Where / disappear ..... ?
11. How old ..... ?
12. What / wear ..... ?

7 (B, C) The Chief Inspector is questioning a suspect. He is asking this person about yesterday's evening. Develop the inspector's questions fully.

1. – Where *were you yesterday evening*?
   – I went to the opera.
2. – What ..... ?
   – I saw the Magic Flute.
3. – What time ..... ?
   – I left around 10.30.
4. – What ..... ?
   – I went to a restaurant.
5. – Who ..... ?
   – I went with two friends.
6. – ..... ?
   – No, we went there by taxi.
7. – ..... ?
   – No, I went home from the restaurant alone.

8 (A, B) Detective Chief Inspector Peter Turnbull is investigating the case. Complete his questions with the right tag.

At the police station

Chief Inspector: Right. Now let's just go over it again. You say you were at the cinema, *weren't you*?
Suspect: Yes, at the Odeon Leicester Square.
CI: You left the Odeon cinema at about three o'clock, ... ?
S: Yes, at three fifteen, I looked at my watch.
CI: You were not driving that day, ... ?
S: No, I walked along Coventry Street to Piccadilly Circus.
CI: Uh-huh. You had bought a newspaper before going down into the tube station, ... ?
S: That's right. The Evening Standard.
CI: You didn't take the north side exit, ... ?
S: No, it was the Green Park tube station, there I caught a train home.
CI: It was a westbound train, ... ?
S: Yes, to Acton Town.
CI: That's on the Piccadilly Line too, ... ?
S: Yes, I've always taken this train home.
CI: You said you walked all the way to the Green Park because you wanted to take a look at the shops, ... ?
S: Yes, that's true, I suppose.
CI: You walked along the north side of Piccadilly, and most of the shops are on the south side, ... ?
S: But there are the shops in Bond Street...
CI: So you turned into Bond Street...
S: No, I told you before I wasn't in Bond Street that day.
CI: Yes, you were in Bond Street, Mr. Neal, and you didn't just look at the shops there, you also went into one of them – Howard Goodwin, the jewellers. You had a gun in one hand and a Harrods carrier bag in the other. The assistant filled it with jewellery. He noticed a copy of the Evening Standard in the bag. We showed him a photo of you and he identified you, Mr. Neal. Come on, tell us the truth. Where did you hide the stuff?



9 (A, B) To read these jokes, you have to form questions using the given words.

1) **A**: you/remember/our holiday/last year? – *Do you remember our holiday last year?*
B: Yes, of course! Could/I/forget/Greece?
.....
A: you/remember/the boy/I/had?
.....
B: Which/one? .....
A: The one I said life wasn't worth living without.
B: Well?
A: I've forgotten his name.

2) **A**: you/ever/see/a catfish?
.....
B: how/a cat/can/hold/a fishing rod?
.....

3) **Small daughter**: Mummy, how many/days/be/ before Christmas?
.....
Mother: why/ask/you?
.....
Daughter: enough/time/start/being a good/girl/ be?
.....

4) **Mr. Smith**: you/have/a room/for tonight?
.....
Receptionist: you/have/a reservation?
.....
Mr. Smith: I'm not a Red Indian.

10 (B, C) Here is a conversation about a picture. Scott sees a print of the picture on the wall in Amy's room. Fill in the things Scott said.

Scott: *Who painted this thing ?*
Amy: August Macke [ˈmɑ:kə]
Scott: ..... ?
Amy: Yes, he was born in Westfalen, Germany.
Scott: ..... ?
Amy: No, he died in 1914.
Scott: ..... ?
Amy: No, I've never seen his pictures before. It was the first picture of the painter I'd ever seen and I liked it very much.
Scott: ..... ?
Amy: He painted it in 1914, it's one of his last.
Scott: ..... ?
Amy: They are sitting in a garden. In fact, it's a restaurant, the painting is called "A Garden Restaurant".
Scott: ..... ?
Amy: Yes, I do. I think it's beautiful: the colours, the light, the composition, the atmosphere.
Scott: *I see he is fond of painting gardens, isn't he?*
Amy: Yes, indeed. Many of his paintings depict gardens. In one of them we even see his own garden in Bonn.



11 (A, B) Read a fan's letter to Gloria Martin, a popular TV star. The girl asked her brother to write this letter for her but later she added some questions herself. Correct the mistakes in the questions.

Dear Gloria,
My name is Alberta. I'm from Cartagena in Chile. My English is very poor. I asked my brother to write this letter to you. I'm a great fan of yours. I watch all your films. I want to be an actress too. I want to know everything about you.
Will you write me a letter?
Love, Alberta

Corrections

What your age? .....
Where you are from? .....
What you do in your free time? .....
Are you really have a swimming-pool in the garden?
.....
You have sisters and brother? .....
What film you do now? .....
Where you have studied? .....

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

1. General Rules

THE RULE STATES: if the verb in the principal clause is in one of the past tenses, a past tense (or future-in-the-past) must be used in the subordinate clause. The action expressed in the subordinate clause can be simultaneous with the action expressed in the principal clause, prior or posterior to that of the principal clause. Study how the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses is observed in such clauses.

	SIMULTANEOUS ACTION	PRIOR ACTION	FUTURE ACTION
I **knew** / He **said** (that)	– he **lived** in Kiev он *живёт* в Киеве – they **were waiting** for us они *ждут* нас – he **had been living** in Kiev since 1946 он *живёт* в Киеве с 1946 года – he **had known** her for two years он *знает* её 2 года	– he **had already left** Moscow он *уже уехал* из Москвы – it **had been raining** as it was wet outside *шёл дождь*, так как на улице мокро – she **had been ill** for two weeks она *болела* две недели	– they **would arrive** on Sunday они *приедут* в воскресенье – they **would be working** at 6 в 6 они *будут работать* – he **would have translated** the article by Monday он *уже переведёт* эту статью к понедельнику

So a useful **GENERAL RULE** is: we move the reported clauses **"one tense back"**: *present* becomes *past*, *past* becomes *past perfect*, *will* becomes *would*.

Study how the tenses are changed according to the rule of the Sequence of Tenses.

Present Simple ***I do...***	⇨	Past Simple ***I did...***
Present Continuous *He* ***is doing...***	⇨	Past Continuous *He* ***was doing...***
Present Perfect ***I have done...***	⇨	Past Perfect ***I had done...***
Past Indefinite ***I did...***	⇨	Past Perfect (or stays the same) ***I did / had done...***
Past Continuous ***I was doing...***	⇨	Past Perfect Continuous ***I had been doing...***
Past Perfect ***I had done...***	⇨	does not change

will (future)	⇨	**would**
can	⇨	**could**
may	⇨	**might**
must	⇨	**must** or **had to**
Could / could have done **Might / might have done** **Should / should have done** **Needn't / needn't have done**	⇨	do not change

- ❑ "I **woke up** feeling ill and so I **stayed** in bed."
  – Tom said (that) he **woke up** feeling ill and so he **stayed** in bed.
  – Tom said he **had woken up** feeling ill then and so he **had stayed** in bed.
- ❑ "You **must** stay in bed for three days." – The doctor said that I **must stay** in bed for three days. (order/advice)
- ❑ "I **must** leave you now. Here goes the bell." – She said she **had to** leave us right away. There was the bell. (circumstances)
- ❑ "You **should** go to the dentist." – Mother said I **should** go to the dentist.
- ❑ "I **couldn't have said** it." – She insisted she **couldn't have said** it.

When reporting something which was said in another place or a long time ago, other parts of the sentence may have to be changed, apart from the tense.

Time and Place Changes

here	⇨	*there*
this	⇨	*that*
these	⇨	*those*
now	⇨	*then / at that moment / right away*
today	⇨	*that day*
yesterday	⇨	*the day before / the previous day*
tomorrow	⇨	*the next / following day*
a year ago	⇨	*a year before*
last night	⇨	*the previous night*
tonight	⇨	*that night*

- ❑ "I'll do it **tomorrow**." – She told me (that) she would do it **the next day**.
- ❑ "Do I have to do it **now**?" – I wondered if I had to do it **right away**.
- ❑ "Look at **this** document." – She wanted me to look at **the** document.

NB! Adverb changes depend on the context. It is not always necessary to make these changes, especially in spoken Indirect Speech.
- ❑ "I'**ll see** you **tonight**", he said. – He said he **would see** me **tonight**.

NOTES:

1. The main sphere where the Sequence of Tenses is applied is the object clause:
   - ❑ Harris **said** he **knew** what kind of place **I meant**.
2. If there are several subordinate clauses in a sentence, the rule is observed in all of them.
   - ❑ I **knew** that he **had told** her that he **received** the letters every week.
     – Я *знал*, что он *сказал* ей, что *получает* эти письма каждую неделю.

- ❑ I **thought** he **would tell** her that he **intended** to go to the Crimea.
  – Я *думал*, что он *скажет* ей, что он *намеревается* поехать в Крым.
- ❑ He **said** that Jack **had told** her that he **was writing** a play.
  – Он *сказал*, что Джек *говорил* ей, что он *пишет* пьесу.

3. The Rule of the Sequence of Tenses is not observed:

a) if the object clause expresses a general truth or something is represented as habitual, customary or characteristic.

- ❑ The teacher **told** the children that water **boils** at 100°C.
- ❑ Galileo **proved** that the Earth **moves** round the Sun.
- ❑ The speaker **said** that the peoples **want** peace.
- ❑ He **told** them that he usually **goes** home by bus.
- ❑ He **asked** what time the train usually **starts**.
- ❑ We **knew** that he **plays** tennis well.

b) if the original speaker was talking about a present or future situation that is still present or future (soon after it was said).

- ❑ I **told** you it **is raining**. (In some hours) I **told** you it **was raining**.

4. In *when/if*-clauses we use *the Past Simple/Past Continuous/Past Perfect* depending on the situation.

- ❑ I **thought** that we **would discuss** the problem when the manager **returned** from Moscow.
- ❑ He **said** he **would be reading** while she **was writing** the letter.
- ❑ He **said** that he **would go** home after he **had translated** the article.

5. In attributive clauses, adverbial clauses of cause and comparison we also use *Present* or *Future*.

- ❑ My brother **told** me about the book you **are writing**.
- ❑ He **was not able** to translate the article because he **does not know** English well enough.
- ❑ He **refused** to go to the theatre because he **will have** an exam in a few days.
- ❑ It **was** not so cold yesterday as it **is** now.
- ❑ He **was** once stronger than he **is** now.

6. When we say how long something has been happening, the sentence can have a double meaning. It depends on the context or situation.

- ❑ I **knew** that she **had been ill for two months**.
  1. Я знал, что она *болеет уже два месяца*.
  2. Я знал, что она *болела два месяца*.

BUT:
- ❑ I **knew** that she **had been ill**. – Я *знал*, что она *болела*.
- ❑ He **said** that it **had been raining**. – Он *сказал*, что *шел дождь*.

7. The Past Simple can stay the same if we use:

in 1945
2 years ago
yesterday
last week
when he came

⇨

- ❑ He **said** that he **left** Moscow 5 *years ago*.
- ❑ He **knew** that Peter **was** at home *yesterday*.
- ❑ She **said** she **was working** *when I rang her up*.

BUT: ❑ He said that he **had left** Moscow **the day before**.
two years before.
the previous night.

8. The Past Simple after *since* and *when* generally remains unchanged.

- ❑ She **said**, "I **have been writing** since I **came**."
  – She **said** she **had been writing** since she **came**.
- ❑ "When I **came**, Jane **was playing** the piano."
  Kitty **said** that when she **came** Jane **was playing** the piano.

EXERCISES



1 **(B, C) Say whether the action of the object clause precedes (P), follows (F) or is simultaneous (S) with the action of the principal clause in the following sentences:**

1. He asked me what work I was doing and whether I intended to go to university. ...S... 2. She claimed that she had met Monty on her way home. ..... 3. Then I thought about Mother. She would certainly ask me where I had been all day. ..... 4. She said she would be staying in town the next day to do some shopping. ..... 5. Out of the corner of my eye I saw the youths had stopped talking and were watching us. ..... 6. In the hotel the waiter told me that an American had been staying there for three months. ..... 7. It was also rumoured that Dan had got married. ..... 8. I knew she was itching to tell me what had happened. ..... 9. He knew that his mother would think he was seriously ill and would probably speak to the teacher. ..... 10. Rudy decided that he would have to tell Bogart that it was impossible for him to appear before the board the next day. .....

2 **(B, C) Give your reasons as to why the rules of the Sequence of Tenses are not observed in the following sentences.**

1. He says he is free tomorrow. 2. He spoke with the satisfaction of a competent workman who knows his job from A to Z. 3. He sought pleasure in the simple and natural things that life offers to everyone. 4. Monty told me that he had no permit for the gun and that in England it is illegal to own a gun without a permit. 5. I knew I should go; but we sat there because it is difficult to go without any particular reason for leaving. 6. Billy folded his arms and leaned back. "I told you I don't like milk." 7. I will say that we have agreed to provide for the child. 8. I don't think that I shall ever work for your father. 9. I hope you know what you're doing.

3 **(B, C) Make the action of the following object clauses simultaneous with those of the principal clauses.**

1. I thought you (to have) ..... better sense. 2. She could not imagine what he (to do) ..... there. 3. I forgot what he (to look) ..... like. 4. What surprised me was that Pat (to be) ..... so much at home here. 5. He asked me what I (to do) ..... and whether I (to be going) for a swim. 6. I was surprised you (to know) ..... my name. 7. He told his father that now he (to make) ..... ten dollars a week less. 8. When I knew him better, he admitted that he (to feel) ..... lonely in London. 9. She wanted Wilfred to forbid my walking in the park alone. She said it (to be) ..... dangerous.

4 **(B, C) Make the actions in the following object clauses precede those of the principal clauses.**

1. At ten o'clock he telephoned again, saying that he (to change) ..... his mind. 2. I knew that for the past twenty-five years he (to buy) ..... the same paper each morning. 3. She seemed to have forgotten what (to happen) ..... a few minutes before. 4.It was not known where he (to spend) ..... his early childhood. 5. The question was why he (to do) ..... it at all. 6. Then he admitted that he (to live) ..... since the summer in his father's house. 7. What she could not understand was why he (to tell) ..... them such a pack of lies. 8. She wrote that they (to let) ..... their house for a year. 9. One day she told me why she never (to get married) ..... . 10. I wondered what she (to do) ..... there so late at night.

5 **(B, C) Use the required tense-aspect forms in the following sentences, observing the rules of the Sequence of Tenses where necessary.**

1. When I went into the office next morning, I already (to formulate) ..... my plan. 2. She ended by saying that she (to think) ..... she (to make) ..... a mistake. 3. She knew what (to go) ..... on in their minds. 4. So I went into the living room where my aunt already (to wait) ..... for me. 5. She telephoned her husband to the office to say that her brother (to return) ..... from abroad. 6. An old friend rang up to ask how Elizabeth (to feel) ..... , and whether she (can) ..... go with his wife to the concert on Sunday morning. 7. Most of the trees already (to put) ..... out their

leaves and there were buds everywhere. 8. He remembered that he (not to see) ..... Lily for three weeks. 9. She hadn't yet figured out what she (to be) ..... going to do. 10. It was possible that Jack (to hang) ..... around. 11. Everybody thought they (to live) ..... in happiness for nearly thirty years.

6 (B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

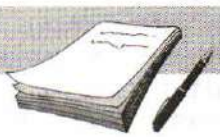
1. Он мне говорил, что интересуется историей. 2. Он знал, о чём она думает. 3. Он сказал, что вернётся очень скоро. 4. Я знал, что она жила в Сан-Франциско. 5. Я знал, что она живёт в Лондоне. 6. Я думал, что он получает от неё письма. 7. Я был рад, что он получил от неё письмо. 8. Я думал, что они пригласят нас. 9. Я был уверен, что он работает на этом заводе. 10. Я был уверен, что он работает, и поэтому не вошел в комнату. 11. Он сказал мне, что видел их накануне. 12. Я был уверен, что он сидит в саду. 13. Она говорила, что книга ей нравится. 14. Я был уверен, что он живёт здесь уже много лет. 15. Я вчера слышал, что они в Эдинбурге. 16. Мы слышали, что они были в Ливерпуле. 17. Я слышал, что они работают уже несколько месяцев. 18. Мы не знали, что он болен. 19. Мы не знали, что он так давно болен. 20. Он не знал, что мы знаем друг друга с детства.

7 (B, C) Translate the following into English, observing the rules of the Sequence of Tenses.

1. Я был уверен, что он жалеет, что поссорился с ней. 2. Я подумал, что он устал, и спросил его, что он делал всё это время. 3. У меня было впечатление, что он находится там уже некоторое время. 4. Она говорила, что не может понять, почему они переменили решение. 5. Он ещё не знал, что будет делать в Нью-Йорке. 6. Он сказал, что они обсудят этот вопрос, как только директор вернётся из Москвы. 7. Я думал, что вы позвоните мне, когда получите телеграмму. 8. Я сказал, что прочту эту книгу только после того, как сдам экзамены. 9. Он сказал, что не пойдёт домой, пока не закончит эту работу. 10. Я боялся, что он будет сердиться, если я не приду вовремя. 11. Он пообещал мне, что поговорит с профессором, если увидит его в университете.

2. Revision

EXERCISES



1 (B, C) Use the required tense-aspect forms in the following sentences.

1. She scarcely realized what (to happen) ..... . 2. Her eyes (to be) ..... puffed and she obviously (to cry) ..... that afternoon. 3. She realized that he (to try) ..... to tell her how lonely he (to be) ..... . 4. His cheek (to be) ..... cut. When she (to see) ..... it she (to say) ..... , "Oh, you (to fight) ..... again." 5. I thought I (to sleep) ..... well, being tired. 6. She asked if Mr. Clennam (to tell) ..... her where he (to live) ..... . 7. He (to remain) ..... in his seat, as though studying his programme till the three (to pass) ..... out into the foyer. 8. Darkness (to fall) ..... when he finally (to return) ..... to the hotel. He (to say) ..... nothing to Pat, except that he (to turn) ..... down the job. 9. I (to sit) ..... there for about ten minutes, pretending to read, when someone (to sit) ..... down at my table. 10. She (to look) ..... up at him from where she (to sit) ..... . Her make-up things (to lie) ..... in front of

her. She (to do) ..... her face. 11. As Hugh and I (to come) ..... down the steps, we nearly (to run) ..... into my father.

2 (B) Correct the mistakes, if any.

1. We didn't know where our neighbour go every evening. ..... 2. She said that her daughter will be a doctor. ..... 3. Mother wanted to know if I sent my brother a telegram the day before. 4. There was nobody in. We realized everybody has left. ..... 5. The Mother told Tom that he went to bed. ..... 6. My friend asked me who is playing the piano in the next room. ..... 7. I was told that the child never drinks milk. ..... 8. Jack asked his wife if she has a headache. ..... 9. She was glad she made no mistakes in her dictation. ..... 10. She hoped that her friend would come to see her. ..... 11. He didn't tell anybody where he is going. ..... 12. The parents asked me when would I come back. ..... 13. The pupil asked the teacher if metal conducted electricity. ..... 14. Maria wanted to know where did I buy the hat.

3 (B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Я думал, что ты занят. 2. Мы сказали, что хотим пойти в оперу. 3. Мы надеялись, что вы умеете плавать. 4. Она заявила (announce), что хочет идти с нами. 5. Врач сказал, что я должен остаться дома. 6. Мне было жаль, что ему пришлось остаться дома. 7. Она сказала, что любит исторические романы. 8. Я не знал, что он живёт на этой улице. 9. Петр сказал, что музей сегодня закрыт. 10. Он решил, что его товарищи всё ещё играют в шахматы. 11. Она сказала, что они обычно встают в 8 часов. 12. Я не знала, что вы тоже любите музыку.

II

1. Она мне не сказала, что говорила с вами. 2. Мать сказала, что они уже пообедали. 3. Генри спросил меня, где я достал эту книгу. 4. Он позвонил на вокзал и узнал, что поезд уже ушёл. 5. Она отрицала, что говорила с Ниной. 6. Она думала, что он уже закончил университет. 7. Том сказал, что видел этот фильм.

III

1. Она говорила, что примет участие в работе. 2. Мать надеялась, что сын вернётся через неделю. 3. Он полагал, что они будут работать вместе. 4. Мы надеялись, что вечером сможем пойти в кино. 5. Я не знал, что твои друзья поедут отдыхать без тебя. 6. Отец сказал нам, что мы будем делать в субботу. 7. Они сказали, что лекция начнётся в 5 часов. 8. Мы им сказали, что не будем ждать их.

4 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Она сказала, что была очень занята и давно не была в театре. 2. Я был уверен, что он сказал вам, что получил от неё письмо. 3. Я был удивлён, что вы не сказали им, что собираетесь ехать в Дувр. 4. Я думал, что вы прочтёте в газете, что делегация уже прибыла в Москву. 5. Он обещал, что скажет вам, что я уже вернулся и хочу видеть вас. 6. Я был уверен, что он уже слышал, что мы вернулись с юга. 7. Роберт сказал, что его жена всё ещё в больнице и он собирается навестить её вечером. 8. Наш гид сказал, что автобус только что пришёл и отправится в Глазго через час. 9. Ваш товарищ сказал мне, в чём дело, и я думаю, что смогу помочь вам. 10. Мы слышали, что вы свободны, и решили, что вы сможете помочь нам.

3. Tests

I

1. Я заметил, что она смотрит на меня.
2. Я знал, что она не вернётся.
3. На платформе было мало людей, все уже заняли свои места в вагоне.
4. Она знала, что она права и была права с самого начала.
5. Я надеялся, что кто-то нашёл мои ключи и передаст их мне.
6. Было ясно, что случилось что-то ужасное.
7. Он обещал, что всё будет сделано.
8. Она скажет, что опоздала на поезд.

II

1. Я знаю, что вам нечего бояться.
2. Я знал, что он пожалеет об этом.
3. Я дам вам ответ, когда я поговорю с отцом.
4. Я хотел знать, как много уже сделано.
5. Она поинтересовалась, куда они собираются ехать.
6. Мама спросила, что мы делали все это время.
7. Все заметили, что он плохо играл во втором сете.
8. В комнате было темно, кто-то выключил свет.

III

1. Я была уверена, что он отправил письмо.
2. Он говорит, что он знает законы (laws) этой страны.
3. Директор сказал, что не может ничего обещать, ещё ничего не решено.
4. Она не знала, когда она закончит работу и вернётся домой.
5. Мы заметили, что она была печальна и ни на кого не смотрела.
6. Я поняла, что они работают здесь с самого утра.
7. Мистер Винстон объяснил, что его жена больна и не сможет нас принять.
8. Роджер сообщил мне, что взял билет и уезжает завтра.

DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH

1. Indirect Statements

Indirect Speech is formed according to the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses. The verbs most commonly used to introduce reported speech are: *to tell, to say, to add, to notice, to remark, to explain, to inform, to remind, to mention, to confess, to guess, to repeat*, etc.

Study the Following Pairs of Sentences in Direct and Indirect Speech

Notice carefully the changes in personal and possessive pronouns.

- ❑ The teacher told Jack, "*You* **ought to help** *your* mother."
- ❑ The teacher told Jack that *he* **ought to help** *his* mother.

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
The policeman *said* to Tom, "You **should be** more careful when crossing the street."	The policeman *told* Tom that he **should be** more careful when crossing the street.
Nick *explained*, "I **know** the man." ***(The Present Simple Tense)***	Nick *explained* that he **knew** the man. ***(The Past Simple Tense)***
The teacher *told* John, "You **didn't write** exercise two." ***(The Past Simple Tense)***	The teacher *told* John that he **hadn't written** exercise two. ***(The Past Perfect Tense)***
"I **will be** absent tomorrow," John *remarked*. ***(The Future Simple Tense)***	John *remarked* that he **would be** absent the next day. ***(The Future-in-the-Past)***
The secretary *informed* us, "The delegation **has** just **arrived** from Paris." ***(The Present Perfect Tense)***	The secretary *informed* us that the delegation **had** just **arrived** from Paris. ***(The Past Perfect Tense)***

NOTE: to say **smth** (to **smb**)
to tell **smb smth**

If the reporting verb is in the present, the tenses that follow are usually the same as those used in the original statement.

"I**'ve eaten.**" ⇨ He says he **has eaten.**
"I **enjoyed** it." ⇨ He says he **enjoyed** it.

The reporting verb is often in the present when:

- we are passing on messages: ❑ "What does Mother say?" – She **says** you **must** come in now.
- reading aloud, reporting: ❑ The instructions **say** that you **connect** this plug to the set.
- reporting what someone often says: ❑ She'**s** always **telling** me how rich she **is**.

EXERCISES

1 (A, B) Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.

1. Jack told his father, "I hope to pass the examination."
   .....
2. Henry said to me, "The teacher is listening to us."
   .....
3. Bob said to Tom, "I made no mistakes in the last dictation."
   .....
4. I told the policeman, "I saw the thief in the garden."
   .....
5. He said, "I haven't read many English books."
   .....
6. Jack's father said to him, "You haven't cleaned your shoes."
   .....
7. Mary said, "I don't want to wear my old dress."
   .....
8. My mother said to me, "I feel very tired and I have a headache."
   .....
9. My friend told me, "We have plenty of time to do our work."
   .....
10. I said to my sister, "I haven't seen my uncle for a long time."
    .....

2 (A, B) Change the following sentences into Direct Speech.

1. My sister said that she hadn't got a watch.
   .....
2. The teacher told his students that he was pleased with their work.
   .....
3. I told him that I hadn't seen his brother for a long time.
   .....
4. I told my mother that Henry was studying medicine at Oxford University.
   .....
5. She told the grocer that she didn't want any sugar.
   .....
6. We told the teacher that we didn't understand his question.
   .....
7. I told the taxi-driver that he was driving too fast.
   .....
8. She said that her children were playing in the garden.
   .....

3 (A, B) Choose the correct word from those in brackets.

1. My grandmother always ..... me about her childhood. (says/tells)
2. "Don't do that!" she ..... them. (said/told)
3. Did she ..... you where she had put my books? (say/tell)
4. When I was introduced to the actor, he .... a few words to me. (said/told)
5. That little boy is very bad. He .... a lot of lies. (says/tells)
6. She ..... to me she didn't know what to do. (said/told)
7. He often ..... things like that. (says/tells)



2. Indirect Command and Request

We report the imperative with *a suitable* **verb + *to*-Infinitive**. The reporting verb matches the function of the imperative (*asking*, *telling*, *advising*, *ordering*, etc). The verbs most commonly used to introduce indirect orders and requests are: *to tell*, *to order*, *to command*, *to instruct*, *to advise*, *to offer*, *to warn*, *to remind*, *to forbid*, *to allow/permit*, *to demand*, etc. Requests are usually introduced by the verb *to ask*. More emotional forms are: *to beg*, *to implore (умолять)*, *to urge (настаивать, уговаривать)*.

Study the Following Chart

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
The mother said to the lazy son, "**Wake up**!"	The mother *told* the lazy son **to wake up**.
Father said to me, "**Remember to post** these letters."	Father *reminded* me **to post** those letters.
I said to Nick, "**Shut** the door, please."	I *asked* Nick **to shut** the door.
Mother said to the children, "**Don't** ever **enter** this room."	Mother *warned* the children **not to enter** the room.

EXERCISE



1 (A, B) Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech, using the reporting verbs from the box below:

to tell *to ask* *to order* *to instruct*
to remind *to advise* *to warn* *to forbid*

1. The old man said to the little girl, "Don't run across the street." *The old man warned the girl not to run across the street.*
2. Mary said to her brother, "Take the letter to the post office, please." .....
3. The teacher said to Tom, "Collect the exercise-books and put them on my table." .....
4. The teacher said to the pupils, "Learn the poem by heart." .....
5. I said to my friend, "Meet me outside the cinema at six o'clock." .....
6. Mary's mother said to her, "Don't go out without your coat." .....
7. The teacher said to the students, "Open your books at page 60." .....
8. The doctor said to the sick man, "Don't go back to work for a fortnight." .....
9. Jack said to the policeman, "Tell me the time, please." .....

2 (B) Translate the sentences from Russian to English.

1. Я попросил Джека дать мне его словарь. 2. Кондуктор сказал пассажирам не выскакивать (get off) из автобуса на ходу. (while/go) 3. Учитель попросил студента стереть с доски. 4. Мама попросила меня закрыть окно. 5. Он напомнил мне отправить письмо. 6. Отец запретил детям входить в его кабинет. 7. Инспектор предупредил (warn) нас, что здесь стоянка запрещена. (to park) 8. Гид посоветовал нам заглянуть и в этот небольшой музей. 9. Он приказал нам встать. 10. Секретарь разрешил мне поговорить с директором.

3. Indirect Questions

3.1 Indirect General Questions

To report a question, we should:

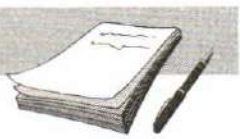
1. change the word order: the inversion in the direct question changes to statement word order.

2. If necessary, change the tense according to the Rule of the Sequence of Tenses.

3. use *if/whether (ли)* after the verbs *ask*, *inquire*, *want to know*, *wonder*, *not know*, *did not say/tell me*, etc.

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
Ann's mother: "**Are** you **tired**?"	Ann's mother *asked* her **if** she **was tired**.
Henry: "**Do** you **like** the wine?"	Henry *wondered* **if** I **liked** the wine.
Frank: "**Did** you **buy** a new car?"	Frank *wanted to know* **if** I **had bought** a new car.
The policeman: "**Have** you **seen** the sign?"	The policeman *inquired* whether I **had seen** the sign.
My sister: "**Will** you **go** to Italy in summer?"	My sister *asked* me if I **would go** to Italy in summer.

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.**

1. The teacher asked Tom, "Do you come to school by bus or on foot?" .....
2. A man stopped me in the street and asked, "Have you got a match?" .....
3. The teacher asked us, "Do you understand the question?" .....
4. Henry's father asked his son, "Do you want to be an engineer or a doctor?" .....
5. I asked Peter, "Are you going to play football on Friday?" .....
6. He asked his secretary, "Has the postman been yet?" .....

2 **(A, B) Translate the sentences.**

1. Гид спросил туристов, не устали ли они. 2. Я спросила своих гостей, хорошо ли они спали. 3. Он поинтересовался, часто ли мы ходим в театр. 4. Он хотел узнать, долго ли работает у нас мистер Долби. 5. Она спросила меня, будет ли на вечеринке Элис. 6. Она спросила меня, видел ли я Джона в последнее время. 7. Хозяин отеля поинтересовался, понравился ли мне мой номер. 8. Она спросила, работаем ли мы сейчас.

3.2 Indirect Special Questions

An indirect special question is introduced by the same adverb or pronoun that introduces the direct question (word order and tense changes remain the same).

DIRECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH
The teacher: "Why **haven't** you **done** the home assignment?"	The teacher *inquired* why the pupils **had not done** the home assignment.
Ted: "Where **do** Ron's parents **live**?"	Ted *wondered* where Ron's parents **lived**.
The grandmother: "Why **is** the child **crying**?"	The grandmother *asked* why the child **was crying**.
Nina's sister: "Who **did** you **meet** at the theatre?"	Nina's sister *wanted to know* who Nina **had met** at the theatre.

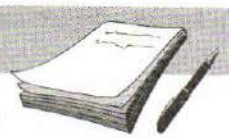
A direct subject-question has the same word order as the statement:

- ❑ *John* **paid** the waiter. ⇨ ❑ *Who* **paid** the waiter?

We keep the same word order when we report a subject-question, though if it is necessary, we change the tense.

- ❑ The policeman asked, "Who **left** this car here?"
- ❑ The teacher asked, "What **made** you change your mind?"
- ❑ The policeman asked who **(had) left** that car there.
- ❑ The teacher asked what **had made** me change my mind.

EXERCISES



3 (A, B) Change the following sentences into Indirect Speech.

1. Mother asked Jane, "What are you doing here?"
   .....
2. Margaret asked Richard, "Where are you going for your holidays?"
   .....
3. Ann asked Mary, "What do you usually have for breakfast?"
   .....
4. The inspector asked, "Who caused the accident?"
   .....
5. The teacher asked Bob, "When did you learn to swim?"
   .....
6. Mary's mother asked her, "Where have you put your shoes?"
   .....
7. Peter asked me, "When are you going to have dinner?"
   .....
8. The policeman asked me, "Where did you lose your wallet?"
   .....
9. I asked Bob, "Why didn't you answer my letter?"
   .....
10. There was a crowd in the street. I asked a man in the crowd, "What is the matter?"
    .....
11. Father asked, "When will lunch be ready?"
    .....
12. The little boy asked his father, "Why does the policeman wear a uniform?"
    .....
13. I asked him, "Who are you looking at?"
    .....

4 **(B, C) Translate into English.**

1. Они спросили меня, когда начинается мой рабочий день. 2. Он спросил, какую музыку любят мои друзья. 3. Мы спросили его, кто из его друзей знает два иностранных языка. 4. Журналисты спросили писателя, над какой книгой он работает. 5. Она спросила меня, где я был вчера. 6. Они спросили моего друга, как он провёл летние каникулы. 7. Я спросила у неё, где ей сшили пальто. 8. Я спросила у него, какие ещё французские книги он прочитал за последнее время. 9. Друзья спросили его, куда он ездил в прошлое воскресенье. 10. Родители спросили нас, что мы собираемся делать летом. 11. Жена спросила, почему он не купил хлеб. 12. Мы спросили преподавателя, как мы сдали экзамен. 13. Она спросила его, когда он видел Лену в последний раз. 14. Они спросили меня, когда я позвоню своим родителям. 15. Я спросил его, когда он собирается закончить эту работу.

4. Reporting a Dialogue or a Conversation

When reporting a dialogue, which besides statements, questions and requests abounds with colloquial expressions, cliches, conversational formulae, we do not render the words mechanically. We interpret the meaning of the utterance by using a matching reporting verb (*complain*, *agree*, *confess*, *add*, *explain*, *exclaim*, *express*, *thank*, *accuse*, *grumble*, etc.). Exclamations such as: *Oh! Well! Oh dear!*, etc. are ommited in the reported speech.

- "I'll certainly give you a hand tomorrow evening." ⇨ *She promised to help me in the evening.*
  She promised that she would help me the following evening.

Jane: Oh! I've got a bad headache.
Her aunt: Oh dear! Why don't you take a pill?
⇨ *Jane complained of a bad headache and her aunt advised her to take a pill.*

Verbs Used to Report a Conversation

VERB + INFINITIVE	**VERB + smb to do smth**	**VERB + GERUND**	**VERB + that clause**
agree *advise* *demand* *decide* *offer* *promise* *refuse* *threaten* *would like*	*allow* *persuade* *remind* *forbid* *tell*	*accuse of* *apologise for* *complain of/about* *admit* *deny* *forgive for* *inform of* *suggest** *thank for* (see Gerund)	*confess* *point out* *complain* *admit* *deny* *promise* *warn*
He ***offered to help*** *us.*	*He* ***persuaded me to take*** *the offer.*	*She* ***thanked us*** *for coming.*	*He* ***admitted that he*** *had taken the paper.*

*** NOTE:**

The use of the verb *suggest*:

NB! YOU CANNOT use the Infinitive after *suggest*.

1. *Suggest* + objective clause

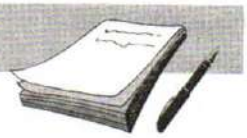
The following structures are possible:

I **suggest** that he **should/shouldn't apply** for the job.
I **suggest** that he **apply/not apply** for the job. (**NB!** The base form of the verb remains the same in all persons: *you go/he go/they go*.)
I **suggest** that he **applied** for the job.

2. *Suggest* + the gerund

- Tom **suggested going** to the cinema.

EXERCISES



1 (A, B) Report what people say, using reporting verbs in brackets.

1. Excellent! That was a lovely dinner! (compliment on) *He complimented me on the dinner I gave him.*
2. Don't forget to set your alarm clock for 6.00. (remind) .....
3. Careful! Don't touch those plates. They are hot. (warn) .....
4. Shall we stop for a coffee break? (suggest) .....
5. We are having a party on Sunday evening. Try to come along! (invite) .....
6. I'll definitely get my hair cut this week. (promise) .....
7. Yes, it was me. I ate the last buscuit. (admit) .....
8. I'm sorry. I forgot about our appointment. (apologise) .....
9. I am not to blame. I never used the office phone for personal calls. (deny) .....

2 (B, C) Change each sentence into reported speech, using a suitable verb from the box.

guess promise warn advise threaten apologise agree forgive suggest

1. "I'm not going to help you, you'll have to do it by yourself."
   She warned me that she was not going to help me and suggested I do it myself.
2. "Why don't you phone him and see if he's free tonight?" .....
3. "Make sure that you don't start giggling during the interview." .....
4. "If you type the letter for me, I'll buy you a drink, OK?" .....
5. "You're the one who borrowed my dictionary, aren't you?" .....
6. "If you don't move your car, I'll call the police!" .....
7. "All right, if you want me to, I don't mind accompanying you." .....
8. "I'm most awfully sorry but I seem to have broken your fountain pen." .....
9. "I don't really mind your rudeness, I know you were in a bit of a state." .....

3 (B, C) Report these conversations, using the verbs in italics.



1. check, deny

Sue: You were here this morning, weren't you, Philip?
Philip: Yes, why?
Sue: Well, it's just that there are coffee stains on the carpet upstairs and they weren't there this morning.
Philip: No, I haven't been upstairs!

Sue checked whether Philip had been at home and told him about the new coffee stains on the carpet upstairs. Philip .....
.....
.....
.....

2. confide, agree, warn

Sarah: Don't tell anyone but I think he's made the wrong decision.
Jo: I can't help agreeing with you.
Sarah: But I wouldn't say anything if I were you, he'd be furious!
.....
.....
.....
.....

3. point out, confess, suggest

Man: Sorry to trouble you, Mrs. Farmer, but your car is blocking mine.
Neighbour: I'm afraid I've locked the key inside.
Man: You'd better call the breakdown service then.
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



4 (B, C) Put these short dialogues into Indirect Speech.

1. – Let me give you a lift home.
– Thank you very much. It's very nice of you.
.....
.....

2. – You gave me the wrong change!
– I'm terribly sorry. I didn't mean to.
.....
.....

3. – Can you believe it? Jane has become engaged.
– That can't be true!
.....
.....

4. – We're going out to celebrate tonight.
– That's marvellous!
.....
.....

5. Revision

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Put the following into Indirect Speech. Use the following reporting verbs:**

wonder want to know inquire remark reply mention state complain of say explain

1. I asked my friend, "How do you feel after your holiday?"
2. Jack's father asked him, "Who are you writing a letter to?"
3. "Jack is on the terrace. He is playing chess with his brother," says Nelly.
4. I saw a cloud of smoke and asked, "What is burning?"
5. "I can't understand what he is talking about," replies Bessie.
6. I asked her, "Who gave you that watch?"
7. "I'll tell you when I'll be back," Nora said to Jack.
8. Mr. Nyman asked his wife, "How much do you spend on food every week?"
9. "You have known me long," Barbara said to Martha.
10. "You're the best assistant I've ever had, Sheppey," he said.
11. Henry asked Tom, "Who did you visit in the hospital?"
12. "We didn't have dinner there," the boy said.
13. "When the doorbell rang, I was writing a letter to John," said George.

2 **(B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into the required Past tense, pay attention to the Sequence of Tenses.**

1. She (hear) ..... the band playing and she (know) ..... that in a few moments the curtain (go) ..... up. 2. Myra (think) ..... he (prefer) ..... to be by himself. 3. I (hear) ..... from your mother that you (be) ..... late and so I (order) ..... coffee and sandwiches. 4. Mrs. Streep (ask) ..... him if he (have) ..... dinner there. 5. The old man (ask) ..... me if I (have) ..... parents. 6. He (be) ..... very sorry for Jennie and he (tell) his wife that he (have) ..... to go out and see her. 7. And the

other day I (have) ..... a letter from him saying he (be) ..... in Moscow soon. 8. I (say) ..... I (be) ..... back by nine o'clock. 9. In a few words, I (tell) ..... him what (happen) ..... . 10. She (ask) ..... me if I (live) ..... long in that town. 11. When I (ring) ..... her that evening she (say) ..... she (not like) ..... to discuss those problems on the phone. 12. I (put) ..... the papers back where they (belong) ..... , (tell) ..... the manager I (do) ..... no clipping or tearing and (return) ..... to the hotel. 13. He (write) ..... that he (come) ..... to lunch the following day.

3 (B, C) The following question was discussed in the Sport Forum: "Is swimming a sport or a hobby?" Report what people said, using the verbs from the box below:

to tell to say to reply to notice
to remark to explain to inform

1) **Hanks:** "It can be both, a sport and a hobby."
2) **Liz:** "If I fill out a job application and it has a space to list my hobbies, I will probably put 'swimming'."
3) **Bob:** "There are only three sports: hunting, shooting and fishing. All the rest are 'pastimes'."
4) **Mini:** "There's a similar problem with ballroom dancing. What began as a pleasant pastime became Competitive Ballroom Dancing, and now Dancesport, which is going to become an official Olympic sport."
5) **Candy:** "Let's call it sport if it's done competitively, on a team."
6) **Tim B.:** "It must be a hobby because I enjoy swimming and I've enjoyed it all my life but I detest all forms of sport."



REPORT: The question whether swimming is a sport or a hobby was discussed at the Sport Forum. Different opinions were expressed. One person told us that .....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

4 (B, C) Translate the story from Russian into English, paying special attention to the words in italics.

Совет врача

Медсестра *спросила* (1) меня, *ожидаю ли* (2) я доктора Грея, и *пригласила* (3) меня к нему в кабинет (surgery).

Доктор Грей *поинтересовался* (4), что меня *беспокоит* (to bother) (5). Я *сказал* (6), что ужасно *переутомлён* (be run down) (7). Он *спросил* (8) меня, поздно ли я *ложусь* спать (stay up late) (9), и я сказал, что да. Тогда он *задал* вопрос (10), почему я *не соблюдаю* (11) нормальный режим (keep regular hours), и я *объяснил* (12), что почти каждый вечер я *встречаюсь* (13) с друзьями. Доктор *захотел узнать* (14), как я *провожу время* (15), и я *сказал* (16), что в основном (mostly) я *хожу* (17) на вечеринки. Доктор *спросил* (18) меня, *удаётся ли* (have the chance) *мне отдохнуть* (to recover) (19) в выходные дни, но я *вынужден был признать* (admit) (20), что в выходные дни наши вечеринки *длятся* (21) всю ночь.



Он *спросил* (22) меня, *курю ли* (23) я, и когда я *сказал* (24), что *курю* (25), доктор *хотел знать* (26), сколько сигарет в день я *выкуриваю* (27). Он был поражён, когда услышал мой ответ. Тогда врач *спросил* (28) меня, *занимаюсь ли* (take) (29) я гимнастикой для поддержания своего здоровья (to keep fit).

Я *ответил* (30), что для этого у меня *нет* (31) времени.

«Вы поджигаете свечу (burn the candle) с обоих концов, – сказал доктор Грей и добавил: – Но я завидую (envy) вам, что вы так весело проводите время.»

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

5 (B, C) Translate the story. Turn Direct Speech into Indirect Speech with all necessary tense changes.

1. «Я просмотрела результаты ваших анализов», – сказала доктор Лестер.
   .....
2. «Вы очень поправились», – заметила она.
   .....
3. «Вы набрали (gain) пять с половиной килограммов за шесть месяцев», – объяснила она.
   .....
4. «Если вы будете продолжать в том же духе, вы сильно поправитесь (get fat)», – предупредила она меня.
   .....
5. «Я вынуждена посадить вас на строгую диету (put on a strict diet); вы должны есть очень мало», – добавила она.
   .....
6. «Хорошо, я буду жить на воде и орехах», – сказал я разозлившись.
   .....
7. «Да, вы можете жить на воде и орехах, но без орехов», – согласилась доктор Лестер.
   .....

6 **(B, C) Make a free translation of the text.**

Пикник на одеяле

Один профессор Бостонского университета сказал, что современные родители очень мало знают о том, как организовать «досуг в кругу семьи» (family leisure time). В качестве одного из вариантов он предложил устроить пикник во дворе за домом (back-yard): расстелить (spread) одеяло, разжечь костёр (make/lay a fire), испечь (bake) картошку, как будто (as if) вы на пляже.

Прочитав это, я собрал семью и сказал, что вечером мы устроим пикник во дворе за домом. Мой сын Джордж сказал, что соседи подумают, что мы сошли с ума (go mad). А жена поинтересовалась, что я держу под мышкой. Оказалось (turn out to be), что это наше новое одеяло, которое, конечно, нельзя использовать для этой цели.



Дети поинтересовались, что мы будем делать весь вечер на заднем дворе. Я объяснил, что мы будем сидеть и есть печёную картошку. Мой сын сказал, что он договорился вечером играть в теннис. Моя дочь Нэнси согласилась есть печеную картошку во дворе, но заметила, что потом она должна будет уйти, так как она идёт в бассейн со своей подругой.

Мы расстелили одеяло на прекрасном месте за домом напротив гаража и разожгли огромный костер. Заметив выглядывающих из окон соседей, я попросил жену и детей не обращать на них внимания. Моя жена ворчала (grumble), что мы сидим на камнях и что она не может есть сырую (raw) картошку.

Я спросил, чувствуют ли они себя так, как будто сидят на пляже. На что дочь ответила, что ей бы хотелось искупаться в океане, и скрылась (disappear) за гаражом. Джон спросил, в какой стороне океан. Он пообещал вернуть сестру и тоже исчез за гаражом. Жена толкнула меня локтём (nudge) и сказала, что к нам пришли (have visitors). Я поднял глаза и увидел двух полицейских. «Нам сообщили, что во дворе кто-то сидит на одеяле», – сказал один из них.

(по Джону Бэйли)

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

The Subjunctive Mood shows that the action or state expressed by the verb is presented as a non-fact, as something imaginary or desired.

1. Conditional Sentences

Conditional sentences may express real and unreal condition. They are introduced by the conjunctions *if*, *in case*, *provided/providing (that)*, *unless*, *suppose/supposing*.

CONDITION		SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	PRINCIPAL CLAUSE	TRANSLATION
Real (Type I)		If it **looks** like rain, If I **have** more time, If he **is working** on Friday, ***Present Simple/Cont.***	we**'ll stay** at home. **I'll come** over. he **won't be able** to go with us. ***will + Inf.***	~~бы~~
Unreal	**Present/Future (Type II)**	If I **were** you, If I **had** more time, If you **knew** him better, If it **were not raining**, ***Past Simple/Cont.***	I **would go** there myself. I **would come** over. you **wouldn't think** so. I **could go out**. ***would / could / might + Inf.***	**бы**
	Past (Type III)	If you **had gone** there, If it **hadn't been** so hot last summer, ***Past Perfect***	you **would have seen** him. we **could have gone** to the South. ***would / could / might + have + Participle II***	

NOTES:

1. *If* is the most common. *In case* and *provided/providing* are chiefly used in sentences of real condition (Type I):

- **In case** I *don't find* her at home, I'*ll leave* her a note.
  В случае если я не застану её дома, я оставлю ей записку.

- We'*ll finish* the work on time **provided** you *send* all the necessary materials.
  Мы закончим работу вовремя, *при условии если* вы пришлёте все необходимые материалы.

Unless (= if ... not) has a negative meaning and is used in sentences of real condition (Type I). The verb is always in the affirmative after *unless*:

- I'*ll come* in time **unless** I *am detained* at the University/**if** I *am* **not** *detained* at the University.
  Я приду вовремя, *если* меня *не* задержат в университете.

Suppose is more common in sentences of unreal condition:

- **Suppose** he *wrote* to you, *would* you *answer*?
  Предположим, он написал бы вам, вы бы ответили?

2. *Were* can be used in place of *was* after *if* in all persons. *Were* is more formal and more typical of British English.

- If I **were/was** better qualified, I'**d get** the job.

Only *were* is used in *"If I were you,..", "If I were in you position,..":*

- If I **were** you, I'd look for a new job.

3. *Will*, *would*, *should* are not normally used in the subordinate clause (*if*-clause). However, *will* and *would* can be used after *if* for a polite request or insistence:

- If you **will** give me your e-mail address, I'll send this information to you. (= Will you please give me your e-mail address...)
- If you **will not** obey the rules, you will have to leave. (= If you insist on not obeying the rules...)

Should can be used in the subordinate clause (*if*-clause) to talk about something which is possible but not very likely to happen. Such sentences are translated by means of *«Если бы случилось так...»*, *«Случись так...»*:

- If he **should** come, ask him to wait.
  В случае если он придет, попросите его подождать.

4. There are two mixed types of sentences of unreal condition:

a) the condition refers to the past and the consequence refers to the present:
- If you **had taken** your medicine yesterday, you **would be** well today.
  Если бы вы *вчера приняли* это лекарство, *теперь* вы *бы были* здоровы.

b) the condition refers to no particular time and the consequence refers to the past:
- If he **were not** so absent-minded, he **would not have missed** the train yesterday.
  Если бы он *не был* таким рассеянным, он *бы не опоздал вчера* на поезд.

5. Unreal conditions may also be expressed in the following ways:

a) *But for* + noun/pronoun
- **But for the rain** we **would go down** to the country.
  Если бы не дождь, мы бы поехали за город.

b) *If it were not for* + noun/pronoun
If it had not been for + noun/pronoun
- **If it were not for your help,** I **wouldn't be able** to get such good results.
  Если бы не ваша помощь...
- **If it hadn't been for me,** they **would have never found** the place.
  Если бы не я...

6. In sentences of unreal condition the modal verbs *might* and *could* are often used instead of *would*; they fully retain their modal meaning:

- If I **had** a big garden, I **would / could / might** ⇨ **grow** a lot of flowers.

7. Adverbial clauses of condition containing the verbs *had*, *were*, *could*, *should* are often introduced without any conjunction. In these cases we find inversion:

~~If~~ I **had** time, I would come over.

❑ **Had** I time, I would come over.

~~If~~ she **were** in New York, she would certainly call you.

❑ **Were** she in New York, she would certainly call you.

8. Indirect Speech:

"If I **had** a big garden I **would grow** a lot of flowers."

❑ He **said** that if he **had** a big garden he **would** *(could/might)* **grow** a lot of flowers.

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Make sentences. Choose from the boxes.**

If +	we don't hurry, I can't get a flight, you come home late, I don't feel well, you have any problems,		please come in quietly. I'm not going to work. we'll be late. I'll try to help you. I'll fly home on Sunday.
	I can understand you It will be nice You'll be cold What are you going to do I'm sure they'll understand	**+ if**	you don't wear a coat. you don't pass your exam? you explain your problem. you speak slowly. you can come to the party.

2 **(A, B) Choose the correct form of the verb.**

1. If I *don't feel/won't feel* well tomorrow, *I stay/I'll stay* at home. 2. If the weather *is/will be* nice tomorrow, we can go to the beach. 3. It will be hard to find a hotel if we *arrive/will arrive* late. 4. The alarm will ring if there *is/will be* a fire. 5. I *am/will be* surprised if they *get/will get* married. 6. *Do/will* you go to the party if they *invite/will invite* you? 7. If I *am/will be* late this evening, don't wait for me. 8. What shall we do, if it *rains/will be raining*? 9. I'll be able to understand you, if you *speak/will speak* slowly.

3 **(B) Rewrite the following sentences, using conjunction *unless* and making all necessary changes.**

Model: If you don't leave now, you'll miss the train. – *Unless* you *leave* now, you'll miss the train. If the weather is nice tomorrow, we will go for a walk. – *Unless* the weather *is bad* tomorrow, we will go for a walk.

1. I won't be able to solve this problem if you don't help me. – .....
2. If you don't become more attentive, you will continue making too many mistakes.
   – .....

3. If he doesn't practise his English more actively, he will never speak the language fluently.
   – .....
4. If they don't tell me the whole story, I won't be able to help them.
   – .....
5. If their train arrives early, we'll be able to meet them at the station.
   – .....
6. If he chooses his words not too carefully, he'll be in trouble. – .....
7. If the weather is sunny tomorrow, we'll go to the beach. – .....
8. You won't get in if you don't have a ticket.
   – .....

4 (B) Practise the following according to the model.

Model: He runs round the park every morning, so he keeps very fit.
If I ran round the park every morning, I would keep fit, too.

1. He lives in the South, so he can grow a lot of flowers. – .....
2. He lives near his work, so he is never late.
   – .....
3. He goes to bed early, so he always wakes up in time. – .....
4. His French is good, so he reads French books in the original.
   – .....
5. They have a maid, so they can enjoy themselves.
   – .....

5 (B) Look at the warning signs. What would you say to somebody who's ignoring them?

Model:



(to fall down)

If you don't keep away from the edge, you'll fall down.



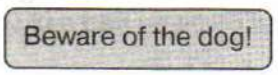
(to step on the ice/to be drowned)

.....



(to drive fast/to have an accident)

.....



(to ignore the sign/to get bitten by the dog)

.....



(to smoke here/to be a fire)

.....



(to ignore the sign/to get dirty)

.....



(not obey the sign/to get fined)

.....

6 (B) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. If he worked more slowly, he (not make) .... so many mistakes. 2. I could give you his address if I (know) ..... it. 3. I (keep) ..... a gardener if I could afford it. 4. What would you do if the lift (get) ..... stuck between two floors? 5. He (not go) ..... there if his family were not invited. 6. If I (know) ..... her better, I (introduce) ..... you. 7. The journey takes about 3 hours by bus. You (get) ..... there much sooner if you (go) ..... by train. 8. If I (have) ..... money with me then, I (can lend) ..... you some. 9. He couldn't find a job when he came to Germany. If he (like) ..... children, he (work) ..... at school.

7 (B)

I. Use *might* instead of *would* to give the meaning of "perhaps".

1. She's getting fat. If she (not eat) .... much sweet, she (lose) ..... weight. 2. I didn't watch the film yesterday. If I (have) ..... some free time yesterday, I (watch) ..... it. 3. She feels very tired in the morning. If she (go) ..... to bed earlier, she (not feel) ..... so tired. 4. He's not a strong man. If he (go) ..... to the fitness center, he (be) ..... stronger.

II. Use *could* instead of *would* to give the meaning of "possible".

1. We (understand) ..... the English teacher better if she (speak) ..... more slowly. 2. I like reading but we don't have books in our country house. If I (have) ..... books there, I (read) ..... a lot in summer. 3. I don't know where he's living now. If I (know) ..... his address, I (write) .... to him. 4. Roberta is very pretty but rather short. If she (be) ..... taller, she (be) ..... a model.

8 (B) Answer the questions, using complete sentences.

I

1. To which town/city would you go if you didn't need a visa?
   .....
2. Who would you ask if you didn't know how to translate a sentence into English?
   .....
3. Could you come to the University on Sunday if the teacher asked you?
   .....
4. How would you feel if you won a thousand dollars?
   .....
5. Could you wake up at 5 a.m. if none woke you up?
   .....
6. Could you cook your own dinner if your mother asked you?
   .....

II

1. If you had been born in 1960, how old would you have been in 1975?
   .....
2. If you had been late for this lesson, would you have apologized to the teacher?
   .....
3. What would you have done if there had been a holiday yesterday?
   .....
4. Could you have answered these questions correctly if you had been absent at the last lesson?
   .....

9 (B, C) Compose conditional sentences on the basis of the following statements.

Model:

- It's raining hard. We can't go out. If it *were* not raining so hard, we *could go out*.
- I have no dictionary. I shan't finish the translation today. If I *had* a dictionary, I *would finish* the translation today.
- The goal-keeper was hurt early in the game. The team lost. If the goal-keeper *had not been hurt* early in the game, the team *would not have lost*.

1. She thought of her future and refused to marry the young man.
   – .....
2. He was deep in his thoughts and did not notice the "No Parking" sign.
   – .....
3. I have a lot of work to do, I can't go to the pictures.
   – .....
4. There is no one to sit with the baby, I have to stay at home.
   – .....
5. The rain stopped at last and we began to enjoy ourselves.
   – .....
6. She did not think of the consequences and agreed to forge (подделать) the document.
   – .....
7. There were so many people there that nobody noticed his absence.
   – .....

8. We don't like cheese. We don't buy it.
– .....
9. He lost his temper and said things he did not really mean.
– .....
10. I don't know your cousin, I can't meet her at the station.
– .....

10 (B, C) Compose sentences according to the model. Use *but for* + *noun/pronoun*.

Model:
- I don't want to tell you this but I promised to.
  But for my promise I wouldn't tell you this.
- He didn't die. The operation saved him.
  But for the operation he *would have died*.

1. He wants to go swimming but the water is cold.
– .....
2. He couldn't see us off as he was busy at the office. – .....
3. She wasn't alone in the house, her husband was asleep in his room.
– .....
4. I want to go but I have an examination tomorrow.
– .....
5. In the end, he went to see the doctor. His wife made him do it.
– .....
6. It began to rain and we didn't go for a walk.
– .....
7. We couldn't have a picnic. The weather was too bad. – .....
8. Of course I want to help you but I have a conference today.
– .....
9. He had a good guide so he could see all the sights. – .....
10. You can't prepare the contract because the computer is out of order.
– .....

11 (B, C) Translate the words in brackets.

1. But for her spelling she (получила бы) .... an excellent mark for her composition. 2. But for my sister's help I (не смогла бы перевести) ..... the article so fast. 3. But for the neighbour's chickens I (не держала бы) ..... the dog chained. 4. But for your explanation I (не научилась бы) ..... to do it so well. 5. But for the final scene the picture (была бы) ..... quite good. 6. But for his sore throat he (выступил бы) .... at the meeting. 7. But for the grandmother's operation they (поехали бы) ..... to the South. 8. But for her voice she (была бы) ..... a good actress. 9. But for the heat I (нравилось бы) ..... working in this country. 10. But for the accident he (поставил бы/set) ..... a record.

12 (B, C) Translate the verbs in brackets.

I

1. If I had known that you were in hospital, (я бы навестил тебя) ..... . 2. If (я бы знал) ..... that you were coming I'd have baked a cake. 3. If (ты бы пришел) ..... ten minutes earlier you would have got a seat. 4. You would have seen my garden at its best if (ты был бы здесь) .... last week. 5. I wouldn't have believed it if (я бы не видел) ..... it with my own eyes. 6. If he had known that the river was dangerous (он бы не пытался) ..... to swim across it. 7. If (вы бы говорили)..... more slowly he might have understood you. 8. If (я бы попытался) ..... again I think that I would have succeeded. 9. (Вы бы не попали/get) ..... into trouble if you had obeyed my instructions. 10. (Я бы взял такси) .... if I had realized that it was such a long way.

II

1. If (я встретил тебя) ..... you yesterday, of course (я бы предупредил) ..... you. 2. I'm sorry I threw the newspaper away. (Я бы не выбросил её) ..... if (я бы знал) .... you had wanted it. 3. Why didn't you ask me to help you? Of course (я бы помог тебе) ..... if (ты бы попросил меня) ..... to. 4. I'm sorry I couldn't

come to the cinema with you last Friday. (Я бы пошёл) ..... if (я бы не был) ..... so busy. 5. (Я бы не ушёл из) ..... the office early yesterday if (я бы не закончил) ..... my work.

13 (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses. Don't forget that there exist mixed types of conditional sentences.

1. I had a sandwich for lunch. If I (have) .... a proper lunch, I (not feel) ..... so hungry now. 2. He told his friend, "I'm not feeling very well. I (not be) ..... here today if I (not promise) ..... to come." 3. I can hardly keep my eyes open. If I (go) .... to bed earlier last night, I (not be) .... so tired now. 4. He looked at his watch while he was driving and thought, "If I (not stop) ..... to get petrol, I (be) .... home now." (use *might*) 5. If Jack (not hurt) ..... his ankle yesterday, he (play) ..... football this afternoon. (use *could*) 6. He wasn't a very happy man and he often said, "If I (follow) ..... my father's advice, I (be) ..... much happier now." (use *might*)

14 (B, C) Write the appropriate forms for the verbs in brackets in the following sentences of unreal condition.

1. "Are you still thinking of going on that cruise?" – "It (may be) ..... enjoyable," he said, "if one (to have) ..... just the right person to go with." 2. It (to be) ..... fun if Roberta (to write) ..... a book. 3. I never tried to understand my brother. If I (to try) ..... I (may stop) ..... him from going away. 4. If I (to be) ..... you, Meg, I (not to let) ..... myself believe this hateful gossip. 5. I'm glad I wasn't at home. He (not to get) ..... much help if he (to ask) ..... me. 6. "No, I won't tell you," she said. "It (not to be) ..... fair to them if it just (to turn) ..... out to be gossip." 7. "May I read this?" – "I (not to bother) ..... if I (to be) ..... you." 8. If I (to keep) ..... to my original plan, I (to miss) ..... the whole affair. 9. It (to look) ..... silly if I (to tell) ..... them the truth. 10. If I (to be) ..... there, of course, I (to do) ..... something.

15 (B, C) Do you still remember the old fairy tale "The Little Red Riding Hood"? Write the tale in your own way, using Conditional sentences (Type III).

It all might (could/probably wouldn't) have happened if...

Model: *If Grandmother hadn't been ill, the Little Red Riding Hood's mother wouldn't have baked a cake.*

Then think of:

- the Little Red Riding Hood stopping to pick some flowers;
- the Wolf being frightfully hungry;
- the Wolf meeting the girl;
- the Little Red Riding Hood being very naive;
- the Wolf wearing Grandma's night-clothes;
- the Hunter coming to rescue...

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



16 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English, using *but for + noun/pronoun*.

1. Если бы не простуда, я бы тоже поехал. 2. Если бы не плохая дорога, мы бы уже давно приехали. 3. Если бы не она, они никогда бы не ссорились. 4. Если бы не этот юноша, ребёнок утонул бы. 5. Если бы не ваша помощь, она бы не догнала (catch up with) группу. 6. Если бы не погода, мы бы прекрасно провели лето. 7. Это была бы неплохая работа, если бы не орфографические ошибки. 8. Если бы не её усталые глаза, вы бы никогда не дали ей больше 30. 9. Если бы не его нога, он тоже принял бы участие в этой игре.

17 (C) Translate into English.

1. Даже если бы вы позвонили мне вчера, я бы не смог прийти. 2. В зале было так много народу, что я не смог бы его найти. 3. Даже если бы вы предупредили меня, я бы не успел его повидать. 4. Я не мог бы поговорить с ним, даже если бы я его видел вчера. 5. Даже если бы он очень изменился, я бы узнал его. 6. Если бы вам задали этот вопрос, сумели бы вы на него ответить? 7. Если бы станция не была так далеко, мы бы донесли вещи сами. 8. Если не застанешь никого из нас дома, оставь записку. 9. Даже если бы ему ничего не сказали, он бы всё равно догадался в чём дело. 10. Если бы не цейтнот (timetrouble), он мог бы выиграть партию. 11. Если он станет отказываться, я постараюсь убедить его.

18 (B) Dictation-translation.

1. Если мы не найдём такси, мы опоздаем на поезд. 2. Если бы ты слушал внимательно, ты бы всё понял. 3. Если бы не было ветра, мы бы пошли кататься на лыжах. 4. Если бы я был врачом, я бы помог вам. 5. Если магазины будут открыты, купи что-нибудь на завтрак. 6. Если бы ты пригласил её на вечеринку, она бы пришла с удовольствием. 7. Если бы ты читал газеты, ты бы знал последние новости. 8. Если бы Бетси не была занята сегодня, мы бы пошли на концерт. 9. Я не закончу эту работу к вечеру, даже если вы мне поможете. 10. Будь я на вашем месте, я бы пошёл раньше.

19 (B, C) Dictation-translation.

1. Если бы дорога была лучше, мы бы доехали значительно быстрее. 2. В случае если он не придет, я зачитаю его доклад. 3. Как бы вы решили эту проблему, если бы вам пришлось заняться ею? 4. Если бы он поступил в университет четыре года назад, он бы сейчас уже закончил его. 5. Если бы не случай, он никогда не узнал бы об этом. 6. Если бы она вчера достала билет, то завтра бы уехала. 7. Если бы не наш учитель, я бы не узнала так много интересного. 8. Если бы он не проглядел (overlook) этой ошибки, он бы теперь не переделывал весь проект сначала. 9. Если бы мне довелось писать статью на эту тему, я бы не стал приводить (cite) столько цитат. 10. Если бы я хорошо ходил на лыжах, я бы обязательно принял участие в соревнованиях.

1.1 Revision

20 (B, C) Give the appropriate forms for the verbs in brackets in the following conditional sentences referring to the future.

1. If Ed (to learn) ..... about it, he probably never (to speak) ..... to me again. 2. I (to be) ..... in the drawing-room in case there (to be) ..... a telephone call for me. 3. He wondered how he (to feel) ..... if his former wife (to come) ..... into the room. 4. Philip says they (to miss) ..... me if I (to leave) ..... before their wedding. 5. In case any crisis (to arise) ..... , let me know. 6. You (to do) ..... it differently, if you (have to do) ..... it over again? 7. If this (to be) ..... our last

meeting for some time, I (not to like) ..... you to remember this talk. 8. It (to be) ..... awkward if she (to refuse) ..... to co-operate. 9. What his mother and father (to think) ..... if they (to hear) ..... of what he has done? 10. If the situation (not to change) ..... by Saturday I (to be) ..... in trouble.

21 (B, C) Give the appropriate forms for the verbs in brackets.

1. If it (to be) ..... all the same to me, I (not to come) ..... and (to talk) ..... to you. 2. If there (to be) ..... some more of us, it (to take) ..... only a few days to get through with it. 3. If anyone (to call) ..... , I shall give him the telephone number so that he (to get in touch) ..... with you. 4. Leave a message for me if you (not to find) ..... me in. 5. He (not to understand) ..... it even if he (to be given) ..... a broad hint which none other would miss. 6. If you (to come across) ..... an expression that you do not know, write it out, please. 7. You (not to find) ..... the house even if you (to ask) ..... for directions: it has been pulled down recently. 8. Mary is staying with them. I think it (to be) ..... a good thing if you (to come) ..... and (to see) ..... her. 9. If I (to realize) ..... it was to be like this, I (not to come) ..... . 10. I (to be) ..... grateful if you (to keep) ..... the news to yourself.

22 (B, C) Fill in the correct verb forms.

Sunday Trip to the Seaside



1. look; go — *Mother:* Listen, all of you. If the weather ..... nice tomorrow, we ..... to the seaside.
2. be; look — *Father:* All right. But if I .... you, I ..... at the forecast on TV tonight to make sure.
3. not be able; go — *Daughter:* Well, I'm afraid I ..... to get up all that early if I ..... to Dan's party tonight.
4. not go; do — *Mother:* You and your parties! If you ..... to so many parties, you ..... a lot better at school, you know.
5. not complain; feel — *Daughter:* Oh, Mum! If you ..... all the time, I ..... much more like trying!
6. give; work — *Son:* I'm sick of hearing about school. What about Whitby then? If you ..... me the map now, Dad, I ..... out the best route.

12.30 p.m. NEXT DAY:

7. leave; not get — *Mother:* If we ..... earlier, we ..... stuck in that awful traffic jam back there.
8. be able; not spend — *Son:* Well, we ..... to start in time if our "Sleeping Beauty" ..... so long in the bathroom.
9. not get; listen — *Daughter:* I like that! Anyway, we ..... into that stupid traffic jam in the first place if we ..... to the traffic news on the radio like I suggested.

10. not forget; not need; not waste

11. stop; have

Father: Now then, now then. If Junior here ..... his bathing trunks, we .... to go back and we .... that hour.
Mother: And who forgot to fill the tank up yesterday?
Father: Well, let's not worry about whose fault it all was. We've still got a nice day – hm, afternoon – on the beach to look forward to. If this rain ..... , we .... great time, I'm sure!



23 (C) Use your own ideas to complete the questions below. Then work in pairs, ask and answer each other's questions.

Model: A: What would your parents do if *you had a party without telling them*?
B: *If we had a party without telling my parents, they would be angry with me and we would have an argument.*
B: What would your parents do if *you took their car without their permission*?
A: *If I took my parents' car without their permission, they would never give it to me again.*

1. What would your parents do if ..... ?
2. Would your mother have minded if ..... ?
3. Will you excuse me if I ..... ?
4. If you spoke Chinese, ... ?
5. What song would you sing if ..... ?
6. Where will you go if ..... ?
7. What would have happened to you yesterday if ..... ?
8. If you had overslept, what ..... ?
9. What would you do for a living if ..... ?

24 (C) Translate into English.

1. Если бы не ваша помощь, я не смог бы закончить работу вчера. 2. Если бы пошёл дождь, я бы промокла до костей, так как на мне было очень лёгкое платье. 3. Если бы вы действительно любили читать, вы всегда бы нашли время для чтения. 4. Куда бы ты пошёл, если бы не шёл дождь? 5. В случае если пойдёт дождь, я останусь дома. 6. Если бы ты не был так занят, мы могли бы пойти куда-нибудь пообедать. 7. Если бы у нас не было багажа, мы могли бы дойти до станции пешком. 8. Вы бы чувствовали себя лучше, если бы не ложились спать так поздно (to keep late hours). 9. Мы бы не опоздали на поезд, если бы взяли такси. 10. Вы бы себя хорошо сегодня чувствовали, если бы вчера приняли лекарство. 11. Если бы я был на вашем месте, я бы больше проводил времени на открытом воздухе. 12. Вы бы лучше знали язык, если бы читали книги в оригинале. 13. Я вернусь в шесть, если меня не задержат в университете. 14. Если бы не дождь, мы могли бы поехать за город.

1.2 Test

1. Не волнуйся, если я потеряю перчатки, я куплю новые.
2. Если бы они были здесь сейчас, я поговорил бы с ними.
3. Мы бы никогда не познакомились, если бы он не пригласил нас на свой день рождения.
4. Если у него будет высокая температура, пошлите за доктором.
5. Если бы я больше зарабатывал (earn), я бы ездил на юг каждый год.
6. Если бы я не был учителем, у меня не было бы такого длинного отпуска.
7. Если бы я тогда хорошо знал английский, меня бы взяли на работу в эту компанию.
8. Если бы вы больше занимались, вы бы не провалили экзамен (fail at) сегодня.
9. Если бы не карта, мы бы не нашли дорогу.
10. Если бы не сигнал тревоги (alarm), я бы не знал, что в отеле пожар.
11. Если бы вы сообщили заранее, я бы обязательно пришёл сегодня.
12. Если бы у меня тогда был выбор, я бы сейчас не работал на заводе.

2. Making a Wish

You can express wishes about the present, past and future. We use *wish* to say that we regret something, that something is not as we would like it to be.

I wish(ed)	– I **were/was** beautiful. *Как бы мне хотелось быть* красивой. – we **knew** Sue's address. *Как жаль*, что мы *не знаем* адреса Сью. – it **weren't/wasn't raining**. *Жаль*, что *идёт* дождь. – you **didn't work** so much. *Я бы не хотела*, чтобы вы так много *работали*.	**PRESENT**
	– I **had brought** my camera. *Жаль*, что я не *взял* с собой фотоаппарат. – I **could have gone** to the theatre yesterday. *Жаль*, что я *не смог пойти* в театр вчера.	**PAST**
	– they **could come** to see us tomorrow. *Как жаль*, что они *не смогут* зайти к нам завтра.	**FUTURE**
	* – someone **would answer** that telephone! *Да снимите уж* кто-нибудь трубку! – the music **would stop**! *Когда же прекратится* эта музыка! – you **would give** her my message. *Не могли бы* вы *передать* ей мою просьбу.	**complaints** **annoyance** **request**

* It is possible only if the subject of the principal clause *(I wish)* is not the same as the subject of the object clause *(he, you, it would do it)*.

Here are some more examples, below each one there is a sentence expressing the same wish in the past.

- ❑ I **wish** I **knew** how to drive a car.
  I **wish** I **had known** how to drive a car in 2005.
- ❑ I **wish** today **was** a holiday.
  I **wish** yesterday **had been** a holiday.
- ❑ I **wish** I **could travel** round the world.
  I **wish** I **could have travelled** round the world when I **was** a young man. *(The speaker is not young, so he is speaking about the past.)*

It is rendered into Russian as follows:

❑ *I wish* he were here.	*(Как) жаль*, что его нет с нами. *(Как) мне хотелось бы*, чтобы он был с нами. *Хорошо было бы*, чтобы он был здесь.

EXERCISES



1 (B)

I. Read these sentences, the comments in brackets make the meaning fuller.

a) I wish I knew how to drive a car. (At the time of speaking the speaker doesn't know how to drive a car.)
Or: *I don't know how to drive a car. I wish I did.*

b) I wish today was a holiday. (But today is not a holiday.)
.....

c) I wish I had more time to read. (At the time of speaking the speaker hasn't got much time to read.)
.....

d) I wish I could travel round the world. (At the time of speaking the speaker cannot travel round the world. Perhaps he/she has not got enough money or time.)
.....

e) The father told his children, "I wish you wouldn't make so much noise. I've got a headache." (When the father says this, his children are making a lot of noise.)
.....

II. Add to each of the following examples 2 sentences, both beginning: *"I wish..."*.

Model 1: I don't understand this question.
Answer: *I wish I did. I wish I understood this question.*

Model 2: It's still raining.
Answer: *I wish it wasn't/weren't. I wish it wasn't/weren't still raining.*

Model 3: My father can't give me more pocket money.
Answer: *I wish he could. I wish he could give me more pocket money.*

1. My brother doesn't have a very long holiday.
   – .....
2. I can't play the piano.
   – .....
3. My tooth is aching.
   – .....
4. I sometimes make careless mistakes.
   – .....
5. He's not coming to see me today.
   – .....
6. I can't swim well.
   – .....
7. I don't know how to answer this question.
   – .....
8. He always drives too fast.
   – .....
9. I don't speak English fluently.
   – .....
10. I can't go to the cinema this evening.
    – .....

11. The teacher gives us a lot of homework.
– .....
12. My father doesn't come home from work early.
– .....

2 (B, C) Practise the following according to the models.

Model 1: ***A.*** I know five languages.
B. *I wish I knew five languages.* (stress on the second "I").
Or: ***B.*** *If only I knew five languages!* (the *"If only"* form is much more dramatic and is used less frequently than the "I wish" form).

1. I have a flat here.
– .....
2. I live near my work.
– .....
3. I have plenty of time for reading.
– .....
4. I understand it.
– .....
5. My son writes every week.
– .....
6. My house looks out on a park.
– .....
7. I can take a day off any time.
– .....

Model 2: ***A.*** I asked Bill.
B. *I wish you'd asked Tom, too.*
Or: ***B.*** *If only you'd asked Tom, too!* ("had" is normally contracted here)

1. I invited Paul.
– .....
2. I stopped Mary.
– .....
3. I rang Ann.
– .....
4. I wrote to Alex.
– .....
5. I spoke to John.
– .....
6. I warned Philip.
– .....
7. I voted for Peter.
– .....

Model 3: Take more care. – *I wish you would take more care.*
Don't shout at me. – *I wish you wouldn't shout at me.*

1. Don't throw rubbish on the floor.
– .....
2. Listen to me.
– .....
3. Don't waste so much time.
– .....
4. Try to answer my questions.
– .....
5. Don't be so impatient.
– .....
6. Speak more clearly.
– .....
7. Don't open the windows.
– .....
8. Don't walk so fast.
– .....

3 (B, C) Add to each of the following a sentence, beginning: *"I wish..."*. The words in brackets will help you to form your sentences.

Model: I didn't understand what he said yesterday. (louder) – *I wish he had spoken louder.*

1. We lost the game yesterday. (win)
– .....
2. I sat at the back of the hall and couldn't hear his speech very well. (every word)
– .....
3. The sea is rough, we can't sail to the island. (calm)
– .....
4. There were no taxis so I had to walk from the station. (find)
– .....
5. I went to bed very late last night and I'm half asleep this morning. (so late)
– .....
6. I could only answer three of the questions at the last examination. (all of them)
– .....
7. The box was heavy, I couldn't carry it. (help me)
– .....
8. My father gave me some good advice but I didn't take it. (his advice)
– .....

9. One of my friends went to London for a holiday last summer but I couldn't go. (with him)
– .....
10. Why didn't you watch the cat? It ate all the fish. I'm so angry with you. (more attentive)
– .....
11. There was so much noise in the streets last night that I couldn't sleep well. (better)
– .....
12. There was a very good film on last week but I didn't see it. (read the program)
– .....

4 (B, C) Rewrite the following, using a wish-construction (phrases in brackets should be omitted).

Model: I'm sorry I don't live near my work.
– *I wish I lived near my work.*

1. I'm sorry I don't know Finnish.
– .....
2. I'm sorry I didn't book a seat.
– .....
3. I'm sorry I can't drive.
– .....
4. I'd like you to keep quiet. (You are making so much noise that I can't think.)
– .....
5. It's a pity he didn't work harder during the term.
– .....
6. I'm sorry you didn't see it.
– .....
7. It's a pity you are going tonight.
– .....
8. I'd like you to wait for me (even though you are ready to start now).
– .....
9. I'm sorry I didn't bring a map.
– .....
10. I'm sorry I can't swim.
– .....
11. I'm sorry you aren't coming with us.
– .....

5 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Жаль, что сегодня идёт дождь. Если бы погода была солнечной, мы бы смогли провести день в лесу. 2. Жаль, что я не знаю, где он сейчас живёт. Если бы я знал его адрес, я бы обязательно ему написал. 3. Жаль, что я уже вернул вчера в библиотеку учебник. Если бы я знал, что он тебе нужен, я бы принес тебе его. 4. Жаль, что я не живу поблизости от университета. 5. Почему вы не попросили тогда меня вам помочь? Я бы обязательно вам помог, если бы вы попросили меня об этом. 6. Жаль, что вы не посмотрели этот фильм. Он довольно долго демонстрировался в кинотеатрах Москвы. 7. Я люблю читать, но у меня мало свободного времени. Если бы у меня было больше времени, я бы смог больше читать. 8. Жаль, что я не смог пойти в театр с вами в прошлую субботу. Если бы я не был занят, я бы обязательно пошёл.

J☺kes

* * *

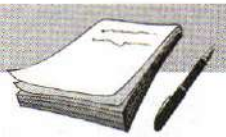
Mr. and Mrs. Smith have just arrived at the airport to catch a plane to London.
"**I wish I had brought** the piano with me," said Mr. Smith.
"What on earth for?" said his wife.
"Because I've left our tickets on it!"

* * *

– Do you like your new flat?
– Yes, but **I wish my neighbours wouldn't bang** on the wall at two o'clock in the morning.
– That's awful. Does it keep you awake?
– No, but it certainly interferes with my piano practice.

3. Revision

EXERCISES



6 **(C) Translate into English.**

1. Жаль, что вы пришли так поздно. 2. Обидно, что мы ушли до его прихода. 3. К сожалению, они ещё ничего не знают. 4. К сожалению, они уже знают об этом. 5. Жаль, что он такой легкомысленный. 6. Жаль, что он не очень серьёзен. 7. Я теперь жалею, что не послушал его совета. 8. Жаль, что вы не пришли пораньше. 9. Обидно, что мы не дождались его прихода. 10. Я теперь жалею, что последовал его совету. 11. На твоём месте я бы не стал делать этого. 12. Если бы он пришёл вовремя, этого могло и не случиться. 13. Если бы не ты, я не знаю, что бы я тогда сделал. 14. Если бы ты не был так занят, мы могли бы пойти куда-нибудь пообедать.

7 **(C) Paul and his wife, Mary, have an argument. Mary is rather worried about her husband. Read what she says about him and then write sentences, beginning with *"I wish you..."*.**



"I don't know what to do. He always comes late from his work and he works on Saturdays twice a month so we cannot go out very often. Last week he had an argument with his boss, I don't know why, and after that he got only 3 days' leave instead of 4 days' one. That was not enough to have a rest and I want him to relax."

Mary says:

1. I wish you didn't come late from work.
2. .....
3. .....
4. .....
5. .....
6. .....
7. .....

Using the prompts below, write what Paul answers her.

a) If I didn't come late from work, I would have to finish my work at home.
b) not save up / for holiday
.....
c) not have enough time / communicate with parents
.....
d) not give / 3 days' leave
.....
e) fire me / after that
.....
f) OK / become a lazy-bones
.....
g) So do I.

4. Tests

I

1. Если бы не его лукавая улыбка, я бы искренне поверил ему.
2. Если бы я был художником, я бы нарисовал портрет этого человека.
3. Вы бы пошли куда-нибудь сегодня вечером, если бы я пригласил вас?
4. Если бы мы знали, что вам нужна эта книга, мы бы захватили её с собой.
5. Если он станет отказываться, я постараюсь убедить его.
6. Жаль, что я не могу прочесть эту книгу в оригинале.
7. Вы жалели, что не воспользовались такой возможностью?
8. Жаль, что у нас мало времени.
9. Жаль, что вы не обращаете внимания на своё произношение.
10. Хоть бы он перестал курить в комнатах!

II

1. Они бы заметили эту ошибку, если бы были более внимательны.
2. Будь я на вашем месте, я бы пошёл пораньше, чтобы застать его.
3. Что бы вы сказали, если бы я спросил вашего совета?
4. Если бы не важность этого дела, я бы остался дома.
5. Если не застанешь нас дома, оставь записку.
6. Я сожалею, что не смогу пойти завтра на вашу лекцию.
7. Мой брат сожалел, что не присутствовал при проведении этого опыта.
8. Жаль, что ты не сказал мне этого сразу.
9. Жаль, что он не говорит по-английски.
10. Какое красивое платье! Жаль, что у меня нет такого.

III

1. Если бы я жил в Москве, я бы часто ходил в музеи.
2. Что мы будем делать, если они опоздают?
3. Если бы он не был таким рассеянным, он был бы отличным студентом.
4. Если бы вы позвонили вчера, я бы сегодня принёс вам эту книгу.
5. Если бы не моя работа, я бы с удовольствием сам был вашим гидом.
6. Как бы я хотела пойти на эту вечеринку! Она должна быть очень весёлой.
7. Жаль, что вы не обратили внимания на его предупреждение.
8. Мы пожалели, что не последовали его совету.
9. Как бы я хотела, чтобы они вернулись к Рождеству.
10. Хоть бы кто-нибудь взял с собой карту!

THE NOUN

The noun is a word expressing substance in the widest sense of the word. This includes names of living beings of lifeless things and of abstract notions (qualities, states, actions).

Some words are used only as nouns: *table*, *bird*, *person*, etc. However, nouns are often made from other words by adding different endings (suffixes) or prefixes.

1. Formation of Nouns

I. Noun-Forming Suffixes

PRODUCTIVE		UNPRODUCTIVE	
-er	*reader, teacher, worker*	**-hood**	*childhood, manhood*
-ist	*telegraphist, dramatist*	**-dom**	*freedom*
-ness	*carelessness, madness*	**-ship**	*friendship, relationship*
-ism	*socialism, nationalism*	**-ment**	*development*
-ess	*heiress, hostess, actress*	**-ance**	*importance*
-ion	*suspicion*	**-ence**	*dependence*
-(a)tion	*formation*	**-ty**	*cruelty, property*
-sion	*admission*	**-ity**	*generosity*
		-ure	*culture, structure*
		-age	*passage, marriage*

(*-ess* is practically the only gender-forming suffix, expressing feminine gender)

II. The Most Common Prefixes

re-	*reconstruction, reduction*	**over-**	*overestimation*
co-	*co-author, coexistence*	**under-**	*under-secretary*
dis-	*disarmament*	**sub-**	*subdivision*
mis-	*misunderstanding*	**inter-**	*interaction*

III. Compound Nouns

When a noun has two or more parts (e.g. *classroom*), we call it a compound noun. We can make compound nouns with the **-ing** form: e.g. *dancing-shoes*.

EXERCISES



1 **(A) Form nouns from the given words with the help of suffixes *-er* and *-or*, memorize them and use them in your own sentences.**

Model: to read ⇨ *reader*; to sail ⇨ *sailor*

- er	- or

Paint, talk, drive, visit, manage, dream, invent, research, compute, direct, strike, lead, design, buy, translate, interpret, build, act.

2 **(A) Form nouns from the given words with the help of suffixes *-ment*, *-ant*, *-ness* and *-ist*.**

Model: to employ ⇨ *employment*; piano ⇨ *pianist*

-ment	-ant	-ness	-ist

Appoint, move, enjoy, mad, science, advertise, happy, judge, capital, entertain, material, govern, assist, develop, improve.

3 **(B) Indicate suffixes of the given derivative nouns. Form, wherever possible, other derivative nouns with the help of some other suffixes.**

Model: direction = *direct* + *ion* ⇨ director ⇨ directness ⇨ directorship

Examination – ..... ,
collection – ..... ,
happiness – ..... ,
scientist – ..... ,
popularity – ..... ,
technician – ..... ,
friendship – ..... ,
neighbourhood – ..... .

imagination – ..... ,
operation – ..... ,
coldness – ..... ,
relativity – ..... ,
musician – ..... ,
leadership – ..... ,
brotherhood – ..... ,

4 **(B) Give the nouns which describe people who do things or who come from places. Use these noun suffixes: *-ant*, *-er*, *-ian*, *-ist*, *-or*.**

Model: A person who takes professional photographs – *photographer*

1. A person who smokes a lot ..... .
2. I can't play the piano. I'm not a ..... .
3. A person who acts in a theatre ..... .
4. Manuel assists me. He's my ..... .
5. A person who donates his blood to sick people ..... . 6. Anna is studying history. She's a fine ..... .

5 **(B) Use these suffixes to form nouns from verbs, adjectives or other nouns:**

-hood -(a)tion -(a)ence -ness -al -(er)y -ment -ism -ship -ian

Model: Can you explain it? – Is there an *explanation*?

1. Don't be so excited. Control your .... 2. He is my bosom friend. This is a strong ..... . 3. We all want to be happy. We all seek ..... . 4. The Club refuses to admit anyone not wearing a tie. The Club refuses ..... . 5. Who discovered this? Who made this ..... ? 6. This firm produced a lot in recent years. It increased its ..... . 7. I was a child then. That was in my ..... . 8. He is a journalist. His profession is ..... . 9. We'll arrive at noon. We informed about our ..... . 10. Plants and factories pollute the air. You should fight ..... . 11. He has been studying music for years. He is a ..... .

6 **(B) Form nouns from the words in italics with the help of the suffixes. Mind the consonant alteration.**

Model: 1. Many people *visited* us during the summer. We had many *visitors*.
2. He *suggested* that I study French. I like his *suggestions*.

1. We couldn't *agree*. We couldn't reach an ..... . 2. The detective *investigated* the murder. During his ..... he questioned dozens of people. 3. She *described* her trip. Her ..... was very full and interesting. 4. His health has *improved* since he's been in the clinic. The ..... is very noticeable.

7 **(B) Complete the table.**

VERB	PERSON NOUN	ABSTRACT NOUN
inspect	.....	.....
oppress	.....	.....
compose	.....	.....
produce	.....	.....
conduct	.....	.....
support	.....	.....

8 **(A) Form nouns from the given words with the help of the prefixes:**

un- in- mis- dis- inter- pre- re-

Model: understanding ⇨ *misunderstanding*

1. employment – ..... ; 2. connection – ..... ; 3. honesty – ..... ; 4. interpretation – ..... ; 5. difference – ..... ; 6. fortune – ..... ; 7. dependence – ..... ; 8. importance – ..... ; 9. security – ..... ; 10. election – ..... ; 11. construction – ..... .

9 **(A, B) Form compound nouns from two stems and translate them. Use these nouns in your own sentences.**

Model: sun, glasses ⇨ *sunglasses*

1. A road, workers – ..... ; 2. tea, a pot – ..... ; 3. a bed, a room – ..... ; 4. a post, a man – ..... ; 5. a week, an end – ..... ; 6. news, paper – ..... ; 7. a class, a room – ..... ; 8. a foot, a man – ..... ; 9. a side, a board – ..... ; 10. a chair, a man – ..... ; 11. trade, union – ..... ; 12. green, a house – .....

10 **(A, B) Read the compound nouns. Translate them into Russian.**

Foreman, ship-yard, man-of-war, milestone, birthday, maple-leaf, handicraft, spacecraft, household, housekeeping, weekend, riverbed, videocamera.

11 **(B) Answer the following questions, using a compound noun formed by the two nouns.**

Model: He gave her a ring for their engagement. What ring did he give her?
⇨ *An engagement ring.*

1. I drank some tea from the cup. What cup did I drink tea from? ..... . 2. This store has a lot of different departments. How can we call such a store? ..... . 3. A small boat saved his life. What boat was this? ..... . 4. Metal rings joined by a chain, fastened around prisoner's hands like cuffs (манжеты). What are they called? ..... .

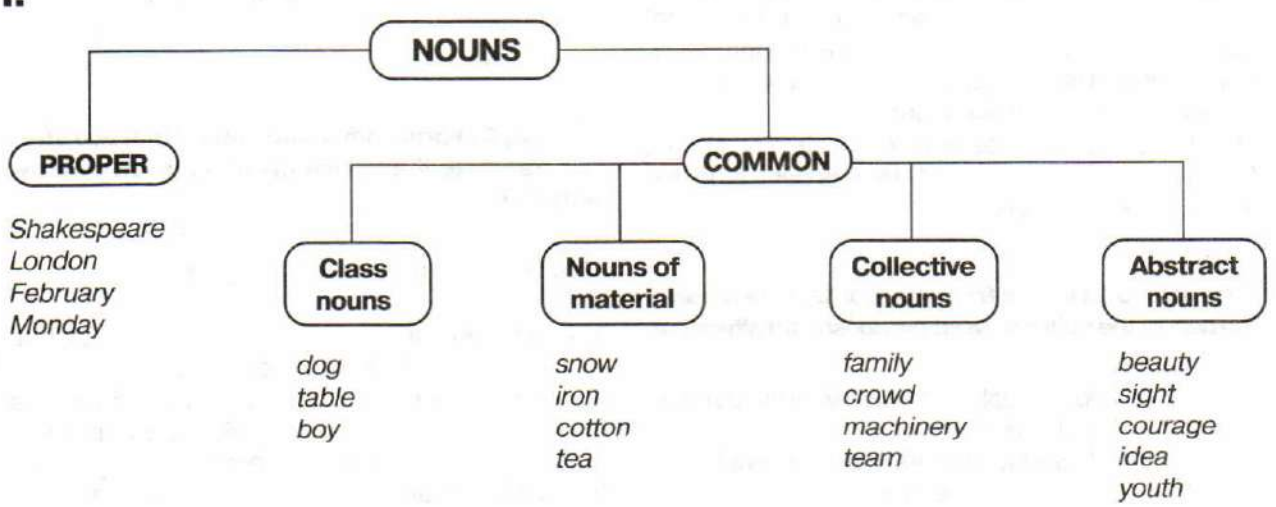
12 **(B) Translate the following questions into English, choosing the appropriate nouns given below. Let your friends answer the questions.**

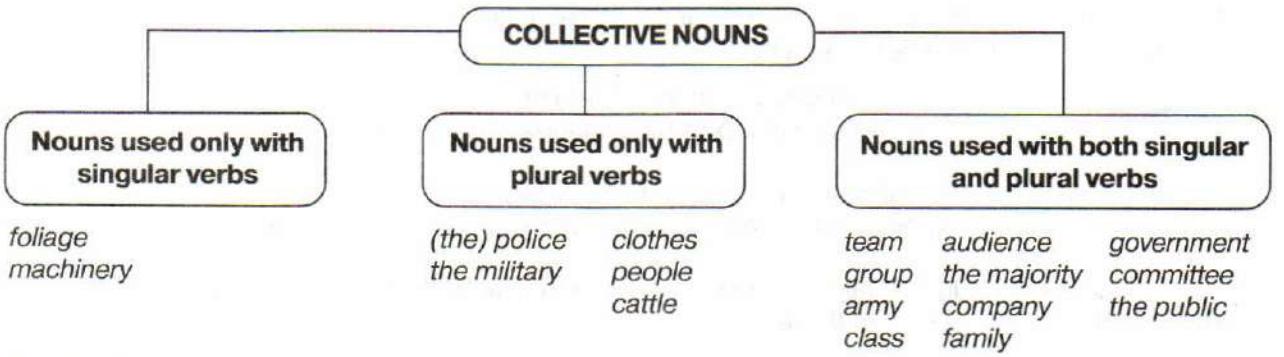
1. В какой аудитории вы обычно занимаетесь? 2. Сколько времени уходит у вас на приготовление домашнего задания? 3. Вы предпочитаете делать домашнюю работу один или вместе с товарищами? 4. Часто ли вы ходите в читальный зал? 5. Вы обычно обедаете в столовой или берёте с собой завтрак? 6. Какие газеты вы читаете каждый день? 7. Где вы обычно проводите субботу и воскресенье?

hometask weekend newspaper
classroom reading-room
dining-room homework

2. Classification of Nouns

I.





- ❑ The **foliage is** turning yellow.
- ❑ There **are** too many **people** here.
- ❑ The **family is/are** on holiday.

1. Collective nouns are used with singular verbs when they denote a thing as a whole. But sometimes plural verbs are used when collective nouns denote a number of people or elements:

- ❑ The Russian **team** *was playing* well.
- ❑ The hockey **team** *are coming* tonight.

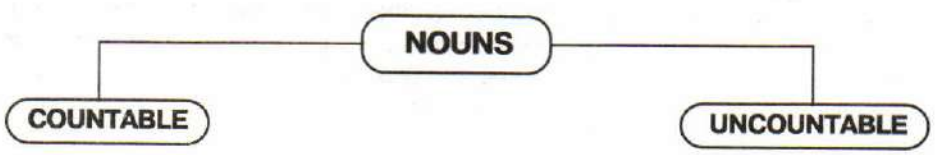
2. Nouns of material are uncountable and are generally used in the singular. They are used in the plural to denote different sorts of a given material:

- ❑ *wine – wines*
- ❑ *fruit – fruits*

3. Abstract nouns are usually uncountable, though some of them may be countable *(idea, hour)*. But they may change their meaning and become class nouns. In this case they are used with the article and may be plural.

- ❑ *beauty – a beauty – beauties*
- ❑ *sight – a sight – sights*

II.



Denote things that can be counted

- ❑ *a book – 5 books*
- ❑ *a boy – many boys*

Denote things we cannot count. These include:

- many types of food: *meat*, *food*, *butter*, *sugar*, *rice*, etc.
- liquids: *water*, *tea*, *oil*, etc.
- materials: *glass*, *plastic*, *wood*, etc.
- abstract nouns: *beauty*, *love*, *help*, etc.

They have no plural.
We can't use *a/an* before them.
We use *the/some/any/this/his*, etc. before them.

- ❑ *the* music, *some* bread, *his* blood, *much* excitement
- ❑ This ring is made of *silver*.

1. Many nouns can be used as countable and uncountable nouns.
Usually there is a difference in meaning:

- *Paper* <
  - I bought **a paper**. (countable = a newspaper)
  - I bought **some paper**. (uncountable = material)
- *Hair* <
  - She has beautiful **hair**. (uncountable)
  - There is **a hair** in my soup. (countable = one single hair)

2. Some nouns are usually uncountable in English but often countable in other languages.
Here are the most important of these:

accommodation	*behaviour*	*information*	*scenery*
advice	*bread*	*news*	*traffic*
baggage	*chaos*	*permission*	*travel*
luggage	*furniture*	*progress*	*trouble*
	money		*weather*
			work

- I'm looking for **accommodation**.
- Tom gave me **some** good **advice**.
- Where did you buy your **furniture**?
- I'm looking for **work**.
- The **news is** very depressing today.

EXERCISES



1 **(A) Write the countable and uncountable nouns into the two columns:**

Countable	Uncountable

Wall, air, picture, water, tea, time, hour, river, friend, copper, cheese, teacher, glass (стакан), glass (стекло), paper (бумага), paper (газета), music, coffee, armchair, gold, ship, milk, ice, furniture, butter, happiness, wood, tree, ink, money, coin, university, assistance, assistant, darkness, meat, machine.

2 **(A, B) Choose the correct form.**

1. To press clothes, you need *iron/an iron*. 2. *Language/A language* is unique to humans. 3. In her youth she was *beauty/a beauty*. 4. She's been looking for *work/a work* for 3 months. 5. You should study *law/a law* at university. 6. Then everybody called for him to make *speech/a speech*. 7. I don't eat *a chicken/chicken*, I'd rather have fish/a fish. 8. *A paper/Paper* is made of wood. 9. "Waiter, *a coffee/coffee* and two cakes, please." 10. My mother never drinks *a wine/wine*.

3 **(B, C) Choose between a singular or a plural verb to be used in the following sentences.**

1. The play is witty and the cast (be) ..... wonderful. 2. The cast (be) ..... all amateurs. 3. All the family (to be) ..... gathered to see the dog. 4. Monty's family (to be) ..... of about the same social status as my own. 5. Do you know what the family (to get) ..... into their heads about this business? 6. Everybody says the Swiss police (to be) ..... great at finding people. 7. The public (not to think) ..... so. 8. The public (to request) ..... not to leave litter in these woods. 9. When he came, the baseball

team (to practise) ..... on the school field. 10. The team (to have) ..... baths at the moment and then (to come) ..... back here for tea. 11. The team (to play) ..... tomorrow morning. 12. The Government (to discuss) ..... the matter for a long time but they have shown no signs of reaching agreement. 13. The Government (to decide) ..... to pass the bill. 14. You've bought yourself a nice car. Your money (to be) ..... well spent. 15. His advice (to be) ..... always useful for me.

4 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Полиция не дураки. Этот человек не поверил ни одному моему слову. 2. Команда обычно прекращает погрузку (loading) в 12, и все собираются на палубе. 3. Ты знаешь, каковы новости? 4. В письме важная информация. 5. Вся компания сидит в кафе. Они собираются здесь обедать. 6. У комитета сложилось мнение, что этот вопрос нужно решить немедленно. 7. Когда директор пришёл, весь штат уже собрался. 8. Штат очень небольшой, я не знаю, как он справляется.

3. The Category of Number

English countable nouns have two numbers: the singular and the plural.

The Rules for Forming the Plural of English Nouns

RULES	EXAMPLES	NOTES
1. The general rule for forming the plural of English nouns is by adding the ending **-s** to the singular	*tables, books, ties, plans paths, months*	**-s** is pronounced: **[z]** after voiced consonants and vowels: *beds, flowers, boys* **[s]** after voiceless consonants: *caps, books, hats* **[iz]** after sibilants: *noses, horses, bridges, houses*
2. If the noun ends in *-s, -ss, -x, -z, -sh, -ch, -tch, -o,* the plural is formed by adding **-es** [*iz*], [*z*] after *-o*	*buses, glasses, boxes, brushes, benches, matches, cargoes, potatoes*	**But:** *pianos, photos, cuckoos, videos, zoos*
3. There are seven nouns which form the plural by changing the root vowel	*man – men woman – women* ['womən] – ['wɪmɪn] *foot – feet tooth – teeth goose – geese mouse – mice louse – lice*	

RULES	EXAMPLES	NOTES
4. There are two nouns which form the plural in **-en**	*ox – oxen* *child – children*	
5. In some nouns the plural form does not differ from the singular	*deer, sheep, swine, fish, trout, dozen, score, aircraft, salmon*	**BUT:** Pack the books in *dozens*; *scores* of people
6. Some words borrowed from Latin or Greek keep their Latin or Greek plural forms	In the technical languages of science: *phenomenon – phenomena* *datum – data* *crisis – crises* *stimulus – stimuli* *formula – formulae* *index – indices* *antenna – antennae*	In fiction and colloquial English some of these nouns have acquired English plural forms: *formulas, indexes*
7. In compound nouns the plural is formed in different ways: a) adding **-s** to the head-word b) the final element takes the plural form c) if the compound begins with the words *man/woman*, both words are plural d) if there is no noun-stem in the compound, **-s** is added to the last element	a) *editors-in-chief* *brothers-in-law* *lookers-on* b) *lady-birds* *hotel-keepers* *housewives* *postmen* c) *men-servants* *women-doctors* d) *forget-me-nots* *merry-go-rounds*	

Spelling Rules

RULES	EXAMPLES	NOTES
1. If the noun ends in *-y* preceded by a consonant, *-y* is changed into *-i* – before *-es*	*fly – flies* *army – armies* *lady – ladies*	In proper names there is no change: *Mary – Marys*
2. If the final *-y* is preceded by a vowel, there is no vowel change	*day – days* *boy – boys* *play – plays* *toy – toys* *key – keys*	
3. The nouns ending in *-f, -fe* change it into *-v* (both in spelling and pronunciation)	*wife – wives* *knife – knives* *life – lives* *leaf – leaves* *thief – thieves* *half – halves*	*roof – roofs* *scarf* < *scarfs* / *scarves* *wharf* < *wharfs* / *wharves*

There are, however, many peculiarities

1. Nouns denoting the things which consist of two or more parts are used only in the plural (as in Russian). They are:

trousers
spectacles
scissors
scales
tongs

- ❑ Your **trousers are** too long.
- ❑ Where **are** my **spectacles**?
- ❑ **These scissors are** sharp.

2. Remember the nouns which are used in the plural in English whereas they are singular in Russian:

wages
contents
clothes
stairs
goods
potatoes
onions
carrots
oats
arms
riches

- ❑ His **wages are** high.
- ❑ The **contents have** not been changed.
- ❑ His **clothes were** wet as he had been caught in the rain.
- ❑ The **stairs are** steep.
- ❑ The **goods have** arrived from France.
- ❑ **Potatoes are** very cheap in autumn.
- ❑ Spanish **onions are** sweet.
- ❑ **Carrots are** very healthy.

BUT: *a potato (one)*
an onion
a carrot

3. The noun *vacation* is used only in the singular in English (it is plural in Russian).

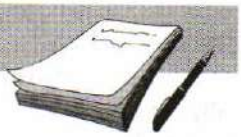
- ❑ Our summer **vacation lasts** 2 months.

BUT: We have **two vacations** a year.

4. In English the nouns *gate*, *sledge*, *watch*, *clock* are used both in the singular and in the plural (in Russian they are only plural):

- ❑ The **gate is** open.
- ❑ All **the gates were** closed.
- ❑ My **watch (clock)** is slow.
- ❑ He has **two watches (clocks)**.

EXERCISES



1 **(A) Write the plurals of these nouns in the columns below according to the pronunciation of the ending.**

Shop, glass, friend, bottle, cinema, clock, guitar, hotel, island, lake, light, month, office, park, piece, smile, space, tape, village, box, match, beach, address.

[s]	[z]	[iz]
shops,	friends,	glasses,

2 (A, B) Give the plural of the following nouns. Translate them.

A

Toe – ....., city – ....., hero – ....., piano – ....., calf – ....., cliff – ....., chief – ....., stitch – ....., bath – ....., life – ....., shelf – ....., berry – ....., valley – ....., roof – ....., pen – ....., window – ....., library – ....., watch – ....., dress – ....., country – ....., glass – ....., day – ....., party – ....., leaf – ....., fox – ....., half – ....., eye – ....., language – ....., place – ....., ray – ....., bush – ....., mouth – ....., journey – ....., photo – ..... .

B

Foot – ....., boot – ....., ox – ....., fox – ....., man – ....., woman – ....., month – ....., mouse – ....., child – ....., ship – ....., goose – ....., deer – ....., sheep – ..... .

C

Crisis – ....., phenomenon – ....., datum – ....., nucleus – ....., basis – ....., criterion – ....., series – ....., analysis – ....., formula – ..... .

D

Room-mate – ....., fellow-worker – ....., court-martial – ....., man-of-war, boy-messenger – ....., onlooker – ....., passer-by – ....., sister-in-law – ....., postman – ....., son-in-law – ....., fisherman – ....., schoolgirl – ....., text-book – ....., statesman – ....., editor-in-chief – ..... .

3 (B) Change the number of the noun in italics where possible and make all the other necessary changes.

1. Put the boxes on the *shelf*. – ..... . 2. The boy must have two *teeth* pulled out. – ..... . 3. The hunter got a prize for killing the *wolf* that had caused much damage to the village flock. – ..... . 4. The *child* was bitterly crying over the broken toy. – ..... . 5. He showed me a *photo* of his country house. – ..... . 6. The scout brought some valuable *information*. – ..... . 7. I saw a *mouse* in the kitchen. – ..... . 8. The *ox* drove a cart of hay. – ..... . 9. A very strange *phenomenon* was observed by astronomers yesterday. – ..... . 10. Her *hair* was soft and curly. – ..... . 11. Boy drove the *sheep* to the village. – ..... . 12. I have *hurt* my foot. – ..... . 13. This is a *lady-bird*. – ..... . 14. Where is the *knife*? – ..... . 15. This *story* is very long. – ..... . 16. The *speech* was very interesting. – ..... . 17. The *roof* of the *house* was covered with snow. – ..... . 18. The *fish* were caught. – ..... . 19. We have good *postmen* in our area. – ..... .

4 (B) Supply the missing words.

1. The stairs ..... worn by thousands of visitors. 2. Where ..... the scissors? – ..... are in the first drawer on the left. 3. The scales ..... broken. 4. How much did you pay for ..... trousers? – ..... were very expensive! 5. If your clothes ..... dirty, please put them in the laundry basket. 6. His old grandfather's watch ..... made of gold. 7. All their belongings ..... been destroyed in a fire. 8. My earnings (not) ..... high, but at least they ..... regular. 9. These shorts ..... not fit me at all!

5 **(B) Use the appropriate form of the verb.**

1. "There ..... money in my pocket," I said to the porter (is, are). 2. I know my hair ..... beautiful, everybody says so (is, are). 3. This watch ..... a special favourite with Mr. Pickwick, having been carried about for a greater number of years than we feel called upon to state (was, were). 4. The deer ..... ravaging the man's fields (was, were). 5. Money ..... so scarce that it could fairly be said not to exist at all (was, were). 6. I was here before the gates ..... opened but I was afraid to come straight to you (was, were). 7. The papers ..... dull, the news ..... local and stale and the war news ..... all old (was, were). 8. Her hair ..... loose and half-falling and she wore a nurse's dress (was, were). 9. The nurse's wages ..... good (was, were).

6 **(B, C) Translate into English.**

1. Эта лестница ведёт к морю. 2. Он дал мне хороший совет. 3. Все сведения были очень важные. 4. Эти деньги не мои. 5. У меня было мало денег. Я не мог позволить себе покупать такие дорогие вещи. 6. Ваших знаний недостаточно, чтобы сдать экзамен. 7. Какая интересная работа! 8. Я купил эти часы в Лондоне. Они очень хорошие. 9. Его одежда совсем новая. 10. Там было очень мало людей. 11. Картофель очень хороший в этом году. 12. Морковь очень дешёвая осенью. 13. Его заработная плата очень высокая. 14. Содержание его письма было совсем неожиданным. 15. В аквариуме пять рыбок. Одна рыбка золотая. 16. Эти новости очень интересные. 17. Кому принадлежат деньги? – Я не знаю, кому они принадлежат. 18. Фермеры довольны. Они вырастили много свиней и овец. 19. Наши зимние каникулы кончаются 6 февраля. 20. Витрина привлекала внимание всех прохожих.

4. The Category of Case

English nouns denoting living beings (and some lifeless things) have two cases: the common case and the genitive (or possessive) case.

The Genitive

1. We show possession in English with the genitive form of a noun. This means we normally use **'s** or **s'** for people and some living creatures. We put the possessive before the noun it refers to:

- **Frank's** car. (Not "the car of Frank/the car of Frank's").

2. The simplest rule to remember is: Add **'s** to any personal noun unless it is in the form of a plural ending in **-s**, in which case just add an apostrophe (**'**). This means:

- add *'s* to singular nouns and names not ending in *-s*:
  a **boy's** tie; **Tom's** hat.
- add *'s* to singular nouns ending in *-s*:
  an **actress's** career; a **waitress's** job.
- add *'s* to irregular plural nouns:
  children's games; the **men's** club; **sheep's** wool.
- add an apostrophe *(')* after the *-s* of regular plurals:
  the girls' uniforms.
- add *'s* to names ending in *-s*:
  Charles's address; **Doris's** panty; **St. James's** Park.
  Famous names ending in *-s* just add *(')*: **Yeats'** poetry (pronounced [s] or [iz]).
- add *'s* to the last element of the word group:
  My friend Peter's watch; my **father-in-law's** house.

Apostrophe *S ('S/S')*, Compound Noun or *Of*?

1. When we want to show possession with things, we can use *of*: *the leg of the table*. However, we often prefer to use a compound noun instead of *of*: *the table leg*.

2. We must use *of* when we cannot form a compound noun: *the book of the film* (Not "the film's book"); *the top of the box* (Not "the box's top"). You can only learn this from experience. If you are in doubt, use *of*.

The Use of *'S* and *S'* with Non-Living Things: *"an Hour's Journey"*

We use *'s* and *s'* with some non-living things:

- ❑ fixed phrases: *the earth's surface, journey's end, the ship's company*;
- ❑ time phrases (singular): *an hour's journey, a day's work, a month's salary*;
- ❑ time phrases (plural): *two hours' journey, two days' work, two months' salary*.

It is also used with nouns expressing space and weight, with the names of countries, cities and ships and with the nouns *world, country, city, ship*:

- ❑ *Moscow's theatres*
- ❑ *world's best museums*
- ❑ *our country's best opera house*
- ❑ *the ship's crew*

We can use *'s* when the first noun is an *organisation*:

- ❑ *the government's decision*
- ❑ *the company's success*

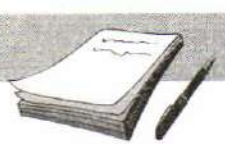
The Genitive is used in some set expressions:

- ❑ *for Heaven's sake / for God's sake*
- ❑ *at one's wit's end*
- ❑ *a hair's breadth*
- ❑ *at a stone's throw*

Omission of the Noun after *'S*

We generally omit the noun after *'s* when referring to work-places, shops and houses: *the doctor's* rather than *the doctor's surgery*, *my mother's* rather than *my mother's house*.

EXERCISES



1 (A, B) Use *'s* or *s'* only where possible with the following nouns.

(Model:) the clothes of the boys – *the boys' clothes*

1. a journey of two days
   .....
2. the walls of the room
   .....
3. the days of the week
   .....
4. the birthday of my daughter Helen
   .....
5. the pages of the book
   .....
6. work of seven years
   .....
7. the surface of the Earth
   .....
8. the orders of the Commander-in-Chief
   .....

2 (A, B) What could we use in place of the words in brackets?

Model: Your father has gone to (the shop owned by the butcher) the *butcher's*.

1. I'll meet you at (the shop owned by the chemist) .....
2. I'm going to spend the night at (the house owned by my aunt) .....
3. We always buy things at (the department store owned by Emma Hart) .....

3 (B) Rewrite these sentences, using *'s, s'*, or just an apostrophe *(')*.

Model: The books for children.
– These are *children's* books.

1. This bag belongs to my friend. .....
2. He described the career of the actress. .....
3. This is the signature of Mr. Brown. .....
4. The mistakes which students make. .....
5. This is a club for women. .....
6. It's a school for girls. .....
7. This umbrella belongs to James. .....
8. I liked the dinner we had yesterday at the cafe belonging to Mike. .....

4 (B) In this exercise you have to join two nouns with *'s*, an apostrophe *(')*, or a compound noun. Sometimes you have to use *... of ...* .

Model: the mother/Ann – *Ann's mother*
the club/students – *the students' club*
the door/the room – *the door of the room*

1. the name/my friend .....
2. the eyes/the dog .....
3. the top/the page .....
4. the newspaper/today .....
5. a holiday/month .....
6. the name/this street .....
7. the car/Mike's parents .....
8. the new manager/the company .....
9. the leg/table .....
10. the ground floor/the building .....
11. the children/Don and Mary .....
12. the economic policy/the government .....

5 (B) Read each sentence and write a new sentence, using *'s* with the words in italics.

Model: The surface of *the Earth* looks wonderful from space.
The Earth's surface looks wonderful from space.

1. I had dinner in the house of my *friend*. .....
2. The theatres in *Moscow* are the best in the world. .....
3. Exports from Britain to the United States have fallen recently. .....
4. The lecture *tomorrow* has been cancelled. .....
5. The crew of the *ship* was small. .....
6. The rains last *month* caused lots of floods. .....
7. The museums in the *town* are very famous. .....

6 (B) Use the information to complete the sentences.

Model: I started cleaning my house at 9 o'clock and finished at 12 o'clock.
So it's about *three hours'* work.

1. I need two days to do the work.
   It is ..... work.
2. She had a rest from two to three.
   So she had ..... rest.
3. If I leave my house at 8.50 and walk to work, I get to work at 9 o'clock.
   So it's only ..... walk from my house to work.
4. He went on vacation on the 5th and was back at work on the 20th.
   So he had ..... vacation.
5. His journey lasted for two months.
   So it was ..... journey.
6. Our excursion in this museum started at 11 o'clock and finished at 2 o'clock.
   So we had ..... excursion.
7. In September he will receive his salary for two months.
   In September he will receive .... salary.

7 (B) The apostrophe (') key of the computer is out of order. Put the apostrophe where it is necessary. Do not forget that the apostrophe is also used in contracted forms: *he is = he's, she is = she's, he has done = he's done, do not = don't.*

A: Did you see the invitation to Lindas birthday?
B: Yes, I did. Was it her or her husbands idea to invite us?
A: I dont know. We are not really friends. We are just Roberts colleagues.
B: I know. But Lindas mother keeps telling everybody that shes going to have a really big party. Maybe thats the reason why she invited her husbands colleagues and their partners, too.
A: OK. Lets go there and see how everything is going.
B: We need a present then. What about a womans weekend at a fitness club?
A: Thats too expensive for a colleagues wife. What about breakfast at Tiffany's?
B: You mean the new Tiffany's in High Street?
A: Yes. They offer things like that. My secretarys family went there last Sunday and they were very pleased about the food, the prices and the waiters politeness.
B: Good idea.



5. Tests

I

1. Сын моей сестры хорошо учится.
2. Мне нравится квартира Марии.
3. Она много пишет сёстрам Анны.
4. Комната Бесс большая и светлая.
5. Учитель вернул тетради студентов.
6. Я не помню имени сестры моего друга.
7. Друзья моего брата хорошо говорят по-немецки.
8. Вам нравится новая книга этого писателя?

II

1. Где ключ от машины?
2. Мальчишки взяли велосипед почтальона.
3. Он сломал ручку двери.
4. Дверь гаража была закрыта.
5. Мы выучили слова десятого урока вчера.
6. Ручка чемодана была неудобной.
7. Поверхность дороги была скользкой.
8. Я не знаю результат вчерашнего матча.

III

1. Они взяли десятидневный отпуск.
2. Экипаж корабля был небольшой.
3. Книги этого писателя очень популярны.
4. Обложка книги была порвана.
5. Я поговорил с менеджером компании.
6. Это – лучший оперный театр в стране.
7. Телефон в офисе не работает.
8. Вчера вечером я был в гостях у бабушки.

THE ARTICLE

The article is a structural part of speech used with nouns. The use of articles depends on the type of noun, context or situation, it is sometimes influenced by the syntactic relations in which the noun occurs.

There are two types of articles in modern English: the indefinite ***(a/an)*** and the definite article ***(the)***. The absence of articles also has its grammatical significance: it shows that the nouns are used in a general sense.

1. Use of Articles with Common Nouns

The Indefinite Article *(a/an)*

We use *a/an* with singular countable nouns (*a* in front of consonant sounds: *a man, a year*; *an* in front of vowel sounds: *an umbrella, an eye, an hour*).

The indefinite article is used:

1. when people do not yet know which particular thing you are talking about.

- ❑ I've been reading **an** interesting article in "The Economist".

2. when the speaker presents the object (expressed by the noun) as belonging to a certain class. In this case it has the meaning of *«какой-нибудь»*, *«какой-то»*, *«один»*, *«некий»*. The plural of *a/an* is the zero article when we refer to things in general. The plural of *a/an* is *some/any* when we refer to quantity.

- ❑ It happened in **a small town** in Siberia. Such buildings can be found in **small towns**.
- ❑ He bought **a book** yesterday. He bought **some books** yesterday.

3. when we are not referring to a particular thing or person but just to any thing or person of a particular type. This use is typical after the verbs like *want, look for, need, afford*.

- ❑ The children **want a ride**.
- ❑ We **need a leader**.
- ❑ I can't **afford a car**.

The Definite Article *(the)*

We can use *the* with any noun.

The definite article is used:

1. When the speaker and the listener know what particular object is meant:

- ❑ How did you like **the play**?
- ❑ Where is **the key**?

NB! There is a difference between knowing what object is spoken about and knowing the object itself.

- ❑ A. I can't speak to **the girl**. I have never seen her. Won't you speak to her?
  B. But I don't know **the girl**, either.

2. When the speaker uses an attribute pointing out a particular object – a particularizing attribute:

- ❑ This is **the** house **that Jack built**.
- ❑ Show me **the** telegram **you received yesterday**.
- ❑ **The** pictures **in this book** are very interesting.
- ❑ **The** walls **of my room** are painted blue.

NB! A particularizing attribute should not be confused with a descriptive attribute which is used to describe an object or to give some additional information about it. A descriptive attribute does not affect the use of the article:

- ❑ I have **a** wonderful clock **which is 100 years old**.

4. When a person or a thing is introduced for the first time. That shows that the reader (listener) does not know what we are referring to. After this first reference we use *the*.

- ❑ I watched **a** car as it came up our road. **The** car stopped outside our house and **a** man got out. **The** man was carrying **a** case in his hand. With **the** case, **the** man looked like a salesman.

5. when the noun is used in a general sense and has the meaning of *"every" (любой, всякий, каждый)*.

- ❑ **A drowning man** catches at **a** straw.
- ❑ **A child** can understand it.

- ❑ We went to **the** lake **which was stormy** that day.
- ❑ We've received **a** letter **containing interesting information about**...

3. When the situation (context) itself makes the object definite:

- ❑ The wedding looked sad. **The bride** was too old and **the bridegroom** was too young.

4. With singular countable nouns used in a generic sense (when we want to make a general statement about all things of that type):

- ❑ **The tragedy** and **the comedy** appeared in Greece.
- ❑ **The pine** grows in the North.

NB! In a generic sense:

- With the noun *man* no article is used.
  - ❑ His trust in **man** has been destroyed.
- With the noun *woman* the definite article or no article is used.
  - ❑ He had always been interested in that mysterious being – **the woman**.

The Zero Article

BASIC USES OF THE ZERO ARTICLE (–):

No article (zero) is used:

1. With plural countable nouns used in general statements, e.g. for:

- people – ❑ **Men** are fond of hunting.
- animals – ❑ **Dogs** should eat meat.
- food – ❑ **Oranges** are good for you.
- places – ❑ **Cities** are polluted by cars.
- products – ❑ **Shops** are open on Sundays.

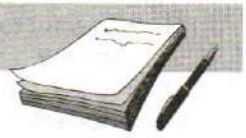
2. With uncountable nouns (always singular) used in general statements, e.g. for:

- food – ❑ I like **ice-cream**.
- colours – ❑ **Red** is my favourite colour.
- abstract – ❑ No **news** is good **news**.
- substances – ❑ **Coffee** is produced in Brazil.
- activities – ❑ **Smoking** is not allowed here.
- languages – ❑ **Chinese** is difficult to study.

By comparison, we use *the* when the reference is specific (not in general):

a) with plural countable nouns – ❑ **The** oranges **from Spain** are sweet.
b) with uncountable nouns – ❑ I used all **the** butter **that was in the butter dish**.

EXERCISES



1 (A, B, C) Say what articles you would use for the nouns in italics in these situations.

1. К вам подбегает мальчик с газетами и спрашивает:
   – Вы не купите *газету*, пожалуйста?
   – Купите *одну из газет*, пожалуйста.
2. Вы видите у сына новую ручку и говорите: «Где ты купил *ручку*?»
3. Ваш брат идёт в библиотеку и вы его просите: «Принеси мне, пожалуйста, *английский словарь*». – «Я не думаю, что в нашей библиотеке есть *английские словари*».
4. На вопрос по телефону, что делает ваша сестра, вы ответили: «Она читает *книгу*. Она любит читать *книги*».
5. Вчера мы купили *новый стол*. Я попробовала работать за ним. *Стол* неудобен для письма.
6. Староста напоминает дежурному: «Сегодня твоя очередь мыть *столы*».
7. Вы видите в руках у мальчика *камень* и просите: «Отберите у мальчика *камень*, пожалуйста».
8. Решив разбить *палатку*, вы говорите: «Найди где-нибудь *камень*, будем забивать колья».
9. Вы купили *комнату*. В ней абсолютно нет *мебели*. «Прежде всего мне необходим *стол*», – думаете вы.
10. *Мальчик* говорит своим родителям: «В следующем году у нас будут *столы* вместо *парт*».
11. «Посмотри на *дуб*. Ему, наверное, сто лет».
12. «Давайте посадим *дуб*. Он дает много тени».
13. «Наш парк преобразился: там посадили *много новых деревьев*. В основном это *дубы* и *липы*».
14. *Дубы*, которые мы посадили в парке, уже выросли.
15. Не можете ли вы одолжить мне *конверт*? Мне срочно нужно отослать *письмо*, а *почта* закрыта.
16. «Где ты купила *плащ*? Мне тоже нужен *плащ*, но я не могу найти ничего подходящего». – «Сходи в магазин на улице Мира, там продают красивые *плащи*».
17. *Девочка* ищет *сестру*. Вы ей говорите: «Посмотри *во дворе*. Она, вероятно, играет там *с детьми*».
18. *Учительница* входит в *класс* и, увидев там только *девочек*, говорит: «А где же *мальчики*?»
19. Вы просите помочь вам: «Вы не можете передвинуть *стол*?»
20. Ваша сестра готовится к экзаменам, но к вам пришли гости, вы просите её перейти в *спальню*. Её подруга спрашивает: «А в *спальне* есть стол?»
21. Учительница говорит: «Не пишите на *столах* и следите за тем, чтобы всегда был мел у *доски*».
22. Посмотрите на *доску*, пожалуйста.
23. Вы пришли за ребёнком в детский сад *в середине дня*, вам говорят: «Вы не можете забрать *ребёнка*, пока *дети* спят. Они отдыхают».

2 (A) Fill in the blanks with *a/an*, *the* or the zero article.

1. Would you like ..... cup of tea? 2. Can I make ..... telephone call? 3. She wants ..... glass of water. 4. Have you got ..... watch? 5. I'd like ..... apple, please. 6. Do you like ..... boys in your class? 7. Do you usually like ..... girls more than ..... boys? 8. What about ..... girls in your class? Are they nice? 9. Which of ..... teachers do you like best? 10. What is the name of ..... teacher you like best? 11. Are ..... boys/girls in your group good at English? 12. Are ..... girls in your class as clever as ..... boys? What do you think?

3 (A, B) Choose the right alternative: *a/an* or *the*.

1. We've just bought *a/the* new house with *a/the* large garden. 2. I wrote *a/the* long letter to Jenny this morning. 3. Did I show you *a/the* letter I got from Peter this morning? 4. I usually buy *a/the* newspaper on my way to work. 5. Last night I saw *an/the* interesting programme about Eastern Europe. 6. I really enjoyed *a/the* programme about Eastern Europe last night. 7. I learned to drive *a/the* car when I was 18. 8. Dad, can I borrow *a/the* car tonight? 9. *A/the* dog makes *a/the* good pet. 10. Could you pass *a/the* salt, please?

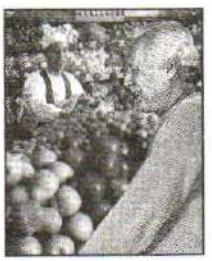
4 (B) Fill in *a/an*, *the* or the zero article.

1 Where did ..... life come from?
2. I don't know much about ..... life of Salvador Dali.
3. I can't call it ..... running. It's ..... jogging.
4. I think ..... red dress will suit you best. ..... red is more your colour.
5. ..... watches have become very cheap and very attractive.
6. Most of ..... watches you see today work on ..... quartz.
7. ..... journeys to unknown places require a lot of preparation.
8. ..... lives of ..... poets and ..... musicians have often been unbearably difficult.
9. ..... time is ..... money.
10. I can never forget ..... time I've spent in Paris.
11. We have ..... nice apartment in ..... centre of St. Petersburg. It is ..... three-room flat with ..... kitchen.
12. This is the front room. ..... ceiling and ..... walls need decorating but ..... floor is in good order. We'll probably cover it with ..... carpet.

5 (A, B) Put in *a/an* or *the*.

A Bad Customer

(1)..... man went into (2)..... shop and asked for (3)..... pound of apples which cost one shilling. (4)..... shopkeeper gave them to him. Then (5)..... man asked, "Can I exchange (6)..... apples for (7)..... pound of plums? (8)..... price is (9)..... same." (10)..... shopkeeper agreed, took back (11)..... apples and gave him plums. (12)..... man took them and was going to leave (13)..... shop. (14)..... shopkeeper asked him for (15)..... money.
"(16)..... money for what?" asked (17)..... man.
"(18)..... money for (19)..... plums," said (20)..... shopkeeper.
"But I gave you (21)..... apples for (22)..... plums," answered (23)..... man.
"Well, then, (24)..... money for (25)..... apples."
"But you still have your apples," said (26)..... man and walked out of (27)..... shop.



The Indefinite Article *(a/an)*

The indefinite article is used:

1. after the verb *to be* or another link verb (*seem*, *look*, *become*, etc). Usually such nouns denote a profession or characteristic.
- ❑ He became **a doctor**.
- ❑ She works as **(a) chemist**.
- ❑ Miss Sharp's father was **an artist**.
- ❑ Your brother is **a nice man**.

2. in some grammatical structures:
a) **It is a** book. **This is a** picture.
b) She **has a** cat.
c) **There is a book** on the table.
d) **What a** clever man! **What a** fine building!

BUT: What nice **weather** we are having today! *(Mind uncountable nouns)*

3. in detached apposition:
- ❑ My friend, **a history teacher**, knows a lot about it.

BUT: Pushkin, **the great Russian poet**,..
Ivanov, **the inventor of this machine**,..

The Definite Article *(the)*

The definite article is used:

1. with the nouns modified by:
a) adjectives in the superlative degree
- ❑ Moscow has **the best underground** in the world.
- ❑ **The highest mountains** are in Asia.

b) with the pronouns *same*, *all* and the adjectives *wrong*, *right*, *very*, *next*, *following*, *last*, *only*, *whole*:
- ❑ I found him in **the last carriage** of the train.
- ❑ You're **the very person** I need.
- ❑ We'll have more time **the following week**.

NB! *"Next"* meaning *"future"* and *"last"* meaning *"past"* are used without articles – *next month*, *last week*.

c) the ordinal numerals *first*, *second*, etc.
- ❑ We sat in **the first** row.

2. with the nouns denoting a unique thing: *the Sun*, *the Moon*, *the Earth*, *the Universe*, *the Galaxy*, *the Solar System*, etc.:
- ❑ **The Sun** is the centre of our Galaxy.
- ❑ **The Earth** is often called the blue planet.

4. after the attributes *such*, *rather*, *quite*:

- ❑ He is **such a** clever man.
- ❑ She is **quite a** young girl.
- ❑ It was **rather a** difficult job.

NB! When a countable noun is preceded by expressions like *a type of*, *a kind of*, *a sort of*, *a variety of*, *a breed of*, no article is used in front of the noun that follows.

- ❑ She was **a kind of woman** who likes to help people.
- ❑ We can't approve of **that sort of thing**.
- ❑ It was an exotic **breed of dog**.

NB! The indefinite article *a/an* can be used when we mean a certain state or aspect of such objects: *the Sun*, *the Moon*, *the sky*.

- ❑ **A pearl-white moon** smiles through the green trees.

3. when under the circumstances there is only one of something: *the President*, *the Queen, the King, the manager*, *the director*, *the captain*, *the Army*, *the Navy*:

- ❑ Paris is **the capital** of France.
- ❑ **The captain** was standing on the deck.
- ❑ **The president** is elected every 4 years.

NB! In these expressions no article is used:

- ❑ He was elected **President**.
- ❑ She became **Queen**.
- ❑ They made her **Manager**.

The Definite Article with Certain Groups of Words

The definite article is used:

1. before a number of nouns which indicate geographical alternatives – the types of landscape or environment where people work, live, spend their holidays: *the city/town*, *the country*, *the mountains*, *the sea*, *the seaside*, *the land*, *the forest*, etc.

- ❑ We are spending the weekend in **the country/in the mountains/at the seaside**.

2. with forms of entertainment: *the theatre*, *the cinema/movie*, *the opera*, *the ballet*, *the disco*, *the weekend*, etc

- ❑ We've seen things. We've been to **the opera**, **the theatre**, **the ballet**.
- ❑ Did you go to **the disco** on Saturday?

BUT: ❑ There is **a new disco** in town.

3. with shops and other businesses that are regular in towns/cities, though we do not necessarily mean something in particular. In this case the activity is as important as the place: *the bank*, *the police*, *the fire brigade*, *the post office*, *the doctor('s)*, *the dentist('s)*, *the shopping*, *the baker's*, *the butcher's*, *the grocer's*, *the supermarket*, *the pub*, *the chemist('s)*, *the hairdresser's/the barber*, etc.

- ❑ I do **the shopping** on Mondays. I usually go to **the supermarket**.
- ❑ I must go to **the bank** to change some money. (**BUT:** ❑ She works in **a bank**.)
- ❑ John is not very well. He went to **the doctor('s)**.

4. we can refer to the systems of mass communication and the media by using a noun with the definite article: *the television/TV*, *the radio*, *the news*, *the press*, *the paper(s)*, *the post/mail*, etc.

- ❑ This is what we read in **the paper**.
- ❑ I heard the news on **the radio**.

BUT: ❑ This is **an expensive radio**.

- ❑ We **watch television**.
- ❑ Have you got **a new TV set**?

(Here we do not speak about them as a form of the media.)

EXERCISES

6 (A) Fill in *a/an* or *the*.

1. I'd like to go to ..... beach. 2. There is ..... good film on at ..... cinema, or we could go to ..... theatre, or we could stay at home and watch ..... television. 3. Who is ..... nicest girl in your group? 4. When you want to buy sausages, you go to ..... butcher's. 5. Is there ..... bookshop on High Street? 6. I bought it in ..... shop in High Street. 7. I'm going to ..... shop. 8. ..... government is very unpopular. 9. Call ..... Police! 10. ..... longest bridge in Europe is in Portugal. 11. There is ..... cat in ..... garden. 12. There is ..... knife in ..... second drawer. 13. I'm going to ..... baker's to buy ..... loaf of bread. 14. I saw ..... interesting film at ..... cinema last week. 15. I love listening to ..... piano. 16. I think you watch ..... television too often. 17. My grandmother is dreaming of buying ..... new piano for me.

7 (B) Choose the right article.

1. My uncle used to be *the/a* dentist before he retired. 2. Athor Brown is *the/a* dentist I told you about. 3. London is *the/a* biggest city in Britain. 4. Agatha Christie was *the/a* well known writer of detective stories. 5. Agatha Christie is *the/a* writer who created Hercule Poirot. 6. My eldest son joined *the/an* Army and now my youngest wants to join *the/a* Navy. 7. Do you know who killed *the/–* President Lincoln? 8. In many countries the head of state is called *the/–* President. 9. I've got *the/an* appointment this afternoon. I've got to go to *a/the* doctor's. 10. Look at this wonderful small computer. *The/a* top lifts up to form *the/a* screen. *The/a* whole thing weighs only 5 kilos. 11. I went to *a/the* hairdresser's last week but my hair looks terrible. 12. I do all my shopping at *a/the* supermarket. 13. We have seen what *a/the* Earth looks like from *a/the* Moon. 14. Because of "the greenhouse effect" *a/the* climate of the world is changing.

8 (A, B) Put in *a/an* or *the*.

Thank You, I Feel Much Better

(1)..... doctor whose medical skill was much better than his handwriting, sent (2)..... invitation to (3)..... patient, who was best friend, to spend (4)..... evening with him. He said that there would be music and other things. (5)..... friend did not come and did not send any explanation. When they met (6)..... following day, (7)..... doctor asked whether he had received (8)..... note. He thought he had sent it to (9)..... wrong address.
"Yes, thank you," replied (10)..... other. "I took it to (11)..... chemist, he made up (12)..... medicine and I feel much better already."

9 (B, C) Complete the sentences below, using *the* or *a* where necessary.

Three monks were travelling through Turkey hoping to meet (1)..... wisest man in (2)..... whole country. (3)..... monks explained that they wanted to meet him because they each had (4)..... question to ask him. (5)..... Sultan sent for Hodja Nasreddin who came to (6)..... palace at once. (7)..... first monk stepped up and asked his question. He was rather (8)..... clever monk. "Where is (9)..... centre of (10)..... Earth?" "At this moment (11)..... centre of (12)..... Earth is exactly below (13)..... right foot of my donkey," answered Nasreddin." How can you possibly know?" asked (14)..... monk. "If you measure (15)..... Earth carefully, you'll find that I'm right," replied Hodja.

Then (16)..... second monk asked his question. "How many stars are there in (17)..... sky?" It was quite (18)..... tricky question. "As many as there are hairs on my donkey," replied Hodja. "As you'll see if you count them." (19)..... third monk came forward. "How many hairs are there in my beard?" he asked. "This is (20)..... easy question", said Hodja." As many as there are hairs in (21)..... donkey's tail. If you don't believe me, we can pull out (22)..... hairs from your beard and (23)..... hairs from (24)..... donkey's tail one by one and count them." Nasreddin is such (25)..... clever man. I needn't have asked my question to find that out. So everybody could see that Hodja was (26)..... wisest man of all.



10 (B) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Мне нужно снять комнату. 2. Проветри комнату. 3. Нож не режет. 4. У тебя нет ножа? 5. Возьми нож и отрежь хлеба. 6. Мы не знали, что здесь есть озеро. 7. Озеро глубокое. 8. Замок сломался. 9. Кому мне отдать починить (have/lock/repaired) замок? 10. Ты знаешь, где чинят замки? 11. Не забудь купить замок. 12. У нас сегодня апельсины на третье. 13. Апельсины в буфете. 14. Возьми себе апельсин. 15. Апельсин не кислый?

11 (B) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Дверь закрыта. 2. У тебя есть телефон? 3. Телефон не работает. 4. В холле темно. 5. Ты любишь собак? 6. Не дразни (to tease) собаку. 7. Никогда не пытайся погладить (to stroke) собаку, если ты её не знаешь. 8. Ручка не пишет. 9. У вас есть ручки в продаже? 10. Где можно купить пальто? 11. Где тебе сшили пальто (have/coat/made)? 12. Где ключ? 13. Сколько квартир в доме?

12 (B, C) Translate into English, paying special attention to the words in italics.

1. Кто у *двери*? – Это *почтальон*.
2. Мы ходили вчера в *театр*. *Пьеса* была замечательная.
3. Я предпочитаю проводить каникулы в *горах*, у *моря* или в *деревне*.
4. Чем занимается Джон? – Он *почтальон*.
5. В центре города строится *новый рынок*.
6. Где мама? – Она на *кухне*.
7. *Португальцы* очень отличаются от *испанцев*.
8. *Немцы* и *японцы* много работают.
9. Будьте внимательнее: вы сделали *ошибку*.
10. Я не знал, что недалеко от нашего дома есть *рынок*.
11. *Рынок* был уже закрыт, и мы пошли в магазин.
12. В этом году я первый раз был в *лагере*.
13. *Лагерь* был расположен в лесу.
14. *Почта* – важное государственное учреждение.
15. Его уведомили об этом *письмом*.
16. Мой друг написал мне об этом в *письме*.

1.1 Revision

13 (A, B) Complete the sentences with articles where necessary.

1. There is ..... bridge over the river. 2. Do you have ..... pens and ..... pencils? 3. Would you like ..... cup of tea? 4. He met ..... nice girl at ..... disco. 5. Yesterday I met ..... old friend whom I recognized at once. 6. ..... person who is sitting next to you is ..... famous painter. 7. I saw ..... beautiful hat in ..... shop but ..... hat was too expensive for me to buy. 8. They bought ..... table. ..... table is made of oak. 9. My son has ..... very good German teacher who knows ..... language perfectly. 10. What ..... strange answer! 11. From ..... back of ..... house came ..... sound of ..... vacuum-cleaner. The mother turned off ..... machine and looked at ..... boy.

14 (C) Insert articles where necessary.

1. ..... room itself was filling up, so was ..... staircase.
2. Not ..... word was spoken, not ..... sound was made.
3. ..... sky outside ..... window was already dark, secretaries had gone home, all was quiet.
4. Roger looked at him, without ..... word, took out his wallet and gave him ..... ten shilling note.
5. It was Sunday afternoon and ..... sun, which had been shining now for several hours, was beginning to warm ..... earth.
6. It was ..... cottage built like ..... mansion, having ..... central hall with ..... wooden gallery running round it and ..... rooms no bigger than ..... closets.
7. He was ..... short, plump man with ..... very white face and ..... very white hands. It was rumoured in London that he powdered them like ..... woman.
8. To him she would always be ..... loveliest woman in ..... world.
9. Her aunt was wearing ..... straw hat so broad that it covered her to ..... very edges of her shoulders, was standing below with two gardeners behind her.

10. ..... room has three doors; one on ..... same side as ..... fireplace, near ..... corner, leading to ..... best bedroom.
11. He arrived half ..... hour before dinner time and went up to ..... schoolroom at ..... top of ..... house to see ..... children.
12. There is something in ..... very expression of his face that tells me so.
13. Far away in ..... little street there is ..... poor house. One of ..... windows is open and through it I can see ..... woman sitting at ..... table. She is ..... seamstress.
14. ..... man who entered was short and broad. He was wearing ..... grey flannel trousers with ..... red woollen shirt, open at ..... neck.
15. Standing in ..... street, looking up at ..... dark windows of ..... place where he lived. ..... front door was locked and there was no one in ..... house.
16. I believe I can tell ..... very moment I began to love him.
17. Mr. Boythorn lived in ..... pretty house with ..... lawn in front, ... bright flower garden at ..... side and ..... kitchen-garden in ..... rear.
18. ..... bartender was ..... pale man in ..... vest and ..... apron.
19. ..... old man quitted ..... house secretly at ..... same hour as before.
20. Clare was ..... most vivid member of ..... family. She had dark fine hair and ..... pale expressive face, of which ..... lips were slightly brightened.

15 (C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Хотя земля была холодной и мокрой, небо было ясным. Вставало яркое солнце.
2. Компас был изобретён в древнем Китае.
3. Дэнни посмотрел на дом, и вдруг в окне он увидел лицо.
4. История, которую я собираюсь тебе рассказать, длинная. Садись на диван и давай поговорим.
5. Какая красивая бабочка здесь на стене.
6. Спасибо, Стефан. Я знал, что ты дашь мне правильный совет.
7. Иногда посетители звонили не в тот звонок.
8. Я просто хотела взглянуть на дом и задать тебе несколько вопросов.

The Indefinite Article *(a/an)*

1. *A/an* preserves its old original meaning of "one".
- ❑ He had hardly spoken **a word** since we left the house.

2. It is used with nouns denoting time, measure, weight, frequency:
- ❑ **A week** or two passed.
- ❑ I'll be back in **a minute**.
- ❑ Why have you bought only **a kilo** of apples?

3. *a/an* is used between two noun groups to express a rate/ratio (prices, speeds, salaries):
- ❑ The car makes 120 km **an hour**.
- ❑ I go to the library twice **a week** (once **a month**).
- ❑ She gets a thousand **pounds a week**.

BUT: We do not use *a/an* + *noun* and *one* + *noun* in the same way.

The Definite Article *(the)*

1. The definite article is used with substantivized adjectives and participles: *the old*, *the dead*, *the rich*, *the poor*, *the blind*, *the wounded*, *the sick*, etc.:
- ❑ There are special schools for **the blind and the deaf**.
- ❑ Do you think **the rich** should pay more taxes?

2. We also use *the* for musical instruments when we talk about playing them or listening to them:
- ❑ Can you play **the guitar**?

BUT: ❑ I'd like to buy **a new guitar**.

3. We use *the* in front of the nationality nouns (generically as the nation or a political group). They can be divided into four groups:

a) **the + -ese/-ss**: *the Chinese*, *the Japanese*, *the Portuguese*, *the Swiss*;

a/an + *noun* means *"any one"*:
- ❑ I'd like **a coffee**, please.

one + *noun* when we are counting:
- ❑ It was **one coffee** I ordered, not two.

We use *a/an* or *one* with:
- *a)* whole numbers and fractions: *a/one hundred/thousand*; *a/one half/quarter*;
- *b)* money: *a/one pound/dollar*;
- *c)* weights, measures: *a/one kilo/foot*.

We use *one* with day, morning, evening when telling a story:
- ❑ **One day** when I was staying at the Hilton I received a strange telephone call.

4. *A/an* or zero with reference to illness:
- *a)* use *a/an* with these illnesses: *a cold*, *a headache*, *a sore throat*.
- *b)* use or omit *a/an* with these: *catch (a) cold*, *have (a/an) backache/earache/stomach-ache/toothache*.
- *c)* *no article* at all with these plurals: *measles*, *mumps*, *shingles*.
- *d)* *no articles* with these: *(high) blood pressure*, *flu* (short for *influenza*), *gout*, *hepatitis*.
- *b)* **the Danes/the Danish**, *the Spaniards/the Spanish*, *the Swedes/the Swedish*;
- *c)* **the + -ch/-sh**: *the British*, *the English*, *the French*, *the Irish*.
- *d)* (**the** +) **plural ending**:
  -ians: *(the) Austrians*, *(the) Belgians*, *(the) Brazilians*, *(the) Egyptians*, *(the) Russians*;
  -ans: *(the) Americans*, *(the) Koreans*, *(the) Mexicans*;
  -s: *(the) Arabs*, *(the) Germans*, *(the) Greeks*, *(the) Poles*, *(the) Scots*, *(the) Turks*.

- ❑ **The Swiss** see no need to change their policy of "armed neutrality".
- ❑ **The Chinese** have their own version of this proverb.
- ❑ **The British** are too often their own worst critics.

BUT: We say: *She is* ***an American***.

EXERCISES



16 (A, B) Fill in *a/an* where necessary. Note where you can use *a/an* or the zero article.

1. I'm going to bed. I've got a headache.
2. I was awake all night with ..... toothache.
3. I think Gillan's got ..... flu.
4. The children are in bed with ..... mumps.
5. Mind you don't catch ..... cold.
6. ..... measles can be very unpleasant.
7. Don't come near me. I've got ..... sore throat.
8. I think I've got ..... cold!
9. I've had ..... terrible backache.
10. I often suffer from ..... backache.

17 (A, B, C) Translate the words in brackets.

1. The apples are (90 рублей за 1 килограмм).
2. I take these pills (два раза в день).
3. We are going (100 км в час).
4. I do the dishes (1 раз в день).
5. Rubbish is collected (три раза в неделю).
6. Olive oil costs (200 рублей за литр).

18 (B, C) Fill in *a/an*, *the* or the zero article.

1. ..... Mr. Stocks has shown that ..... Egyptians used ..... saws and drills. ..... saws and drills were made of ..... copper. 2. I tell you, he is as brave as ..... man can reasonably be. 3. You know I never cared for ..... drama. 4. He looks older than he is, as ..... dark men often do. 5. As ..... man sows, so shall he reap. 6. Even ..... strongest have their hours of depression. 7. ..... rich think they can buy anything. 8. We are told that ..... wicked shall be punished. 9. Not ..... word was spoken in ..... parlour.

19 (B, C) Say what articles you would use for the nouns in italics in this text.

Вот это здоровье!*

«Я думаю, это всё, миссис Грант», – сказал *доктор Колд* (1) и протянул ей список предписаний. Список был очень длинным, и миссис Грант чуть *удар* (2) не хватил, пока она дочитала его *до конца* (3). У нее *болела голова* (4), у неё была *простуда* (5), у неё начинался *грипп* (6). В довершение всего, у одного из её детей была *свинка* (7). «Я также прописал

вам таблетки от повышенного *давления* [8]», – сказал доктор Колд. «Сколько таблеток я должна принимать?» «*Одну таблетку* [9] после каждого *приема пищи* [10], то есть три таблетки *в день* [11]». Миссис Грант поблагодарила *доктора* [12] и *с трудом* [13] дошла *до аптеки* [14]. Она протянула свой длинный список *аптекарю* [15] – мистеру Вайту. Мистер Вайт весело приветствовал её. «Вот это здоровье!» сказал он, взглянув *на список* [16].

* Here's Health!

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16



20 **(B, C) Complete the sentences below, using *the* with these adjectives.**

blind ~~dead~~ disabled rich poor unemployed

1. It is said that we should never speak ill of *the dead*.
2. Buildings should be specially designed so they can be used by ..... .
3. It is only fair that ..... should pay higher taxes than ..... .
4. In St. John's Park there is a special garden for ..... with strongly scented flowers.
5. Life is bound to be difficult for ..... .

A J☺ke

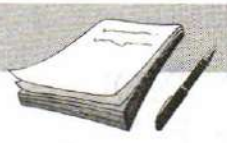
Why did Robin Hood rob **the** rich?
Because **the** poor didn't have any money.

2. Use of Articles with Nouns of Material and Abstract Nouns

	In a general sense – **NO ARTICLE**	When modified by a particularizing attribute or the situation makes it definite – **THE**	**NOTES**
Nouns of Material *Butter, tea, iron, water, honey, wine, snow,* etc.	❑ **Blood** is thicker than **water**. ❑ She was wearing a little hat of black **straw**. ❑ He doesn't like **coffee**. ❑ She was as pale as **snow**.	❑ Rosa tasted **the wine**. It was good. ❑ **The coffee** she made was better than he had hoped and very hot. ❑ She looked with hungry eyes at **the bread** and **meat** the landlady brought her.	**1.** When an indefinite part of the substance is meant, *some/any* are used: ❑ I bought **some bread** and **cheese**. **2.** We use *a/an* when: *a)* sorts of food are meant ❑ They give **a good coffee** here. *b)* a portion of something is meant ❑ He drank **a brandy** and went out. ❑ I'll buy you **an ice**.

	In a general sense – **NO ARTICLE**	When modified by a particularizing attribute or the situation makes it definite – **THE**	**NOTES**
			c) the noun indicates an object made of a certain material ❑ There is **a tin** of sardines on the table.
Abstract Nouns *Anger, beauty, curiosity, freedom, happiness, love, modesty, pride, respect, time, work, strength, weather*, etc.	❑ While there is **life** there is **hope**. ❑ What fine **weather** we're having! ❑ They walked in **silence** along the path.	❑ Last night I heard "Carmen" and enjoyed **the music**. ❑ We enjoyed **the stillness** of the air. ❑ He was in a state of **the greatest excitement**.	*A/an* is used with uncountable abstract nouns when modified by a descriptive attribute which brings out a special aspect: ❑ **A hot anger** rose in his chest. ❑ She had **a natural grace** that was very attractive. ❑ There was a **wonderful happiness** everywhere.

EXERCISES



1 (A, B) Say what articles you would use for the nouns in these situations.

1. У киоска «Соки» вы говорите: «Я, пожалуй, возьму *томатный сок*».
2. Вы заинтересовались, из чего изготавливают строительные блоки. «Из *цемента* и *камня*», – ответили вам.
3. При выходе из магазина вас спросили, есть ли там апельсины.
4. Сосед интересуется, из чего сделан ваш сервант. «По-моему, это *красное дерево*».
5. Расхваливая костюм, вы замечаете: «Не похоже, что это *хлопок*, можно подумать, что это *шерсть*».
6. На просьбу купить мороженое вы отвечаете: «Здесь не продают *мороженое*».
7. Проходя мимо киоска, вы спрашиваете: «Хочешь, я тебе куплю *мороженое*?»
8. «У тебя всё лицо в *яйце*, иди умойся».
9. На завтрак я ем варёное *яйцо* и выпиваю чашку *кофе*.

2 (B) Insert articles or *some* where necessary.

"We shan't have ..... fish," Robin said. 2. "..... fish is very fresh," the waiter assured us. 3. He bought ..... cold beef, and ..... ham, and ..... French bread. 4. There were two bottles of ..... wine, ... plate of ..... oranges with ..... powdered sugar. 5. She made ..... coffee. 6. ..... coffee without ..... bread could never honestly serve as supper. 7. Dave cut himself another slice of ..... cheese. 8. You've caught cold; I saw you shivering and you must have ..... hot milk to drive it out. 9. She did not answer but her face was hard and pale as ..... stone. 10. What ..... wonderful news! 11. Let me give you ..... piece of ..... advice. 12. She served ..... cold meat and cheese. 13. ..... meat we had for lunch last Sunday was very tough. 14. I'm not interested in buying ..... silver or ..... gold.

3 (B, C) Fill in *a/an*, *the*, *some* according to the meaning.

An English Secret

(1)..... tea best made in (2)..... brown china tea pot. First you warm (3)..... pot with (4)..... hot water, which you pour away after (5)..... moment or two. Then put in (6)..... teaspoonful of (7)..... tea for each person and an extra one "for luck". Now pour in (8)..... boiling water and leave (9)..... tea to stand for three to five minutes, before pouring it into fine china cups, with or without (10)..... milk and (11)..... sugar. Philip Sidley is (12)..... tea expert . He believes that (13)..... secret of (14)..... good tea lies in (15)..... quality of (16)..... water you use. Another expert, Jonathan Goodall, does not think (17)..... type of (18)..... water is such (19)..... important aspect. He says (20)..... main thing is to make (21)..... tea immediately after (22)..... water has boiled.

4 (C) Insert articles or *some* where necessary.

1. She hurried in again and found ..... water almost boiled away. 2. Rosa tasted ..... wine. 3. She looked with ..... eager, hungry eyes at ..... bread, and ..... meat, and ..... beer that ..... landlady brought her. 4. She had ..... brown shining hair which hung down on either side of her face. 5. Barber went to ..... bar and ordered ..... coffee, then changed it to ..... brandy because ..... coffee wasn't enough after ..... talk like that. 6. Her face was yellow in colour and her skin resembled ..... leather. 7. The maid brought in ..... pears, ... cold chicken, ... tongue, ... cheese. 8. My heart felt as heavy as ..... lead. 9. I'm going to cut ..... grass in ..... garden. It is ..... hard work but it has to be done.

5 (C) Put in *a/an*, *the* or the zero article.

The Luncheon

"I never eat anything for luncheon," she said. "(1)..... little fish, perhaps. I wonder if they have (2)..... salmon. And unless they have (3)..... caviar. I never mind (4)..... caviar."

For myself I chose (5)..... cheapest dish on (6)..... menu and that was (7)..... mutton chop.



"I think you are unwise to eat (8)..... meat," she said.

Then came the question of (9)..... drink.

"I never drink anything for luncheon, except (10)..... white wine. My doctor won't let me drink anything but (11)..... champagne. And what are you going to drink?"

"(12)..... water."

She ate (13)..... caviar and (14)..... salmon. She talked gaily of (15)..... art, (16)..... literature and (17)..... music.

6 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Вода в реке очень холодная. 2. Вода необходима для жизни. 3. Принеси мне воды, пожалуйста. 4. Снег был глубокий. 5. Очень трудно ходить по глубокому снегу. 6. Чай горячий. 7. Я люблю чай. 8. Положи сахар в чай. 9. Купи лимон к чаю. 10. Лимон полезен. 11. Нарежь лимон. 12. Сок вкусный. 13. Я предпочитаю апельсиновый сок. 14. Сок, которым я тебя угощу, сделала моя мама. 15. Я попросил купить хлеба и масла. 16. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, молока. 17. Молоко необходимо детям. 18. Положите масла в суп. 19. Поставьте масло на стол. 20. Я не пью молоко, я пью чай или кофе. 21. Вчера я купил очень хороший чай и кофе. 22. Кофе я пошлю матери. Она любит кофе. 23. Где масло? Оно на столе. 24. Есть нефть или газ в этом районе? 25. Официант принёс мне мясо и овощи. Я съел овощи, но не стал есть мясо.

7 (B, C) Translate into English.

I

1. Это очень хороший совет. 2. Совет хороший. 3. Ты слышал эти новости? 4. Новости из дома плохие. 5. Он привёз хорошие вести. 6. Такие сведения всегда нужны. 7. Сведения уже посту-

пили? 8. Не стоит трогаться в путь в плохую погоду. 9. Мы не тронемся, пока погода не переменится. 10. Дай деньги мне. Ты ведь их всегда теряешь.

II

1. Это не дружеский совет! 2. Ты любишь такую погоду? 3. Какая была скверная погода! 4. Был чудесный день. 5. Какой неожиданный визит! 6. Это такая неожиданная новость! 7. Он нашел такую хорошую работу! 8. Какая интересная работа! 9. Группа сделала такие успехи! 10. Какой успех имела книга!

8 **(B, C) Dictation-translation.**

1. Погода была такой тёплой, что мы решили поплавать.
2. Какая замечательная сегодня погода.
3. Какие новости?
4. Ты слышал новость?
5. Я ему одолжил (lend) пять фунтов на прошлой неделе. Ты думаешь, он отдаст мне деньги?
6. Джеймс попросил воды и жадно (thirstily) её выпил.
7. Я знаю, что работа, которую я выполнил, это хорошая работа, лучшая в моей жизни.
8. Совет, который он получил от своих друзей, был – отказаться от работы.
9. Они покупают новую мебель.
10. Отец начал резать горячее мясо.
11. Она учила детей работать с бумагой и ножницами.
12. Земля была покрыта свежим снегом.

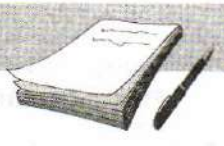
3. Use of Articles with Proper Nouns

3.1 Geographical Names

Geographical Names	NO ARTICLE	The Definite Article THE	NOTES
1. Continents, countries, cities/ towns, villages	*a)* as a rule **Africa, Asia France, London** *b)* **Latin America, Central Asia Petrovka** **BUT:** when modified by a prepositional attribute ❑ **the** village of **Petrovka**	When having a particularizing attribute. ❑ **The Philadelphia** he was born in... ❑ Gone is **the Moscow** of the merchants and aristocrats. ❑ In his book W. Scott described **the England** of the Middle Ages.	the word groups are always used with *the*: **the United States** **the United Kingdom of Great Britain** and also: **the Netherlands** **the Hague** **the Crimea** **the Caucasus**

Geographical Names	NO ARTICLE	The Definite Article THE	NOTES
2. Oceans, rivers, seas, channels/ canals, deserts		**the Pacific** **the Black Sea** **the Neva, the Sahara** **the (English) Channel** **the Suez Canal**	
3. Lakes	**Lake Baikal** **Lake Ontario**	**the Baikal** **the Ontario**	
4. Mountains	▪ peaks: **Elbrus** **Everest**	▪ mountain chains: **the Urals** **the Alps**	
5. Islands	▪ a single island: **Madagascar** **Corfu** **Sicily**	▪ island groups: **the Bermudas** **the British Isles** **the Bahamas**	
6. Regions	**North America** **Latin America** **Central Asia**	**the Middle East** **the Far East** **the north of England** **the south of France**	**BUT:** **western Canada** **southern Spain**
7. Four cardinal points of the compass		**the South,** **the North,** **the West,** **the East**	**BUT:** from **East** to **West** from **North** to **South**

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Write the names of the places below in two columns (A. those with *the*, and B. those without *the*).**

A	B
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

River Thames, Netherlands, Paris, India, Arctic, Alps, Luxembourg, Sahara, Nile, Istanbul, Chile, Sweden, Gobi Desert, Bombay, South China Sea, Hamburg, Pyrenees, Solomon Islands, Algeria, Philippines, Barcelona, Rocky Mountains, People's Republic of Mongolia, Africa.

2 (B, C) Insert articles where necessary.

1. When you are in ..... sky, you see only snow in ..... Arctic or ..... Greenland. You have glimpses of ..... Andes or ..... Pacific.
2. ..... Riviera in ..... Caucasus is the most popular place in summer.
3. ..... Lake Baikal is the deepest lake in the world.
4. ..... Elbrus is the highest peak in ..... Europe.
5. ..... Hague, a city in ..... Netherlands near ..... North Sea, is the seat of the Dutch Government.
6. The home ownership rate in ..... South East of ..... England is higher than in ..... North.
7. ..... Suez Canal was blocked.
8. ..... Sahara is the greatest desert in ..... North Africa, extending from ..... Atlantic Ocean to ..... Nile.
9. ..... Philippines is an archipelago which consists of thousands of islands.
10. ..... West Indies is a chain of islands between ..... North and ..... South America.
11. The surface of ..... Mediterranean is never so blue as that of ..... Adriatic.

3 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Кордильеры находятся в Северной Америке.
2. Берега Рейна очень живописны.
3. Эльбрус – очень красивая гора.
4. Они купили дом в Марлоу, который выходил окнами на Темзу.
5. Средиземное море находится между Европой, Азией и Африкой.
6. Венеция расположена на берегу Адриатического моря.
7. Ливингстон погиб в Центральной Африке.
8. Они любили гулять в Гайд-парке.
9. Она показывала мне фотографию замечательной долины в Баварии.



3.2 Use of Articles in the Names of Places, Buildings, Public Organizations, etc.

Names of Places, Buildings, Public Organizations, etc.	**The Definite Article THE**	**NO ARTICLE**
▪ Historical events	❑ **the** French Revolution	
▪ Public/political organizations	❑ **the** Senate, **the** Houses of Parliament, **the** United Nations, **the** Government	❑ NATO*, Parliament, Congress
▪ Public/historical buildings, churches	❑ **the** Bank of England, **the** Winter Palace, **the** Tower of London	❑ Westminster Abbey, St. Paul's Cathedral, Buckingham Palace
▪ Documents	❑ **the** Constitution	
▪ Parties	❑ **the** Labour Party, **the** Tory	
▪ Names of newspapers and periodicals	❑ **the** Times, **the** Washington Post	❑ (foreign) Pravda, Der Spiegel
▪ Businesses and chains of shops		❑ General Motors, Sony, Shell
▪ Ships, trains, spacecraft	❑ **the** Orient Express, **the** Titanic	❑ Apollo, Challenger

Names of Places, Buildings, Public Organizations, etc.	**The Definite Article THE**	**NO ARTICLE**
▪ Theatres, cinemas	❑ **the** Globe, **the** Bolshoy, **the** Odeon, **the** Arbat	❑ Her Majesty's theatre
▪ Museums	❑ **the** British Museum, **the** Hermitage, **the** Tate Gallery	
▪ Parks		❑ Hyde Park, St. James's Park
▪ Schools, colleges, universities	❑ **the** University **of** London**	❑ Carnegy College, London University, Manchester Grammar School
▪ Restaurants	❑ **the** Cage Royal	❑ Leoni's
▪ Hotels	❑ **the** Hilton	❑ Brown's
▪ Stations and airports		❑ Heathrow, Sheremetyevo
▪ The names of counties, states, streets		❑ Yorkshire, Texas, Oxford, High Street

* If an abbreviation is pronounced as a word, there is no article. (OPEC [əu'pek])

** *The* is used when the two nouns have *of* in between.

EXERCISES



4 **(B, C) Supply *the* or the zero article.**

1. I haven't the least idea how many rooms there are in ..... Ritz (hotel).
2. What's your address? – I live in ..... Montague Road, number 27.
3. I could never afford to stay at hotels like ..... Brown's or ..... Hilton.
4. You can't visit ..... London without seeing ..... Buckingham Palace.
5. We had an early dinner at ..... Leoni's and then went to play at ..... Globe theatre.
6. Go down ..... Oxford Street till you come to ..... Oxford Circus, then turn right.
7. Do you know the song about ..... London Bridge?
8. Look at the percentage of lawyers in ..... Senate.
9. Two famous works of art are recently acquired by ..... Tate Gallery, ... London.
10. He spoke about the role of ..... Labour Party during the election period.
11. And eventually ..... "Queen Elizabeth" was put to sea.
12. The Kings and Queens of England were crowned and buried in ..... Westminster Abbey.
13. There is an interesting article in ..... Times.
14. He never read ..... Pravda.
15. He attended ..... Congress only nine times.
16. Governmental offices line ..... Whitehall and on the right is ..... Downing Street.

5 **(B, C) In each of the following sentences the article *the* has been left out at least once. Read the sentences and mark where *the* should be. The number in brackets tells you how many times *the* should occur.**

1. When we were in London, we stayed at ✓ Royal Hotel in ..... Albert Street near ..... Trafalgar Square. (1) 2. On the first morning we went to ..... British Museum and had lunch at ..... MacDonald's in ..... Church Street. (1) 3. In the evening we went to a pub just off ..... Leisester Square, then we went to a play at ..... National Theatre. (1) 4. Next day we went to ..... – Houses of Parliament and ..... Westminster Abbey and had lunch at ..... Peking Restaurant. (2) 5. We looked in ..... Evening Standard newspaper and found there was a good film at ..... Odeon cinema near ..... Piccadilly Circus. (2)

3.3 Names of Persons

Names of Persons	NO ARTICLE	The Definite Article THE	The Indefinite Article A/AN
1. Names of persons	*a)* as a rule, no article is used: ❑ There was a letter from **Susan** inviting me to a party. *b)* modified by attributes: *old, young, little, dear, poor, honest* ❑ **Young Jolyon** was standing by the piano. ❑ ...she is a widow of **poor George**...	*a)* with a name in the plural to indicate the whole family: ❑ He is very different from the rest of **the Kents**. *b)* with the name modified by a particularizing attribute: ❑ Is he **the Sheldon who is a writer**? ❑ She was no more **the Julia of the first years of their marriage**.	*a)* one member of a family: ❑ I have often wondered if Tim was really **a Burton**. *b)* when names of persons become countable nouns indicating typical features of a well-known name: ❑ Why, you are quite **a Monte Cristo**. ❑ She felt like **an Alice** in Wonderland. *c)* names of persons when meaning *"a certain..."*: ❑ I heard it from a (certain) **Mr. Jagger**.
2. Nouns of relationship	*a)* followed by a proper name: **uncle Jolyon** **aunt Polly** *b)* not followed by a proper name and used only by the members of the family: ❑ She went into the hall: "Is **Mother** back?"	*a)* If other people's relations are meant: ❑ **The son** was as clever as **the father**. *b)* Mind the expressions: ❑ Lomonosov was **the** son of a fisherman. ❑ Becky was **the** daughter of an artist.	
3. Nouns denoting ranks, titles, professions followed by a proper name	*academician* *professor* *doctor* *count* *lord* *colonel* *Mr./Mrs.* Brown	Nouns denoting profession followed by a proper name: ❑ **The painter Warhol** left many fine pictures.	

EXERCISES

6 (C) Insert articles where necessary.

I

1. ..... "Queen Mary" was launched by ..... Queen Mary in 1938.
2. There was a little sentimentality about ..... Forsytes.
3. He is the nearest we have to ..... English Leonardo da Vinci.
4. He has the humour of ..... Chekhov.
5. To feel more comfortable you should have taken ..... Pullman.
6. He predicted the victory of ..... Mrs. Thatcher in the 1979 election.
7. I know very little about him as you do – he is ..... Mr. Tarantino.
8. One of the correspondents handed McCartney the paper and asked, "Are you ..... McCartney who wrote this?"
9. "I'll run to ..... Mother", he said in ..... loud whisper.
10. ..... Tolstoy is my favourite writer.
11. This was made by ..... Fassbinder and Son.

II

1. ..... Willowbys left town as soon as they were married.
2. This wasn't ..... Beatrice she knew.
3. ..... father and ..... daughter appeared at last.
4. ..... professor Keitel is ..... man to whom you'll be responsible for your undergraduate teaching.
5. This Pat wasn't like ..... Pat of his memories.
6. If you are ..... Napoleon, you'll play ..... game of ..... power, if you're ..... Leonardo you'll play for ..... knowledge.
7. Elsie said she would ring up ..... Doctor Hitchcock.
8. ..... poor Edward muttered something but what it was nobody knew.
9. ..... gentle, tender-hearted Amelia sadly was ..... only person to whom Becky could attach herself.
10. I am ..... Mr Keaton to whom you were to come.

7 (C) Translate into English.

1. Вас ждёт какой-то Медников.
2. Она вышла замуж за Кормана, с которым нас познакомили у Кэмеронов.
3. Константиновы поселились здесь два года назад.
4. Она была Клэптон, и, как все Клэптоны, очень умна.
5. Крылова называли русским Лафонтеном.
6. Москва наших дней – это не Москва XIX века.
7. И.В. Мичурин родился в 1855 г. в деревне Долгое, недалеко от Козлова. Мичурины всегда были садовниками.
8. Крым и Кавказ расположены на берегу Чёрного моря.
9. Вам нравится эта картина? Это Шемякин.
10. Про какого Толстого вы говорите? – Про Толстого, который написал роман «Пётр Первый».

8 (B, C) Fill in the gaps in these short dialogues with *a/an*, *the*, zero or *one*.

I

A: You'll never guess who I saw in Covent Garden.
B: Who?
A: Kate Winslet!
B: Not (1)..... Kate Winslet? When?
A: (2)..... evening last weak. I was out for (3)..... evening with (4)..... Smiths, old family friends, and there she was!
B: Wow! She's (5)..... wonderful actress, but she'll never be (6)..... Merilyn Monroe.

II

A: There's (1)..... Graham Potter on (2)..... phone for you. He's phoning because he head about your interest in archery and wants to know if you'd like to become (3)..... FITA member.
B: (4)..... what member?
A: Apparently FITA is (5)..... international archery organisation.
B: I'm still in (6)..... bath. Can you tell him to call back?



4. Special Difficulties in the Use of Articles

4.1 Use of Articles with the Names of Months and Days, Seasons, Meals, Languages, Nouns: *Day, Night, Evening, Morning,* etc.

The Nouns	As a rule, usually **NO ARTICLE**	When modified by a particularizing attribute, situation: **THE**	When modified by a descriptive attribute: **A**	**In Set Expressions**
1. The names of months and days *May, Monday*	**May** is a spring month. I met her on **Monday**.	We'll always remember **the May of 1945**. She came on **the Friday when David was born**.	**A cold May** is a usual thing in St. Petersburg.	
2. The names of seasons *summer, winter*	I like **winter**. It was **summer** when we first came here.	It happened in **the spring of 1930**.	It was **a beautiful spring**. **BUT: no article** *early/late* | *spring winter*	
3. Nouns: *day, night, morning, evening, afternoon*	**Day** is meant for work, **night** for sleep. It was **evening**.	He'll never forget **the day when he met her**. **The night** was warm and beautiful.	I spent a sleepless **night**. **BUT: no article** *early/late* | *morning afternoon*	– ***by*** *day/night;* – ***at*** *night,* ***at*** *dawn/daybreak/sunrise/sunset/noon/night;* – *from morning till night;* – *in* ***the*** *morning (evening, afternoon)*
4. The names of languages *French, German, English*	She knows **French** well.	– **The English of America** differs from **the English of Great Britain**. – **the English language**		What is **the English** for ... ?
5. The names of meals *lunch, dinner, tea*	Did you have **dinner**? **Lunch** is ready.	**The dinner we had today** was very good. **The lunch** was a success.	After **a heavy breakfast** we started for...	*to have breakfast (lunch, dinner, tea, coffee)* **BUT: a meal** **to have a meal**

EXERCISES



1 (B) Insert articles where necessary.

Day, Night, Morning, Evening

1. I paid my first visit to his house on ..... clear February night. 2. It was nearly ..... sundown. 3. ..... night outside seemed very quiet. 4. During ..... evening we played innumerable games of piquet. 5. It was ..... evening and he was walking across the school grounds on his way home. 6. He wondered what hour it was. ..... sun seemed to indicate ..... late morning. 7. ..... morning was cold and sharp and sunny. 8. It is ..... early morning. 9. We are going to have ..... ideal night. 10. ..... night being frosty, we trembled from ..... head to ..... foot. 11. It was early in ..... afternoon. 12. ..... night came and he sent his sadness into his sleep. 13. I was up at six in ..... morning. 14. She has had ..... bad night, probably ..... rather delirious night. 15. Arthur did not pass ..... sleepless night; he slept long and well. 16. It was about ten o'clock at ..... night. 17. ..... fine September afternoon was dying fast. 18. It was ..... morning after Roger had talked to me in ..... Park. 19. On ..... bright January morning ..... telephones kept ringing in my office. 20. I cannot describe to you ..... intense silence of ..... night.

2 (B, C) Insert articles where necessary.

Names of Seasons

1. ..... day had been fine and warm; but at ..... coming on of ..... night, ... air grew cool. 2. All ..... nature was very calm and beautiful. 3. You see, ... winter was ..... very bad time for me, and I really had no money at all to buy ..... bread with. 4. ..... summer drew to ..... end and ..... early autumn. 5. It was ..... lovely evening in ..... spring time of ..... year. 6. It was pretty late in ..... autumn of ..... year. 7. ..... declining sun looked brightly upon ..... little Wiltshire village. 8. There was going to be ..... election soon, we all knew: this was ..... spring of 1955. 9. It was ..... cold fall and ..... wind came down from ..... mountains.

3 (B, C) Insert articles where necessary.

Names of Meals

1. The invitations to (1)..... dinner for sixteen people were sent out. 2. He came in one morning when I was having (2)..... breakfast on (3)..... terrace of (4)..... hotel and introduced himself. 3. I saw to it that he had (5)..... good dinner. 4. He was giving (6)..... lunch on (7)..... following day and at (8)..... end of (9)..... week (10)..... grand dinner. 5. Mr Wayne settled back in his chair, savouring his drink, expecting (11)..... good dinner. 6. (12)..... dinner was very sound. 7. But (13)..... hot bath and (14)..... good dinner fixed him up. 8. They had (15)..... supper in silence. 9. "(16)..... dinner will be ready in (17)..... few minutes," she said. 10. You drink (18)..... water with (19)..... breakfast, (20)..... dinner, and (21)..... supper, and think it is good for you.

4 (B, C) Translate the sentences.

1. Для лета это был очень тёплый вечер. 2. Казалось, что осень в этом году наступит раньше. 3. Была ранняя весна, день был чудесный, и у нас было хорошее настроение. 4. Это был первый день лета. 5. Весна в этом году пришла рано. 6. Она поехала в деревню на лето. 7. В этом году весна была короткой. 8. «Ты не мог бы подождать до зимы?» – спросил Сэм. 9. Зимой и летом мы проводили выходные за городом. 10. Зима заканчивалась, в воздухе пахло весной.

5 (B, C) Fill in the gaps in these short dialogues, using the the nouns and noun phrases from the boxes. Use the article before each gap as a guide.

holiday I'll never forget / horizon / summer of 2001 / summer we spent in Denmark

A: Do you remember the (1).....?
B: Of course! It's a (2)..... . It was the (3)....., wasn't it?
A: That's right. Blue sky to the (4)....., all day, every day!

first Monday after my birthday / future / morning

A: Haven't seen you for ages! When did you start your new job?
B: It was the (1)..... .
A: And how is it going?
B: Really well but the journey is awful in the (2)..... .
A: Do you drive?
B: Yes, but it takes ages. In (3)..... I think I'll take the train.



6 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Утро было холодное и ветреное.
2. Был тёплый летний вечер.
3. Настала ночь, и путешественники решили отдохнуть.
4. Он пишет с утра до ночи.
5. Он переночевал у приятеля.
6. Он провёл бессонную ночь и был очень бледен.
7. Приятно поехать за город в ясный летний день.
8. И днём и ночью он думал об одном.
9. Было прекрасное утро, солнечное и тихое.
10. Было раннее утро, все в доме ещё спали.
11. На дворе (outside) была ночь.
12. Была тёплая летняя ночь.
13. Я думаю, день будет ясным и тёплым.
14. Машины на фабрике работали день и ночь.
15. Я убедил его провести ночь в нашем доме и отдохнуть.
16. Я никогда не забуду вечер, который мы провели в Лондоне.
17. Вечер был холодным и туманным.

4.2 Use of Articles with the Nouns *School/College, Prison/Jail, Bed, Town, Church*

The Nouns	When the nouns lose the concrete meaning and express the purpose for which they serve: **NO ARTICLE**	When the nouns denote concrete objects, the articles are used in accordance with the general rules
School/college university	*to be at school/college/university* *to go to school/college/university* *to leave school/college* ❑ After I **left school** I **went to university.** (as a student) ❑ Why aren't the children **at school** today? (as pupils)	to go *to the school* (the building is meant) to leave *the school* (to leave the building) ❑ Mr. Kelly went to **the school** to meet his daughter's teacher. ❑ Excuse me, where is **the university**, please?
Church	*in church/at church* ❑ Mrs. Kelly goes **to church** on Sundays (for a religious service).	❑ **The church** was built in the 17th century. ❑ There is **a church** in the village.
Prison/jail	to be *in prison* to be *sent to prison/jail* to be *put in prison* ❑ Ken's brother is **in prison** for robbery. ❑ Fred robbed a bank but he was caught and sent **to prison**.	❑ Ken went to **the prison** to visit his brother. ❑ They lived near **a prison**.

The Nouns	When the nouns lose the concrete meaning and express the purpose for which they serve: **NO ARTICLE**	When the nouns denote concrete objects, the articles are used in accordance with the general rules
Bed	to go *to bed* to be *in bed* to stay *in bed* ❑ It's time **to go to bed**. ❑ Is Tom still **in bed**?	❑ Her portrait was on the wall beside **the bed**. ❑ There is a table, six chairs, **a bed** and a cupboard in the room.
Work	to go *to work* to be *at work* to start *work* ❑ Why isn't Ann **at work** today?	❑ I like **the work** I'm doing now. ❑ **A new work** of modern art ❑ **The works** of Shakespeare (products of the intellect or imagination)
Home	to go *home* to come *home* | ***no preposition*** to be *at home* to stay *at home*/to feel *at home* ❑ Will you be **at home** tonight? ❑ Let's **go home**.	Institution or place: ***an*** *orphans home*, ***a*** *nursing home*, ***a*** *maternity home*. Place where an animal or a plant is native: ***the*** *home* of the tiger.
Town	with prepositions: *to/in town* ❑ You can't go **to town** tomorrow. ❑ What are you going to do **in town**? ❑ He spent 20 years **in town**, he is not used to country life (as opposed to the country).	❑ I want to go to **the town** I was born in. ❑ Would you rather live in **a town** or in **the** country? ❑ **The whole town** was talking about it.
Hospital	to go *to hospital* to be *in hospital* ❑ Jack had an accident. He had to go **to hospital**. He is still **in hospital** now.	❑ When Ann was ill, we went to **the hospital** to visit her. (as visitors, we mean a particular hospital)

EXERCISES



7 **(A, B) Add *the* where necessary.**

1. Is he still in ..... bed? 2. Would you like to go to ..... cinema tonight? 3. We visited him in ..... prison about a month ago. 4. Can I go ..... home now? 5. I usually go to ..... bank once a week. 6. Does she like it at ..... university? 7. ..... school is almost falling down. 8. What time do you finish ..... work? 9. ..... bed in this room is too small for me. 10. I don't usually go to ..... church but my parents do. 11. What are you going to study at ..... college? 12. Poor James! He hates being at ..... hospital.

8 **(B, C) Insert articles where necessary.**

Bed, School, Prison, Town

1. Maycomb was ..... old town. 2. Dolores said nothing at all on ..... way to ..... town.3. Before that she had taught history in ..... girls' school. 4. ..... school was not ..... particularly good one. 5. I never knew ..... lawyer yet who didn't threaten to put me in ..... prison sooner or later. 6. In all probability

he was already in ..... town. 7. Among other public buildings in ..... certain town... there is one anciently common to most towns, great or small. ..... workhouse. 8. ..... hospital where Amy worked was in the East End. 9. They went to ..... church every Sunday morning. 10. He told with ..... perfect truth how he had in time been released from ..... prison. 11. You take your man home, Mrs. Douglas, and get him to ..... bed before eleven. 12. I'm going to be out of ..... town for a few days. 13. Unless we can give ..... rector ..... bed, he had nowhere to lay his head this night. 14. Who could be in ..... prison for ..... quarter of ..... century and be prosperous?

9 (B, C) Use *a/an* or *the* to fill in the gaps where necessary.

Young People and University

Mary Williams (17, still at school): I plan to go to [1]..... university when I leave [2]..... school. I'll probably study [3]..... English because I love [4]..... English literature. At [5]..... moment I am very interested in [6]..... poetry of T.S. Eliot. Actually, what I am looking forward to is [7]..... freedom of [8]..... university life. [9]..... school I go to is pretty strict – it is [10]..... boarding school near York.



10 (B, C) Translate the sentences.

1. Хотя было одиннадцать часов, Софья всё ещё была в постели. 2. Стефан сидел на краю кровати и улыбался. 3. Он и мой брат вместе ходили в школу. 4. Когда почти стемнело, он посетил городскую тюрьму. 5. После окончания школы он начал работать в конторе своего отца. 6. Год назад она закончила университет и начала работать в школе в деревне недалеко от Москвы. 7. Эта мысль впервые пришла ко мне, когда я лежал в постели во время бессонной (sleepless) ночи. 8. В деревне есть больница. 9. Мы закончили работу в полночь, мы слишком устали и легли спать даже без ужина. 10. Книги, газеты, журналы лежали на столе, стульях, кровати. 11. Он живёт в одном крыле дома, остальную часть дома он превратил в госпиталь. 12. Утром, как обычно, я пошёл в школу.



A J☺ke

Anyone who has been to **an English public school** will always feel comparatively **at home in prison**.

4.3 Revision

11 (A, B) Where is the definite or indefinite article missing?

Jenny isn't Tom's sister, she is his friend. She lives in [1]..... Apple Street. [2]..... Apple Street is a small street in [3]..... North of [4]..... York. In [5]..... winter she goes to [6]..... school by [7]..... bus, in [8]..... summer she goes to [9]..... school by [10]..... bike.
Jenny goes to [11]..... same school as Tom. Sometimes Tom's father takes them to [12]..... school in [13]..... morning. [14]..... school they go to is [15]..... big school. There are a lot of [16]..... pupils at Jenny's school and not all of them like [17]..... school. But Jenny does; she likes [18]..... school because most of [19]..... teachers she has got are really good. Today she can't go to [20]..... school; she must stay in [21]..... bed but she hasn't got temperature. She has got [22]..... cold and [23]..... bad headache. She feels terrible and she doesn't want to eat anything. She just wants to see [24]..... doctor and stay in [25]..... bed.

12 (B) Choose the correct article or the word *some*.

1. Shall we go to *a/the* cinema tonight? – I'd love to but I've seen *a/the* film. 2. What did you have for *a/(–)* lunch today? – I had *some/a* sandwich in an/the office canteen. 3. The ambulance took *(–)/the* injured people to *the/(–)* hospital. We must go to *(–)/the* hospital to visit them. 4. What *a/(–)* beautiful dress! Did you get it in *a/the* shop in *the/(–)* Broad street. 5. Who is going to open *an/the* exhibition? I heard *(–)/the* Queen is going to honour the event. 6. Danny plays *the/(–)* tennis very well, he plays *the/(–)* guitar well, too. 7. My favorite season is *the/(–)* spring. I'll never forget *a/the* spring of 2000, it was so warm. 8. Have you ever been to *(–)/the* Crimea? – Yes, I always go to *the/(–)* South in summer. 9. I like watching *(–)/the* television. Will you turn on *the/a* television set? 10. Sarah goes to *the/(–)* school. Her father had to go to a/the school to see her teacher. 11. Will you give me *some/the* water, please? I'm so thirsty. – Oh! It's warm! I hate *(–)/the* warm water. 12. To make pancakes, we need *the/some* flour and *(–)/some* milk.

13 (B, C) Correct the mistakes: add, remove or change the articles in these sentences. There is more than one mistake in some sentences.

1. Our first lesson after the lunch is the Geography. .....
2. I first played basketball in USA last summer. .....
3. The Rome is my favourite city in Italy. .....
4. When I leave a university, I want to be the journalist. .....
5. What time does bank open on Fridays? .....
6. I often work at the home. .....
7. This is the expensive ring. .....
8. Whites invited us for the dinner tonight. .....
9. He is a most respected man in the firm. .....

5. Use of Articles in Some Set Expressions

I. SET EXPRESSIONS WITH THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

1. *in a hurry* – второпях
2. *to have a mind to do smth* – иметь желание что-либо сделать, быть склонным
3. *to fly into a passion* – прийти в бешенство
4. *to fly into a fury (rage)* – прийти в ярость
5. *to take a fancy to* – проникнуться симпатией, почувствовать расположение
6. *in a low (loud) voice* – тихо (громко)
7. *a great many* (with countables) – много; *a great deal* (with uncountables) – много
8. *it's a pity* – жаль
9. *it's a shame* – стыдно; жалко
10. *it's a pleasure* – приятно
11. *as a result* – в результате
12. *to have a good time* – хорошо провести время
13. *to be at a loss* – быть в растерянности (недоумении)
14. *at a glance* – сразу, одним взглядом
15. *to tell a lie* – говорить неправду

II. SET EXPRESSIONS WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

1. *it's out of the question* – об этом и речи быть не может
2. *to take the trouble to do smth* – потрудиться
3. *in the original* – в оригинале
4. *to play the piano (the violin, the harp)* – играть на пианино, скрипке, арфе
5. *to keep the house* – сидеть дома, не выходить (*особ.* по болезни)
6. *to keep the bed* – соблюдать постельный режим
7. *on the whole* – в целом
8. *the other day* – на днях
9. *on the one hand* – с одной стороны; *on the other hand* – с другой стороны
10. *to tell the truth* – говорить правду
11. *to be on the safe side* – для верности, на всякий случай
12. *at the bottom/top of* – внизу/вверху

III. SET EXPRESSIONS WITH THE ZERO ARTICLE

1. *out-of-doors* – на дворе, на улице, вне дома
2. *to take to heart* – принимать близко к сердцу
3. *at heart* – в глубине души
4. *to take offence* – обижаться
5. *to give (to get, to ask) permission* – дать (получить, попросить) разрешение
6. *to lose heart* – терять мужество
7. *from morning till night* – с утра до вечера
8. *from head to foot* – с головы до ног
9. *from beginning to end* – с начала до конца
10. *at first sight* – с первого взгляда
11. *by chance* – случайно
12. *by mistake* – по ошибке
13. *for hours* – часами
14. *for ages* – целую вечность
15. *by land, by sea, by air* – сушей, морем, по воздуху
16. *to go to sea* – стать моряком, выходить в море
17. *on deck* – на палубе
18. *on board* – на борту
19. *to keep house* – вести хозяйство
20. *at sunrise (at dawn)* – на рассвете
21. *at sunset* – на закате
22. *at work* – за работой
23. *by name* – по имени
24. *in debt* – в долгу, в долгах
25. *to play football/hockey* – играть в футбол/хоккей

EXERCISES



1 **(C) Insert articles where necessary.**

1. "Are you ..... bad sailor?" she asked. "About as bad as is possible in spite of having been at ..... sea so much." 2. The parcel came by ..... post. 3. On his trip round the world with Fleur he had often put his nose out and watched the dancing on ..... deck. 4. He decided that he would not at ..... present explain to her who he was. 5. I saw ..... good deal of him during ..... war. 6. He has taken her death very much to ..... heart, indeed. 7. She went by ..... coach because it was cheaper. 8. All seemed perfectly at their ease, by no means in ..... hurry. 9. ..... little car in ..... question now stood outside ..... front door. 10. Am I dealing, young people, with ..... case of ..... love at ..... first sight? 11. We've had some tea already on ..... board ..... yacht. 12. Rosa was well aware that she had never taken ..... trouble to get to know Annette. 13. You will go to ..... sea and forget all about me in ..... month. 14. He is beginning to lose ..... heart, they say. 15. She burned like ..... fire from ..... head to ..... foot. 16. I got into conversation with him by ..... chance at ..... concert. 17. She's taken quite ..... fancy to you, Ridgeon. 18. I returned at once and found Ada sitting at ..... work by ..... fireside. 19. Somewhere ..... great many men were singing. 20. It is ..... pity to worry her if she has ..... talent for ..... uneasiness. 21. Behind ..... house was ..... large garden and in summer ..... pupils almost lived out-of-doors. 22. ..... rain had stopped and we went on ..... foot to ..... Ebury Street. 23. They started at ..... dawn and ..... boy I sent with them didn't come back till ..... next day. 24. All of ..... sudden, his face had become stony. 25. Dear, dear! It seems only ..... other day since I took you down to school to Slough!

2 (C) Translate into English.

1. Он всегда говорит очень тихо.
2. На днях я случайно встретила Нину.
3. Если вы так ответите, он придёт в ярость.
4. По правде говоря, я так и не поняла, почему она обиделась.
5. Она читает с утра до ночи.
6. Мы всегда заставали его за работой.
7. Приходите ко мне завтра. – Об этом и речи быть не может, я очень занята.
8. Он даже не потрудился встретить нас на вокзале.
9. Мы уже можем читать Диккенса в оригинале.
10. Мой брат очень хорошо играет на скрипке.
11. Вы по ошибке принесли не тот журнал.
12. Я полагаю, ты сказал мне чистую (bare) правду.
13. Она смотрела налево и направо и говорила тихим голосом.
14. Она вела хозяйство своего овдовевшего брата.
15. Они любили путешествовать морем и пешком.
16. Рада (просто удовольствие) видеть тебя.
17. Он любил играть на флейте (flute).
18. Он был постоянно в долгах.
19. Ему позволили повидаться с нею на несколько минут.
20. Услышав это, он впал в страшную ярость.
21. Я наткнулся на эту книгу совершенно случайно.
22. Он был в растерянности, он не мог соврать.
23. Я могу привести ряд примеров.
24. Во время обеда он по ошибке назвал меня Мэри.

6. TESTS

I

1. Она уже целую вечность ищет работу.
2. Родители купили мне гитару. Гитара была из прекрасного дерева.
3. Вы именно тот самый человек, которого я хочу видеть.
4. Он довольно хороший художник.
5. Знания – это сила.
6. Я только что приготовил суп. Хочешь супа?
7. Была весна. Весна была очень тёплой.
8. Мы никогда не ужинаем, но вчера после театра у нас был лёгкий ужин с друзьями.
9. Напротив нашего дома больница. Я не люблю лежать в больнице.
10. Было уже одиннадцать, а она была ещё в постели.

II

1. Я нашёл на улице котёнка.
2. Это был милый домик. Перед домиком было много роз.
3. Он задал ясный вопрос и ждал такого же ответа.
4. Она была таким хорошим учителем, что все ребята её любили.
5. Он послал нам важную информацию.
6. Принесите воды. Вода в этом пруду очень чистая.
7. Зима в том году началась очень рано.
8. Она трудится с утра до вечера.
9. Когда Аня была больна, её забрали в больницу. Мы часто ходили к ней в больницу.
10. Летом я живу за городом, но по воскресеньям езжу в город.

III

1. В молодости она была красавицей.
2. В нашей школе новая учительница. Что ты думаешь о новой учительнице?
3. Он дал неправильный ответ.
4. Это довольно глупый вопрос.
5. Мне нравится музыка этого композитора.
6. Добавь соли в суп. Соль на полке.
7. Была поздняя осень, а мы ещё жили на даче.
8. Сегодня мы завтракали поздно. Завтрак был как ланч.
9. Сколько людей посещают университет в вашей стране?
10. После работы мой дядя обычно идёт домой.

IV

1. Его попросили произнести речь.
2. На правой стене есть полка. На полке много английских книг.
3. Это правильный ответ на вопрос?
4. Он довольно вежливый человек. Он не мог так поступить.
5. В комнате было много света и воздуха.
6. Дайте мне льда. Сок тёплый.
7. Лето в этом году пришло уже в мае.

THE PRONOUN

We use pronouns instead of nouns.

1. Classification of Pronouns

Pronouns fall under the following groups:

1. **PERSONAL:** *I, he, she, it, we, you, they.*
2. **POSSESSIVE:** *my, his, her, its, our, your, their.*
3. **REFLEXIVE:** *myself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourself (yourselves), themselves.*
4. **RECIPROCAL:** *each other, one another.*
5. **DEMONSTRATIVE:** *this (these), that (those), such, the same.*
6. **INTERROGATIVE:** *who, whose, what, which.*
7. **DEFINING:** *each, every, everybody, everyone, everything, all, either, both, other, another.*
8. **INDEFINITE:** *some, any, somebody, anybody, something, anything, someone, anyone, one.*
9. **NEGATIVE:** *no, none, neither, nobody, no one, nothing.*

1.1 Personal and Possessive Pronouns

Personal pronouns have two cases; there are corresponding possessive pronouns and their absolute forms.

NOMINATIVE	OBJECTIVE	Possessive PRONOUNS	Absolute FORMS
I	*me*	*my*	*mine*
he	*him*	*his*	*his*
she	*her*	*her*	*hers*
it	*it*	*its*	–
you	*you*	*your*	*yours*
we	*us*	*our*	*ours*
they	*them*	*their*	*theirs*

NOTES:

1. We do not have singular and plural forms of *you*. We can say *"You're right"* to someone we do not know at all *(Вы)* or we know very well *(ты)*, to a child or to an adult.

2. We use *it* for things, animals, babies or children.
- There was a baby in the cradle. **It** was sleeping.

If the reference is "affectionate", we use *he*, *she*, *who* for pets and *she* for ships, cars, motorbikes, countries:
- Roger is a good dog. **He** is my best friend.
- Bessie's a fine cow. **She** gives a lot of milk.
- My old car is not fast but **she** does 50 ml to the gallon.
- In 1941, America assumed **her** role as a world power.

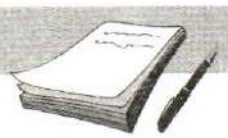
3. We use objective pronouns after *to be*, *than* and in answer to questions *"Who?"*:
- Who is it? – It's **me/him/her/us/them**.
- Who told him? – **Me**/not **me**.
- He is taller than **me/him/her** (= I am).

4. Possessive pronouns are dependent. They must go in front of nouns:
- He is **my** son.
- Is it **your** name?
- The cat drank **its** milk.

5. Absolute forms stand on their own or they can be used in such constructions as *"a friend of mine"*, *"that car of yours"*:
- This book is **mine**.
- That brother **of yours** is always in trouble.
- That music **of hers** drives me crazy.

6. Possessive pronouns are often used before the names of body parts, clothing, things belonging to a person, etc. In this case they are not translated into Russian:
- He rose and held out **his** hand to help **his** father up.
- The girl dropped **her** handkerchief and he picked it up.
- He always puts **his** hands into **his** pockets.

EXERCISES



1 (A) Fill in the blanks with personal pronouns.

Model: I see a girl, I see *her*.

1. I see a teacher, I see ..... . 2. Please read this letter, read ..... . 3. I know the boy, I know ..... . 4. I'm glad to meet both Tom and Ann, I'm glad to meet ..... . 5. Give me the book, give ..... to me. 6. I don't like Ann's brother, I don't like ..... . 7. This task was given to you and to me, it was given to ..... .

2 (A, B) Fill in the blanks with personal pronouns.

1. Do you listen to modern music? – Yes, I listen to ..... all the time. ..... think ..... 's fantastic.
2. Do your friends play tennis? – Yes, ... play ..... all the time. ..... think .....'s the best game.
3. Does Ann like playing the piano? – Oh, yes. ..... enjoys ..... very much. ..... says ..... relaxes ..... .
4. Do you know Mr. Davis? – Yes, ... know ..... very well. ..... lives next door to ..... .
5. Did you like this play? – No, ... didn't like ..... very much. ..... think .....'s too dull.
6. Do you like your neighbours? – Yes, ... like ....'re nice people.

3 (A) Answer the questions, using *my – mine*, *her – hers*, etc.

Model: This book belongs to me.
– This is *my* book. The book is *mine*.

1. Do these shoes belong to him?
– .....

2. Will this new flat belong to them?
– .....
3. This computer doesn't belong to us.
– .....
4. These books belong to me.
– .....
5. Do these things belong to him or to her?
– .....

4 (A, B) Fill in the blanks with missing possessive pronouns.

1. This doesn't look like ..... book, it must be ..... . 2. Tell him not to forget ..... ticket, she mustn't forget ..... , either. 3. Tell me, isn't that ..... girl-friend over there? 4. I see that he has lost ..... pencil, perhaps you can lend him ..... . 5. He has come to see me. ..... father and ..... are school friends. 6. This is ..... work, I did it without any help at all.

5 (B) Re-word the following sentences. Pay attention to the indefinite article before nouns in the singular.

Models: *a)* He is *my* cousin. ⇨ He is a cousin *of mine*.
b) They are *our* friends. ⇨ They are friends *of ours*.

1. She is their relative.
– ..... .
2. He's her friend.
– ..... .
3. We are your former students.
– ..... .
4. She is his niece.
– ..... .
5. I am your colleague.
– ..... .
6. They are her pupils.
– ..... .
7. She is our neighbour.
– ..... .
8. He is her former school-friend.
– ..... .
9. I am his student.
– ..... .

6 (B, C) Choose the correct form of the pronouns in italics.

1. It may be *our/ours* dictionaries. 2. He has not read a line of *your/yours*. How can he criticise *your/yours* poems? 3. His composition is much more interesting than *your/yours* or *my/mine*. 4. *Their/theirs* knowledge of the subject is not much superior to *our/ours*. 5. I'm afraid they will take *her/hers* advice, not *your/yours*. 6. All *our/ours* clothes were extremely dirty and *my/mine* especially so. 7. Will you help me to sort out the things? I cannot tell which are *your/yours* and which are *my/mine*. 8. Mind *your/yours* own business and I'll mind *my/mine*. 9. I looked at *her/hers* and at no other from that moment on. 10. My sister likes much sugar in *her/hers* tea but I like little in *my/mine*. "Who can drink tea as sweet as *your/yours*?" I wonder.

7 (B, C) Translate into English, paying attention to the words in italics.

1. Машина мистера Брауна в гараже, а *наша* около дома. 2. Вчера они взяли *наши* журналы и оставили нам *свои*. 3. Этот чемодан не *мой*, это *их*. 4. *Её* родители живут в центре города, а *его* – на окраине. 5. Я знаю *ваш* адрес, но я не знаю *их* адрес. 6. Это *моё* мнение, я вижу, оно отличается от *твоего*. 7. Это *ваша* записная книжка, а это *его*, но где же *моя*? 8. Он, должно быть, перепутал ключи и взял ключ соседа вместо *своего*. 9. После всего, что произошло, мы не могли верить ни одному *её* слову. 10. *Твой* билет на столе, а *её* билет – в сумке. 11. Построена новая дорога; *её* длина более тысячи километров.

J☺kes

* * *

– **My** husband puts **his** money in the bank.
– What does **your** husband do with **his**?
– He puts **it** in oil.
– What a stupid thing to do! Who wants oily money!

* * *

– Miss, **I** can't find **my** shoes anywhere.
– There's one pair left outside the classroom. Are **you** sure **they** aren't **yours**?
– Yes, **I**'m sure. **Mine** had snow on **them**.

1.2 Reflexive Pronouns

Myself/Himself/Herself/Itself/Ourselves/ Yourself (Yourselves)/Themselves

We often use reflexive pronouns with these verbs: *amuse/blame/cut/dry/enjoy/hurt/introduce*:

- ❑ I **enjoyed myself** very much at the party.
- ❑ We **amused ourselves** playing football on the beach.
- ❑ May I have a piece of cake? – Yes. **Help youself** to the cake and to the jam, please.

We can use reflexive pronouns after prepositions:

- ❑ Look **after yourself**! Take care **of yourself**.
- ❑ She lives **by herself** (= alone). She made the dress **by herself** (= without help).

We do not use *myself*, etc. after *feel/relax/ concentrate/wash/dress/shave/behave*:

- ❑ I **feel** great after having a swim.
- ❑ You must try and **concentrate**.
- ❑ I got up, **washed**, **shaved** and **dressed** quickly.

BUT: ❑ Wash/dress/shave **yourself**! – Помойся/ оденься/побрейся!

- ❑ Behave **yourself**! – Веди себя прилично!

COMPARE:

...selves *(себя)*

- ❑ Tom and Ann stood in front of the mirror and looked at **themselves**. (Tom looked at Tom, Ann looked at Ann.)

each other/one another *(друг друга)*

- ❑ Tom and Ann stood in front of the mirror and looked at **each other** (**one another**). (Tom looked at Ann and Ann looked at Tom.)

"Each other" generally implies only two, *"one another"* – two or more.

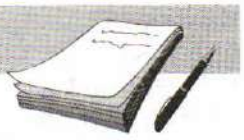
Remember the following set expressions meaning ***alone***:

on my (her/his/its/our/your/their) own

by | ***myself/yourself/himself/itself*** (singular) ***ourselves/yourselves/themselves*** (plural)

- ❑ I like living **on my own/by myself**.
- ❑ Did you go on holidays **on your own/by yourself**?
- ❑ Learner-drivers are not allowed to drive **on their own/by themselves**.

EXERCISES



8 (A) Extend the statements following the example given in the model.

Model: The children like to cook dinner.
– They sometimes do it *themselves*.

1. I never ask my mother to buy me clothes.
– ..... .
2. My sister likes to make cakes.
– ..... .
3. The boys built this boat.
– ..... .
4. We want to repair the bicycle.
– ..... .
5. I like to clean my flat.
– ..... .
6. Nobody helped him correct the mistake.
– ..... .

9 (A, B) Insert a reflexive pronoun where necessary.

1. He shaves ..... every other day. 2. Go and wash ..... . 3. She washed ..... quickly and began to cook breakfast. 4. He likes his wife to dress ..... well. 5. Behave ..... ! 6. You can't behave ..... . 7. The child fell and hurt ..... badly. 8. The book was ever so interesting that I could not tear ..... from it. 9. Be careful with the knife, you may cut ..... . 10. I tried to make ..... agreeable. 11. He thinks too much of ..... . 12. Sit down and make ..... at home. 13. I am sure they will succeed in the aim they've put before ..... . 14. We established ..... in a hotel. 15. She looked in the mirror and could not recognize ..... .

10 (B) Complete these sentences, using *myself/yourself*, etc.

Model: Here is the money, go and buy *yourself* an ice-cream.

1. Be careful! That pan is very hot. Don't burn ..... . 2. I want to know you better. Tell me about ..... . 3. It isn't her fault. She really shouldn't blame ..... . 4. Did you make the dress ..... ? 5. The boy was lucky when he fell down the stairs. He didn't hurt ..... . 6. Tom cut ..... while he was shaving this morning. 7. He spends most of his time alone so it's not surprising that he talks to ..... . 8. Don't worry about us. We can look after ..... .

11 (B) In these sentences you have to write down *-selves* or *each other/one another*.

Model: Look at *yourself*. Your face is dirty.
How long have Tom and Ann known *each other*?

1. At Christmas friends often give ..... presents. 2. I enjoyed ..... very much at the party. 3. Jack and Jill are very happy together. They love ..... very much. 4. She has no reason to blame ..... . 5. I think this poor dog has hurt ..... . 6. Nora and I don't see ..... very often these days.

12 (B) Complete these sentences, using *on my own/by myself*, etc.

Model: Learner-drivers are not allowed to drive *on their own*.

1. She hated being in the house on ..... . She was afraid to be alone. 2. The box was too heavy for me to lift by ..... . 3. You can't expect them to do everything by ..... . 4. Very young children should not be allowed to go swimming by ..... . 5. Mothers shouldn't leave children in the house on ..... . 6. Do you like working with other people or do you prefer working by ..... ? 7. If the rest of you can't help, we'll have to do it on ..... .

13 (B) Finish these sentences, using reflexive pronouns.

Model: If you want a job done well, do it ..... .
If you want a job done well, do it *yourself*.

1. The chairman announced the news ..... .
2. I never do anything until I have checked everything

..... . 3. She says John broke the vase but really she did it ..... . 4. Next year we shall live all by ..... . 5. Did the boys build this boat ..... ? 6. You cannot leave the baby in the house all by ..... . 7. We built most of the house ..... . 8. The girl stood at the fire, warming ..... . 9. He made a mistake, then he corrected ..... . 10. They went swimming but they didn't enjoy ..... . It was too cold. 11. Pat, stop laughing and behave ..... . 12. I hope you didn't hurt ..... .

14 **(B, C) Fill in the appropriate personal, possessive or reflexive pronouns.**



The Visitor

John, an old friend of (1)..... wanted to visit (2)..... . After (3)..... plane had landed in Frankfurt, (4)..... telephoned (5)..... from the airport to tell (6)..... that (7)..... had arrived. I had no time to fetch (8)..... . So I told him (9)..... new address and said that I had left the key under the door-mat for (10)..... . Two hours later John called me from the flat. (11)..... said that he had made (12)..... some chicken and that he had helped (13)..... to some orange-juice. He told me that he had not been able to find the key under the door-mat and that he had climbed in through the living-room window near the apple-tree.

I started to laugh, "Oh John, there isn't an apple-tree in front of (14)..... flat but there is one in front of my neighbour's."

15 **(B, C) Translate into English, using reflexive pronouns.**

1. Он увидел это сам. 2. Она живёт одна. 3. Вы поставите себя в очень неловкое положение, если расскажете об этом. 4. Он на себя не похож (look) сегодня. 5. Будьте осторожны, вы можете ушибиться. 6. Он был совершенно один в комнате. 7. Мы представились как корреспонденты вечерней газеты. 8. Вы сделали это совершенно самостоятельно? 9. Когда мы приехали, сам губернатор встретил нас в аэропорту. 10. Через несколько минут он снова был самим собой. 11. Ведите себя как следует. 12. Они слишком много о себе думают. 13. Вы можете разделить это между собой. 14. Я очень горжусь собой, что нашёл выход из этой трудной ситуации.

1.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

This (These)/That (Those)/Such/the Same

Singular	Plural
this	***these***
that	***those***

Both *this* and *that* can refer to persons or things:

- I like **that** fellow.
- Other people were anxious to get **this** soap at this price.

This/that and *it* correspond to the Russian demonstrative pronoun *«это»*. *This/that* is usually accompanied by a pointing gesture while *it* is used when such gesture is inappropriate:

- What is **this/that**? – **This/that/it** is a computer.
- What are **these/those**? – **These/those/they** are dictionaries.

That can be used to avoid repeating of a preceding noun in the singular, *those* can be used to avoid repeating of a preceding noun in the plural:

- The butter that I bought yesterday is better than **that** I bought today. *(that = the butter)*
- At our company there are a few machines similar to **those** described in this journal. *(those = the machines)*

This is used to introduce onself on the phone or to introduce people:

- Hello! **This** is Helen.
- Mr. Smith, **this** is Mrs. Sutton.

The pronoun *same* is always used with the definite article:

- Martin's Sunday was **the same** as before.
- We were in **the same** class.

EXERCISES



16 **(A, B) Insert *this*, *that*, *these*, *those* or *it*.**

1. All ..... is very interesting. 2. Who is ..... man over there? 3. I'm really busy ..... days. 4. Try one of ..... . 5. What is this? – ..... is a computer. 6. ..... are the TV sets of the latest type. 7. Suddenly, I felt something soft and warm on my knees. ..... was a cat. 8. Who were you talking with? – ..... was a friend of mine. 9. In ..... days, people didn't have cars.

17 **(B) Substitute *that* or *those* for the repeated noun.**

Model: There are no richer art museums in this country than *the museums* of St. Petersburg. – There are no richer art museums in this country than *those* of St. Petersburg.

1. The pictures painted by Rembrandt can't be compared to *the pictures* painted by Rubens. 2. The language in this textbook is easier than *the language* in the original novels. 3. The invisible riches lying in the Urals may be still greater than *the riches* discovered. 4. The stories written by O. Henry are as full of life as *the stories* written by Mark Twain. 5. Natural sugar is of higher quality than *the sugar* produced artificially.

18 **(B) Use one of the demonstrative pronouns in the following sentences.**

1. ..... is cooking oil, I always buy ..... one. 2. She gave me the ..... present as a year before. 3. What do you want me to do with ..... thing? 4. He was one of ..... men whom all women like. 5. Do you see ..... bushes on the other side of the river? 6. Let us leave ..... subject. 7. He continued to frequent the ..... cafe as when he had stayed at the hotel. 8. I believe you but there are ..... who wouldn't. 9. ..... is what I thought last year. 10. ..... is what I want you to do. 11. I have divided the books into two piles. ..... are to be kept. ..... are to be sold. 12. Our house was next to ..... of June's.

19 **(B) Translate into English paying attention to the use of personal and demonstrative pronouns as the subject.**

1. Чьи это брюки? – Это мои брюки. 2. Я принёс вам важные новости. Это самые последние новости. 3. Кто-то постучал в дверь. Это был мой сосед. 4. Вы помните его? Какой это был мужественный человек! 5. Это были самые красивые розы, какие я когда-либо видел. 6. Мама, это мой преподаватель, миссис Джоунз. 7. У нас было прекрасное детство. В те времена (дни) всё было по-другому. 8. Посмотрите, кто это? – Это один из наших студентов. 9. Я где-то видел этого человека. – Это один из наших спортсменов. – Да, теперь я узнаю, это он.

1.4 Interrogative Pronouns

Who/Whose/What/Which/Whom

They are used to form special questions.

Who refers to human beings, *what* usually refers to things (it may be used to refer to people when inquiring about their occupation):

- **Who** was that? – It was my friend. / It was Tom Waits.
- **What** are you looking for? – I'm looking for a pen.
- **What** is he? – A painter.

Which has a selective meaning («который из»). It may refer to persons or things:

- **Which** of us does he mean?
- **Which** side do you prefer?
- **Which** would you like? This or that?

MIND THE DIFFERENCE:

Who is he? – This question inquires about the name of some person.
What is he? – about the occupation of the person.
Which is he? – about some particular person out of the group.

EXERCISES



20 (B) Insert interrogative pronouns.

1. "..... of the two of them is right?" he asked me. 2. ..... do we call the sea between England and France? 3. ..... are your intentions for the summer? 4. ..... would you like to see as your assistant? 5. ..... turn is it now? 6. ..... is speaking? 7. ..... can I do for you? 8. ..... is he? Is he a lawyer? 9. ..... are you talking about? 10. ..... problem are you working at now? 11. We serve coffee and tea. ..... would you like? 12. ..... of you did it? 13. ..... did you meet at the theatre? 14. ..... is that man over there? 15. ..... do you usually do at week-ends? 16. ..... bag is this? Yours or John's? 17. ..... do you prefer: tea or coffee? 18. ..... sort of films do you like best? 19. ..... does the avocado taste like? 20. ..... city do you live in: London or Manchester?

21 (B) Translate into English.

1. Кто знает этого человека? 2. Кто из вас разбил эту вазу? 3. Кого из них вы спрашивали об этом? 4. Кого вы ждёте здесь? 5. Кому вы дали свой словарь? 6. Какой это цвет? 7. На каком этаже вы живёте? 8. Что вы купили? 9. Какой месяц самый короткий? 10. О чем вы разговаривали, когда я вас встретил? 11. Кто этот высокий человек?

A J☺ke

In a very crowded supermarket a young man pushed a woman accidentally. Before he had time to apologise, the woman glared at him and shouted angrily:

– Excuse me, young man. But **who** do you think you are pushing?

– I've no idea, replied the young man. **What**'s your name?

1.5 Defining Pronouns

All/Each/Every/Everybody/Everything/Everyone/ Either/Both/Other/Another

ALL/EVERYBODY/EVERYTHING/EVERYONE

All (все, весь, вся, всё) is a generalizing pronoun, it refers to a group of things or persons as a whole. It can be used as a subject, predicative, object, attribute:

- ...when **all** was said and done...
- He loved me, that's **all**.
- And Martin forgot **all** about it.
- ...if **all** the doors are closed...

Everybody/everyone (каждый, всякий, все) refer to all the members of a group of persons or taken one by one.

Everything (всё) may refer to things in the same meaning.

Все

with countable nouns plural ***all (the) ...***	with countable nouns singular ***(the) whole ...***	subject/object ***everybody, everyone, everything***
All the books have been sold out. **All plants** require water.	Have you read **the whole book?** He didn't say a word **the whole evening**.	**Everybody (everyone)** reads this book. Ann knows **everyone** in her street. He thinks that he knows **everything**. **Everything** went wrong.

NOTES:

1. We use *all (весь, вся, всё)* with uncountable nouns:

- He spends **all his free time** in the library.
- I've got **all the information** I want.

2. We use *all* in the expression *all about*:

- He told us **all about** his trip.

3. We can use *all day/the whole day (morning, evening, night, week)* meaning the complete day:

all day (not "all the day")
all week (not "all the week")
all morning, the whole morning

4. *All* is often used after pronouns *we, you, they* and the verb *to be*:

- **We all** know it. We **are all** glad to see you.
- **They all** went there. They **are all** there.

Mind the place of *all* in the following constructions:

- We have **all** read his article.
- We shall **all** be here tonight.
- We must **all** go there.

5. Remember the expressions:

we all = all of us ***they all = all of them***
you all = all of you

- **You** must **all** go there. = **All of you** must go there.
- **They all** work here. = **All of them** work here.
  «Мы все трое». ⇨ **All three of us.**
  «Они все четверо». ⇨ **All four of them.**

Всё, что — ***all (that)*** / ***everything (that)***

- That's **all** I want.
- I told him **everything** I knew.

6. We use a singular verb after *every/everyone/everybody/everything*:

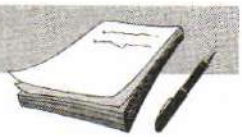
- **Every** seat in the theatre **was** taken.
- **Everybody looks** tired today.
- **Everything** he said **was** true.

7. We use *every* to say how often something happens:

Every	*day*
	week
	Monday
	ten minutes
	three days

- We go out **every Friday**.
- The buses run **every ten minutes**.
- Ann goes to see her mother **every three weeks**.

EXERCISES



22 **(B) Complete these sentences with *all*, *everything*, *everyone/everybody*, *the whole*.**

Model: I can't lend you any money. *All* I've got is a pound and I need that.
I can't stand him. He disagrees with *everything* I say.
She worked from morning till night. She worked *the whole* day.

1. She is very kind. ..... likes her. 2. They did ..... they could to help us. ..... was very kind to us. 3. Jill doesn't do any of the housework. Her husband does ..... . 4. Janet told me ..... about her trip to Spain. Spain is a wonderful country. 5. ..... has got their faults. Nobody is perfect. 6. He read the book from beginning to end. He read ..... book. 7. ..... in our family plays the piano. The ..... family likes music. 8. It rained from the beginning of the week to the end. It rained ..... week. 9. ..... in the team played well. 10. We've redecorated ..... rooms of the house. ..... house looks new.

23 **(B) Say how often something happens. Use *every* with these periods of time: *leap year*, *three hours*, *five minutes*, *half an hour*, *ten minutes*, *year*.**

Model: The Olympic Games take place *every four years.*

1. We have twenty-nine days in February .... 2. Tom is ill in bed. He has to take the medicine ..... . 3. There's a good bus service to the centre. The buses run .... 4. Old grandfather clock strikes ..... . 5. We live near a busy airport. A plane flies over the house ..... . 6. You should have your car serviced ....

24 **(B) Translate into English.**

1. Все мы играем в школе в футбол и волейбол. 2. Они обыскали весь дом. 3. Весь зал бурно аплодировал. 4. Он, по-видимому, выдумал всю эту историю с начала до конца. 5. Все стены зала были увешаны старинным оружием. 6. У нас есть все основания не соглашаться с этим. 7. Все присутствующие должны расписаться здесь. 8. Всё здание было разрушено взрывом. 9. Я сдаю свою одежду в химчистку раз в два месяца.

BOTH *(оба)*

- **Both** (the) **brothers** live in Moscow.
- **Both my daughters** are married.

We/you/they both *– мы/вы/они оба*

- **They both** graduated from Cambridge.

We both = both of us

- **We both** know it. = **Both of us** know it.
- **You** must **both** go there. = **Both of you** must go there.
- **They both** work here. = **Both of them** work here.

Both is not used in negative sentences ⇨ ***Neither***

- *Они оба* не пришли на собрание.
  – **Neither of them** came to the meeting.
- *Мы оба* не знали об этом.
  – **Neither of us** knew about it.

There is a conjunction

Both ... and | *как .., так и...* / *и .., и*

- **Both** Peter **and** Mary were there.
- The coat is **both** good **and** cheap.

EITHER/NEITHER

Either has three meanings:

a) *each of the two (один из двух, любой из двух),*
b) *one or the other (тот или другой),*
c) *both (и тот и другой, каждый из двух).*

- You may go by **either** road.
  Можете идти по *той или другой* дороге *(любой из двух).*
- Here are two dictionaries, you may take **either of them**.
  Вот два словаря, вы можете взять *любой (из них).*
- There were chairs on **either side** of the table.
  С той и другой (с каждой) стороны стола стояли стулья.

Neither *(ни тот, ни другой)*:

- **Neither** of the statements is true.
  Ни то, ни другое заявление не является правильным.

There are also conjunctions: ***either ... or*** *(или ... или ...)*, ***neither ... nor ...*** *(ни .., ни ...)*:

- He is **either** in Odessa **or** in Kiev now.
- **Neither** my wife **nor** I liked the story.

EACH/EVERY *(каждый, всякий)*

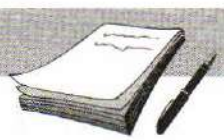
Each is used for a limited number (usually two) of persons or things:

- **Each** student in our group has this book.
  У *каждого* студента нашей группы есть эта книга.

We use ***every*** when we mean an unlimited number (usually three or more) of things or persons:

- I see him **every** day.
- **Every** university has a library.

EXERCISES



25 **(B) Complete these sentences with *both/neither/either*, using *of* if necessary.**

1. Ed and Jim were ..... big men. 2. These are very gloomy rooms. I'm afraid ..... will suit me. 3. There are two ways to the city centre. You can go along the footpath by the river or you can go along the main road. You can go ..... way. 4. ..... these pullovers are very nice. The problem was that she liked ..... them. She didn't know which one to choose. 5. ..... my parents is English. My father is Polish and my mother is Italian. 6. "Which of the two newspapers would you like?" – "Oh, ... will do." 7. "Is today the 18th or the 19th?" – "..... . It's the 20th." 8. By that time ..... his sisters had got married. 9. When the boat started to sink, we were really frightened because ..... us could swim.

26 (B) Make sentences with *both ... and ...*, *neither ... nor ...* and *either ... or ...*, using the words in brackets.

Model: We could not communicate with him. He spoke ..... (English/Russian). – We could not communicate with him. He spoke *neither English nor Russian*.

1. We didn't like the hotel. It was ..... (clean/comfortable). 2. I didn't like the film. It was ..... (very boring/long). 3. I couldn't remember his name. He was ..... (Robert/Richard). 4. I wasn't able to go on holiday that year. I had ..... (time/money). 5. We have tickets for Saturday or Sunday concert. Which do you prefer? – I don't care, I can go ..... (Saturday/Sunday). 6. He is an ideal husband. He ..... (smoke/drink).

27 (B, C) Use *both*, *either* or *neither* in the following sentences.

1. There are oak trees on ..... bank of the river. 2. The man held the axe in ..... hands. 3. The veranda stretched on ..... side of the house. 4. The first apple-pie of the season was on the table and a large dish of purple grapes. Muriel was too angry to touch ..... . 5. I could hear them ..... but saw ..... . 6. ..... of the two could sing. 7. ..... of them was of the same opinion. 8. ..... his legs were broken in the accident. 9. You may take ..... of the two dictionaries but not ..... of them. 10. She had brown shining hair which hung down on ..... sides of her face. 11. "What are you going to have, orange juice or Coke?" – "..... , I'm not thirsty." 12. "Which job are you going to take?" – "I'm afraid ....." 13. Nick and Tom are ..... my friends. But ..... is in the town now. 14. " ..... the jars, the big one and the small one, are empty. You can take ..... of them." – "I'm afraid ..... will do."

28 (B) Insert *every/each* or *either*.

1. ..... day he comes here and ..... time he asks me the same questions. 2. There was a huge building on ..... side of the square, ... having a massive arched gate. 3. There were huge buildings on ..... side of the street and ..... had rows of balconies as its only decoration. 4. Which would you prefer, the Webster or the Oxford dictionary? – ..... will do. Thank you. 5. He shook hands and had a few minutes' talk with ..... of us.

29 (B) Translate into English.

1. Они ехали по широкой дороге, по обе стороны которой росли деревья. 2. Оба, я и мой брат, были молоды и сильны. 3. Передай это сообщение папе или маме, боюсь, я не увижу ни того, ни другого. 4. Ты не можешь взять с собой оба моих фотоаппарата. 5. Они оба служат в армии. 6. В каждом конце коридора была дверь. 7. Каждую минуту мальчик выглядывал в окно. 8. Я помню каждый дом на нашей улице. 9. Ни тот, ни другой не смог прийти, но у каждого была серьёзная причина. 10. Они осматривали каждый экспонат в музее с большим интересом. 11. В гостинице есть две свободные комнаты, можете занять любую. 12. Какую мне взять книгу, я не читал ни ту, ни другую? – Возьмите любую, обе интересные.

J☺kes

* * *

– Doctor, **everybody** ignores me.
– Next, please!

* * *

What a strange world! **Everybody** wants to go to Heaven, but nobody wants to die.

OTHER/ANOTHER

Other *(другой, в смысле «остальной»)* can be used both in the singular and in the plural. In the singular it refers to particular things.

Other

"The second of the two":

- The twins are so much alike that people can't tell one from **the other**.
- One of them is mine, **the other** is my sister's.

The others (pl) when the reference is to two or more:

- Six of them are mine, **the others** are John's.
- Where are **the others?**

One after the other – *один за другим.*
The other day – *на днях, недавно.*

Another *(другой, ещё один).* It is used only in the singular. It does not refer to anything in particular.

Another

A different (one) – «другой»:

- Come **another** day.
- We can do that **another** time.

An additional (one) – «ещё один»:

- We need **another** day to finish this.
- Can you give me **another** cup of tea?

A similar (one) – «второй»:

- This young man is very clever, he may be **another** Edison.

One way or another – *так или иначе.*

EXERCISES



30 (B) Choose the correct form of the pronouns in the sentences below.

1. The shoes do not fit me. Will you kindly give me *another/the other* pair? 2. They haven't met for twenty years, neither of them has seen even a photo of *another/the other*. 3. I read the novels by O. Henry one after *another/the other*. 4. I met him at the club *other/the other* night. 5. I see only five copies here. Where are *the other/the others* ones? 6. I have lost my pen. I must buy *another/other* one. 7. They are going to get punished one way or *another/other*.

31 (B, C) Use *other(s)* or *another*.

1. Without ..... word he left the room. 2. It was not a large garden but it was long and narrow. John and I walked right to ..... end of it in silence. 3. Would you like ..... cup of tea? 4. Then I read the novels of William Burroughs one after ..... . 5. ..... day I made an epigram. I hope you'll like it. 6. Why are you alone? Where are ..... ? 7. The bar was kept by two very nice girls, one was American and ..... English. 8. The house on ..... side of the river was built of grey stone. 9. He was always somewhat indifferent to the feelings of ..... .

32 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Пришлось ехать через поле: другой дороги не было. 2. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, другой номер этого журнала. 3. Если вам не нравится этот

костюм, я могу вам предложить другой. 4. Собака ела мясо, но отказывалась от другой пищи. 5. Они были похожи как две капли воды, только один был немного выше другого. 6. В комнату вошли двое. Одного я никогда не видел, лицо другого показалось мне знакомым. 7. Это тупой (dull) нож, дайте мне другой. 8. Когда увидишь остальных, напомни им о нашем уговоре. 9. Другого пути не было. 10. Нам не пришлось долго ждать, машины подходили одна за другой.

1.6 Indefinite and Negative Pronouns

Uses of *Some, Any, No, None, One*

When used with nouns of material, *some/any* have the meaning of indefinite quantity (*«некоторое количество»*, *«немного»*, *«сколько-нибудь»*) but usually they are not translated into Russian:

- Give me **some** water, please. – Дайте мне воды, пожалуйста.
- Have you bought **any** sugar? – Купили ли вы сахар?
- There isn't **any** milk in the fridge. – В холодильнике нет молока.

Before countable nouns in the plural *some/any* are translated as *«несколько»*, *«какие-то»*, *«какие-нибудь»*:

- He asked me **some** questions. – Он задал мне несколько вопросов.
- Have you got **any** interesting books? – Есть у вас (какие-нибудь) интересные книги?
- I saw **some** strange people near your house. – Я видел каких-то незнакомых людей у вашего дома.

Some/Any or Zero in Relation to Quantity

Countable Nouns

The plural of *a/an* is normally *any* or *some* when we are referring to quantity:

- Is there **a** *present* for the children? ⇨ Are there **any** *presents* for the children?
- Here is **a** *present* for the children. ⇨ Here are **some** *presents* for the children.

Sometimes we do not use *any* and *some*, even if we are referring to quantity.

The meaning is exactly the same, though we generally prefer to use *any* or *some*:

- Are there **any** *presents* for the children? ⇨ Are there *presents* for the children?
- Here are **some** *presents* for the children. ⇨ Here are *presents* for the children.

Uncountable Nouns

In the same way, we sometimes do not use *any* and *some* when referring to quantity:

- "Is there **any** *milk* in the fridge?" is the same as "Is there *milk* in the fridge?"
- "There is **some** *milk* in the fridge," is the same as "There's *milk* in the fridge."

Basic Uses of *Some* and *Any*

Some	***Any***
1. Affirmatives: I want **some** *apples*. 2. Questions expecting a positive answer, for example, offers and requests: Would you like **some** *coffee*? May I have **some** *tea*?	1. Negatives: I don't want **any** *apples*. 2. Uncertain questions: Is there **any** ... ? 3. With *"hardly"*, etc.: There's **hardly any** *ink*. 4. With *"at all"*: I haven't **any** *idea* **at all**. 5. After *"if"*: Buy some pears **if** you see **any**.

Other Uses of *Some* and *Any*

Some and *any* also have special uses:

- I haven't seen Tom for **some** years. (= I haven't seen Tom for several years.)
- **Any** fool knows the answer to a question like that.
  (= "It doesn't matter who" – «любой, всякий»).

Not ... Any, No and *None*

1. We can use *no* instead of *not any*. We use an affirmative verb with *no*:

- There *aren't* **any** buses after midnight. ⇨ There *are* **no** buses after midnight.
- There *isn't* **any** milk. ⇨ There's **no** milk.

2. We can also use *no* in place of *not a/an*:

- I'm **not an** expert. ⇨ I'm **no** expert.

3. *None* stands on its own as a pronoun:

- We have **no** bananas. We have **none**.

None of and *Neither of*

The negative of "*All the girls* left early" is "**None of** *the girls* left early."
(«Все девочки...») *(«Никто из девочек...»)*

The negative of "*Both girls* left early" is "**Neither of** *the girls* left early."
(«Обе девочки...») *(«Ни одна из...»)*

- I've seen **none of** them. ⇨ I've seen **no one / nobody**.

EXERCISES



33 **(A) Put in *some* or *any* only where possible.**

1. The natives eat ..... meat raw. 2. There wasn't ..... meat in the fridge. 3. ..... life is full of surprises. 4. There isn't ..... life in that girl. 5. Buy ..... bread and cheese for the picnic. 6. We can't do without ..... bread. 7. ..... spices are bad for you. 8. Put ..... spices into the soup. 9. I like ..... biscuits and ..... sweets. 10. I bought ..... biscuits for tea. 11. I don't like ..... boiled cabbage. 12. Would you like ..... boiled cabbage? 13. ..... money has to be earned. 14. Will you lend me ..... money? 15. There isn't ..... news of him. 16. I hate ..... bad news.

34 (B) Fill in *some* or *any*.

1. Go and ask him for ..... more paper. I haven't ..... in my desk. 2. Have you got ..... sugar? – I expect we have. Yes, there's ..... sugar in this bowl. 3. Can I give the child ..... fruit? 4. ..... people just don't know how to mind their own business. 5. Were there ..... objections? 6. I think we've run out of sugar. Is there ..... sugar in that bowl? – No, there isn't. 7. ..... doctor will tell you that it is harmful for you. 8. What book shall I bring you? – ..... you like. 9. There aren't ..... buses after 12.30. 10. There isn't ..... explanation for this.

35 (B) Choose the correct pronoun.

1. You can find him *some/any/no* time between six and nine. 2. Is there *any/no* other choice? 3. He can answer *some/any/no* question on the subject. 4. I can only answer *some/any/no* questions on the subject. 5. She has a perfect complexion and *some/any* colour becomes her. 6. Can we have *any/some* milk? 7. Is *any/some* additional proof necessary? 8. Will you have *any/no/some* more tea? – Thank you. 9. They understood each other without *no/some/any* words. 10. What material do you need? – *Some/any* that is available. 11. Don't bother about the colour. You can buy her a blouse of *any/some* colour. 12. If you have *any/some/no* news, call me back.

36 (B, C) Supply *some*, *any* or *no* for the following sentences.

1. I don't want ..... money. 2. She helped borrow ..... more money. 3. There is hardly ..... place in this house where we can talk alone. 4. I am ..... accountant but these figures are wrong. 5. My mother hoped that perhaps the school had ..... funds to give me a grant. 6. Don't let us have ..... nonsense about it. 7. I don't think there is ..... milk left in the jug. 8. You have ..... fine flowers in your garden. 9. He wants ..... more pudding. You can take it away. 10. ..... time ago I read his story in a magazine.

37 (B, C) Choose between *no one* and *none* to use in the following sentences.

1. I invited all of them but ..... has come. 2. ..... of us is perfect; we all make mistakes. 3. ..... of us knew how ill she was. 4. That is ..... of your business. 5. ..... of us were sure of the facts. 6. He could find ..... in the village who could tell him what had gone wrong. 7. ..... was able to understand what he meant. 8. We had ..... to give us accurate information, let alone advice. 9. Philip slowly mounted the stairs. ..... of his family was yet up. 10. ..... answered his question, silence fell in the room. 11. He asked for food but his mother said there was ..... .

38 (B) Translate into English.

I

1. Дайте мне хлеба (мела, чернил). 2. Налейте мне воды (молока, кофе, супа). 3. Хотите кофе (чая, молока, торта)? 4. У вас есть какие-нибудь интересные английские книги? 5. Любой студент знает это. 6. Возьмите любую книгу (которая вам нравится). 7. Приходите в любое время (которое вас устраивает). 8. В стакане есть вода. Вы хотите воды? 9. В кувшине есть молоко. Будете пить молоко?

II

1. Нет смысла волноваться об этом. 2. У меня нет чая, но есть кофе. 3. У нас здесь нет рек, но есть несколько озёр. 4. Я хочу почитать газеты. У тебя есть какие-нибудь газеты? 5. Есть ли какая-нибудь разница между ними? – Я не вижу никакой разницы. – Думаю, разницы нет. 6. Такси никогда нет, когда тебе нужно такси. 7. Никто из вас не знает, как много он работал в молодости.

Uses of *Some/Any/No*-compounds

1. We use *some*-compounds in:
- affirmative sentences:
  - ❑ I met **someone** you know last night.
- questions expecting "yes":
  - ❑ Was there **something** you wanted?
- offers and requests:
  - ❑ Would you like **something** to drink?

2. We use *any*-compounds in:
- negative sentences:
  - ❑ There isn't **anyone** here who can help you.
- questions when we are doubtful about the answer:
  - ❑ Is there **anyone** here who's a doctor?

3. We use *no*-compounds when the verb is affirmative:
- ❑ There's **no one** here. *(= not anyone)*

I *have got* **no** time.	⇨	I *haven't got* **any** time.
I've seen **nobody/no one**.	⇨	I *haven't seen* **anybody/anyone**.
I've bought **none** of them.	⇨	I *haven't bought* **any** of them.
I've done **nothing** today.	⇨	I *haven't done* **anything** today.
I've been **nowhere** today.	⇨	I *haven't been* **anywhere** today.

We often use *anyone* to mean *"it doesn't matter who"*, especially after *it*.

The traditional rule is to use masculine pronouns with *anyone*, *everyone*, *no one*, etc., unless the context is definitely female (e.g., a girls' school).

According to this rule, you would address an audience of both sexes like this:
- ❑ If **anyone** wants to leave early, *he* can ask for permission.

But you would address an audience of females like this:
- ❑ "If **anyone** wants to leave early," the headmistress said, "*she* can ask for permission."

EXERCISES



39 **Fill in *somebody/someone, anybody/anyone, nobody/no one, something, anything, nothing* or *somewhere/anywhere/nowhere*.**

I. (A)

1. I want to tell you ..... . 2. Is there ..... in the basket? – No, it's empty. 3. Can ..... translate these sentences? 4. I've prepared ..... for dinner which you'll like very much. 5. I'm afraid he knows ..... about it. 6. Would you like ..... to start with before you order the main course? 7. I know ..... who can help you. 8. I'm sure ..... had taken your bag. 9. Is there ..... here who can speak Japanese? 10. There was ..... in the room. It was dark. 11. Do you live ..... near Jim? 12. They slept in the park because they didn't have ..... to stay.

II. (B, C)

1. At the party you'll see ..... you haven't met yet. 2. The town was still the same when I returned. ..... has changed. 3. Charlie had never seen ..... like that place except in films. 4. I think there is ..... wrong with my watch. 5. There is a "No Parking" area. ..... who parks their car here will be fined. 6. The door-bell rang but there was ..... there. 7. With special tourist bus ticket you can go ..... you like. 8. If ..... delays you, you must let me know. 9. Where did you go for your holiday? – ..... . I stayed at home.

40 (B, C)

1. Work in pairs and ask each other about the following problems, using the pattern and prompts below: *headache*, *toothache*, *a cold*, *sore feet*, *an upset stomach*, *a bad back*, etc.

Model: *Can you recommend something for a sore throat? – Yes, I always get some lemon sweets from the chemist's.*

Prompts: *ointment, aspirin, tablet, vitamines.*



.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

2. Work in pairs again and discuss what kind of things you never eat and what kind of things you love eating, using *anything*, the prompts below and your own ideas:

Model: *I never eat anything with sugar in it. – I'll eat anything sweet.*



Prompts: *salt, spice, nuts.*

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

41 (A, B) Translate the sentences into English.

a) 1. Я хочу вам что-то сказать. 2. Дайте мне что-нибудь почитать. 3. Он что-то знает об этом. 4. Дать вам что-нибудь почитать? 5. Я ничего вам не могу сказать об этом. 6. На столе ничего нет. 7. Она что-нибудь знает об этом? 8. Боюсь, он ничего не знает об этом.

b) 1. В комнате кто-то есть. 2. Кто-то стучится в дверь. 3. Спроси кого-нибудь об этом. 4. Есть здесь кто-нибудь? 5. Может ли кто-нибудь перевести эти предложения? 6. Должен ли кто-нибудь прийти к вам сегодня вечером?

42 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Почему ты заглядываешь под кровать? Ты что-то потерял? 2. Ещё немного кофе? 3. Фильм действительно замечательный (great). Ты можешь спросить любого, кто его видел. 4. Вы можете дать мне информацию о том, какие достопримечательности стоит осмотреть в этом городе? 5. Впустите всякого, кто позвонит в дверь. 6. Если кто-нибудь будет спрашивать об этом, не говорите ничего. 7. Если кто-то видел этот несчастный случай, позвоните в полицию. 8. В комнате никого не было, она была абсолютно пуста. 9. Я не могла приготовить омлет, потому что у меня не было яиц. 10. Я ничего не сказала. Ни слова. 11. Авария казалось (seem) была серьёзной, но никто не пострадал (injure). 12. Мы сделали несколько фотографий, но ни одна из них не удалась (be good). 13. Я нигде не могу найти свои часы. 14. В комнате стояла полная тишина, никто ничего не говорил. 15. Мы хотели пойти в ресторан, но не могли, потому что ни у кого из нас не было денег.

43 (B, C) Give a free translation of the story, paying special attention to the words in italics.

В школе *все* изучали предметы, которые им не очень удавались (be good at). *Никто* не может отрицать (deny), что *некоторые* предметы для них труднее, чем *остальные*. Я никогда не встречал *никого*, *кто* был бы так умён, что знал *все* предметы одинаково хорошо (equally well). Хуже всего у меня обстояли дела с химией (weakest subject). Я учил наизусть формулы и задачи, но *ничего* не могло улучшить (improve) мои знания. «Пора (it's time) тебе делать *что-то* с этим предметом», – говорил мой учитель. Перед последним экзаменом я постарался. Я получил «5», но далее следовало краткое пояснение: «3» – за старания (efforts), остальное за знания».

One

ONE AND *YOU*

We use *one* as a pronoun meaning *"everyone/anyone"*, to refer to *"people in general"* only when we want to be *formal*. In everyday speech, we use *you* in an informal way to mean *"everyone/anyone"*. Compare:

- ❑ A: Is it easy to go camping in this country?
  B: Yes, but **one** isn't allowed to camp where **one** likes. **One** can only use camp-sites.
  or: Yes, but **you** aren't allowed to camp where **you** like. **You** can only use camp-sites.

Do not use *one*, *one's* (= your) and *oneself* (= yourself) unless you want to sound formal.

EXERCISE



44 **(B) Rewrite these paragraphs so that they sound "informal". Use *you*. Translate into Russian.**

I

The moment one gets into the mountains, one is on one's own. One has to rely on oneself for everything. This means one has to carry all one's own food, though of course one can get pure drinking water from mountain streams. One won't see any local people for days at a time so one can't get help if one's lost. One has to do one's best to find sheltered places to spend the night.

The moment you get into the mountains
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....



II

As One Grows Older

As one grows older, one becomes more silent. In one's youth one feels an intense fellowship with other people, one wants to throw oneself in their arms and one feels that they will receive one. One wants to open oneself to them. One's life seems to overflow into the lives of others and become one with theirs as the waters of rivers become one in the sea.

But gradually the power one felt of doing all this leaves one; a barrier rises up between oneself and one's fellows, and one realizes that they are strangers to one.

(from Writer's Notebook
by W. Somerset Maugham)

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

ONE and *ONES* in place of countable nouns

1. We cannot use an adjective on its own in place of a singular countable noun. We must use a noun after an adjective or we must use *one* to avoid repeating the noun:

- ❑ Don't use that cloth. Use this clean **one**. (Not "Use this clean.")

2. We use *ones* to avoid repeating a plural countable noun:

- ❑ I don't want to wear my old shoes. I want to wear my new **ones**. (Not "Wear my new.")

3. We can use *one* and *ones* for people as well as things:

- ❑ Do you know *John Smith/Jane Smith*? – Is *he/she* the **one** who phoned last night?
- ❑ Do you know *the Smiths*? – Are *they* the **ones** who used to live in this house?

4. We do not use *one* in place of an uncountable noun. We repeat the noun or use no noun at all:

- ❑ Don't use that *milk*. Use this *fresh milk*. Or: Use *this fresh*. (Not "this fresh one.")

WHICH ONE(S)? – THIS/THAT (ONE)

1. We use *one/ones* to refer to people and things after *"Which?"*, *this/that* and adjectives:

- ❑ **Which one** would you like? **This one** or **that one**? – I'd like the **large one**/the **red one**.

We can also say:

- ❑ **Which** would you like? **This** or **that**?

2. We sometimes omit *one* and *ones* after superlatives and in short answers:

- ❑ Which one/ones would you like? – I'd like the **best (one/ones)**.
- ❑ Which one/ones would you like? – **The large/ the red.**

3. We usually avoid *ones* after *these/those*:

- ❑ I want **these**. I want **those**. (Not "these ones.")

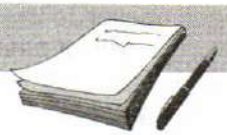
4. We normally use *one/ones* after *this/that/these/ those + adjective*:

- ❑ I want **this/that white one**. I want **these/ those white ones**.

5. We cannot omit *one/ones* in structures like:

- ❑ Which woman? – **The one** in the green dress.

EXERCISES



45 (A, B) Use *one* or *ones* instead of the nouns in italics.

1. This copy is torn. Bring me another *copy*. 2. I've read all the books, may I take the other *books*, too? 3. These cherries are sour. Have your got sweeter *cherries*? 4. He's fond of nearly all games but tennis and football are *the games* he likes best. 5. Which is my *glass* here? – Take *the glass* nearest to you. 6. Galileo showed that the small weight dropped as quickly as the large *weight*. 7. There are two vacant tables here. Which *table* will you take?

46 (A, B) Fill in *one* or *ones* only where necessary.

1. I simply took this book because it was the first ..... I chanced to see. 2. Which actresses did you like? – The ..... who appeared in Act I. 3. I've had enough soup. Give me no more ..... . 4. Which computer did you use? – The ..... that is in your office. 5. We shouldn't have taken this mobile phone. It seems to me that ..... is better. 6. Pour away that dirty water and get some clean ..... . 7. Which jeans are you going to buy? – The most expensive ..... . 8. If I were you, I'd sell that old car and buy a new ..... . 9. Two of those coats suit you very well. – Which ..... ?

47 (B) Translate the sentences.

1. Какие перчатки ты хочешь купить? – Те, что на витрине. 2. Какой пуловер ты предпочитаешь? Красный или синий? 3. Пожалуйста, передай мне ту тарелку. – Какую? 4. Я хочу проверить (test-drive) одну из этих машин. – Эту или ту? 5. У тебя есть новая сумка? – Да, чёрная. 6. Дай мне, пожалуйста, нож. – Какой? – Тот, длинный. 7. Принеси мне книгу с моего стола. – Какую? – Новый роман. 8. Мне нужен словарь, тот, что стоит на полке.

1.7 *Much/Many, Little/Few, a Little/a Few*

Много

Much + *uncountable nouns*:
- I haven't got **much** time.
- Is there **much** milk in the fridge?

Many + *plural countable nouns*:
- He has lived here for **many** years.
- Have you got **many** problems?

A lot of/plenty of + *plural countable nouns* / + *uncountable nouns*
- I've got **a lot of** books.
- I know old Mr. Hopper has **a lot of** money.
- There are **plenty of** eggs in the house.
- We have **plenty of** time to get to the station.

Basic Uses of *Much/Many*

1. In negative statements:
   - There *isn't* **much** space in this flat.
   - There *aren't* **many** trees in the garden.
2. In questions:
   - Is there **much** demand for silk stockings?
   - Will there be **many** guests at the party?
3. In formal statements (= a lot of):
   - **Much** money is spent on defence.
   - **Many** teachers retire early.
4. In time references:
   - I've lived here for **many** years.
5. With *as ... as ...* :
   - Take **as much as** you like.
6. *Not much/not many* to begin a sentence:
   - **Not many** know about this.
   - **Not much** happens around here in winter.

Basic Uses of *a Lot of (Lots of)*

1. In the affirmative:
   - She spends **a lot of** money on clothes.
   - There were such **a lot of** people in the shops.
2. In negative statements for emphasis:
   - I haven't got **a lot of** time for people like him.

Мало

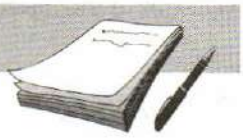
Little + *uncountable nouns*:
- He gained **little** advantage from the scheme.
- I have very **little** time for reading.

Few + *plural countable nouns*:
- He has got very **few** friends.
- There seem to be very **few** people in this area.

Basic Uses of *Little/Few, a Little/a Few*

1. ***A little*** means *"some but not much", "a small quantity" («немного»)*:
   - He knows **a little** French.
   - **A little** care would have prevented the accident.
2. ***A few*** – *"a small number" («несколько»)*:
   - We are going away for **a few** days.
3. ***Little/few*** are negative *(= hardly any, «мало»)*;
   a little/a few are positive *(= some, «несколько», «немного»)*.

EXERCISES



48 (B) Choose between *much* and *many*, *(a) little* and *(a) few* to use in the following sentences.

1. Last week there was so ..... rain that I was not able to go out. 2. He knows ..... but the ..... he knows he knows well. 3. He is a man of ..... words. 4. ..... is spoken about it but ..... believe it. 5. The forces were unequal, they were ..... we were ..... . 6. He has very ..... knowledge of the matter. 7. There isn't ..... harm in it. 8. ..... was said but ..... was done. 9. Very ..... people know about it. 10. My sister spends so ..... money on her clothes that she has none left for holidays. 11. Say ..... and do ..... . 12. Adeline had slept ..... last night and she had a headache. 13. ..... heard about the book but ..... read it. 14. Nowadays he was very busy and he saw ..... of his old friends.

49 (B) Make the following sentences affirmative and replace *many* and *much* by suitable expressions.

1. Is there *much* water in the kettle? – *There is plenty of water in the kettle.* 2. Mary hasn't got *much* work to do today. – ..... . 3. I drove along the edge of the sea. There were not *many* people about. – ..... . 4. Do you have *much* time this week? – ..... . 5. There isn't *much* I can do to help you. – ..... . 6. Nick doesn't smoke *much*. – ..... . 7. There isn't *much* time to catch the train. – ..... . 8. I didn't get *much* to eat when I had dinner with the Greens. – ..... . 9. I haven't *much* time for watching TV. – ..... . 10. There isn't *much* snow in Moscow this winter. – ..... .

50 (B, C) Translate the words in brackets.

What Sort of Shopper are You?

Love it or hate it, we all go shopping. But there are different types of shoppers. Abby Edwards asked around.

Melanie, 22, dancer

I am an addict – I can spend (много) ..... money! When I have the cash, I'm out there and I buy (много) ..... , though I have (много) ..... things to wear. I definitely have difficulty walking past "sale" things.



Brenda, 40, office manager

My husband does most of the food shopping because I know (мало) ..... about cooking. I don't spend (много) ..... time shopping for clothes, either. I have (много) ..... nice things to wear to the office. I am a reluctant shopper so when I do splash out I tend to feel (немного) ..... guilty and I rarely tell my husband how (много) ..... I've spent. My husband always complains that I buy (много) ..... things for myself and (мало) ..... things for him so I always knock down the price (немного) ..... .

Martha, 48, housewife

I hate shopping. I go shopping for clothes (несколько) ..... times a year and I don't need (много) ..... things. I stay at home most of the time. I don't buy (много) ..... food, either, we have a cow and (несколько) ..... hens and I grow most of the vegetables and fruits in our garden.

51 (B) While visiting her parents for Christmas, Ann made some notes for her friend Marsha. When Marsha read them, she found seven mistakes. Correct them.

DECEMBER, 24 Wednesday

Christmas is going to be fun: much people are coming, the house will be crowded. There will be a little young men. I'm happy, I love dancing, I'm sure to get many presents tomorrow.

DECEMBER, 25 Thursday

It was a wonderful morning. I got much presents under the firtree: many from my parents and grandparents and a little from my friends.
The Christmas dinner was delicious: much cakes and sweets. I didn't eat many, I wanted to dance much.
The evening was fun. I danced a lot with all the boys.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

52 (B) Translate into English.

1. В бутылке есть немного воды. 2. Кто из них переводит много статей с русского на английский? 3. Сколько иностранных языков вы собираетесь учить? 4. Извините, у меня мало времени, и я не могу долго разговаривать с вами. 5. Мы будем обедать через несколько минут. 6. В комнате много света. 7. Вы пригласили много гостей? 8. Ты увидишь его через несколько дней. 9. У вас сегодня много или мало работы? 10. В субботу в магазинах много народа. 11. У нас сегодня было много посетителей. 12. Он зарабатывал мало денег и не мог жить в большом городе. 13. Я прочёл много книг по этому вопросу. 14. Ты знаешь много французских слов? 15. Сейчас в университете мало студентов, сейчас каникулы.

2. TESTS

I

1. Ты можешь обойтись (do without) без моей помощи, а без её помощи не можешь.
2. Куда ты положил деньги? – Они в кошельке.
3. По обе стороны улицы стояли большие дома.
4. Он внимательно осмотрел каждую комнату. Все они были большими и уютными.
5. Можно мне взять словарь? – Вы можете взять любой из двух, но не оба. – Я возьму либо тот, либо этот словарь.
6. Все люди любят праздники. Все хотят праздника.
7. Некоторые из нас поехали поездом, а другие полетели самолётом.
8. Казалось, они были одни и смотрели только друг на друга.
9. Мы дошли до другого конца коридора и остановились.
10. Я не ем много фруктов. Сколько яблок вы принесли?
11. В сахарнице очень мало сахара.
12. Вчера в парке было мало детей.

II

1. Его сочинение гораздо интереснее, чем твоё или моё.
2. Мой брат бреется через день. Пойди побрейся.
3. Съешь ещё мороженое. – Спасибо, мне больше не надо. Я больше не хочу.
4. В гостинице есть две свободные комнаты. Можете занять любую.
5. Обе руки у него были заняты. Он нёс по чемодану в каждой руке.
6. Он пролил всё молоко (spill).
7. Все сведения поступили вовремя. Теперь все знают об этом.
8. Всё здание было разрушено.
9. Оба говорили по-английски, они хорошо понимали друг друга.
10. Театр находится на другой стороне улицы.
11. Подождите, пожалуйста, я должен надеть другой пиджак.
12. Я купил всего несколько книг, но потратил много денег.

III

1. Ты не умеешь вести себя. Веди себя прилично!
2. Я принёс вам важные новости. Это самые последние новости.
3. Есть ли какая-нибудь разница между ними? – Я не вижу разницы и думаю, что её нет.
4. Я помню каждый дом на нашей улице.
5. Он возложил (put) всю вину на меня.
6. Все кричали. Никто друг друга не слушал.
7. В комнате было пять человек. Все с удивлением смотрели друг на друга.
8. Весь город перестраивается.
9. Другие люди рассказывали мне ту же историю.
10. Поспеши, у нас очень мало времени.
11. Возьмите, пожалуйста, этот стул и принесите мне другой.
12. У него мало друзей в Москве, но у него много друзей в родном городе.

THE ADJECTIVE

The adjective is a word expressing a quality of a substance.

1. Formation of Adjectives

Adjectives are divided into:

Simple	Derivative	Compound
good	*beautiful*	*snow-white*
red	*foolish*	*deaf-mute*
new	*hopeless*	*cold-hearted*
	unkind	*four-wheeled*

Adjectives Formed with Suffixes:

Many adjectives related to verbs or nouns have a characteristic ending (or suffix):

- ❑ We enjoyed the party. – The party was very **enjoyable**.

-able (capable of being)	*manageable*
-ible (like *-able*)	*permissible*
-ful (full of)	*boastful*
-ic	*energetic*
-ive (capable of being)	*attractive*
-ant, -ent	*hesitant*
-(i)an (historical period, etc.)	*Victorian*
-ish (having the quality of)	*foolish, reddish*
-ly, -y (having this quality)	*friendly, snowy*
-ous	*humorous*
-al	*occasional*
-en (made of; similar to)	*wooden, golden*

Also, note **-ing** forms used as adjectives: *running water*.

Adjectives Formed with Prefixes:

A prefix (e.g. *im-*) added to an adjective generally has a negative effect:

- ❑ I think it's *possible* to solve the problem. I think it's **impossible** to solve the problem.

un-	*uncooked, unimaginable*
in-	*incapable, inhuman*
il-	*illegal, illegible*
im-	*immoral, impractical*
dis-	*dishonest, disagreeable*
ir-	*irresponsible, irregular*

Note **pre-** *(pre-war)* and **hyper-** *(hyperactive)*, which do not create opposites but modify the meaning of the word in some way.

Compound Adjectives of Measurement, etc.:

"a twenty-year-old man"

1. We combine numbers with nouns in the singular to form compound adjectives with hyphens: *a twenty-year-old man* (not "a twenty-years-old man").
We should prefer compounds of this kind to phrases with *of*: *a man of twenty years*.

2. Compound adjectives of this kind can refer to:

- age: *a three-year-old building*
- volume: *a two-litre car*
- length: *a twelve-inch ruler*
- price: *a $50 dress (a fifty-dollar dress)*
- weight: *a five-kilo bag*
- area: *a fifty-acre farm*
- duration: *a four-hour meeting*
- depth: *a six-foot hole*
- time/distance: *a ten-minute walk*

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Form adjectives from the given words with the help of suffixes.**

Model: *care* ⇨ *careful* ⇨ *careless*
wool ⇨ *woollen*

Use – ....., frost – ....., rain – .....,
rock – ....., fog – ....., snow – .....,
ice – ....., sun – ....., noise – .....,
speed – ....., nature – ....., trouble – .....,
hope – ....., art – ....., truth – .....,
possibility – ....., beauty – ....., insist – .....,
significance – ....., shame – .....

2 **(A, B) Form adjectives from the given words with the help of prefixes and explain changes in meaning.**

Model: *urban* ⇨ *interurban*
practical ⇨ *impractical*

Acceptable – ....., national – ....., continuous – .....,
possible – ....., legal – ....., appointing – .....,
complete – ....., married – ....., accurate – .....,
able – ....., bearable – ....., available – .....,
believable – ....., conscious – .....

3 (A, B) Write the adjectives of nationalities according to the models.

Model: *Russia* ⇨ *Russian*
England ⇨ *English*

Europe – ....., America – ....., Asia – .....,
Scandinavia – ....., Australia – ....., Poland – .....,
Finland – ....., Spain – ....., India – .....,
Canada – ....., Egypt – ....., Iran – .....,
Chile – ....., Sweden – ....., Rumania – .....,
Italy – .....

4 (B) Complete the following sentences with the adjectives made by adding suffixes to the nouns in italics.

Model: The story is full of *humour*. I've rarely read anything that's so *humorous*.

1. I *enjoyed* his company greatly. It was just ..... . 2. This firm *produced* a lot in recent years. This firm has been very ..... in recent years. 3. Bob hardly escaped the *danger*. The situation was very ..... . 4. I don't know where you find all that *energy*. You're tremendously ..... . 5. I found the book easy and pleasant *to read*. It's ..... . 6. I don't know how to describe the colour of the sky. It's almost *red*, sort of ..... . 7. I've never met anyone who *boasts* as he does. He's extremely ..... . 8. What level of radiation can be *permitted*? How much radiation is ..... . 9. I'm *attracted* by this man. I find him very ..... . 10. The *sun* was shining brightly. It was a ..... day. 11. Olaf hoped to earn *fame* for his book. Did he hope to become ..... ? 12. The soldier was given a medal for his *courage*. He was ..... .

5 (B) Write the negative adjective forms.

Model: The coast line is not *regular* in shape. It is quite *irregular*.

1. This arrangement isn't strictly *legal*. Some people would regard it as ..... . 2. It is not *possible*. Don't ask me to do the ..... . 3. Such a situation is barely *imaginable*. It's quite ..... . 4. Bob's not very *capable*. He's ..... of making sound decisions. 5. I doubt she is *literate*. She can't read or write. She is an ..... person. 6. This scheme isn't very *practical*. In fact, it's quite ..... . 7. I can't trust him. He is not always *honest*. He is said to be ..... .

6 (B) Rewrite the following sentences, using compound adjectives.

Model: The car costs *twenty thousand dollars*. It is a *twenty-thousand-dollar* car.

1. The woman is *seventy years old*. She's ..... . 2. The trip lasted *two days*. It was ..... . 3. The farm is *eighty hectares*. It's ..... . 4. The baby is *three months old*. It is a ..... . 5. The parcel weighs *two kilos*. It's ..... . 6. The jar contains *three litres*. It's ..... . 7. I live not far from the University. It takes me *10 minutes to walk* there. It is ..... . 8. The fence is *twenty miles*. It's ..... . 9. The road is *seventy kilometres*. It's ..... .

A J☺ke

– How far is your house from the station?
– Only **a ten-minute walk** if you run.

2. Word Order: Adjective + Noun

Sometimes we use two or more adjectives together:

- There was a *beautiful large round wooden* table in the kitchen.

Adjectives like *new/large/round/wooden* are fact adjectives. They give us objective information about age, size, colour, etc. Adjectives like *nice/beautiful* are opinion adjectives. They tell us what someone thinks of something.

Opinion Adjectives Go before Fact Adjectives

Opinion	Fact	Noun
nice	*sunny*	*day*
delicious	*hot*	*soup*
an intelligent	*young*	*man*
beautiful	*large round wooden*	*table*

We Put Fact Adjectives in this Order:

How big? ⇨	How old? ⇨	What colour? ⇨	Where from? ⇨	What is it made of? ⇨	NOUN
a tall	*young*	–	–	–	*man*
big	–	*blue*	–	–	*eyes*
a small	–	*black*	–	*plastic*	*bag*
a large	*old*	–	*French*	–	*armchair*
–	*an old*	–	*Russian*	–	*song*

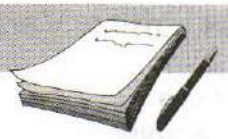
1. Materials (nouns) behave like adjectives when we use them to form compound nouns:
   - *a shirt* (noun) made of *cotton* (noun) ⇨ *a cotton shirt*.
2. We can have three-word compound nouns. "Material" comes before "purpose" or "use":
   - *a clock* made of *plastic* used in the *kitchen* ⇨ *a plastic kitchen clock*.

   Adjectives go before nouns.
   We cannot separate a compound noun by an adjective:
   - *a good plastic kitchen clock.*

SUMMARY:

quality/ opinion	size	age	shape	colour	where from? или Past Participle	Past Participle или where from?	material	purpose	noun
beautiful/ valuable	*large*	*old*	*round*	*brown*	*French/ handmade*	*handmade/ French*	*wooden*	*kitchen*	*table*

EXERCISES



1 **(A, B) Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct position.**

Model: a modern house (attractive) – *an attractive modern house*

1. a young girl (pretty) – .....;
2. a handsome man (young) – .....;
3. a kitchen cupboard (oak) – .....;
4. brown bag (leather) – .....;
5. an American film (old) – .....;
6. big eyes (blue) – .....;
7. a hot bath (nice) – .....;
8. a new dress (cotton) – .....;
9. a red car (old/little) – .....;
10. a gold watch (small/antique) – .....;
11. a little village (old/lovely) – .....;
12. an old mansion (stone/English) – ..... .

2 **(A, B) Make two-word and three-word nouns.**

Model: a dress made of silk – *a silk dress*.

1. railings made of iron – .....;
2. a clock used in the kitchen – .....;
3. a table made of plastic/used in the kitchen – ..... ; 4. trousers made of cotton – .....; 5. a sweater made of wool/worn in winter – .....;
6. a box made of steel – ..... .

3 **(B, C) You are looking for items you want to buy. Begin each sentence with *"I'm looking for..."*.**

Model: polished – beautiful – wardrobe – oak – antique – French.
I'm looking for a beautiful antique polished French oak wardrobe.

1. sports car – well-maintained – second-hand – with a low mileage
.....
2. leather – Italian – a pair of – shoes – black – which I can use for work
.....
3. cottage – stone-built – small – old – country
.....
4. cotton – shorts – summer – white – for my holiday
.....

4 **(B, C) Translate into English.**

1. новая белая хлопчатобумажная рубашка – .....;
2. маленькая черная металлическая коробка – .....;
3. уродливое зелёное платье – .....;
4. красивые светлые длинные волосы – .....;
5. интересное старое французское полотно (картина) – .....;
6. необычные золотые серьги ручной работы – .....;
7. незабываемое двухдневное путешествие на лодке – .....;
8. дорогой старый круглый дубовый стул ручной работы – ..... .

A J☺ke

– Your Uncle Ted is coming tomorrow. Where's the **expensive new Spanish** guitar he gave you for your birthday?
– I threw it out.
– But why? It must have cost him a fortune!
– It had a hole in it!

Use of Adjectives after Verbs

After *be/look/feel/seem/smell/taste/sound* we use adjectives:

- ❑ Do you *feel* **tired**?
- ❑ The dinner *smells* **good**.
- ❑ Tom *sounded* **angry**.
- ❑ Your friend *seems* **nice**.

After other verbs we use adverbs *(badly/well/carefully)* (see "Adverbs"):

- ❑ Drive **carefully**.
- ❑ Susan plays tennis **well**.
- ❑ John behaved **badly** last night.

NB! **LOOK** (= seem) + adjective / *(at)* + adverb

- ❑ Tom looked **sad** when I saw him.
- ❑ Tom looked at me **sadly**.

EXERCISES



5 **(A, B) Write down adjectives or adverbs in the following sentences.**

1. The child's skin feels ..... . (smooth/smoothly)
   Everything went ..... . (smooth/smoothly)
2. You cook ..... . (good/well)
   Your cooking is ..... . (good/well)
3. The water smells ..... . (bad/badly)
   The film ended ..... . (bad/badly)
4. She looked ..... . (nice/nicely)
   He answered ..... . (nice/nicely)

6 **(B) Translate the words in brackets.**

1. What beautiful flowers! They (хорошо пахнут) ..... , too. 2. Jack read his new story to me. It (звучало интересно) ..... . I hope the editor will like it. 3. I can't eat it. It (ужасно на вкус) ..... and too much salt. 4. I wasn't very well yesterday but today I (чувствую себя прекрасно) ..... . 5. Have you been out in the rain? You (выглядишь промокшим) ..... . 6. Ann (казалась расстроенной) ..... yesterday. Do you know what had happened?

7 **(B) Translate the sentences.**

1. Он зло посмотрел на меня, когда я прервал (interrupt) его. ..... .
2. Пожалуйста, закрывай дверь тихо, ребёнок спит. ..... .
3. Ты можешь быть хоть минутку спокойным? Я так устала. Посиди спокойно. – ..... .
4. Том прекрасно себя ведёт и хорошо готовит. – ..... .
5. Мне это не нравится, всё это дело выглядит не безопасным (safe). – ..... .
6. Все волнения были позади. Он прибыл живым и здоровым. – ..... .
7. Поторопись! Ты такой медлительный. – ..... .
8. Суп вкусный (прекрасный на вкус). – ..... .
9. Веди машину осторожно. Кажется, дорога очень скользкая (slippery). – ..... .
10. Она была печальна; она печально смотрела на меня. – ..... .

3. The Comparison of Adjectives

Common Comparative and Superlative Forms:

We use the comparative when comparing one person or thing with another.
We use the superlative when comparing one person or thing with more than one.

ADJECTIVES		COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
One-syllable and some two-syllable words ending in *-y, -er, -ow, -le*		***... + -er***	***the ... + -est***
	hot	*hotter*	*the hottest*
	large	*larger*	*the largest*
	narrow	*narrower*	*the narrowest*
	simple	*simpler*	*the simplest*
Two or more syllable words		***more/less + ...***	***the most/least + ...***
	beautiful	*more beautiful*	*the most beautiful*
	interesting	*more interesting*	*the most interesting*
Irregular forms	*good*	*better*	*the best*
	bad	*worse*	*the worst*
	old	*older* / *elder*	*the oldest* / *the eldest*
	far	*farther* / *further*	*the farthest* / *the furthest*

Spelling Rules

1. Adjectives like *hot (big, fat, sad, wet)* double the consonant:
*hot – hot**t**er – the hot**t**est.*

2. Adjectives like *nice (fine, large, late, safe)* add ***-r***, ***-st***:
*nic**e** – nic**e**r – the nic**e**st.*

3. With adjectives like *busy* we use ***-i*** in place of ***-y***:
*bus**y** – bus**i**er – the bus**i**est.*

NOTE:
Some two-syllable adjectives like *happy (clever, common, narrow, pleasant, quiet, simple, stupid)* have two comparative or superlative forms:

- either with ***-er/-est***:
  - ❑ She's **cleverer** than you. She's **the cleverest** person I know.
- or with ***more/the most***:
  - ❑ She's **more clever** than you. She's **the most clever** person I know.

Comparative and Superlative Forms Often Confused: *Older/Elder*

1. *Further* and *farther* refer to distance:
- ❑ London is five miles **further/farther**.

Further (not "*farther*") can mean "in addition":
- ❑ There is no **further** information.

2. We use *elder/eldest* before a noun only with reference to people in a family:
- ❑ **my elder brother/son, the eldest child,** he's **the eldest** (but not "He is elder than me.")

We use *older/oldest* for people and things:
- ❑ He is **older** than I am. This book is **older**.

3. *Lesser* is formed from *less* but is not a true comparative. We cannot use *than* after *it*.

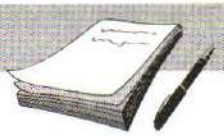
Lesser means "not so great" and we use it in fixed phrases like *the lesser of two evils*.

4. *Latest/last*:
- ❑ I bought **the latest** (i.e. *most recent*) edition of today's paper.
- ❑ I bought **the last** (i.e. *final*) edition of today's paper.

5. The comparative and superlative of *little* is *smaller/smallest*:
- ❑ a **small/little** boy, a **smaller/the smallest** boy.

6. *"In the near future"* means «в ближайшем будущем».

EXERCISES



1 (A) Give the comparative and superlative of the following adjectives:

Polite – ....., happy – ....., shy – .....,
recent – ....., merry – ....., uncomfortable – .....,
joyful – ....., hot – ....., thin – .....,
narrow – ....., sweet – ....., bad – .....,
cheap – ....., big – ....., far – .....,
simple – ....., expensive – ....., low – .....,
deep – ....., sad – ....., significant – .....,
lazy – ....., old – ....., serious – .....,
clever – ....., little – ....., good – .....,
dark – ....., beautiful – ....., dear – ..... .

2 (A, B) Use the adjectives in the comparative degree.

(Model:) His poems are popular. (his novels) – *His poems are more popular than his novels.*

1. My room's cold. (the kitchen) – ..... . 2. My garden is nice. (school garden) – ..... . 3. Your hair is dark. (your brother's hair) – ..... . 4. John is clever. (James) – ..... .

5. Paris is old. (New York) – ..... . 6. Helen is cheerful. (Jane) – ..... . 7. Life in big cities is expensive. (life in small towns) – ..... .

3 (B) Give both comparative and superlative forms where possible.

Model: His brother is talented.
(than he) – *His brother is more talented than he.*
(person I have ever met) – *His brother is the most talented person I have ever met.*

1. His work was careless.
   (than mine) .....
   (in the class) .....
2. Basketball is popular.
   (than tennis) .....
   (in the USA) .....
3. This watch is expensive.
   (than that one) .....
   (in the shop) .....
4. Tuesday is convenient for me.
   (than Friday) .....
   (of all week-days) .....
5. This task is simple.
   (than that one) .....
   (in the book) .....

4 (A, B) Choose the correct forms in these sentences. In some cases both forms are correct.

1. Is the station much *further/farther*? 2. You'll find the explanation *further/farther* on. 3. Your record is *worse/worst* than mine. 4. It's the *less/lesser* of two evils. 5. She always wears the *last/latest* fashion. 6. We have no *further/farther* information. 7. Nick skates *good/well*. 8. His *latest/last* words were: "The end." 9. She is the *oldest/eldest* member of our family. 10. My flat is *littler/smaller* than yours. 11. He is much *older/elder* than his wife. 12. This is the *more/most* beautiful picture I've ever seen. 13. His English is *best/better* than mine. 14. It's the *furthest/farthest* point west. 15. It's the *oldest/eldest* building in the city. 16. He's my *older/elder* brother.

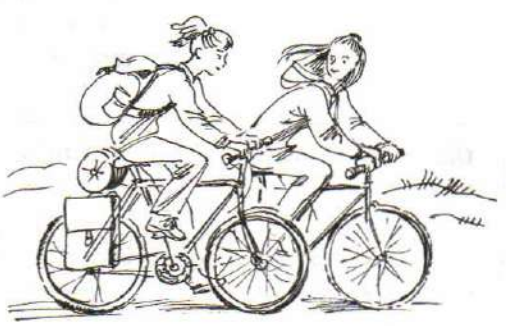
5 (B) The word *way* is often used with the superlative. Complete the provided options using the prompts below and your own ideas.

Model: I think the best way to learn English is to *go to an English-speaking country.*

I think the best way to meet new friends is to .....
.....
The best way to keep fit is to .....
.....
I think the best way to make a lot of money is to .....
I feel the best way to help poor people is to .....
.....

Prompts: *get good education, go in for sports, surf the Internet, work hard, donate money.*





To Compare Things We Use:

as ... as
так(ой) же ... , как

in positive sentences and questions

- The film is **as** interesting **as** the book.

twice as ... as
three times as ... as
в два/три раза ...

- Petrol is **twice as** expensive **as** it was a few years ago.
- Their house is **three times as** big **as** ours.
- He is **twice as** old.

half as much/many	*в два раза меньше*
half the size	*в два раза меньше*
half my age	*в два раза моложе*
half the weight	*в два раза легче*

- The room is **half the size**...
- He is **half my age**.
- My trunk is **half the weight** of yours.

not so/as ... as
не такой ... , как

- He is **not so (as)** tall **as** his father.

much	*намного*
far	*гораздо*
a great deal	*значительно*
a lot	
a bit	*немного*
a little	

- The Dnieper is **much** longer than the Thames.
- This book is **far** more interesting than that one.
- Your room is **a great deal** better than mine.
- This way is **a bit (little)** shorter.

MOST

the most (самый)
- This is **the most** interesting book.

a most (крайне, весьма)
- This is **a most** interesting book.
- These are **most** interesting books.

(большинство, большая часть)
- **Most** young people are fond of sports.
- **Most of** my friends live in Moscow.

the + comparative ... the + comparative
чем ... , тем...
We use *the + comparative... the + comparative* to say that one thing depends on the other.

- What size box do you want? – **The bigger the better**.
- **The warmer** the weather, **the better** I feel.

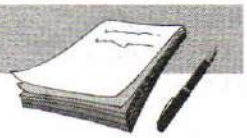
the same ... as
такой же ... , как

- Ann gets **the same** salary **as** mine.
- Tom is **the same** age **as** George.

than me/him/her/them/us
as

- You are taller **than me (I am)**.
- I am **as** intelligent **as him (he is)**.

EXERCISES



6 **(A) Translate the quotation.**

You are
as young **as** your faith,
as old **as** your doubts,
as young **as** your self-confidence,
as old **as** your fear,
as young **as** your hope,
as old **as** your despair.

(Frank Jordan)

7 **(A) Make up sentences according to the model, using *as ... as* and the words given below.**

(Model:) This book, the other one, interesting.
This book is *as interesting as* the other one.

1. Jane, Ann, charming.
   – .....
2. He, I, tall.
   – .....
3. Michael, his brother, strong.
   – .....
4. Our car, their car, good.
   – .....
5. This report, your report, interesting.
   – .....
6. Her new hat, her skirt, becoming.
   – .....
7. Your job, his, essential.
   – .....
8. The sitting room, the dining room, large.
   – .....
9. The ice-cream, the cake, delicious.
   – .....
10. His stories, his jokes, funny.
    – .....

8 **(A, B) Complete the sentences, using *as ... as*.**

(Models:) The weather is still unpleasant today but yesterday it was worse. *The weather isn't as bad as it was yesterday.*

1. I still feel quite tired but I felt a lot more tired yesterday.
   I don't .....
2. I was a bit nervous before the interview but usually I'm a lot more nervous.
   I wasn't .....
3. Volleyball is popular but basketball is more popular in the US.
   Volleyball isn't .....
4. This winter is cold. Last winter was even colder.
   This winter isn't .....
5. Basil is busy on Sundays. He is busier on weekdays.
   He isn't .....

9 **(A) Make up negative sentences according to the model.**

(Model:) My mother, my father, tall.
My mother is not so tall as my father.

1. The bus, the train, fast.
   – .....
2. My flat, her flat, big.
   – .....
3. His voice, Caruso's, brilliant.
   – .....
4. The pond, the river, deep.
   – .....
5. This lecture, that lecture, interesting.
   – .....
6. This hat, that hat, beautiful.
   – .....
7. His article, her article, long.
   – .....

10 **(B) Animals have their own sports heroes. What amazing feats are they capable of?**

The Zoolympics

A. In your view which animal is...

– the most beautiful? – In my view, the horse is the most beautiful animal.
– the ugliest?
  .....
– the most dangerous?
  .....
– the most likeable?
  .....
– the funniest?
  .....





Can you think of record-holders from the animal world?

- the fastest in water or on land
  .....
- the slowest
  .....
- the heaviest
  .....
- the tallest
  .....

B. How far can they jump? Compare the animals' ability to jump using comparatives and superlatives and *as ... as*, *not so ... as* constructions. Write about their records.

Polar bear	4 m
Leopard	4.5 m
Tiger	6 m
Lion	6.5 m
Hare	7 m
Horse	8 m
Human	8.9 m
Kangaroo	13.5 m
Springbok (газель)	15 m

11 (B) Use *a bit/a little/much/a lot/far* before comparatives.

(Model:) This is an expensive bag. Can you show me something *a bit cheaper*? (a bit/cheap)

1. His songs are ..... than his operas. (much/famous) 2. It is ..... in February than in March. (a bit/windy) 3. I found the museum ..... than I had expected. (far/interesting) 4. I am ..... today than I was yesterday. (a lot/tired) 5. I prefer this armchair. It's ..... the other one. (much/comfortable) 6. This flat is too small for me. I need something ..... . (much/big)

12 (B) Translate the words in brackets.

1. This is ..... (самая интересная книга) I have ever read on this subject. 2. Swimming is ..... (крайне популярный) summer sport. 3. Shakespeare is ..... (самый выдающийся) English poet and playwright of all the ages. 4. Coal is ..... (крайне важный) natural resource. 5. He is ..... (весьма умный) man.

13 (A, B) Make sentences with *the same as*.

(Model:) (your hair/the same colour/mine) Your hair *is the same colour as mine*.

1. (this suit/the same size/that one)
   .....
2. (I arrived here/the same time/you)
   .....
3. (we rented/the same house/your parents)
   .....
4. (we stayed/the same hotel/our friends)
   .....
5. (I graduated from/the same university/my brother)
   .....

14 (B) Complete these sentences. Use the comparative of the words in brackets (+ *than*).

(Model:) My toothache is *more severe than* it was yesterday. (severe)

1. You look ..... you were last year. (thin) Have you lost weight? 2. You won't believe it but he is ..... his sister. (talkative) 3. The problem is not so complicated. It's ..... you think. (simple) 4. I think she is ..... her mother. (beautiful) 5. Health and happiness are ..... money. (important) 6. I prefer this armchair. It is ..... that one. (comfortable) 7. I like the countryside. It's ..... and ..... living in a town. (healthy/peaceful)

15 (B, C) Use the required form of the adjective in the following sentences.

1. He's a far (intelligent) ..... person than my brother. 2. He turned out to be (angry) ..... than I had expected. 3. It's (hot) ..... in here than outside. 4. Jack is the (clever) ..... of the three brothers. 5. They are (good) ..... people, far (good) ..... than you. 6. He felt (bad) ..... yesterday than the day before. 7. The (long) ..... the night, the (short) ..... the day. 8. They got down to business without (far) ..... delay. 9. This problem is as (serious) ..... as the others. 10. He always chooses (easy) ..... way. 11. Are there (cheap) ..... seats available? 12. Try on both hats and see which is ..... (becoming). 13. Which is (high) ..... mountain in the world? 14. What is the (late) ..... news? 15. This is (sunny) ..... room in the house. 16. Things went from bad to ..... (bad).

16 (B, C) Read three letters on a most controversial subject. Open the brackets, using the adjectives in the right form. Find the key phrases showing different points of view.

Elephants Live Longer

Sir,

Doctors want us to believe that doing sports is (good) (1)..... for our health. Sport and other activities help us to live (long) (2)..... . This is complete nonsense!

If you look at nature, you will see that the (active) (3)..... animals have the (short) (4)..... lifespan. A good example is the hummingbird (колибри).

However, animals which move slowly or live a (quiet) (5)..... life, usually grow a lot (old) (6)..... like the tortoise or the elephant.

This might also explain why the average woman lives about 5 years (long) (7)..... than the average man, who spends so much energy on hard, often physically hard work.

I therefore suggest that we should not advertise sports actively. This suggestion would help more people to have (long) (8)..... lives.

Mr. Brendan Long,
Guildford, Sussex

Women: Elephants or Hummingbirds?

Sir,

I am writing in answer to Mr. Long's letter, in which he suggests that (slow) (1)..... movers live (long) (2)..... . Mr. Long seems to believe that a kind of life in total lethargy is (healthy) (3)..... than an active kind of life, which is a very dangerous suggestion, I believe.

Psychologists have shown that people who are (little) (4)..... active are often depressive, eat and drink more and die of all kinds of illnesses at very early age.

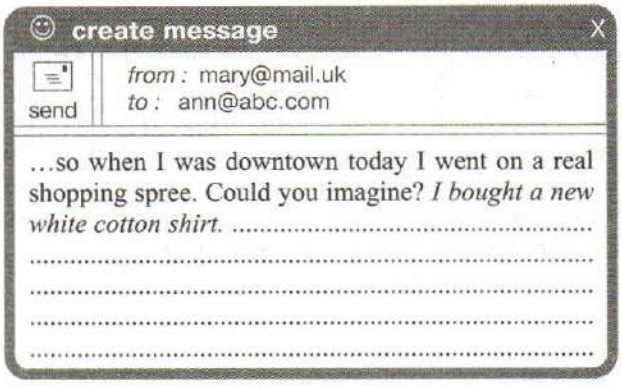
Dr. Paul McNeill,
London E3

Sir,

Mr. Long's theory about long life is sexist nonsense! Women usually work much harder than men, because housework is very (hard) (1)..... physical work, and very many women have a job besides the housework. Even in the "Third World", where women do much of the agricultural work alone, they have (long) (2)..... lives than men. How could Mr. Long explain this within his "theory"?

Vanessa Grant, Jennifer Cartwright,
Women and the Third World Working Group

17 (B, C) I. Mary is describing to Ann the clothing she bought. Complete her e-mail to Ann, using the prompts below. Mind the order of adjectives in your sentences.



Prompts:

1. cotton / white / shirt / new
2. felt / French / small / red / hat
3. jacket / brown / velvet / stylish
4. black / beautiful / long / skirt / party
5. coat / woolen / grey / winter / elegant
6. cotton / beige / all the vogue / trousers / casual

II. Now Ann is describing these purchases to another friend comparing them with her clothing.

Model: *Today Mary went shopping to the Mall and bought a new white cotton shirt. Do you remember my new shirt? It's much more stylish but not so expensive as Mary's.*

Prompts:

1. new shirt / much / stylish / not so / expensive / as
2. hat / much / nice / not so / old fashioned / as
   .....
3. jacket / up-to-date / not so / drab / as
   .....
4. skirt / much / short / as ... as / beautiful
   .....
5. coat / much / warm / cheap
   .....
6. trousers / not so / stylish / much / comfortable
   .....

18 (B, C) Translate into English.

I

1. В XVI веке Испания была самой могущественной державой мира. 2. Волга длиннее Днепра; это самая длинная река Европы. 3. Ватикан – самое маленькое государство в Европе. 4. Советую вам пойти этой дорогой. а) Это самый короткий путь, б) Этот путь короче. 5. Эта проблема не так серьёзна, как вам кажется. 6. Нам нужен шкаф поменьше, так как комната небольшая. 7. Сегодня не так тепло, как вчера. 8. Мария – наша старшая сестра. 9. Ждите дальнейших инструкций. 10. Ей столько же лет, сколько и мне. 11. Это последнее произведение писателя. 12. А нет ли дороги поближе? 13. Последний поезд прибывает в полночь. 14. Она на пять лет младше меня. 15. Это самая короткая дорога до моря.

II

1. Я не так молод, как вы. Вы в два раза моложе. 2. Чем быстрее мы закончим работу, тем лучше. 3. Это совершенно новый прибор, он может работать в три раза быстрее. 4. Новый аэропорт в три раза больше нашего старого. 5. Ветер сегодня вдвое сильнее, чем вчера. 6. Она не такой пунктуальный секретарь, как бы мне хотелось. 7. Этот перевод вдвое легче. Вы с ним справитесь. 8. Новый стадион в несколько раз больше старого. 9. Хотя эта комната и в два раза меньше, она мне больше нравится. 10. Он сильный, он может поднять ящик и в три раза тяжелее. 11. Сегодня вдвое холоднее, чем вчера. 12. Все его приятели в два раза моложе его. 13. Кошка упала с крыши, но чувствует себя нисколько не хуже от этого. 14. Окно узкое, как дверь. 15. Суп хорошо пахнет, а на вкус он ещё лучше.

III

1. Дальнейшие подробности будут даны в следующий раз. 2. Этот вопрос важнее того вопроса, который мы обсуждали вчера. 3. Он больше занят, чем ты. 4. Этот перевод труднее того, который мы делали вместе. 5. Это самая интересная книга, которую я когда-либо читал. 6. Математика для нас была самым трудным предметом в школе. 7. Это кратчайший путь до театра. 8. Грамматика русского языка сложнее грамматики английского. 9. Это самое красивое здание в нашем городе. 10. Этот фильм не хуже того, который я видел позавчера. 11. Эта комната лучшая в квартире. 12. Его старший сын окончил университет в прошлом году. 13. Ты читал его последнюю статью? 14. Он такой же сильный, как и его брат. 15. В прошлом году зима была такая же холодная, как и в этом.

4. TESTS

I

1. Сегодня погода была не такой хорошей, как вчера.
2. Я слышал оба доклада, первый был значительно интереснее второго.
3. Этот перевод труднее того, который мы делали в декабре.
4. Чем теплее погода, тем лучше мы себя чувствуем.
5. Это самая большая квартира в нашем доме, она в два раза больше нашей.
6. Это кратчайший путь до озера.
7. Его старшая дочь работает теперь в нашей компании.
8. Сегодня так же жарко, как вчера.

II

1. Чем интереснее книга, тем быстрее она читается.
2. Вчера было намного холоднее, чем сегодня.
3. Этот фильм не хуже того, который я видел позавчера.
4. Он такой же сильный, как его брат.
5. Пальто ничуть не хуже после стирки.
6. Директор хотел видеть вас для дальнейших объяснений.
7. Новые проспекты в два раза шире старых улиц нашего города.
8. Это лучшая комната в нашей квартире, она гораздо больше и светлее остальных.

III

1. Он больше занят, чем ты.
2. Этот год был для нас самым трудным.
3. Ты читал его последнюю статью?
4. Ты такая же красивая, как её мать.
5. Мне гораздо легче знать правду.
6. В прошлом году зима была не такая холодная, как в этом.
7. Чем холоднее зима, тем теплее лето.
8. Я уже старый человек, я в два раза старше вас.

THE ADVERB

1. Definition, Forms and Place

An adverb adds to the meaning of a verb, an adjective or another adverb. It can describe ***manner*** (how), ***place*** (where), ***time*** (when), ***degree*** (to what extent), etc.

As for their structure, adverbs are divided into:

SIMPLE	DERIVATIVE	COMPOUND	COMPOSITE
long	slowly	anyhow	at once
enough	likewise	sometimes	at last
then	forward	nowhere	so far

Adverbs of manner are often formed by adding **-ly** to an adjective. Adverbs formed in this way usually have a similar meaning to an adjective.

Adjectives	Adverbs
bad	*badly*
beautiful	*beautifully*
careful	*carefully*
quick	*quickly*
quiet	*quietly*
soft	*softly*

There are sometimes changes in spelling when an adverb is formed from an adjective.

			Adjectives	Adverbs
-le	changes to	**-ly**	*gentle*	*gently*
-y	changes to	**-ily**	*easy*	*easily*
-ic	changes to	**-ically**	*automatic*	*automatically*
-ue	changes to	**-uly**	*true*	*truly*
-ll	changes to	**-lly**	*full*	*fully*

The most productive adverb-forming suffix is ***-ly***, but there are also some other suffixes: ***-ward(s)***, ***-long***, ***-wise***: *clockwise*, *forward*, *headlong*.

We can use some words as adjectives or adverbs without adding ***-ly*** or ***-illy***:

- It was a **fast** train./The train went **fast**.
- He returned from a **long** journey./Will you stay here **long**?
- The price is very **low**./The plane flew very **low**.
- We have very **little** time./He reads very **little**.

Other examples are: *hard*, *high*, *deep*, *last*, *late*, *near*, *wide*, *early*, *far*, *straight*, *right*, *wrong*.

Some adverbs have two forms, one without *-ly* and the other with *-ly*. These forms have different meanings and uses: *hard/hardly*, *last/lastly*, *late/lately*, *near/nearly*, *high/highly*.

Adjective	Adverb without *-ly*	Adverb with *-ly*
He is a **hard** worker. Он *усердный* работник.	He works **hard**. Он работает *усердно*.	I could **hardly** understand him. Я *едва* мог понять его.
He returned in **late** autumn. Он возвратился *поздней* осенью.	I went to bed **late** yesterday. Я лег *поздно* вчера.	I haven't seen him **lately**. Я не видел его в *последнее время*.
He is studying the history of the **Near** East. Он изучает историю *Ближнего* Востока.	He lives quite **near**. Он живет совсем *близко*.	It is **nearly** 5 o'clock. *Почти* 5 часов.
The house is very **high**. Дом очень *высокий*.	The plane flew very **high**. Самолет летел очень *высоко*.	It is **a highly** developed state. Это *высокоразвитое* государство.

Place and Order of Adverbs

– before adjectives, other adverbs and participles	❑ The task was **surprisingly** simple. ❑ He walked **very** fast. ❑ We are **extremely** interested in their proposal.
– usually after verbs	❑ He speaks **slowly**.
– at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis	❑ **Slowly**, he entered the room. ❑ **Tomorrow**, I will tell you about my decision. ❑ **Now**, I understand what you mean.
– when there are two or more adverbs in the same sentence, they usually come in the following order: ***manner – place – time***	❑ She spoke **very well here last time**.
– if there is a verb of movement *(go, come, leave)* in the sentence, then the adverbs come in the following order: ***place – manner – time***	❑ She arrived **here by train yesterday**.

EXERCISES



1 (A, B) Say whether the word in italics is an adjective or an adverb.

1. The task was so *easy* that we didn't need time to get prepared. 2. I could do it *easily* if I had the time. 3. He spoke *loudly*. 4. We heard a *loud* noise in the street. 5. We went *straight* to St. Petersburg without stopping anywhere. 6. He looked at us with a perfectly *straight* face. 7. You would play *better* if you had a *better* instrument. 8. They have very *little* space for the garden. 9. When I first came to Moscow, I *little* thought that I should stay here so *long*. 10. We stayed there for a *long* time. 11. He works *more* and *better* than he used to.

2 (A) Form adverbs from the given adjectives and nouns and make up your own sentences with them.

Sweet – ..... , careful – ..... , real – ..... , slow – ..... ,
usual – ..... , calm – ..... , heroic – ..... , loud –..... ,
happy – ..... , safe – ..... , gradual – ..... , soft – ..... ,
brave – ..... .

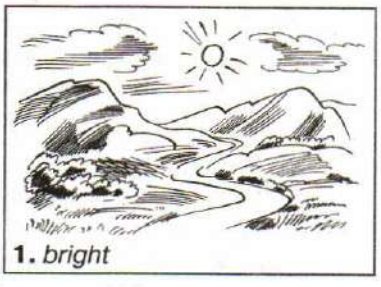
3 (A) Change the noun in italics into the verb, and the adjective in italics into the adverb.

(Model:) His *answer* was very *quick*. – *He answered very quickly.*

1. They gave a *beautiful performance*.
   – ..... .
2. She gave me a *formal answer*.
   – ..... .
3. His was a *heroic action*.
   – ..... .
4. He gave an *accurate description* of the incident.
   – ..... .
5. We heard their *happy laugh* in the room.
   – ..... .
6. The actors got a *warm greeting* from the audience.
   – ..... .
7. Is she a *fluent speaker*?
   – ..... .
8. He is a very *fast swimmer*.
   – ..... .

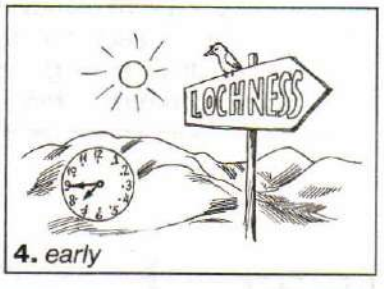
4 (A) Look at the pictures and make up a story. Use the adjective and adverb forms of the words in the pictures. Use both forms if you can think of sentences with them. Start like this:

A day in the country.
The weather was very ... when we arrived
in the Highlands. The sun was shining ...


1. *bright*


2. *happy*

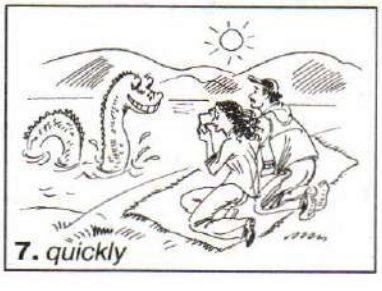

3. *careful*



4. *early*


5. *lazy*


6. *sudden*


7. *quickly*


8. *calm*



9. *excited*



10. *unlucky*

.....

.....

.....

Some Adverbs Have Degrees of Comparison:

ADJECTIVES		COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
One-syllable words		***... + -er***	***... + -est***
	fast	*faster*	*fastest*
	hard	*harder*	*hardest*
Ending in *-ly*		***more/less + ...***	***most/least + ...***
	wisely	*more wisely*	*most wisely*
	beautifully	*more beautifully*	*most beautifully*
Irregular forms	*well*	*better*	*best*
	badly	*worse*	*worst*
	much	*more*	*most*
	little	*less*	*least*
	far	*farther/further*	*farthest/furthest*
Special cases	*often*	*oftener* *more often*	*oftenest* *most often*
	quickly	*quicker* *more quickly*	*quickest* *most quickly*
	slowly	*slower* *more slowly*	*slowest* *most slowly*
	early	*earlier*	*earliest*

We use the following intensifiers to strengthen adverbs: *much/far*

Гораздо
Намного
Значительно

- ***much*** ❑ She works **much harder** than you.
- ***far*** ❑ It happens **far more often**.

We use *the ... the ...* (with two comparatives) to say that one thing depends on the other.

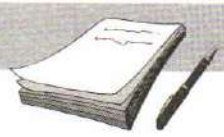
the + comparative ... the + comparative
чем ... , тем...

❑ What time shall we leave? **The sooner the better.**

twice as ... as
three times as ... as
в два/три раза ...

❑ He works **twice as** hard **as** his colleagues.

EXERCISES



5 (A, B) Write the comparative and superlative degrees of the following adverbs:

Early – ....., often – .....,
hard – ....., easily – .....,
well – ....., little- .....,
near – ....., far – .....,
late – ....., clearly – .....,
slowly – ....., fast – .....,
quickly – ....., much – ..... .

6 (A, B) Open the brackets, give the comparative or superlative forms of the adverbs.

1. I like this dress (well) ..... than the black one. 2. Now she visits them (frequently) ..... than last year. 3. Which of all these books did you enjoy (much) ..... ? 4. Now I can hear you (clearly) ..... than before. 5. You ought to have told me (much) ..... . 6. Who works (hard) ....., Mike, Pete or Jack? 7. The fire was put out (quickly) ..... than we expected. 8. He speaks English (fluently) ..... of all in my class.

7 (B) Translate the sentences using the model.

Model: Чем раньше мы выедем, тем скорее мы приедем. – *The earlier* we leave *the sooner* we'll arrive.

1. Чем больше я его узнаю (get to know), тем больше он мне нравится.
   – ..... .
2. Чем больше ты упражняешься в английском, тем быстрее ты выучишь его.
   – ..... .
3. Чем более усердно мы работаем, тем больше денег зарабатываем.
   – ..... .
4. Чем дольше ты говоришь по телефону, тем больше ты должен платить.
   – ..... .
5. Чем больше товаров вы продаёте, тем больше доход. (make profit)
   – ..... .
6. Чем больше ты читаешь, тем быстрее растёт твой словарный запас.
   – ..... .

8 (A, B) Give the correct forms of the adverbs in brackets.

1. The (hard) ..... you work the (soon) ..... you make progress. 2. Yesterday they finished work (late) ..... than usual. 3. The woman said she had been treated (badly) ..... than a slave. 4. The little girl sang far (well) ..... than her sister. 5. The boy's greatest ambition was to become a pilot and fly (high) ..... and (fast) ..... of all. 6. Now they live in our neighbourhood and visit us twice as (often) ..... . 7. I could see very far from my place but Ben climbed a tree and saw even (far) ..... beyond the field. 8. I like this picture (well) ..... of all. 9. I missed our walks together but those long evening conversations by the fireplace I missed (much) ..... of all. 10. He stepped (close) ..... and saw that they were playing with little kittens. 11. She translates twice as (fast) ..... as the other students.

9 (B, C) Choose the correct form of the words in italics.

1. He certainly has done *good/well* in his studies this year. 2. It is not *good/well* for you to smoke. 3. I was *angry/angrily* at what he did. 4. He stormed *angry/angrily* out of the room. 5. It isn't *bad/badly*. 6. The child behaved very *bad/badly* at table. 7. He dreamed of acting *brave/bravely* in emergency. 8. He is a *brave/bravely* man. 9. This is quite *clear/clearly*. 10. I can see *clear/clearly* what you mean. 11. She looked at him *cold/coldly*. 12. The weather is

cold/coldly today. 13. This is a *comfortable/comfortably* desk. 14. We like to travel *comfortable/comfortably*. 15. Let's look at it from *different/differently* angles. 16. The two sisters always reacted *different/differently*. 17. He seems to be not very *happy/happily* about it. 18. They smiled *happy/happily*.

10 (A, B) Translate the sentences into English, paying attention to the words in italics. Choose the right word in brackets.

1. Вы часто пропускаете занятия *в последнее время*. Они *поздно* ложатся спать. В том году была *поздняя* весна. (late, lately)
   – ..... .
2. Что-то было *не так*. Он набрал *не тот* номер телефона. Он дал *неправильный* ответ. Она *неправильно* с ним поступила. (wrong, wrongly)
   – ..... .
3. Мы *едва* знаем друг друга. Они *упорно* работали. Она *упорный* работник. (hard, hardly)
   – ..... .
4. Мы *почти* опоздали на поезд. *Рядом* с нашим домом есть небольшое озеро. Он всегда интересовался историей *Ближнего* Востока. (near, nearly)
   – ..... .

11 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Какой из его фильмов вам больше всего нравится? 2. Чем больше вы будете читать по-английски, тем лучше вы будете знать язык. 3. Если ты будешь упорнее тренироваться, ты будешь бегать так же быстро, как и я. 4. Она много практиковалась и теперь печатает в два раза быстрее, чем раньше. 5. Если бы мы поехали поездом, а не пароходом, то мы добрались бы туда в два раза быстрее. 6. Чем шире будет ваше образование, тем выше будут ценить ваши знания. 7. Я хорошо знаю свой город, но лучше всего я знаю центр. 8. Мой брат встаёт позже меня. 9. Мой друг играет в шахматы лучше меня. 10. Он водит машину осторожнее, чем его жена. 11. Он знает английский лучше всех в группе. 12. Я гораздо больше люблю исторические книги. 13. На следующий день ему стало гораздо хуже. 14. Она читает гораздо больше меня. 15. В этом году занятия заканчиваются гораздо позже, чем в прошлом.

2. Classification of Adverbs

ACCORDING TO THEIR MEANING, ADVERBS FALL INTO SEVERAL GROUPS:

2.1 Adverbs of Manner

Adverbs of manner tell us **how** something happens: *well*, *badly*, *quickly*, *slowly*, *easily*, *quietly*, etc.:

- How did John behave? He behaved **badly**.
- Did you sleep **well**?
- He came very **quickly**.

The adverbs *loud(ly)*, *cheap(ly)*, *quick(ly)* and *slow(ly)* are often used without *-ly* in everyday English:

- Don't speak so **loud(ly)**.

The adverb *pretty* can mean *"very, quite"*. It is used before an adjective or an adverb:

- **pretty** expensive/much

Some adjectives end in *-ly*. If we want to use these words as adverbs, we say: *"in a ... manner/way/fashion"*:

- Meg is a **friendly** girl. She always greets me **in a friendly way**.
- That was a **cowardly** thing to do. You acted **in a cowardly way**.

We do not use adverbs after link verbs such as *to be*, *become*, *feel*, *get*, *look* and *seem*. We use adjectives after such verbs:

- Sue **felt happy**. (not "Sue felt happily")
- Nobody **seemed amused**.
- I **am not sure**.

We say *"fast asleep"* and *"wide awake"* (not "very"):

- The children are **fast asleep** now but an hour ago they were **wide awake**.

Fixed phrases: *deeply hurt*, *painfully embarrassed*, *highly respected*, *bitterly cold*, *greatly appreciative*, *badly needed*.

- She was **highly respected** in her village.
- A new playground for our children is **badly needed**.
- She was **deeply hurt** by his words but didn't say a word.

Adverbs of manner go before main verbs, after auxiliary verbs or at the end of the sentence:

- They **quickly** returned.
- He was **anxiously** waiting for their reply.
- She smiled **kindly**.

EXERCISES



1 (B, C) Choose the appropriate word from those in brackets and state whether it is an adjective or an adverb.

1. a) They talked of ..... ideals.
   b) This new play is ..... spoken of.
   c) We ..... appreciate your hospitality. (high, highly)
2. a) He divided his wealth ..... among his children.
   b) You don't act ..... to the girl.
   c) Why don't you give him a chance? It isn't ..... . (fair, fairly)
3. a) She cut him ..... saying it was not to the point.
   b) He came to live there ..... after the war.
   c) Speak ..... on the phone. (short, shortly)
4. a) They ..... saw where they were going.
   b) The old man breathed so ..... .
   c) She tried ..... not to cry. (hard, hardly)
5. a) Very cautiously, he approached the window as ..... as possible.
   b) He is my ..... friend.
   c) He knew he was ..... guarded all the time. (close, closely)
6. a) How are you? – Very ..... , thank you.
   b) How is life? – Very ..... , thank you.
   c) How are you getting on? – Very ..... , thank you. (good, well)
7. a) The device is ..... to operate and its every part can be ..... replaced.
   b) Try to make it ..... for her.
   c) He is an ..... scared man. (easy, easily)
8. a) She greeted us ..... .
   b) She put a tea-cosy on the pot to keep it ..... .
   c) We dressed ..... for the outing in the winter mountains. (warm, warmly)

2 (B, C) Choose the appropriate adverb.

1. He was *high/highly* doubtful about the necessity of that action. 2. The eagle soared *high/highly*, it could be *hard/hardly* seen. 3. He had to work really *hard/hardly* to obtain what he wanted. 4. We have *near/nearly* run out of petrol. 5. There is a big grocery store *near/nearly* our house. 6. We have not heard from him *late/lately*. 7. His letter came too *late/lately*. 8. This dress is *pretty/prettily* expensive. 9. This little

girl is very *pretty/prettily* dressed. 10. He passed by her window singing *loud/loudly*. 11. He doesn't speak *loud/loudly* enough for everybody to hear. 12. They all loved him *dear/dearly*.

3 (B, C) Translate the adverbs in brackets into English.

1. I am (глубоко) ..... concerned about his lack of interest in our business. 2. He was (справедливо) ..... accused of violating the rules. 3. We examined these animals very (тщательно) ..... . 4. The plant stood (близко) ..... to the lake. 5. The man pulled (сильно) ..... at the chain. 6. The rain was pouring so (сильно) ..... that we could (едва) ..... see the boat sailing up to the shore. 7. The contribution of this scientist to the progress of physics is (высоко) ..... valued. 8. Only her face, full of rapture, stood out (ясно) ..... in his memory. But the events of that evening he remembered (более смутно) ..... . 9. When he walked, he usually held his head (высоко) ..... . It was (трудно) ..... to guess how his pride suffered. 10. She called him (громко) ..... but he didn't come. 11. It is (легче) ..... to do everything myself than to make you do things.

4 (B, C) Translate into English.

1. Ему было очень холодно. 2. Он говорил со мной холодно. 3. Её слова звучали холодно. 4. Они шли молча. 5. Она молча кивнула. 6. Она приятно улыбнулась. 7. Вы хорошо выглядите. 8. Дело идёт хорошо. 9. Хорошо, что они приедут. 10. Не бойся, ты сделаешь это. Это очень просто. 11. Вполне естественно, что ему не нравится такой план. 12. Она отреагировала совершенно естественно. 13. Ребёнок чувствовал себя очень плохо весь день. 14. Дом спроектирован плохо. 15. Он смертельно побледнел. 16. Зверь упал замертво.

A J☺ke

– I said to the dentist that £30 was a lot of money for pulling out a tooth. After all, it only takes five seconds.
– What did he say?
– Nothing, he just pulled the tooth out very very **slowly**!

2.2 Adverbs of Time

Adverbs of time: ***when*** *(когда)*, ***now*** *(сейчас)*, ***then*** *(тогда, потом, затем)*, ***before*** *(прежде, раньше)*, ***after*** *(потом, после)*, ***afterwards*** *(впоследствии)*, ***once*** *(однажды)*, ***just*** *(только что, как раз)*, ***still*** *(все еще, по-прежнему)*, ***already/yet*** *(уже)*, ***yet*** *(еще, пока еще)*, ***since*** *(с тех пор как)*, ***early*** *(рано)*, ***lately/recently*** *(в последнее время)*, ***suddenly*** *(вдруг)*, ***soon*** *(вскоре)*, ***long*** *(долго, давно)*, ***ago*** *(тому назад)*, ***today***, ***tomorrow***, ***yesterday***, etc.

Adverbs of time usually go at the end of a sentence. They can be put at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis:

- I saw him **yesterday**.?
- **Now**, I understand what you mean.

Some one-syllable adverbs of time *(soon, now, then)* go before main verbs, after auxiliary verbs or the verb *to be*:

- I **now** understand what he means.
- She will **soon** come back home.

NOTES: *tonight*, *tomorrow night*, *last night* (not "yesterday night")

ЕЩЁ

still *(все ещё; по-прежнему)*
- She is **still** sleeping.

yet *(пока ещё; пока что)*
- He is too young **yet** to get married.

yet *(ещё не...)*
- He hasn't come **yet**.

else (in questions)
- Who **else** do you know?
- Where **else** did you go yesterday?

more *(дополнительно)* – with countable and uncountable nouns
- Give me some **more** water.

other *(другой)*
- What **other** books did you buy?

only *(ещё только)*
- It's **only** 10 o'clock.
- He was with us **only** yesterday.

as early as *(так давно, как)*
- It was known **as early as** 1935.

УЖЕ

yet (in questions)
- Have you seen this film **yet**?

already (in affirmative sentences)
- I have **already** seen this film.

already (in questions to express surprise)
- Have you seen this film **already**? (*Как*, вы уже видели этот фильм?)

ДАВНО

long, for a long time *(в течение долгого времени)*
- Have you been here **long**?
- I've been here **for a long time**.

long ago, a long time ago *(много времени тому назад)*
- It happened **long ago**.

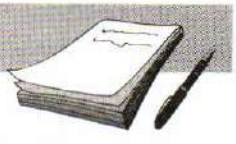
НЕДАВНО

not ... long *(с недавнего времени)*
- I haven**'t** been sitting here **long**.

not long ago *(в недалеком прошлом)*
- This book came out **not long ago**.

lately, recently *(в последнее время)*
- Have you heard from him **recently** (**lately**)?

EXERCISES



5 **(B, C) Translate into English, paying attention to the meaning of the word «ещё».**

1. Я ещё не готов. 2. Они ещё не легли спать, они ещё смотрят телевизор. 3. Я получила ещё две открытки от Элис. 4. Что ещё он вам рассказал? 5. Я хочу спросить об этом ещё кого-нибудь. 6. Какие ещё города вы видели в Англии? 7. Я ещё не дочитал эту книгу, но мне кажется, что она ещё интереснее,

чем та, которую вы мне дали. 8. Ещё апрель, ещё слишком рано открывать окна. 9. У нас есть ещё несколько книг по истории Англии. 10. Ещё рано, не все ещё встали. 11. Кто ещё звонил сегодня? 12. Что ещё вы хотели мне сказать? 13. Какие ещё сказки ты знаешь? 14. Где ещё я могу найти такие цветы? 15. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, ещё один журнал. 16. Он ещё спит.

6 (B) Translate into English, using *yet* and *already*.

1. Вы уже ходили на эту выставку? 2. Как, вы уже ходили на эту выставку? 3. Как, он уже вернулся из отпуска? 4. вы уже читали эту книгу? 5. Они уже сдали экзамен? 6. Как, он уже окончил университет? 7. Вы уже перевели эту статью? 8. Как, концерт уже начался?

7 (B, C) Translate into English, paying attention to the meaning of the words «долго» and «давно».

1. Она долго молчала. 2. Вы будете долго работать сегодня? 3. Ты давно знаешь его? 4. Это случилось недавно. 5. Я давно не видел своих друзей. 6. Я давно потерял эту книгу. 7. Мы вчера очень долго бродили по городу. 8. Вы давно живете в этом доме? 9. Мне пришлось долго ждать их. 10. Он давно забыл свое обещание. 11. Это случилось очень давно. 12. Он сказал мне, что они ушли давно. 13. Вы слишком долго работали вчера. 14. Мы довольно долго обсуждали этот вопрос. 15. Мы жили там очень давно. 16. Сегодня собрание продлится недолго. 17. Он недолго жил там. 18. Он здесь недавно работает.

8 (C) Translate into English.

1. Вы часто виделись с ним в последнее время? 2. Я за последнее время прочёл очень много иностранных книг. 3. Это произошло недавно. 4. Я недавно встретил его в музее. 5. Он не создал ни одного нового фильма за последнее время. 6. Они последнее время редко заходят к нам. 7. Я недавно отремонтировал квартиру. 8. Он очень изменился за последнее время. 9. За последнее время многое изменилось в нашем городе. 10. За последнее время она прислала мне три письма. 11. Этот разговор произошел недавно. 12. В последнее время мы не ходим туда. 13. В последнее время они не навещали нас. 14. Я не писал ей в последнее время. 15. Он начал заниматься музыкой совсем недавно. 16. В последнее время очень холодно.

2.3 Adverbs of Frequency

Adverbs of frequency: *how often?* The most common are: ***always*** *(всегда)*, ***generally***, ***usually***, ***normally*** *(обычно)*, ***frequently***, ***often*** *(часто)*, ***seldom***, ***rarely*** *(редко)*, ***sometimes*** *(иногда)*.

Adverbs of frequency go after auxiliary verbs and the verb *to be* but before main verbs:

- He has **never** visited us.
- Paul is **often** late.
- He **sometimes** comes here.

Generally, *usually*, *normally*, *often*, *frequently*, *sometimes* can go at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis:

- I **usually** go to work by metro. – **Usually**, I go to work by metro.

EXERCISES

9 **(B) Write the sentences below, using the adverbs in brackets. Make changes where necessary.**

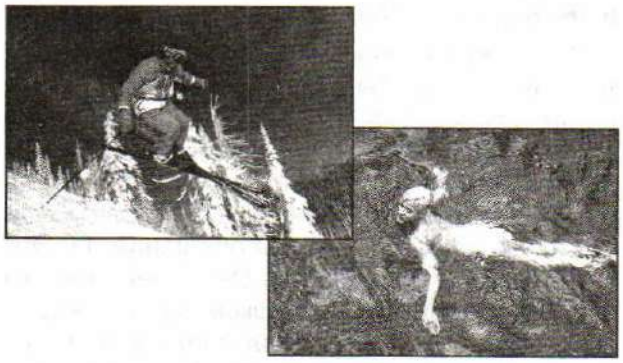
(Model:) I am late. (seldom) – I am *seldom* late.

1. We don't argue. (generally)
   – .....
2. I have lived in this town. (always)
   – .....
3. I can tell the difference between the two. (rarely)
   – .....
4. She wasn't late when she worked here. (often)
   – .....
5. You tried hard enough. (seldom)
   – .....
6. She answers the phone very quickly. (usually)
   – .....
7. We speak English when we get together. (frequently)
   – .....

10 **(B) Make true statements about yourself or someone you know. Use the prompts below and your own ideas.**

IN WINTER: I sometimes... I never... I always...
IN SUMMER: I always... I usually... I regularly...
AT WORK: I never... I always try to...
ON HOLIDAY: I usually... I never...

Prompts: *be punctual, be late, read books/newspapers, wake up early/late, surf the Internet, call my friends, go to countryside/seaside, do work well, take photos, chat with colleagues, have a vacation, go skiing/skating, go swimming, go hiking, visit friends, play tennis/football.*



2.4 Adverbs of Place and Direction

Adverbs of place and direction: ***here*** *(здесь, сюда)*, ***there*** *(там, туда)*, ***where*** *(куда, где)*, ***somewhere***, ***anywhere*** *(где-нибудь, где-то, куда-нибудь)*, ***nowhere*** *(нигде, никуда)*, ***elsewhere*** *(где-нибудь, в другом месте)*, ***far away/far off*** *(далеко)*, ***near*** *(близко)*, ***inside*** *(внутри)*, ***outside*** *(снаружи, наружу)*, ***above*** *(выше, наверху)*, ***below*** *(ниже, внизу)*.

Adverbs of place usually go at the end of the sentence:

- How long are they going to stay **here**?

Somewhere is used in affirmative sentences:

- I left my umbrella **somewhere**.

Anywhere – in questions and negative sentences:

- Are you going **anywhere** tomorrow?
- I can't find my dictionaries **anywhere**.

Nowhere is used in short answers:

- Where did you go after supper? – **Nowhere**.

ДАЛЕКО

far (in questions and negative sentences)
- ❑ Did you walk **far**?
- ❑ They don't like to walk **far**.

a long way (in affirmative sentences)
- ❑ We walked **a long way** yesterday.

far away (off) («на большом расстоянии» – in questions and negative sentences)
- ❑ Is the station **far away (off)**?
- ❑ They don't live **far away (off)**.

a long way off (in affirmative sentences)
- ❑ They live **a long way off**.

Слишком / Так + далеко — ***too / so*** | ***far***
- ❑ They walked **too far**.
- ❑ We walked **so far** that we got tired.

Довольно / Очень + далеко — ***rather a long way (off)*** / ***a very long way (off)***
- ❑ We walked **rather a long way**.
- ❑ They live **a very long way off**.

BUT: ***Far from***
- ❑ The station is **far from** our house.

EXERCISE



11 **(B, C) Translate into English, paying attention to the words in italics.**

1. Станция метро очень *близко* от нашего дома. 2. Я *никуда* не ходил вчера. 3. *Куда* ты пойдёшь в субботу? – *Никуда*. 4. Куда вы ездили в отпуск? – *Никуда*. 5. Вы *куда-нибудь* пойдёте сегодня вечером? – Если я не устану, я пойду *куда-нибудь*, но если я устану, я *никуда* не пойду. 6. Мы не пошли на озеро, потому что оно было очень *далеко*. 7. Я люблю гулять с собакой *далеко*, а мой друг не любит гулять *далеко*. 8. Вокзал *далеко*, вам придётся поехать на автобусе. 9. Почтовое отделение *далеко* отсюда? 10. Эта школа *далеко* от центра города. 11. Нам надо выйти рано, потому что мы пойдём *далеко*. 12. Вы живёте *далеко*? 13. Его дом очень *далеко* отсюда. 14. Они вернулись очень *поздно*, так как они ходили *далеко*. 15. Мы будем плавать каждый день перед завтраком, так как река *недалеко*. 16. Поезжайте туда автобусом, так как ближайшая станция метро довольно *далеко*. 17. Я редко хожу в театр, так как живу очень *далеко* от города.

2.5 Adverbs of Degree, Measure and Quantity

Adverbs of degree, measure and quantity: ***much*** *(много)*, ***little*** *(мало)*, ***very*** *(очень)*, ***too*** *(слишком)*, ***so*** *(так)*, ***rather*** *(довольно)*, ***enough*** *(достаточно)*, ***quite*** *(совсем)*, ***not at all*** *(совсем не)*, ***hardly/scarcely*** *(едва)*, ***nearly/almost*** *(почти)*, ***somewhat*** *(несколько, до некоторой степени)*, ***much/far/by far*** *(намного, гораздо, значительно)*, etc.

Adverbs of degree usually go before adjectives, adverbs or main verbs but after auxiliary verbs:

- We were **very** glad to see them.
- The student passed the exam **quite** well.
- I **absolutely** enjoyed our trip.
- I don't **quite** understand what he means.

NOTES:

МНОГО

much (in questions and negative sentences)
- Has he read **much**?

very (too, so, as) much/a lot/a great deal (in affirmative sentences)
- He plays football **too much**.
- He has done **a lot today**.

МАЛО

not much (in negative sentences)
- He **doesn't speak much** about it. (Он *мало говорит* об этом.)

very/too/so little (in affirmative sentences)
- She eats **very little**.
- You rest **too little**.

ОЧЕНЬ

very to strengthen
- adjectives: Martha is **very ill**.
- adjective + noun: John is **a very nice man**.
- adverbs: He answered **very quickly**.

very much goes with
- comparatives: She is **very much better**.
- verbs: I **like** your painting **very much**.

We often use *extremely*, *awfully*, *terribly*, *really*, *pretty* for special emphasis like *"very"*:

- I'm **extremely** sleepy.
- It's **awfully/terribly** expensive.
- The girl is **pretty** smart.

СЛИШКОМ

too + adjective/adverb
- The tea is **too hot**, I can't drink it.
- The bus runs **too slowly**.

Two Meanings of *Too*

Too changes its meaning according to position:

- The coffee is **too hot** to drink. («слишком»)
- The croissant is freshly-made and the coffee is hot, **too**. («также»)

We use *too* at the end of an affirmative sentence to mean *"also"*:

- Billy can already read and he can write, **too**.

In the negative, we should use *either* in place of *too*:

- Billy can't write yet and he can't read, **either**.

We use *also* and *as well* like *too* («также») in affirmative sentences. We replace them by *either* in negative sentences.
As well goes at the end of a clause or sentence:

- I bought this bag and I bought these shoes to go with it, **as well**.

Also normally comes:
– after *to be/have/can*:

- Susan is an engineer but she **is also** a mother.

– after the first auxiliary verb:

- I should have collected the letters and I **should also** have posted them.

– before the main verb:

- I play volleyball and I **also play** tennis.

ПОЧТИ

hardly/scarcely + *any/ever*

- There were **hardly/scarcely any** people in the street.
  (На улице *почти* не было людей.)
- I **hardly/scarcely ever** see him.
  (Я *почти* никогда не вижу его.)

nearly/almost

- It is **nearly/almost** 5 o'clock.
  (Сейчас *почти* 5 часов.)
- I've **nearly/almost** finished my work.
  (Я *почти* окончил свою работу.)

ДОВОЛЬНО

quite + adjective/adverb

- The film is **quite good**.
- I see him **quite often**.

fairly + adjective/adverb (less complimentary than *quite*)

- What's John's English like? | It's **quite good**. (complimentary) / It's **fairly good**. (less complimentary)

rather (stronger than *quite* and *fairly*; often goes with "bad" adjectives)

- I am afraid Jane's health is **rather poor**.
- Your words have been **rather unpleasant**.
- The ice-cream is **rather good**. ("surprisingly good")

When *quite* goes in front of ordinary adjectives *(quite good)*, adverbs *(quite slowly)* and a few verbs *(I quite enjoy)*, it has the meaning "less than". When *quite* goes in front of "absolute" adjectives *(dead, full, empty)* and "strong" adjectives *(amazing, wonderful)* it means "completely":

- I **quite liked** the play.
- The bucket is **quite full**.
- The book is **quite wonderful**.

EXERCISES



12 **(A, B) Fill in *very*, *too* or *very much*. In some cases two answers may be possible.**

Model: I hear they are *very* happy.

1. I can't go ..... faster than I'm going. 2. Slow down. You're walking ..... fast for me. 3. She didn't think my answer was ..... clever. 4. I can't afford it. It's ..... expensive. 5. Our firm is

..... interested in this project. 6. I didn't enjoy the film ..... . 7. I trusted you from the ..... beginning. 8. My new car is ..... faster than the old one. 9. We were ..... early but they were already waiting for us. 10. We were ..... early, the museum wasn't open yet. 11. We have ..... missed you. 12. You have been working ..... much lately.

13 (A, B) Complete these responses, using *very*, *too*, *very much* and *too much*.

Model: How did you enjoy your stay in England? – I enjoyed it *very much*.

1. So you didn't marry Steve in the end! – No, he is ..... stupid. 2. Will you buy this dress? – No, it costs ..... . 3. Is that lobster alive? – Yes, it's ..... alive! 4. Was it heavy? – Yes, ... ! 5. Are you glad? – Yes, ... ! 6. Did you spend a lot of time on it? – Yes, ... ! 7. I don't like the autumn here. – Neither do I. There's ..... rain. 8. Why aren't you buying that coat? – It's ..... short for me. 9. Their house is very big! – Yes, but not ..... big! 10. Are the children still awake? – Yes, they're ..... awake! 11. How is the business going? – Not ..... well, I'm afraid.

14 (B, C) Fill in the blanks with adverbs synonymous to *very*.

Model: This film is *awfully* dull.

1. We are ..... interested in your proposal. 2. I was ..... surprised by her answer. 3. That task is ..... difficult! 4. I was ..... bored to play. 5. We were all ..... alarmed by your words. 6. I'm ..... sorry about this. 7. Your advice has been ..... helpful. 8. What you did was ..... dangerous. 9. You think you're ..... clever. 10. He was ..... hurt in the accident. 11. This computer is ..... fast. 12. You must be ..... attentive and careful on that part of the road.

15 (B, C) CONTEXT. Translate the words in brackets.

Justly Punished

There were (слишком много людей) (1)..... ..... on the bus for comfort and passengers were standing in the aisle. A young woman carrying a baby was (очень благодарна) (2)..... ..... when an old man offered her his seat. The baby was (крепко спал) (3)..... and she could now rest him on her lap. She thanked the old man (очень) (4)..... and was just going to sit down when a rude young man took the empty seat. Everyone was (ужасно смущён) (5)..... and the young mother was (слишком удивлена) (6)..... to say anything. All the passengers (очень не одобряли) (7)..... of the man's action. They were (страшно сердиты) (8)..... with him but he paid no attention. (Гораздо позже) (9)..... , the rude man wanted to get off the bus and tried to push past the passengers. They all stood closely together and wouldn't let him move. He was made to stay on the bus till it reached its terminus, a punishment he (справедливо заслужил) (10)..... .



16 (A, B) Use *too* in your sentences and say which meaning it has in each sentence.

Model: You can't swim in this lake. (cold) – *It's too cold.*
Lake Ladoga is very deep and it is also cold. – *And it's cold, too.*

1. I invited Paul and I also invited Margaret.
   – ..... .
2. We won't go to the wood. (far)
   – ..... .

3. We didn't stay in that hotel. (expensive)
– .....
4. We didn't stay in that hotel. It was rather old and also expensive.
– .....
5. I can speak English and I also can speak French.
– .....
6. I can't drink the tea. (hot)
– .....

17 (A, B) Add *too* or *either*.

Model: I like opera and I like ballet, *too*.

1. I know Jason and I know his sister, ...
2. I don't smoke and I don't drink alcohol, ...
3. He runs a restaurant and a hotel, ...
4. I can't play the piano and I can't sing, ...
5. Don't tell mother and don't tell Greg, ...
6. I don't know and I don't care, ...
7. He can do it and he can do it well, ...

18 (B, C) Show where *also* goes in these sentences.

Model: She can read and she can write.
– *She can read and she can also write.*

1. I have had a rest and I've had a shower.
– .....
2. She can knit and she can sew.
– .....
3. You should have phoned and you should have written.
– .....
4. I have to write a letter and I have to do some exercises.
– .....
5. I'd like a cup of coffee and I'd like some sandwiches, please.
– .....
6. He owns this hotel and he owns a chain of shops in the city.
– .....
7. I won't let you watch TV now because the film is stupid and it's too late.
– .....

19 (B, C) CONTEXT. Translate the words in brackets, paying special attention to the words in italics.

A Safe Place

My aunt Millie always said she had some jewels which she would leave to me but when she died she didn't leave any money and she (не оставила мне *также* и драгоценностей) (1)..... .

(*Даже* моя мама) (2)..... was surprised.

"I know she had some rings and (a *также* замечательные бусы) (3)..... . (Я видела их *только однажды*) (4)..... , but perhaps she sold them."

My mother and I looked (*везде*, *повсюду*) (5)..... : we looked in the bedrooms, in the bathroom, in the attic but we found nothing.

"(Милли была *так* осторожна) (6)..... and was afraid of burglars," Mother said, "but I don't think she hid her jewels somewhere."

"Let's go home and we'd better take all the food from the deep freeze." On Sunday, Mother said to me, "I'm going to cook this lovely goose which was in your aunt Millie's deep freeze. (Я *также* подготовлю начинку) (7)..... and you can stuff the goose."

Five minutes later I screamed with surprise: the goose was full of jewels and (здесь были *также* золотые монеты) (8)..... .

20 (B, C) Answer these questions in full with *quite* and say whether *quite* means *"less than"* or *"completely"*.

Model: What was the play like? (good) – *The play was quite good. (less than)*

1. How was the trip? (amazing)
.....
2. What's Pam like? (wonderful)
.....
3. How was the film? (awful)
.....
4. How was your holiday? (enjoy)
.....
5. How did you like his poem? (like)
.....

21 (B, C) Add *quite* and *fairly*. Mark as *"complimentary"*, *"less complimentary"* or *"completely"*.

Model: He draws *quite/fairly* well.
("complimentary"/"less complimentary")

1. The party was ..... spoilt.
   .....
2. I feel ..... well.
   .....
3. She's ..... clever.
   .....
4. I think the old man ..... mad.
   .....
5. This is ..... incredible!
   .....

22 (C) CONTEXT. Translate the words in brackets using *any*, *many*, *much*, *rather*, *fairly*, *quite*, etc.

Can We Go Home, Please?

It was (довольно поздно) (1)..... . The restaurant clock showed 1.30 a.m. The waiters were feeling (довольно усталыми) (2)..... and were beginning to yawn. There was one (довольно пожилая пара) (3)..... left. They had clearly had (довольно хорошо поели) (4)..... ..... . Now they were looking at each other across the table and were (совершенно не замечали) (5)..... of the world around them. The waiters wanted to go home. One of them asked the couple if they wanted (ещё поесть или выпить) (6)..... . He did not get an answer. It clearly (не было никакого смысла) (7)..... ..... asking questions! One of the waiters had (довольно хорошую идею) (8)..... . He began stacking chairs upside-down onto the tables.



The others joined in. Another waiter turned off the lights. In the end, the restaurant was (совершенно тёмный) (9)..... . The chairs were stacked on the tables round the couple who just sat and sat and sat!

23 (B, C) Translate into English.

I

1. Он мало спит. 2. Он мало отдыхает. 3. Она много путешествует. 4. Он много работает над английским языком? 5. Они мало работают. 6. Она много ест. 7. Он много читает.

II

1. Этот дом совсем старый. 2. Это пальто совсем новое. 3. Его шляпа не совсем новая. 4. Наш дом совсем готов. 5. Моя работа не совсем готова. 6. Уже совсем светло. 7. Сегодня не совсем тепло. 8. Я вполне понимаю вас. 9. Я не совсем понимаю вас.

III

1. В его работе почти нет ошибок. 2. В этой библиотеке почти нет английских книг. 3. Почти никто не знает об этом. 4. В поезде почти не было пассажиров. 5. У нас почти не осталось хлеба. 6. Мы почти ничего не видели, так было темно. 7. Я почти ни с кем не разговаривал вчера. 8. Мы почти никогда не ездим туда теперь. 9. Я так устал, что почти ничего не мог съесть.

J☺kes

* * *

- They put me in jail because I was making big money.
- What's wrong with that?
- The money was about a centimeter **too** big.

* * *

- When I was younger, I couldn't walk for a whole year.
- That's terrible. Why was that?
- I wasn't old **enough**.

2.6 Viewpoint Adverbs

Viewpoint adverbs: ***obviously/evidently*** *(очевидно)*, ***probably*** *(вероятно)*, ***possibly*** *(возможно)*, ***indeed*** *(действительно)*, ***certainly*** *(конечно, несомненно)*, ***perhaps***, ***maybe*** *(может быть)*, ***apparently*** *(по-видимому)*, ***decisively*** *(решительно)*, ***undoubtedly*** *(несомненно)*, ***practically*** *(практически, фактически)*, ***naturally*** *(естественно, разумеется)*, ***fortunately*** *(к счастью)*, ***unfortunately*** *(к несчастью)*, ***mainly/chiefly/mostly*** *(главным образом)*, etc.

Viewpoint adverbs usually go at the beginning of a sentence. They can also go after auxiliary verbs, the verb *to be*, before the main verb:

- **Perhaps** he'll be here at 9 o'clock tomorrow.
- **Unfortunately**, he came to the station too late and missed the train.
- **Naturally**, he got very angry with them.
- He will **probably** finish his work tonight.
- I was **indeed** very glad to hear the news.
- He **evidently** worked hard.

We may express our "viewpoint" in speech or in writing using adverbs like these:

- (= I am sure): *clearly, definitely, honestly, naturally, obviously, really, strictly speaking*;
- (= I am going to be brief): *anyhow, briefly, in brief, in effect, in a few words, in short*;
- (= I am expressing my opinion): *as far as I'm concerned, frankly, in my opinion, I think*.

EXERCISE



24 **(B, C) Match columns A and B.**

A	B
1. I am making a generalization	a. between ourselves
2. in the end	b. after all
3. I don't want you to discuss it with anybody else	c. in my view
4. as was to be expected	d. as a general rule
5. I am sure	e. frankly
6. I'm being honest	f. certainly
7. I'm expressing my opinion	g. naturally

Connecting Adverbs

We can connect ideas in speech or writing, using adverbs like these:

- (= I am adding something): *in addition, again, apart from this, besides, moreover*;
- (= I am comparing/contrasting): *as compared to, equally, however, in reality*;
- (= I am summarizing): *all in all, and so on, essentially, in brief, in conclusion, in effect*.

EXERCISES

25 **(B, C) Put in the suitable phrase from the column.**

(1)..... a lot of people I know, there are few things more terrifying than having to speak in public. (2)..... way to succeed is to follow strict rules. (3)..... you should be well-prepared. (4)..... you should have a few jokes ready. (5)..... you should rehearse your speech, (6)..... in front of a mirror. (7)..... being hit by a bus, public speaking isn't too bad, but it's bad enough. (8)..... you can make things easier for yourself by being ready. (9)..... you can do nothing and make a fool of yourself. (10)..... success depends entirely on you.



a. first of all
b. as well as that
c. in comparision with
d. the only
e. alternatively
f. however
g. second
h. according to
i. preferably
j. to sum up

26 **(B, C) CONTEXT. Give a free translation of the article, using *according to*, *agreeably*, *however*, *in brief*, *moreover*, *probably* instead of the words in italics.**

Не просите комнату с видом из окна

Цены на землю в Токио так высоки, что она стоит, *вероятно*(1), больше, чем вся Калифорния. Нигде во всём мире нет такого спроса на землю. *Согласно*(2) одной из газет, недостаток земли привел к созданию отелей-кабин. Комнаты представляют собой кабины размером один метр в высоту, 76 сантиметров в ширину и два метра в глубину. *Однако*(3) вы будете *приятно*(4) удивлены, узнав, что кабины оборудованы телефоном, радио и телевизором. *Более того*(5), они гораздо дешевле, чем обычные отели. *Короче говоря*(6), они обеспечивают вас всем, что необходимо, чтобы с комфортом провести ночь. Но не просите комнату с хорошим видом из окна.

3. Revision

EXERCISES

1 **(B) For the adverbs in brackets, find the correct place in the sentences (consult the rules and Appendix 5).**

1. He speaks English (very well). 2. He comes to help them in the garden (often). 3. He doesn't understand (still). 4. They met at the station (always). 5. Do they come to see you (ever)? 6. Please, cross the road (carefully). 7. I think of this problem (often). 8. He has been admired by everybody (greatly). 9. He is the first to answer (always). 10. Have you seen him (ever)? 11. Have you seen him (yet)? 12. The teacher has not come (yet). 13. I shall be glad to help you (always). 14. I've tried to understand you (always). 15. I have

heard of it (often). 16. He gets up before noon (never). 17. It was late in the day and the sun had disappeared (almost). 18. They have left (already). 19. The sun is shining (today, brightly). 20. You can expect him to do it (hardly). 21. She forgot about it (quite). 22. He broke the window with his ball (nearly). 23. It rains here in autumn (scarcely). 24. They will arrive (tomorrow, here).

2 (B) Translate the following, into Russian. Say whether the words in italics are adjectives or adverbs.

1. a) It has cost me a *pretty* penny.
   b) They found themselves in a *pretty* embarrassing situation.
2. a) I watched the fighters at *close* quarters.
   b) He kept *close* to the shade of the forest.
3. a) This is the *right* way to do it.
   b) She lives *right* around the corner.
4. a) Go *straight*, then turn left.
   b) He always says his jokes with a perfectly *straight* face.
5. a) I don't like *fast* food restaurants.
   b) When I came back, he was *fast* asleep.
6. a) The sportsman dived *deep* and emerged at the other end of the pool.
   b) They had to dig a well some hundred metres *deep* to get to the water.
7. a) You look quite *ill*.
   b) She often speaks *ill* of her colleagues.
8. a) It was still *early* morning when he returned.
   b) We returned very *early*.
9. What must be done, must be done *well*.

3 (C) Translate into English.

I

1. Я где-то читал об этом. 2. Вы куда-нибудь ходили вчера вечером? 3. Я никуда не посылал его вчера. 4. Куда вы пойдёте сегодня вечером? – Никуда. 5. Я никогда не смотрю футбол по телевизору. 6. Я с ним однажды говорил об этом. 7. Уже совсем светло. 8. Он достаточно умён, чтобы понять это. 9. Я едва понимал его. 10. Я был так удивлён, что не знал, что сказать. 11. Он работает очень упорно. 12. Вы много работаете над английским языком? 13. Я тоже ничего не слышал об этом. 14. Вы тоже смотрели этот фильм? 15. Кто ещё будет принимать участие в этой работе? 16. Он ещё спит. 17. Он ещё не вернулся. 18. Он говорит очень медленно.

II

1. Она обычно начинает работу в 11 часов утра. 2. Я за последнее время прочёл несколько очень интересных книг. 3. Сейчас слишком поздно туда идти. 4. Вы должны идти туда немедленно, иначе вы опоздаете. 5. Я устал; всё же я должен пойти туда сегодня вечером. 6. Этот рассказ слишком труден для него; кроме того, он не очень интересный. 7. Наденьте пальто, а то вы простудитесь. 8. Она пишет мне гораздо чаще, чем вы. 9. Мы редко видимся, потому что живём далеко друг от друга. 10. Театр далеко? – Да, он довольно далеко, мы поедем на метро. 11. Я уже давно знаю об этом. 12. Чем дольше я живу здесь, тем больше мне здесь нравится. 13. Кент справедливо называется садом Англии. 14. Я вас правильно понял? 15. Мы благополучно добрались до дома, хотя было очень темно. 16. Чем раньше вы придёте, тем скорее мы кончим работу. 17. Сегодня довольно-таки холодно. 18. Он недавно вернулся из командировки.

4. Tests

I

1. Я где-то оставил свою авторучку.
2. Я никуда не хочу идти сегодня вечером.
3. Однажды утром мы пошли в лес.
4. Как, вы уже вернулись?
5. Ему уже двенадцать лет.
6. Газета уже пришла?
7. У нас достаточно времени, чтобы успеть на поезд.
8. Я почти никогда с ним не разговариваю.
9. В саду почти не было цветов.
10. Совещание продолжалось долго.
11. Я уверен, что кто-нибудь ещё к нам присоединится.
12. Вы с кем-нибудь ещё говорили об этом?

II

1. Он очень хорошо говорит по-французски.
2. Я теперь часто буду заходить к вам.
3. Его никогда не бывает дома днём.
4. Вы всегда можете получить эти книги в нашей библиотеке.
5. Я чувствовал себя плохо, поэтому я пошёл прямо домой.
6. Я должен сделать это сегодня, а то он рассердится.
7. Я чуть не забыл позвонить им по телефону.
8. Он приходит сюда ещё чаще, чем она.
9. Я разговаривал с ними недолго.
10. Я тоже поеду туда летом.
11. Мы были в зоопарке очень давно.
12. Он очень молод, но он очень хороший специалист.

III

1. Чем интереснее книга, тем быстрее вы читаете её.
2. Только высококвалифицированный рабочий может управлять этим станком.
3. Я был глубоко тронут его интересом к моей статье.
4. Смотрите мне прямо в глаза.
5. В этом году мы собрали яблок в три раза больше, чем в прошлом.
6. Он бежал очень быстро и уже едва мог дышать.
7. Женщина тяжело вздохнула.
8. Мы вернулись домой очень поздно.
9. Все эти события тесно связаны между собой.
10. Мы живём совсем близко от метро.
11. Мы поздно вернёмся завтра, так как пойдём далеко.
12. Самолёт летел высоко в небе, он был едва заметен.

THE VERBALS
(the non-finite forms of the verb)

The verb has finite and non-finite forms, the latter being also called the Verbals. The Verbals do not express person, number or mood, that is why they cannot be used as the predicate of a sentence.

There are three verbals in English: **the Gerund**, **the Infinitive** and **the Participle**.

In Russian we also have three non-finite forms but they do not fully coincide with those in the English language (причастие, деепричастие, инфинитив).

1. The Gerund

1.1 Forms / Use of the Gerund

	Active	Passive
Simple (Indefinite)	writing	being written
Perfect	having written	having been written

(for Spelling Rules, see Appendix 4)

In modern English the Gerund is widely used and competes with the Infinitive: some verbs are followed by an *ing*-form, others by a *to*-infinitive.

The Verbs Used with the Gerund or the Infinitive

The most common verbs followed by the Gerund:

1. verbs of thinking and saying: *admit, anticipate, consider, deny, discuss, forgive, imagine (form a picture in mind), mention, recall, recollect, remember, suggest*, understand*

- ❑ I don't *recall* **meeting** the man.
- ❑ He *suggested* **going** to the disco.
- ❑ We *consider* **buying** a house.

The most common verbs followed by the Infinitive:

1. verb + *to*-Infinitive: *afford, attempt, agree, arrange, decide, demand, expect, fail, forget, hesitate, hope, mean (intend), manage, offer, plan, prepare, pretend, promise, propose*, refuse, tend, want, wish*, etc.

- ❑ She *agreed* **to let** us use her flat.
- ❑ I *decided* **to go** out for the evening.

2. verbs of liking and disliking: *like, love, enjoy, fancy, adore, dislike, hate, resent, detest, dread, mind*

- ❑ I *don't like* **writing** letters.
- ❑ I *dread* **going** to the dentist.
- ❑ I hope you'll *enjoy* **using** the player.

3. other common verbs: *avoid, excuse, delay, include, involve, keep, miss, postpone, practice, resist, risk*

- ❑ You can hardly *avoid* **meeting** her.
- ❑ We've just *missed* **having** a nasty accident.
- ❑ My work *involves* **filing** and **typing** letters.

4. verbs denoting the progress of an action (from start to finish): *begin*, start*, commence, continue*, go on, finish, stop**, etc.

- ❑ I've just *finished* **reading** the book.
- ❑ She *stopped* **crying** and looked at me.

5. verbs: *want, need, deserve, require*, meaning "be in need of, require, lack." (After such verbs the Gerund is used in the active form though it is passive in meaning.)

- ❑ The room *needs* **painting**.
- ❑ The child *deserves* **praising**.

- ❑ She *failed* **to win** a place in the finals.

2. verb + object + *to*-Infinitive: *advise*, allow*, encourage*, force/make, help, invite, order, permit*, persuade, recommend*, remind, teach, warn, catch, find, notice, see*, etc.

- ❑ He *invited* **the friends to come** over.
- ❑ They *advised* **us to take** this road.

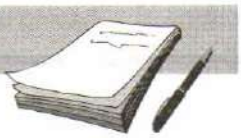
3. verbs used with both the structures "verb + *to*-Infinitive" and "verb + object + Infinitive": *ask, want, expect, help, remind, threaten*, etc.

- ❑ They *asked* **to keep** quiet. She *asked* **us to keep** quiet.
- ❑ The boy *wanted* **to play**. He *wanted* **me to play** with him.

NOTE

* the marked verbs (*) have some usage peculiarities, see 1.3. Verbs Used with the Gerund and the Infinitive.

EXERCISES



1 (A) Do you know which verbs are followed by infinitives and which by gerunds? Make two lists.

Need, avoid, adore, offer, mention, agree, consider, warn, delay, hope, recall, postpone, dread, threaten, keep, imagine, invite, tend, suggest, demand, involve, hesitate, detest, fail, enjoy, resent, miss, pretend, anticipate, plan, arrange, risk, deserve, expect, practise, help, order.

The Gerund .....
.....
.....
The Infinitive .....
.....
.....

2 (A) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. Could you please stop making so much noise? 2. I don't enjoy writing letters. 3. Does your work involve meeting a lot of people? 4. I considered taking the job but in the end I decided against it. 4. I don't fancy going out this evening. 5. The batteries of this radio need changing. 6. Do you think the grass needs cutting? 7. He denied taking the drugs. 8. He suggested meeting her at the cafe. 9. I don't mind telling you. 10. Avoid giving unnecessary information. 11. I simply adore cooking.

3 (A, B) Write Gerund forms for the words in brackets.

1. The baby started crying when he woke up and went on (cry) ..... all the morning. 2. Imagine (keep) ..... a snake as a pet! 3. Please go on (write) ..... ; I don't mind (wait) ..... . 4. He heard the

alarm-clock (ring) ..... but kept on (lie) ..... in bed. 5. The taxi-driver tried to stop in time but he couldn't avoid (hit) ..... the old woman. 6. At first I enjoyed (listen) ..... to him but after a while I got tired of hearing the same story again and again. 7. My watch keeps (stop) ..... . – That's because you keep (forget) ..... to wind it up. 8. I suggest (telephone) ..... the hospitals before asking the police to look for him. 9. Could you consider (reduce) ..... the price? 10. This new production process might involve (increase) ..... the staff. 11. They delayed (play) ..... the game because of the rain.

4 (B) Open the brackets, using the Gerund.

Model: His hair is very long, it needs *cutting*.

1. This shirt is quite clean; it doesn't want (wash) ..... yet. 2. The grass in the garden is very dry; it wants (water) ..... badly. 3. The baby's crying; I think he needs (feed) ..... . 4. The house is old and badly wants (paint) ..... . 5. The windows are very dirty; they need (clean) ..... . 6. I know my hair wants (cut) ..... but I never have time to go to the hairdresser's. 7. The famous man didn't need (introduce) ..... himself. 8. Her shoes have a hole in them; they want (mend) ..... . 9. The floor is covered with dust; it needs (sweep) ..... . 10. You should tidy the room. – Yes, it needs (tidy) ..... . The flowers want (water) ..... and the shelves want (dust) ..... .

5 (A, B) Complete the sentences using the appropriate ending: the Gerund or the Infinitive. Choose the verbs from the box below.

have a picnic, read it, help me, take his pill, go to parties, call her, make the same mistake again, break it, get married, give up smoking, have one this year, take the risk

1. Could you return the book I lent you? Sure, when I've finished *reading* it. 2. I'm sorryabout your cut-glass vase. I didn't mean ..... . 3. He tried to avoid ..... . 4. I should warn you. Chris has a very short memory so you should remind him ..... . 5. Have you heard the news? After being engaged for six years, Steve and Mary decided ..... . 6. We'd love a holiday this year but we can't afford ..... . 7. Have you made any plans for the weekend? – Yes, we have arranged ..... . 8. Oh no! It was Mother's birthday yesterday and I forgot ..... . 9. At first Rosy refused but after a while we persuaded her ..... . 10. These suitcases are very heavy. Would you mind ..... . ? 11. Mr. Brown wasn't at all happy after visiting his doctor. He advised him ..... . 12. As for me, I simply love ..... .

After the verbs *come* and *go* we often use the Gerund related to outdoor activities:
go climbing/driving/fishing/riding/sailing/shopping/skiing/walking/swimming/dancing, etc.

- Why don't you **come sailing** with us?
- Let's **go skiing**.
- I'd better not **catch you doing** that again

6 (A) What can you do in these places?



1. *Go fishing*



2. .....



3. .....



4. .....



6. .....



5. .....

Prepositions + Gerund

The Gerund is also used after:

1. Prepositions

after	*in spite of*
before	*on*
besides	*without*
instead of	*by*

- They ran five miles *without* **stopping**.
- *Before* **going** to bed, she locked the door.
- John went to his office *in spite of* **being ill**.

2. Verbs followed by prepositions:

accuse of	*insist on*
apologize for	*object to*
approve of	*persist in*
blame smb for	*prevent from*
forgive for	*result in*
congratulate on	*stop from*
count on	*succeed in*
depend on	*suspect smb of*
hear of	*thank for*
inform of	*think of*

- They *succeeded in* **finding** a good flat.
- Can you *stop* the child *from* **getting** into mischief?
- *Thank* you *for* **coming**.
- He *was accused* of **having broken** the law.
- He *insisted on* **coming** with us.
- Who is *to blame for* **starting** the fire?
- Are you *thinking of* **buying** a house?

3. Phrasal verbs:

burst out	*leave off*
give up	*keep on*
go on	*put off*, etc

- He *gave up* **smoking** two years ago.
- She *kept on* **interrupting** me while I was speaking.

4. Nouns used with prepositions:

art of	*opportunity of*
chance of	*plan for*
difficulty (in)	*point in; of*
experience in	*preparation for*
habit of	*process of*
harm of	*purpose of*
idea of	*reason for*
importance of	*right of*
interest in	*sense of*
means of	*skill in*
mistake of	*way of*

- The *importance of* **being** earnest.
- There is no *chance of* **winning**.
- We had no *opportunity of* **meeting** interesting people there.
- I have no *experience in* **building** houses.
- There are different *ways of* **solving** this problem.
- Do you have any *reason for* **saying** such a thing?

5. Word combinations:

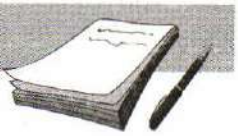
be afraid of	*be guilty of*
be angry for	*be interested in*
be aware of	*be keen on*
be bored with	*be pleased at*
be busy	*be proud of*
be capable of	*be responsible for*
be clever at	*be slow at*
be disappointed at	*be sorry for*
be engaged in	*be sure of*
be fond of	*be surprised at*
be good/clever at	*be worried about*
be grateful for	*be worth*

- There is *no use* **crying** over spilt milk.
- She *was afraid of* **falling**.
- He *is slow at* **doing** sums.
- He *is interested in* **developing** the project.
- She'*ll be sorry for* **being** rude.
- He *is proud of* **having won** the chess tournament.
- He *was surprised at* **having been asked** about it.

6. Set expressions such as:
can't stand/bear, can't help, it's no use, it's no good, what's the use of, there is no point in, have hard/difficult time, have difficulty in, look forward to, feel like, etc.

- It's *no use* **worrying** about it. There is nothing you can do.
- Did you have any *difficulty in* **getting** a visa?
- I *don't feel like* **having** a swim.
- He *couldn't help* **laughing**.
- I'*m looking forward to* **having** a break.

EXERCISES



7 **Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary.**

I. (A, B)

1. She only succeeded ..... blocking the way. 2. She showed no intention ..... leaving. 3. There is no point ..... staying. 4. He did not object ..... being examined. 5. I was not used ..... driving a big car through crowded streets. 6. She was surprisingly clever ..... finding out things. 7. How can I prevent her ..... going there? 8. I was thinking at the time ..... selling the place. 9. I can find that out ..... asking. 10. After all I'm personally responsible ..... bringing you back safe and sound. 11. They positively insisted ..... visiting all the rooms. 12. What are your reasons to accuse her ..... taking the papers? 13. I thanked him again ..... lending me the car.

II. (C)

1. Jones insisted ..... shaking hands. 2. I take all the blame ..... not seeing further than my nose. 3. Unfortunately, I haven't succeeded ..... making much impression on you. 4. He made a point ..... never sounding disappointed. 5. His mission had very little to do ..... winning the war. 6. He had never had much difficulty ..... getting jobs. The trouble had always been ..... keeping them. 7. She thanked him ..... taking her out. 8. He did not object ..... seeing Francis. 9. I shall look forward ..... seeing your book. 10. I thought ..... taking a trip up the Scandinavian coast. 11. Jack hesitated, then decided ..... talking. 12. I told him that we were about to be turned out of our flat ..... not paying the rent. 13. He put the note under a saucer on the table to keep it ..... being blown away.

8 (A) Match the parts of sentences in columns A and B.

1. It's difficult to keep them	a. sheltering in the barn.
2. The police caught him	b. coming from the house.
3. Will you please stop	c. opening the safe.
4. I can hear someone	d. discussing the problem.
5. They suggested	e. working all the time.
6. I could smell smoke	f. shouting in the distance.
7. The searchers found the boy	g. changing TV channels.

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	

9 Write the Gerund forms of the words in brackets.

I. (A, B)

1. Where is Ann? – She is busy (do) ..... her homework. 2. Let's go for a swim. – What about (go) ..... for a drive instead? 3. I intended to go to the cinema yesterday but my friend told me the film wasn't worth (see) ..... . 4. Do you feel like (go) ..... to a film or shall we stay at home? 5. It's no use (have) ..... a bicycle if you don't know how to ride it. 6. It's no use (ask) ..... children to keep quiet. They can't help (make) ..... noise. 7. There are people who can't help (laugh) ..... when they see someone slip on a banana skin. 8. I didn't feel like (work) ..... so I suggested (spend) ..... the day in the country. 9. What about (buy) ..... double quantities of everything today?

II. (B, C)

1. My father thinks I am not capable of (earn) ..... my own living. 2. I am tired of (do) ..... the same thing all the time. 3. He didn't leave the house because he was afraid of (meet) ..... someone who would recognize him. 4. I called at his house on the chance of (see) ..... him. 5. There is no point in (remain) ..... in a dangerous place if you can't do anything to help the people. 6. What's your idea of (do) ..... it? 7. He expects me to answer by return but I have no intention of (reply) ..... at all. 8. I'm not used to (drive) ..... on the left. 9. I want to catch the 7 a.m. train tomorrow. – But you are no good at (get) ..... up early, are you?

10 (B, C) Open the brackets, use the Gerund after prepositions.

1. By (neglect) ..... to take ordinary precautions he endangered the life of his crew. 2. After (hear) ..... – the conditions I decided not to enter for the competition. 3. After (walk) ..... for three hours we stopped to let the others catch up with us. 4. Don't forget to lock the door before (go) ..... to bed. 5. Why did you go all round the field instead of (walk) ..... across it? 6. He surprised us all by (go) ..... away without (say) ..... "good-bye". 7. Before (give) ..... evidence, you must swear to tell the truth. 8. She rushed out of the room without (give) ..... me a chance to explain.

J☺kes

Simple Means

YOUNG GIRL: Could you tell me, dear Aunt, how you have **succeeded in preserving** Uncle's love and respect through all these long years of your married life?

OLD AUNT: Well, my child, by very simple means, **by doing** all that pleased him and **by enduring** silently all that displeased me.

* * *

Gordon was blind and having trouble with his eyes.

– Doctor, I have developed this strange problem. Every time I have a cup of coffee I get a pain in my right eye.

– I **suggest taking** the spoon out of the cup before you drink next time.

1.2 Tense/Voice Distinctions of the Gerund

Like the finite forms the verbals have tense and voice distinctions, but their tense distinctions differ from those of the finite verbs.

The Tense Distinctions of the Gerund are Relative:

The Simple Gerund	**The Perfect Gerund**
denotes an action simultaneous with that of the predicate.	denotes an action prior to that of the predicate. It shows that the action of the Gerund happened before the action of the verb.
❑ He *avoided* **making** the mistake again.	❑ He *admitted* **having made** the mistake.

1. Prior action is not always expressed by a Perfect Gerund. In some cases we find a Simple Gerund when there is no need to show the priority of action:

– after the verbs: *remember*, *excuse*, *forgive*, *thank*, *admit*, etc.

– after the prepositions: *on (upon)*, *after*, *without*.

❑ He *admitted to* **having stolen/stealing** the car.

❑ I don't *remember* **hearing** the legend before.

❑ *After* **seeing** her friend off, she went home.

2. The Gerund has special forms for the Active and Passive Voice.

❑ He liked neither **reading** nor **being read** to.

EXERCISES



11 **(B) Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Gerund.**

1. He remembered (cross) ..... the road but he didn't remember (knock down) ..... . 2. I am still hungry in spite of (eat) ..... four sandwiches. 3. He got into the house by (climb) ..... through a window, without (see) ..... by anyone. 4. He woke up at 7 a.m. in spite of (work) ..... late. 5. He complained of (give) ..... a very small room at the back of the hotel. 6. The little girl isn't afraid of dogs in spite of (bite) ..... twice. 7. The baby went to sleep a few minutes after (feed) ..... . 8. The little girl never gets tired of (ask) ..... her mother questions but her mother often gets tired of (ask) ..... so many questions. 9. Mary was pleasantly surprised at (choose) ..... to fill that vacancy. 10. I always treat people politely and I insist on (treat) ..... politely. 11. The boy was very thirsty in spite of (drink) ..... a big cup of tea.

12 **Complete the following by translating the phrases in brackets, using the correct form of the Gerund. Insert prepositions where necessary.**

I. (B)

1. Theyprided themselves *on having invented the device* (что изобрели этот прибор). 2. They accused him ..... (в том, что он предал своих друзей). 3. I can't recall ..... (чтобы меня с ним когда-нибудь знакомили). I even don't remember ..... (что видел его). 4. He couldn't get used ..... (к левостороннему движению/водить машину по левой стороне). 5. She was quite unconscious ..... (что пришла в неудачный момент). 6. Excuse my .... (что я вошёл не постучав). 7. I'm really ashamed ..... (что так вёл себя на вечере). 8. She denied .....

..... (что обещала заглянуть к нам). 9. We hope he will succeed .... (найти своё место в жизни). 10. Why do you avoid ..... (смотреть на меня)?

II. (C)

1. From the age of four, I had been used to .... (делать всё по-своему). 2. I was not used to ..... (когда меня развлекают дамы (entertain)). 3. How proud I was of ..... (что изобрёл это замечательное устройство). 4. I was tired of always ..... (носить чужую одежду). 5. In the morning she was ashamed of herself for ..... (что была так груба вчера вчером). 6. He's merely used to .... (что за ним ухаживают). 7. He was grateful to Finch for ..... (что уговорил его зайти). 8. But they are used to ..... (иметь дело с настоящими бизнесменами (to deal)). 9. She wasn't fond of ..... (задавать множество вопросов). 10. At the time I was very keen on ..... (получить собственный доход).

13 (B, C) Replace the parts in bold type by gerundial phrases.

1. When she saw him, she stopped reading at once and put the letter away and **even did not explain anything**. ...*without even explaining anything*. 2. In this thick fog she was afraid **that she might be knocked down**. ..... . 3. He preferred to keep silent for fear **that he might say something inappropriate**. .... 4. He felt much better **after he had been operated on**. .... 5. **He was not only the author of brilliant short stories**,..... ..... . but he was also a talented playwright. 6. **When he had written his report**, ... he remembered that he had forgotten to mention some facts. 7. **When the girl entered the room**, ... she glanced a little wonderingly at the faces of the three men. 8. You will do nothing but irritate him **if you will nag him all the time**. ..... . 9. Samuel Griffiths came back from Chicago on this particular day, **after he had concluded several agreements there**. ..... .

14 Fill in the blanks with the Infinitive or Gerund of the verb in brackets.

I. (A, B)

1. I wished ..... quite fair. (be) 2. I expected ..... him in the drawing room. (find) 3. I enjoyed ..... to her talk of her youth. (listen) 4. Roger promised ..... in. (look) 5. I wanted ..... him up. (cheer) 6. She didn't mind ..... the problem again. (discuss) 7. He didn't hesitate ..... such methods. (employ) 8. We arranged ..... . (meet). 9. She couldn't resist ..... such a lovely hat. (buy) 10. Last week you mentioned ..... him in the park. (meet) 11. We can't afford ..... our time. (waste) 12. He sat there sullenly and refused ..... . (answer)

II. (B, C)

1. He enjoyed ..... (to need) 2. In my experience most people mind ..... at. (to laugh) 3. I knew that Charles had regretted ..... me. (to invite) 4. He pretended ..... when his mother came into his room to look at him. (to sleep) 5. He pretended not ..... as if the compliment were purely formal. (to hear) 6. He prefers ..... by the name of John Brown. (to know) 7. I don't like ..... with. (to interfere) 8. Bob asked ..... to a room where he could wash and change his clothes. (to show) 9. I disliked ..... Harry. (to call) 10. I didn't want ..... his feelings. (to hurt)

15 (A, B) Translate the sentences, using the models.

(Model 1:) *mind/like/hate/avoid/deny* **doing** smth

1. Я не мог избежать разговора с ней. 2. Я не отрицаю, что помогаю им. 3. Я не могу оправдать его работу на конкурирующую (rival) фирму. 4. Терпеть не могу ждать. 5. Стоит это читать? 6. Я ужасно не люблю тратить время зря. 7. Она ничего не имела против того, чтобы зайти ещё раз. 8. Он избегал выражать свое мнение. 9. Мне так неприятно оставлять тебя здесь.

Model 2: *way/intention/purpose/difficulty/harm/habit of* **doing** smth

1. У него не было ни малейшего намерения обманывать вас. 2. У меня и мысли не было разрешить ей остаться. 3. Он приехал сюда с целью помочь вам. 4. Наши шансы получить обед были очень малы. 5. Вреда в том не будет, если мы скажем ему правду. 6. У неё была привычка ложиться спать рано. 7. У меня не было возможности поговорить с ней об этом. 8. Не будет никакой трудности в том, чтобы найти место, где остановиться.

Model 3: *think of/object to/used to/succeed in* **doing** smth

1. Я не привыкла готовить себе завтрак. 2. Наконец мне удалось найти дорогу. 3. Он настаивал на том, чтобы оплатить счёт за обед. 4. Мы извинились за опоздание. 5. Я думаю о поездке в Америку этим летом. 6. Он поблагодарил их за то, что его выслушали. 7. Она настаивала, чтобы ей показали всё. 8. Вы подозреваете, что я вам лгу? 9. Его обвинили в краже автомобиля.

Model 4:

on *after* *before* *by* *through (because of)* *without* *in spite of*	**doing** smth

1. Он работает без остановки целый день. 2. Ты ничего не добьёшься, если будешь возражать. 3. Всё это надо обсудить до того, как принимать решение. 4. Вы можете исправить фигуру, делая гимнастику. 5. Он даст ответ, посоветовавшись со своим юристом. 6. Он прошёл мимо, не заметив нас. 7. Он упустил возможность поехать туда, потому что заболел. 8. Не делайте этого, не обдумав всё, как следует.

16 (B) Translate the following into English, using gerunds after the verbs in brackets. Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Я не виню тебя за то, что тебе так хочется уехать из города. (to blame) 2. Тогда я заподозрил его в том, что он меня дразнит. (to suspect) 3. Нам было нетрудно работать вместе. (to have no difficulty) 4. Не было ничего, что могло бы помешать ему вернуться в Лондон. (to prevent) 5. Он извинился, что не пришёл вовремя. (to apologize) 6. Мне удалось заставить Энн говорить. (to succeed) 7. Отец часто обвинял меня в том, что я отношусь к дому как к отелю. (to accuse) 8. Она настояла на том, чтобы заплатить за такси. (to insist) 9. Он настоял на том, чтобы Анну немедленно пригласили сюда. (to insist) 10. Он упрекал себя за то, что не попытался поговорить с ней. (to reproach)

17 (B, C) Translate the following into English, using gerunds after the adjectives in brackets. Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Я гордился тем, что работал с ним тогда. (proud) 2. Я знал, что он не способен так поступить. (capable) 3. Доктор привык выслушивать всяких людей. (used) 4. Мне жаль, что я тогда причинил вам так много беспокойства. (sorry) 5. Я уверен, что ты вполне способен решить эту проблему. (capable) 6. Мне надоело пытаться делать то, что мне не нравится. (tired) 7. Мне жаль, что я заставляю вас ждать. (sorry) 8. Я так довольна, что меня выбрали для выполнения этой миссии. (pleased) 9. Он отвечает за содержание сада и гаража в порядке. (responsible) 10. Он любил смеяться над теми, кто был робок. (be fond)

18 (B, C) Translate the following into English, using infinitives or gerunds. Make use of the words in brackets.

1. Вам повезло, что вы живёте в таком красивом месте. (lucky) 2. Её нижняя губа дрожала, словно она готова была разрыдаться. (ready) 3. Мама была занята приготовлением еды на кухне. (busy) 4. Песню стоило записать на плёнку. (worth) 5. Об этой новости стоило написать его отцу. (worth) 6. Он был очень доволен, что застал брата дома. (delighted) 7. Я не был заинтересован в том, чтобы продолжать спор. (be interested) 8. Его жена была в Лондоне. Она была занята тем, что искала для них новое жилье. (busy) 9. Я глубоко уважал её и гордился знакомством с нею. (proud) 10. Этого человека легко было понять. (easy) 11. Он был теперь полон решимости остаться там. (determined) 12. Это предложение не так легко было принять. (easy)

1.3 Verbs Used with the Gerund and the Infinitive

There are a few verbs which appear in more than one combination: with the Gerund and the Infinitive. These particular verbs have different patterns associated with meanings.

I. Verbs taking the Gerund or the Infinitive with a change in meaning

VERB	GERUND	INFINITIVE
stop *– останавливаться, прекращать*	❑ He *stopped* **smoking** on his doctor's advice. (= He doesn't smoke anymore)	❑ He *stopped* **to smoke**. (= in order to smoke)
like* *(love) – нравиться*	❑ I *like* **cooking** (= enjoy in general)	❑ I *like* **to cook** my meals. (find it good or right)
hate *– ненавидеть, не хотеть, испытывать неловкость*	❑ She *hates* **getting** to the theatre late. (= strong dislike)	❑ I *hate* **to trouble** you. (= regret)
remember *– помнить, напоминать («не забудь»)*	❑ I *remember* **posting** your letter. (= have a memory of the act)	❑ He *remembered* **to post** the letter. (= didn't forget to do it)
regret *– сожалеть*	❑ I *regret* **saying (having said)** that you were mistaken. (the action occurred earlier in time)	❑ I *regret* **to say** that you were mistaken. (= I am sorry that I must now tell you...)
try *– пытаться, стараться*	❑ *Try* **knocking** at the back door if nobody hears you at the front door. (= do smth as an experiment)	❑ *Try* **to get** here early. (= make an effort)
prefer *– предпочитать*	❑ I *prefer* **walking** to cycling. (in general)	❑ I *prefer* **to wait** here. (in particular/now)
be afraid (of) *– бояться*	❑ I don't like dogs. I'm always *afraid of* **being bitten**. (= there is a posibility that smth bad will happen)	❑ He *was afraid* **to tell** his parents that he had broken the neighbour's window. (= do not want to do smth because it is dangerous or the result might be unpleasant)
	You are **afraid to do** smth because you are **afraid of smth happening** as a result. ❑ I was **afraid to stay** in the sun because I was **afraid of getting** burnt.	

NB! * *Would like* is followed by the Infinitive. Notice the difference in meaning between *I like* and *I would like*. *I would like* is a polite way of saying *I want*.

- ❑ I **like** play**ing** tennis. (= I enjoy it in general)
- ❑ I **would like to play** tennis today. (= I want to play)

We can also use *I would love/prefer/hate* + Infinitive.

- ❑ **Would** you **prefer to have** dinner now or later?
- ❑ I'**d love to be able** to travel round the world.

II. Verbs taking the Gerund or the Infinitive without the change of meaning

1. *begin, to start, continue, propose, bother, intend*

NB! We never have two *ing*-forms together

- ❑ It's *starting* **to rain**. (not raining)
- ❑ Don't *bother* **making/to make** dinner for me.
- ❑ We *continued* **to talk/talking**.

2. *advise, allow, permit, recommend, encourage*

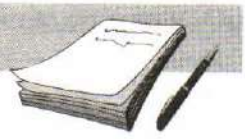
They take the Infinitive when followed by an object or when they are in the passive form.
They take the Gerund when they are not followed by an object.

- ❑ He *advised us* **to book** in advance. (verb + object)
- ❑ We were *advised* **to book** in advance. (verb in the passive form)
- ❑ We *advise* **booking** in advance.

III. There are some verbs which can be followed by the Gerund or a *that*-clause

VERB	GERUND	*THAT*-CLAUSE
1. ***admit*** – *признавать*	❑ He *admitted* **having done** wrong.	❑ He *admitted* (**that**) he had made the same mistake again.
2. ***report*** – *сообщать*	❑ He *reported* **having seen** the escaped convict.	❑ It is *reported* **that** the expedition has already come back.
3. ***deny*** – *отрицать*	❑ He *denied* **knowing** anything about the plan.	❑ I *denied* (**that**) the statement was true.
4. ***suggest*** – *предлагать*	❑ I *suggest* **going** home.	❑ I *suggested* **that** he should see a specialist immediately.
5. ***fancy*** – *нравиться, воображать, представлять себе*	❑ She *didn't fancy* **going** out. (= like the idea)	❑ I *fancy* **that** he is in for a disappointment. (= get the idea)
6. ***imagine*** – *воображать*	❑ I can't *imagine* **marrying** a girl of that sort. (= form a picture in the mind)	❑ Don't *imagine* **that** I can lend you money every time you need it. (= get the idea)
7. ***propose*** – *предлагать*	❑ I *propose* **starting/to start** early.	❑ I *propose* **that** we should start early.

EXERSICES



19 **(A) Your friend has some problems and you are trying to be helpful. Write questions with *try*.**

Model: I can't find anywhere to live. (place an advertisement in the newspaper)
Have you tried placing an advertisement in the newspaper?

1. My electric shaver is not working. (change the batteries) .....
2. I can't contact Fred. He is not at home. (phone/at work) .....
3. I can't sleep at night. (take sleeping pills) .....
4. The television picture is not very good. (move the aerial) .....

20 **(A) Answer the questions, using the Gerund of the verbs in brackets.**

Model: – Why do you never fly? (hate)
– I hate **flying**.

1. Why do you always wear a hat? (like) .....
2. Why does Ann watch TV so often? (enjoy) .....
3. Why do you never go to the cinema? (not/like) .....
4. Why does Jack take so many photographs? (like) .....
5. Why don't you work in the evening? (hate) .....

21 **(A, B) Put the verb into the correct form: *-ing* or *to*-Infinitive.**

1. Do you mind (travel) ..... such a long way to work every day?
2. Ann loves (cook) ..... but she hates (wash) ..... up.
3. I can't stand people (tell) ..... me what to do when I'm driving.
4. I don't like that house. I would hate (live) ..... there.
5. Do you like (drive) ..... ?
6. When I have to catch a train, I'm always worried about missing it. So I like (get) ..... to the station in plenty of time.
7. I very much enjoy (listen) ..... to classical music.
8. I would love (come) ..... to your wedding but it just isn't possible.
9. Sometimes I'd like (learn) ..... to play the guitar.

22 **(A, B) Read about each situation and use the words in brackets to write your sentence.**

Model: The streets are unsafe at night. (I/afraid/go out/alone) *I am afraid to go out alone.*

1. I don't usually carry my passport with me. (I/afraid/lose/it) .....
2. The sea is very rough. (we/afraid/go/swimming) .....
3. We rushed to the station. (we/afraid/miss/our train) .....
4. I didn't tell Tom that I thought he behaved foolishly. (I/afraid/hurt/his feelings) .....
5. In the middle of the film there was a horrifying scene. (we/afraid/look) .....
6. The glasses were very full so Ann carried them very carefully. (she/afraid/spill/the drinks) .....
7. I didn't like the look of the food in my plate. a) (I/afraid/eat/it); b) (I/afraid/make/myself/ill) .....

23 **(B, C) There are a few verbs which can take a gerund or an infinitive but the meaning is not the same. Use gerunds or infinitives in place of the verbs in brackets.**

I

1. We saw this film last month. Do you remember (see) ..... it? 2. He was very forgetful. He never remembered (lock) ..... the garage door when he put the car away. 3. Don't ask me to pay the bill again. I clearly remember (pay) ..... it a month ago. 4. Did you remember (buy) ..... bread for dinner? – Yes, I have

the bread here. 5. Do you remember (post) ..... the letter? – Yes, I remember quite clearly; I posted it in the letter-box near my gate. 6. Did you remember (air) ..... the room? – No, I didn't. I'll go back and do it now. 7. Did you remember (give) ..... him the message? – No, I didn't. I'll go and do it now.

II

1. She forgot (bring) ..... the sugar; she left it on the kitchen table. 2. Where is my dictionary? Have you forgotten (borrow) ..... it a fortnight ago? 3. She often told her little boy, "You must never forget (say) ..... 'please' and 'thank you'."

III

1. Do stop (talk) ..... ; I am trying to finish a letter. 2. I didn't know how to get to your house so I stopped (ask) ..... the way. 3. We stopped once (buy) ..... petrol and then we stopped again (ask) ..... someone the way.

24 (B, C) Complete the sentences with the Gerund or the Infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

1. If the Government's wages policy is to succeed, they must try (keep) ..... prices in check.
2. Let's invite him. I'm sure he would love (come) ..... .
3. We plan (take) ..... our holidays abroad this year.
4. The teacher doesn't permit (smoke) ..... during the lessons.
5. I always try (be) ..... punctual but I don't always succeed.
6. A child should start (learn) ..... a language at primary school.
7. The film was so terrifying that she could hardly bear (watch) ..... it.
8. They began (drive) ..... at six in the morning and were still on the road ten hours later.
9. He remembered (pass) ..... on most of the information but omitted (mention) ..... one or two of the most important facts.

25 (B, C) Complete the jokes by adding an appropriate verb in the right form.

1. My dog digs holes in my garden all the time. What can I do about it? Have you ..... hiding a spade?



2. Smith, thousands of people are killed each year on British roads. What is the best way to ..... having accidents on the roads? ..... on pavements, sir?

3. "Romeo and Juliet" is the story of two young lovers whose families ..... them from marrying.

4. Why does James keep sticking his tongue out? – I guess the doctor .... to tell him to put it back.



The Gerund behaves like a noun. Where a noun can be used, the Gerund can also be used.

- I'm *looking forward to* my **holiday**.
- I'm looking *forward to* **going** on holiday.

Gerunds can be subjects (objects) of sentences.

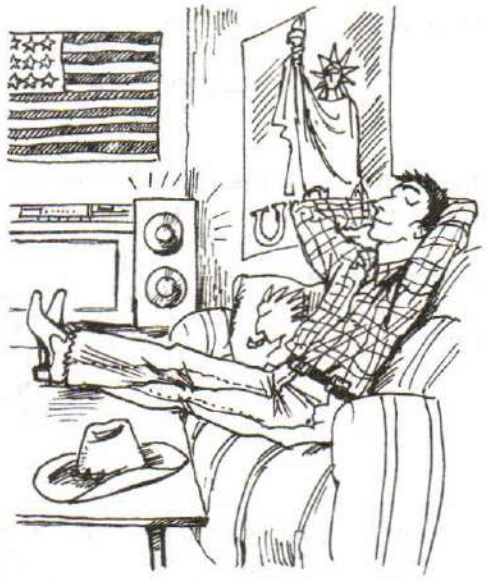
- **Swimming** every day is a good way of keeping fit.
- She doesn't like **playing** with other children.

26 (A, B) Complete the following sentences, using the Gerund. Choose the appropriate verb.

go organize try save ask stay

1. *Travelling to the USA has always been one of Jack's greatest dreams.*
2. ..... there by ship would of course take too much time but a plane would be perfect.
3. ..... his money for the trip is something Jack doesn't like at all.
4. ..... in hotels for some weeks is rather expensive.

5. ..... to come into contact with some American students would make the stay much cheaper.
6. ..... some organizations for help might be a good idea.
7. But what about trying to organize a school exchange? ..... an exchange would be a lot of work but great fun to do.



27 (A, B) Choose the correct answer.

1. ..... is very relaxing.
   A. fish B. fishing C. to fish
2. I can't decide what ..... to the party.
   A. to wear B. wearing C. wear
3. It's been a great holiday but after three weeks, I'm looking forward to ..... home.
   A. to come B. coming C. come
4. Sorry, I've got terrible hiccups. Well, why don't you try ..... some water.
   A. drinking B. to drink C. drink
5. They told me at the garage that my old car wasn't worth ..... .
   A. to sell B. sell C. selling
6. We thought that we were going to arrive very late, but we managed ..... before midnight.
   A. coming B. come C. to come
7. Do you have any plans for the summer? – Well, Dan suggested ..... to the seaside.
   A. to go B. go C. going
8. Why do you want to buy a car? – Because I hate ..... for the bus every day.
   A. to wait B. wait C. waiting

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
B							

1.4 The Gerundial Construction

In the examples discussed the subject of the main verb is also the subject of the Gerund but there are cases when the Gerund is related to its own "subject" (nominal element), expressed by a noun or a pronoun.

- ❑ We appreciate **your** helping us.
  Мы (высоко) ценим вашу помощь (то, что вы помогли).
- ❑ We enjoyed **the band's** playing very much.
  Нам очень понравилось, как играл оркестр.

A gerundial construction is nearly always rendered in Russian by a clause generally introduced by *то, что/тем, что/как.*

The nominal element of the construction can be expressed in different ways:

1. If it denotes a living being, it may be expressed by a possessive pronoun or a noun in the possessive case.

- ❑ Do you mind **my** *smoking*?
- ❑ Our talk was prevented by **Richard's** *coming* back.

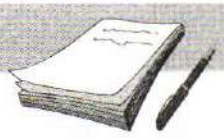
When the nominal element consists of two or more nouns, the possessive case is not used.

- ❑ I object to **Mary and Jane** going out on such a windy day.

2. If the nominal element denotes a lifeless thing, it is expressed by a noun in the common case.

- ❑ I said something about my **clock** *being* slow.
- ❑ Her thoughts were interrupted by **the door** *opening* gently.

EXERSICES



28 **(A, B) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.**

1. We appreciate John's helping us. 2. I can't imagine my mother approving it. 3. They resented my winning the prize. 4. I think that's enough to start her worrying. 5. I can't bear his interfering with what I do. 6. Would you mind my smoking? 7. Fancy her appearing at that very moment! 8. I really miss his playing the piano in the evening. 9. Excuse my asking but does everyone in your family approve of your flying? 10. I understand perfectly your wanting to leave. 11. I didn't object to other people being there.

29 **(A) Study the sentences, paying special attention to the pronouns and nouns in italics followed by gerunds.**

1. I'm not very friendly with him, so I was surprised at *his* **asking** me to dinner. 2. The thieves broke into the shop without *anyone* **seeing** them. 3. He doesn't mind his *daughter* **going** to the cinema once a week. 4. It is difficult to stop *George* **talking** once he begins.

30 **(A) Match the parts of sentences in columns A and B.**

1.	We very much appreciate	a.	my leaving till next day.
2.	He strongly denied	b.	their meeting that afternoon.
3.	We enjoyed	c.	her taking more responsibility.
4.	The chairman suggested	d.	the band's playing very much.
5.	I agreed to delay	e.	our postponing the question.
6.	He should consider	f.	your helping us.

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

31 **(B) Rewrite the following sentences, using gerunds.**

Model 1: The children are making such a noise. Can you stop *them making* such a noise?

Model 2: Students must write their corrections carefully. The teacher insists on ... . The teacher insists on *the students' writing* their corrections carefully.

1. I told you that my watch was five minutes slow. Have you forgotten ..... ? 2. He allows his son to drive his car. He doesn't mind ..... . 3. No one helped her with her homework. She did her homework without ..... . 4. He got my letter, although I had addressed it wrongly. He got my letter in spite of ..... . 5. Did you give me back the book I lent you? I can't remember ..... . 6. The old lady said I could open the window. She didn't mind ..... . 7. I'm sure he asked you not to phone after 11 p.m. Have you forgotten ..... ? 8. My father doesn't like me to stay out late at night. He doesn't like ..... .

32 **(B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English, using gerundial phrases.**

1. Я слышал о том, что он назначен старшим менеджером 2. Я не возражаю против того, чтобы они приехали сюда. 3. Я помню, что он мне говорил об этом несколько дней тому назад. 4. Я настаиваю на том, чтобы вы ответили им немедленно. 5. Я слышал о том, что его посылают на юг. 6. Нет надежды, что он закончит свою работу к вечеру. 7. Извините, что я позвонил вам вчера так поздно. 8. Вы не возражаете против того, чтобы я прочёл этот рассказ вслух? 9. Вы ничего не имеете против того, чтобы я курил здесь? 10. Доктор настаивает на том, чтобы он провёл осень на юге.

1.5 Revision

33 (B, C) Fill in prepositions where necessary.

1. Your colleagues are good ..... keeping a secret, aren't they? 2. You seem to be very fond ..... saying things behind my back. 3. The man of letters is accustomed ..... writing. 4. Mrs Attley was very skilful ..... directing the table talk away from her daughter. 5. I don't say I'm proud ..... cheating him out of 300 dollars. 6. I saw quite clearly the benefit I was capable ..... getting from the travel. 7. I'm sick ..... doing things for you. 8. But he was slow ..... replying. 9. He is quite excited ..... being among us again. 10. She was quick ..... finding out things. 11. He selected a dingy little place where he felt sure ..... not meeting any acquaintances.

34 (B, C) Open the brackets, using the right form of the Gerund of the given verb.

I

1. The matter is not worth (to speak of) ..... . 2. On (to introduce) ..... they easily fell to (to talk). 3. Why do you avoid (to see) ..... me? He tried to avoid (to see) ..... . 4. We insist on (to send) him there at once. He insists on (to send) ..... there instead of me. 5. Do you mind (to examine) ..... the first? 6. He showed no sign of (to know) ..... them. She showed no sign of (to impress) ..... . 7. I was annoyed at (to interrupt) ..... every other moment. 8. He hated (to remind) ..... people of their duties or (to remind) ..... of his. 9. The water requires (to filter) ..... .

II

1. Excuse me for (to give) ..... you so much trouble. 2. You never mentioned (to speak) ..... to them on the subject. 3. He was proud of (to award) ..... the prize. 4. I don't remember (to ask) ..... this question. 5. The boys were punished for (to break) ..... the window. 6. The boy was afraid of (to punish) ..... and hid. 7. She seemed sorry for (to be) ..... rude to me. 8. The old man could not stand (to make) ..... fun of. 9. After (to examine) ..... thoroughly by the doctor, the young man was admitted to the sports club. 10. Soon she could not help (to attract) ..... by the fact that she was being looked at.

35 (B, C) Using the prompts below, restore the dialogue between Uncle Podger and his sister Mrs. Grumble.

Uncle Podger

Did you happen / see my glasses, dear?
.....
I remember / read the newspaper at breakfast.
.....
After / have breakfast I wanted / repair the clock. It needed / clean.
.....
Excuse / I bother you. You know I'm not good at / find things.
.....
No, I'm used to / have them in my right pocket.
.....

Thank you, dear. Here they are!

Mrs. Grumble

Oh, that again! When did you wear your glasses last?
Can you recall / wear them?
.....
And then? Try / remember what you did next.
.....

Oh, I hate / you look for the glasses.
.....

I keep / tell you. Remember / put your glasses on that table.
.....
Then look in your right pocket.
.....

36 (A, B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Я не хочу спорить. 2. Он продолжал курить, не говоря ни слова. 3. Я не видела смысла в том, чтобы продолжать этот разговор. 4. Бесполезно обсуждать этот вопрос. 5. Я была против поездки туда с самого начала. 6. План нуждается в доработке. 7. У неё не было надежды поехать в Индию. 8. Мы поблагодарили его за то, что он пришёл нас встретить. 9. Она не пропускает ни одной возможности поговорить по-английски. 10. Кто за то, чтобы пригласить её?

II

1. Вы не будете против, если я открою дверь? 2. Недавно он бросил курить. 3. Я хорошо помню, что встретил его пять лет назад. 4. Попробуйте бегать по утрам (jog). Вы почувствуете себя намного лучше. 5. Я люблю читать. Чтение – моё самое любимое занятие. 6. Перестаньте разговаривать. Я совершенно не слышу лектора. 7. Мы остановились, чтобы рассмотреть витрину. 8. Я предложил поехать туда на машине, но мои друзья не согласились. 9. Как насчёт того, чтобы пойти в кино? 10. Бессмысленно давать ему советы, он всё равно не принимает их к сведению. 11. Машина очень грязная; её необходимо вымыть. 12. Извините, что опоздал. 13. Я вовсе не намеревался сегодня идти в кино. 14. Перед отъездом на юг не забудьте мне позвонить. 15. Почему вы пошли туда пешком вместо того, чтобы поехать на автобусе?

37 (B, C) Translate the following sentences into English, using infinitives or gerunds as direct objects.

1. Я хотел что-нибудь выяснить о нём. (to want) 2. Он совсем проснулся и был склонен почитать, но в комнате не было книг. (to feel like) 3. Поль не нуждается в защите. (to need) 4. Он непрерывно поглядывал на часы (to keep) 5. Дэн не мог устоять и не показать своей работы. (to resist) 6. Всё то январское утро в моём кабинете настойчиво звонил телефон. (to keep) 7. Я предложил найти доктора и привести его к Эду. (to propose) 8. Я не думаю, чтобы он упоминал о том, что навещал их. (to mention) 9. Я никогда не забуду, как я гостил в вашем доме в Кенте. (to forget) 10. Я пытаюсь читать. (to try) 11. Я отложил письмо к нему на завтра. (to put off) 12. Она никогда не возражала против того, чтобы быть одной в коттедже. (mind) 13. Ты не забыл послать деньги в Лидс? (to remember) 14. Я решил не беспокоить Роджера этим делом. (to decide) 15. Я думаю, вам понравится жить здесь, когда наступит лето. (to enjoy) 16. Он пробовал выращивать там картошку. (to try) 17. Я устал притворяться, что я пишу или читаю. (to pretend) 18. Я отказываюсь принять ответственность за твои действия. (to refuse) 19. Он старался избежать встречи с кем-нибудь, кого он знал. (to avoid) 20. Несмотря на дождь, мы продолжали ждать. (to go on) 21. В эти дни он не мог позволить себе опаздывать. (cannot afford) 22. Когда я вернулся в дом, я не забыл открыть окно. (to remember) 23. Остальные без суеты согласились принять участие. (to agree) 24. Её друзья обещали прислать ей работу. (to promise)

38 (A, B) Decide which form is correct, A or B.

1. We all helped
   - ☐ A. (to) move the car.
   - ☐ B. moving the car.

2. I hoped
   - ☐ A. to be able to come soon.
   - ☐ B. for coming soon.

3. They insist
   - ☐ A. to see the manager.
   - ☐ B. on seeing the manager.

4. We invited them
   - ☐ A. to come to the party.
   - ☐ B. for coming to the party.

5. The children love
   - ☐ A. to play with Mark.
   - ☐ B. playing with Mark.

6. We finally managed
   - ☐ A. to open the door.
   - ☐ B. opening the door.

7. He offered
   - ☐ A. to pay for the coffee.
   - ☐ B. paying for the coffee.

8. We planned
   - ☐ A. to arrive at 9 o'clock.
   - ☐ B. on arriving at 9 o'clock.

9. They promised
   - ☐ A. to visit the old aunt.
   - ☐ B. visiting the old aunt.

10. They refused
    - ☐ A. to leave.
    - ☐ B. leaving.

11. She suggested
    - ☐ A. to go to a different school.
    - ☐ B. going to a different school.

12. Do you want
    - ☐ A. to go home?
    - ☐ B. going home?

1.6 Tests

I

1. Когда я прибыл, он был занят стрижкой (mow) газона.
2. Доктор настаивает на том, чтобы он провёл лето на юге.
3. Нет никакой возможности найти его адрес.
4. Я помню, что меня уже спрашивали об этом.
5. Он вошёл в комнату не постучав.
6. Вы не возражаете, если я буду курить здесь?
7. Не забудь позвонить мне, когда приедешь в город.
8. Я терпеть не могу одалживать вещи у своих подруг.
9. Я не могла не рассмеяться.
10. Я отложил отправку письма. Надо проверить все эти факты.

II

1. Его коллекцию марок стоит посмотреть.
2. Я имею удовольствие представить вам этого известного писателя.
3. Я не могу перевести это письмо, не посмотрев несколько слов в словаре.
4. Я не люблю, когда меня провожают на вокзал.
5. Он не мог не попытаться объяснить, как это произошло.
6. Она продолжала умываться, хотя видела, что я сержусь.
7. Бесполезно звонить ему, он в это время никогда не бывает дома.
8. Простите, что я опять напоминаю об этом.
9. Он попытался найти предлог (pretext), чтобы уйти пораньше.
10. Вы должны упаковать эти пластинки, чтобы отправить их почтой.

III

1. Шторм помешал пароходу прибыть в порт вовремя.
2. Нет никакой надежды скоро получить от них известие.
3. Я слышал, что ваш сын получил приз за лучший рассказ.
4. Он очень любил спать на воздухе.
5. Я люблю ремонтировать свою машину самостоятельно.
6. Мы с нетерпением ждём вашего приезда.
7. Перед подписанием контракта я посоветовался с юристом.
8. Он отрицал, что видел этого человека.
9. Я бросил делать зарядку по утрам.
10. Сон на открытом воздухе очень полезен.

IV

1. Вы ничего не имеете против, чтобы он зашёл к нам сегодня?
2. Она простудилась, так как не привыкла спать в палатке.
3. Полиция обвинила его в поджоге (set fire to) здания.
4. Я надеюсь, вы извините мое опоздание.
5. Моя работа предусматривает встречи и переговоры с людьми.
6. У меня нет причин ненавидеть этого человека.
7. После сдачи экзаменов я поехал к своим родителям.
8. Когда вы закончите одеваться? Ведь мы можем опоздать.
9. Переходить реку в этом месте опасно.
10. Прежде чем писать об этих событиях, он решил съездить в те места, где они происходили.

V

1. Мой друг настоял на том, чтобы оплатить счёт.
2. Я помню, что говорил об этом несколько дней назад.
3. Я пытался вспомнить, где я встречал этого человека.
4. Какова цель вашего приезда сюда?
5. Я не люблю, когда мне читают вслух.
6. Он вышел из зала, не дожидаясь окончания спектакля.
7. Не полагайтесь на то, что достанете билеты перед отправлением поезда, закажите их заранее.
8. Его опыт вождения машины пригодится ему в будущем.
9. Секретарь сейчас занята перепечаткой писем.
10. Спорить с ним – только понапрасну терять время.

VI

1. Нет смысла делать перерыв. Работы очень мало.
2. Он настаивал на том, чтобы товары были упакованы в ящики (case).
3. Он не выносит, когда ему лгут.
4. Он начал с рассказа о том, как нашёл нас.
5. Он никак не мог привыкнуть к мысли, что ему придется остаться там ещё на полгода.
6. Забудьте об этом, не стоит из-за этого так огорчаться.
7. Она не возражает, чтобы вы присутствовали на её уроке.
8. Он никогда не упоминал, что встречался с вами в Лондоне.
9. Оставалось очень мало надежды найти его.
10. Дождь прекратился?

2. The Infinitive

2.1 Forms. Tense/Voice Distinctions

In modern English the Infinitive has the following forms:

	Active	Passive
Simple (Indefinite)	to write	be written
Continuous	to be writing	–
Perfect	to have written	to have been written
Perfect Continuous	to have been writing	–

Negative form: **not** + **Infinitive**

- She asked me **not to forget** to post the letter.

Like the tense distinctions of all verbals those of the Infinitive are also relative. It means that **the Simple and Continuous Infinitives** express an action simultaneous with the action expressed by the finite verb. **The Continuous Infinitive** shows an action in progress.

- I **was** glad **to see** Mr. Paul. Я был рад *видеть* мистера Пола.
- Mr. Forsyte **will** be glad **to meet** you. Мистер Форсайт будет рад *познакомиться* с вами.
- He pretended **to be sleeping**. Он притворился, что *спит*.

The Perfect Infinitive denotes an action prior to that of the finite verb. It is often used after modal verbs and some expressions **(*to be* + adjective)**: *to be glad, to be happy, to be sorry, to be surprised, it is clever/kind/silly of you*, etc.

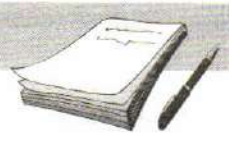
- He must **have forgotten** about it. Он, должно быть, забыл об этом.
- I was sorry **to have said** it. Я сожалел, что сказал это (раньше).

NB! Only two forms of the Infinitive (the Simple Active and Passive ***to ask/to be asked***) have corresponding forms in Russian. There are no corresponding forms for the Continuous, Perfect and Perfect Continuous Infinitive, hence they can be translated only in a context.

The Infinitive of transitive verbs has special forms for **the Active** and **Passive Voice**.

- It is wonderful **to love** and **to be loved**. Прекрасно *любить* и *быть любимым*.

EXERCISES



1 (B, C) Choose the correct form of the Infinitive. Give two variants where possible, explain the difference.

1. I hate *to bother/to be bothered* you but the man is still waiting *to give/to be given* a definite answer. 2. He hated *to bother/to be bothered* with trifling matters when he had many more important questions *to decide/to have decided*. 3. Is there anything else *to tell/to be told* him? I believe he deserves *to have known/to know how* the matter stands and *to tell/to be told* all about it. 4. He took to writing not *to earn/to have earned* a living but a name. All he wanted was *to read/to be read* and not *to forget/to be forgotten*. 5. How fortunate he is *to travel/to have travelled* all over the world and *to see/ to have seen* so much of it. 6. The girl pretended *to read/to be reading* a book and not *to notice/to have noticed* me. 7. It is so

thoughtful of you *to be booking/to have booked* the tickets well in advance. 8. The third key remained *to test/to be tested*. 9. She was probably angry *to reprimand/to be reprimanded* in front of me. 10. She said she would love *to come/to have come* and was simply delighted *to ask/to be asked* for a date. 11. Let's go and see the place. You will be sorry later *to miss/to have missed* it.

2 **(B) Use the appropriate form of the Infinitive in brackets.**

1. I am glad (to introduce) ..... to you. 2. The box was (to handle) ..... with care. 3. Her mood seems (to change) ..... for the worse. We had better not (to speak) ..... to her now. 4. I am sorry (to disappoint) ..... you but I did not mean anything of the kind. 5. He is happy (to award) ..... the first Landscape Prize for his picture. 6. He was anxious (to take) ..... the first place in the figure-skating competition. 7. The poem can easily (to memorize) ..... . 8. This poem is easy (to memorize) ..... . 9. I did not expect (to ask) ..... this question. 10. There were so many things (to do) ..... , so many experiments (to try) ..... . 11. The teacher expected him (to give) ..... a better answer at the examination. 12. They are supposed (to experiment) ..... in this field for about a year and are believed (to achieve) ..... good results. 13. He must (to read) ..... something funny; he is smiling all the time.

3 **(A, B) Correct the mistakes (if any) in the use of the infinitives.**

1. I hope to see you soon. ..... 2. He expected to help by his friends. ..... 3. We expect be back in two days. ..... 4. I am glad to do all the homework yesterday. ..... 5. I hate to be bothered you but the students are still waiting to give books for their work. ..... 6. He seized every opportunity to appear in public: he was so anxious to talk about. ..... 7. The woman pretended to read and not to hear the bell. ..... 8. Perhaps it would upset her to be told the truth of the matter.

2.2 Use of the Infinitive without the Particle *to* (the Bare Infinitive)

In modern English the Infinitive is chiefly used with the particle *to* – the formal sign of the Infinitive. Still there are cases when the bare Infinitive is used.

1. After auxiliary verbs:
- I **don't** *know* her.
- We **shall** *go* there at once.

2. After modal verbs:
- You **can't** *do* it.
- You **must** *consult* the doctor.

BUT! *Ought* is always followed by the *to*-Infinitive:
- You **ought to** help the old.

3. In a complex object after the verbs of sense perception (*to see, to hear, to feel, to watch, to notice*, etc.):
- I've never *seen* you **look** so well. (see The Complex Object)
- She *heard* him **enter** the room.
- I *felt* my **heart** jump.

NB! After these verbs in the Passive the *to*-Infinitive is used:
- He *was heard* **to mention** your name.
- She *was seen* **to leave** the house early in the morning.

4. After the verbs: *to let, to make* (заставлять), *need* (нужно) and *dare* (сметь, осмелиться) (in the modal meaning):
- *Let's* **be** friends.
- If he calls, *let* me **know**.
- *Need* I **do** the washing up?
- How *dare* you **call** me a liar?
- What *makes* you **think** so?

NB!

1) Passive structures with *make* have the *to*-Infinitive:

- He *was made* **to apologise**.

2) *Dare* can be followed by a *to*-Infinitive or a bare Infinitive in negative or interrogative sentences when there is an auxiliary or a modal in front of it and when we use the forms *dares*, *dared*:

- He didn't *dare* **(to) walk** to the village.
- What bank would *dare* **(to) offer** such terms?
- No one *dares* **(to) disturb** him.
- No other manager *dared* **(to) compete**.

5. After a few verbs like *help* and *know* a bare Infinitive or a *to*-Infinitive may be used:

- Can you *help* me **(to) fill** in this job application form?

6. After the expressions *had better* (лучше бы), *would rather/sooner* (бы, пожалуй), *cannot but* (не могу не), etc.:

- You *had better* **go** there at once.
- He said he *would rather* **stay** at home.
- I *can't but* **think** about it.

7. In the sentences beginning with *why (not)* (почему бы вам):

- *Why not* **come** and **talk** to her yourself?
- *Why* **pay** more at other shops?

8. After formal words *than*, *rather than*, *but*, *except*:

- I'll do anything *but* **work** with children.
- *Rather than* **walk** for half an hour, I'll take a taxi.

9. When we cause someone to do something for us, we use ***have*** **+ object + bare Infinitive**:

- Have the driver **bring** the car, please.

1. We can use *to* for the Infinitive of a repeated verb if the meaning is clear:

- "Shall we go swimming?" – "I'd like **to** but I'm working late.
- "You made Ann cry." – "I didn't mean **to**."

2. If two infinitives are joined with *and/or*, the *to* of the second Infinitive can be omitted:

- He agreed **to** come and help us.

EXERCISES



4 Insert *to* where necessary.

I. (A)

1. I like ..... play the piano. 2. My brother can ..... write poems. 3. We had ..... put on our overcoats because it was cold. 4. May I ..... use your telephone? 5. I would rather ..... stay at home today. 6. Would you like ..... go to England? 7. You look tired. You had better ..... go home. 8. I wanted ..... speak to Nick but could not ..... find his telephone number. 9. It is time ..... get up. 10. Let me ..... help you with your homework. 11. I was planning ..... do a lot of things yesterday. 12. I'd like ..... speak to you. 13. I think I shall be able ..... solve this problem. 14. What makes you ..... think you are right? 15. I shall ..... do all I can ..... help you. 16. I'd like ..... dance. 17. She did not let her mother ..... go away. 18. Would you like ..... listen to good music?

II. (B, C)

1. The boy helped us ..... find the way to the railway station. 2. He would sooner ..... die than ..... betray his friends. 3. Why not ..... start out now? 4. You'll be better tomorrow. You may ..... come and ..... dine with us. 5. Don't let us ..... get worried. There are a hundred things ..... be done. 6. We had better ..... make haste. 7. You ought not ..... speak to the Dean like that. 8. What made you ..... think so? 9. "Thanks," Andrew answered, "I'd rather ..... see to the cases myself." 10. He was made ..... obey the rules. 11. I thought I would rather ..... get to the gallery alone but I was obliged ..... accept his company. 12. There is hardly anything ..... do but ..... work out an alternative plan.

5 (B) Use the appropriate form of the Infinitive.

1. He made me (do) ..... it all over again. 2. I wonder how dares he (say) ..... such things. 3. Would you like me (do) ..... it now? 4. He wouldn't let my baby (play) ..... with his gold watch. 5. You needn't (go) ..... yet, need you? 6. I helped him (find) ..... his things. 7. I'd like him (go) ..... to a university but I can't make him (go) ..... 8. She said she would rather (take) ..... the small one. 9. I advised him (ask) ..... the bus-conductor to tell him where to get off. 10. Tomorrow I'll have the man (repair) ..... the boiler. 11. Her father doesn't allow her (go) ..... to the cinema alone. 12. Who told the nurse (give) ..... the sick man this medicine? 13. The gardener won't let the children (pick) ..... the flowers. 14. I'd rather (live) ..... in the eighteenth century than in the nineteenth. 15. How dare you (speak) ..... to me like that?

6 (A, B) What did your parents let/make you do when you were at school? Use the prompts below to write sentences.

(Model:) *My parents let/didn't let me stay up late. They made me do my homework.*

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Prompts: *do the washing up, read what I liked, iron my own clothes, drink beer, clean up my room, have parties, choose my own school.*

7 (B) Translate the sentences, using the phrases:

let smb do smth – позволить; пусть (они) ... ; дайте (мне) ... ;
make smb do smth – заставить кого-либо сделать что-либо;
have smb do smth – распорядиться, чтобы

I

1. Мама не позволяет мне играть в футбол. 2. Не заставляйте меня лгать. 3. Распорядитесь, чтобы кто-нибудь принёс мел. 4. Не позволяй им так кричать. 5. Заставь его выпить лекарство. 6. Пусть они напишут диктант ещё раз. 7. Я не могу заставить его бросить курить. 8. Он посторонился, чтобы дать ей пройти. 9. Не смешите меня. 10. Позвольте мне помочь вам. 11. Дайте мне подумать. 12. Распорядитесь, чтобы дети надели плащи. 13. Дайте мне знать, когда она придёт. 14. Я велела ему объяснить, что это значит. 15. Не позволяйте ему есть столько конфет.

II

1. Дай мне знать, когда все выяснится. 2. Надеюсь, я не заставил вас долго ждать. 3. Пусть он курит здесь. 4. Что заставило его сделать этот шаг? 5. Отпустите его. 6. Мы заставили его сдержать обещание. 7. Не давай ей носить тяжелые вещи. 8. Мы не могли понять, что заставило его солгать нам. 9. Разрешите мне зайти к вам сегодня вечером. 10. Мы заставили его прекратить этот глупый спор. 11. Он заставил нас сделать работу снова. 12. Не разрешайте детям играть на улице (на открытом воздухе). Сегодня очень холодно и ветрено. 13. Он сказал, что ничто не заставит его изменить своё решение. 14. Не позволяй ей читать лежа (в постели).







2.3 Functions of the Infinitive in the Sentence

The Infinitive can be used in different syntactic functions. We will discuss here only the most difficult ones for Russian speakers.

1. The Infinitive as a subject. In Russian it can be rendered by an infinitive, a noun, a clause. Far more often such sentences open with an introductory subject **it** (not translated into Russian).	❑ **To walk** in the garden was very pleasant. *Гулять* в саду было очень приятно. ❑ **To think** of it made him suffer. *Мысль* об этом причиняла ему страдание. ❑ **To be recognized** gave her great joy. *Когда ее узнавали*, она испытывала большую радость. ❑ **It** is useless **to discuss** this question. *Бесполезно* обсуждать этот вопрос.
2. The Infinitive is used to express purpose (as an adverbial modifier of purpose – «чтобы»)	❑ **To understand** the rule better, I read it several times. *Чтобы лучше понять* правило, я прочел его несколько раз. ❑ I stayed there **to see** what would happen. Я остался там, *чтобы посмотреть*, что произойдет.

In order to + Infinitive and ***so as*** + Infinitive are also used to express purpose. They are more formal than the *to*-Infinitive
In order to/so as to are more common before the verbs *be*, *have*, *know*.

- ❑ I'll write down your telephone number **so as not to forget** it.
- ❑ **In order to qualify** for the award, you should be under twenty-five.
- ❑ I got up early **so as to be** ready for the interview.

To express a negative purpose, ***in order not to/so as not to*** + Infinitive are more common than ***not-to*-Infinitive**.

- ❑ He open the door quietly **so as not to disturb** the baby.

COMPARE:

A subject

The Infinitive + Predicate

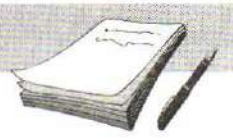
- ❑ **To read** a lot *is to know* much.
  Много читать – много знать.

An adverbial modifier of purpose

The Infinitive + Subject + Predicate

- ❑ **To read** the book, *I went* to the library.
  Чтобы прочесть эту книгу, я отправился в библиотеку.

EXERCISES



8 **(A, B) State the function of the Infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. To go on with this discussion is a waste of time.
2. We assembled to discuss and arrange our plans.
3. To ask him a direct question was not very polite.
4. I rose to receive my guests. 5. Surely it is not at all necessary to go into details. 6. Look back to make sure you haven't left anything behind. 7. I didn't come here to be shouted at. 8. He came here to speak to me, not to you. 9. To meet the demand for goods, new shops have been opened in the town.

9 **(A, B) Complete the following, using the infinitives from the list below:**

to forget the past, to be humming a tune,
to say such a thing to a child,
to have gone out on that rainy day,
to know the map well

1. ..... means to be able to show any country or town on it.
2. ..... would have been the death of me.
3. ..... is a usual thing for her.
4. ..... would be ridiculous.
5. ..... was impossible.

10 **(A, B) Combine the following pairs of sentences into one sentence, using the Infinitive.**

Model: They sent me to University. They wanted me to study law. – They sent me to University *to study law.*

1. I am buying bread. I want to feed the bird.
   .....
2. He opened the door. He intended to go out.
   .....
3. He rushed into the burning house. He wanted to save the child.
   .....
4. He rang the bell. He wanted to tell us that the dinner was ready.
   .....
5. The farmer shot the rifle. He wanted to frighten the birds.
   .....
6. He sent his children to his sister's house. He wanted them to watch the television programme.
   .....
7. I am saving up. I want to buy a car.
   .....
8. I keep my hens in a field surrounded by wire netting (проволочная изгородь). I want to protect them against foxes.
   .....

11 **(B) Combine the following pairs of sentences into one sentence, using *so as/in order* with the Infinitive.**

Model: He took off his boots. He didn't want to make any noise. *He took off his boots so as/in order not to make any noise.*

1. He was playing very softly. He didn't want to disturb anyone.
   .....
2. I put the letter in my bag because I didn't want to lose it.
   .....
3. I am learning Greek. I wish to read Homer.
   .....
4. I'll leave work early so I won't be late.
   .....
5. He read only for short periods each day. He didn't want to strain his eyes.
   .....
6. Everybody stopped talking because they wanted to hear her sing.
   .....
7. We must keep our gloves on. We don't want to get frostbitten.
   .....

12 (B) Translate the sentences into English, using the models.

I

Model 1: **to do** smth is (was, will be) *necessary/important/impossible/impolite/difficult/silly*

- ❑ *To tell her the truth now is not at all necessary.*
- ❑ *To know everything means to know nothing.*

1. Знать грамматику – значит писать без ошибок. 2. Подумать так было просто смешно. 3. Сказать «да» было невозможно, сказать «нет» было бы невежливо. 4. Объяснить ему, что это такое, было делом трудным. 5. Помогать ей – значит делать всё самой. 6. Рассердиться было бы глупо.

II

Model 2: It is important **to do/be done/be doing** smth

- ❑ *It is necessary to explain everything to her.*
- ❑ *It was strange to meet him here of all places.*

1. Трудно переводить этот текст без словаря. 2. Очень было приятно поговорить с вами. 3. Очень важно, чтобы нас не заметили. 4. Трудно будет объяснить вам это. 5. Приятно быть опять в Москве. 6. Так странно, когда с тобой так разговаривают. 7. Было очень трудно делать вид, (to pretend), что ты все понимаешь. 8. Правда, хорошо сидеть здесь и пить кофе? 9. Ошибаться легко, гораздо труднее понять свою ошибку. 10. Вовсе не нужно всё это учить наизусть.

13 (B) Translate the sentences, using the model.

Model: **do** smth *(in order/so as) (not)* **to get** smth

- ❑ *I came here to speak to you.*
- ❑ *She pretended to be quite well so as not to be taken to the doctor.*

1. Он бежал всю дорогу, чтобы успеть (catch) на поезд. 2. Он принёс в класс карту, чтобы показать нам маршрут экспедиции. 3. Они всю ночь жгли костёр, чтобы их заметили проходящие мимо (pass by) суда. 4. Мальчики стояли во дворе и не уходили, чтобы их тоже взяли с собой. 5. Я ещё раз прочёл письмо, чтобы лучше его понять. 6. Я всё это говорю, чтобы меня правильно поняли. 7. Она ничего не рассказала, чтобы её не наказали (punish).

The Infinitive can function in a sentence as:

3. An adverbial modifier of result with *too* (слишком) and *enough* (достаточно)

- ❑ He was *too busy* **to see** anyone.
- ❑ She was *clever enough* **to admit** it.

Too has a negative meaning. It shows that something is more than enough, necessary or wanted.
Enough has a positive meaning. It shows that there is as much of something as is wanted or needed.

The following structures are used:

***Too* + adjective/adverb + *to*-Infinitive**
Adjective/adverb + *enough* + *to*-Infinitive

- ❑ The tea is *too hot* **to drink**.
- ❑ He is *strong enough* **to lift** it.

Enough can also have a negative meaning.

- ❑ He **didn't** run *fast enough* **to win** the race.

14 (A, B) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. It all sounds too good to be true. 2. He was too astonished to speak. 3. You are old enough to understand it. 4. Do you know him well enough to recommend him for the job? 5. The story is much too long to read to the end today. 6. You are too young to wear black. 7. She is old enough to be taken for his mother.

15 (A, B) Combine the following pairs of sentences into one sentence, using *enough* with the Infinitive.

Model: He is clever. He can answer the question.
He is clever *enough to answer the question.*

1. He wasn't strong. He couldn't support the man.
.....
2. It isn't very hot. We can't lie in the sun.
.....
3. The coffee isn't strong. It won't keep us awake.
.....
4. I am quite old. I could be your father.
.....
5. You aren't very old. You can't understand these things.
.....
6. He was very curious. He opened the letter.
.....
7. You are quite thin. You can wear this dress.
.....

16 (A, B) Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence, using *too* with the Infinitive.

Model: He is very ill. He can't work today.
He is *too ill* to work today.

1. It is very hot. We can't run.
.....
2. I am rather old. I can't wear this dress.
.....
3. He was nervous. He couldn't speak.
.....
4. I was terrified. I couldn't move.
.....
5. It is very cold. We can't have a swim.
.....
6. He was very snobbish. He wouldn't talk to any of us.
.....
7. It was very dark. We couldn't go out into the garden.
.....
8. It was rather cloudy. We couldn't see the eclipse properly.
.....

17 (B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Я не настолько хорошо себя чувствую, чтобы пойти на работу сегодня. I'm not well *enough to go to work today.*
2. Она достаточно хорошо говорит по-английски, чтобы нуждаться в переводчике.
.....
3. Рано читать тебе такие книги. (Ты слишком молод).
.....
4. Я стоял слишком далеко, чтобы слышать, что она говорит.
.....
5. Слишком она молода, чтобы принимать её всерьёз.
.....
6. Вопрос слишком сложен, чтобы на него сразу ответить.
.....
7. Слишком он ленив. Не читал он книги в подлиннике.
.....
8. Задача слишком сложна, чтобы её уже решили.
.....
9. Ты теперь слишком большая, чтобы играть в куклы.
.....

4. The Infinitive as an attribute: in this function it is far more extensive in English than in Russian. In English it modifies abstract and class nouns, pronouns, ordinal numbers and adjectives.

There are several ways in which the Infinitive can be used to function as an attribute:

1) after such pronouns as: *something, anyone, nothing*, etc., usually to show that something is necessary or possible
   - ❑ I have *nobody* **to say** a kind word to me.
     У меня никого нет, кто бы сказал мне доброе слово.
2) after certain nouns
   - ❑ I had no *time* **to visit** the museum yet.
   - ❑ He gave her a *knife* **to cut** the bread with.
3) after *be + the first/second/last/next/best*
   - ❑ He was *the first/last* **to come**.
     Он *пришёл первым (последним)*.

The Infinitive used as an attribute often has a modal meaning or implies a future action:	❑ I've got a *wife* and a *child* **to look after**. У меня жена и ребенок, о которых я *должен* заботиться. ❑ The question will be discussed at the conference shortly **to open** in Moscow. (которая вскоре откроется в Москве.)
The attributive Passive Infinitive may have a future meaning:	❑ The houses **to be built** here will be of the same type. Дома, которые *должны быть/будут* построены здесь, будут иметь такую же конструкцию.
The attributive Infinitive may express a meaning corresponding to Russian *можно, нужно, следует*:	❑ It's the only thing **to do**. Это единственное, что *можно* сделать. ❑ It's a book **to read** and **remember**. Такую книгу *надо* прочесть и запомнить.

NB! The Passive Infinitive is seldom used in the attributive function. That is why we say "it is a book **to read**" (not "to be read").

EXCEPTIONS: There is *nothing* **to be done** and *nothing* **to do**; there is *something* **to be seen/to be said** and *something* **to see/to say**.

5. The Infinitive as an object: In this function it can be used after some verbs followed by the *to*-Infinitive (see The Gerund 1.1):	❑ They *decided* **to send** him a telegramme. ❑ Passing by a radio-shop he suddenly *remembered* **to buy** some CDs for his player.
6. The Infinitive can be also used after adjectives which: a) describe feelings or emotions *(happy, glad)*: b) express willingness/unwillingness *(eager, anxious, reluctant, willing, annoyed*, etc): c) refer to person's character *(mean, clever)*: d) with the adjectives *lucky, fortunate*:	❑ They were *happy* **to see** us. ❑ He is *reluctant* **to help**. ❑ You were *clever* **not to believe** him. ❑ She was *lucky* **to have met** this man.

EXERCISES



18 **(A, B) State the form and function of the Infinitive. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Now, the first thing to settle is what to take with us. 2. He was the first to raise the question. 3. A celebration such as this was a chance not to be missed. 4. She was the last to realize how dangerous it was. 5. You're a bachelor with no family to take care of. 6. The plan will be discussed at the meeting to be held on May 25. 7. At the sight of the man I felt an impulse to laugh. 8. Her first action was to visit the studio of a famous dressmaker. 9. The best thing Lanny could do was to get out of here. 10. It's an awkward thing to say. 11. The horse was quiet to ride. 12. He is the best person to do the job.

19 **(B, C) Translate the sentences, giving the Russian equivalents of the Infinitive used as an attribute.**

1. The desire to write was stirring in Martin once more. 2. He had a good deal to say about India. 3. The relief from that long waiting, the feeling of nothing to worry about was so delicious. 4. The first person to enter was Mrs. Evans, her face white, her dark frightened eyes avoiding his. 5. He looked at the shelves of books to read. 6. He received a note to say that he was expected at the family dinner. 7. Andrew was the third to go in for the interview. 8. You have health and much to live for.

20 **(B) Complete the following sentences. Use the Infinitive as an attribute; take the Infinitive phrases from the following list:**

to be desired, to speak (to/about), to do, to be done, to follow, to worry about, to be erected, to read, to laugh at, to be laughed at, to be answered, to answer, not to be contradicted

1. This is just the man ..... . 2. Packing was the first thing ..... . 3. Here are some instructions ..... . 4. The monument ..... on this square will add beauty to the place. 5. The book leaves much ..... . 6. There was nothing .... 7. These are the letters ..... . 8. His was the tone ..... . 9. Have you got anything ..... ? 10. She will always find something ..... .

21 **(B, C) Insert the Infinitive in the appropriate form and translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Mr. Abbot was the first ..... the silence. (break). 2. The next patient ..... was a nice girl in her early teens. (examine). 3. Honesty is the first principle ..... when working with us. (observe). 4. He complained that he was always the last ..... . (inform). 5. I am the last man ..... a question of the kind. (ask). 6. They were among the last ..... . (arrive). 7. He found that he was the only one ..... the discrepancy. (notice). 8. If there is to be a vacancy, I would like to be the one ..... the job. (offer). 9. These houses were among the few ..... after a great fire. (survive). 10. Who was the youngest chess player ..... the title of All-Union Champion? (win). 11. The Shakespeare Memorial Theatre players were the second British company ..... the Soviet Union. (visit). 12. The Nuremberg trial was the biggest international trial ..... ever ..... . (hold).

22 **(A, B) Translate the sentences, using the models.**

Model 1: The first/last **to do** smth
- She was *the first* **to see** the danger.
- He was *the second* **to cross** the finish line.

Model 2: something/somebody/nobody **to do** smth
- Have you *anything* else **to say**?
- There was *nobody* there **to show** him the way out.

Model 3: the man/time **to do** smth
- He is just *the man* **to do** it.
- It is not *the right time* **to discuss** this subject.

1. Не такой это был человек, чтобы предать друга. 2. Ему больше нечего было сказать. 3. Думать было некогда. 4. Кто последним выходил из дома? 5. Я теперь не помню, кто первый это сказал.

6. Дайте мне время подумать. 7. Это свитер, который можно носить с брюками или широкой (full) юбкой. 8. У меня нет времени играть с тобой. 9. У ребёнка нет никого, кто мог бы о ней позаботиться. 10. Вы третий человек, который мне это сегодня говорит.

23 (A, B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

Model: She *is nice* to work with.
His story *was hard* to prove.

1. С ним трудно разговаривать. 2. С ним приятно иметь дело (deal with). 3. Его рассказу трудно поверить. 4. Птицу было очень трудно поймать. 5. С вами сегодня легко разговаривать. 6. Эту книгу невозможно достать. 7. С ним опасно ссориться. 8. Результаты невозможно проверить. 9. Этому легко поверить. 10. Её нелегко было остановить. 11. На неё приятно было смотреть.

24 (B) A young man has been talking to his friend about his future bride. He is very excited, he cannot think straight. Match the parts of the sentences to describe the girl.



The friend kept silent all the while. When at last the young lover asked him about his opinion, he said, "Love is said to be blind. But the statement seems to be completely wrong. For some fellows in love appear to see more virtues in their sweethearts than other people are ever likely to."

The Infinitive as parenthesis:
to cut a long story short;
to put it mildly; *to say the least*;
to tell the truth; *to begin with*;
to say nothing of; *to crown it all*,
to make the things still worth, etc.

- He was rude, **to say the least** of it.
  Он был груб, *чтобы не сказать больше*.
- **To put it mildly**, he was not very clever.
  Мягко выражаясь, он не был очень умен.

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING EXPRESSIONS:

Ему трудно угодить.	– He is **hard to please**.
У неё привлекательная внешность.	– She is **pleasant to look** at.
Мне надо вам кое-что сказать.	– I have **something to tell** you.
Этим ничего не достигнешь.	– There is **nothing to be gained** by it.
Ничего не поделаешь.	– There is **nothing to be done**.
Надо многое сделать.	– There is **much to be done**.
Дом сдаётся внаём.	– The **house is to let**.
Кто виноват?	– Who **is to blame**?
Непременно приходите.	– Be **sure to come**.
Единственное, что остается – это ждать.	– There is **nothing** left **to do** but wait.

EXERCISES



25 **(B, C) Translate the sentences into Russian. Pay special attention to the parentheses.**

1. To crown it all, there was a story full ten years old now of his treatment of his wife. 2. It was awfully cold, to be sure. 3. She had broken a precious china and, to make the things still worse, she never told anyone about it. 4. To make a long story short, the company broke up and returned home in bad temper. 5. To put it crudely, whatever is man's manner of life, such is his manner of thought. 6. She had become one of those London girls to whom rest, not to say pleasure, is unknown.

26 **(B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.**

1. Мягко выражаясь, она была невежлива. 2. Сказать по правде, я не люблю бокс. 3. Начнём с того, что я занят. 4. Короче говоря, он не сдал экзамен. 5. Мы все были рады, не говоря уже о маме: она сказала, что это самый счастливый день в её жизни. 6. Это очень странно, по меньшей мере. 7. Для начала она открыла все окна. 8. По правде говоря, я очень устал. 9. Мягко выражаясь, вы меня удивили. 10. Короче говоря, они поженились. 11. Самая известная книга Джерома – «Трое в лодке, не считая собаки». 12. По меньшей мере мы были удивлены.

27 **(B) Translate into English. Mind the syntactical functions of the Infinitive.**

1. Этому трудно поверить. 2. Он достаточно хорошо знает грамматику, чтобы не делать таких ошибок. 3. Вопрос слишком сложен, чтобы его сразу решить. 4. Я принес книгу, чтобы показать вам эту фотографию. 5. Слишком жарко, чтобы идти гулять. 6. Он говорит о новом здании школы, которое будет построено в их селе. 7. У меня нет времени читать такие книги. 8. Ну, я рад, что сдал этот экзамен. 9. Правило легко понять. 10. Необходимо пойти туда сегодня. 11. Кошку нелегко было поймать.

2.3.1 Revision

28 **(B) Translate into English, using the appropriate form of the Infinitive.**

I

1. Я рад, что дал вам эту книгу. 2. Я рад, что мне дали эту книгу. 3. Мы хотим проинформировать вас об этом. 4. Мы хотим, чтобы нас проинформировали об этом. 5. Мы рады, что встретили его на станции. 6. Мы рады, что нас встретили на станции. 7. Они очень довольны, что их пригласили на конференцию. 8. Они очень довольны, что пригласили вас на конференцию. 9. Я не думал (mean) прерывать её. 10. Я не предполагал, что меня прервут. 11. Мне неловко, что я причинил вам столько беспокойства. 12. Он будет счастлив повидаться с вами.

II

1. Он был счастлив, что повидался с вами. 2. Он подыскивал слова, чтобы точнее выразить мысль. 3. Как ему повезло, что он побывал в такой интересной поездке. 4. Он терпеть не может, когда над ним шутят. 5. Дети любят, когда им рассказывают сказки. 6. Мы притворились, что не заметили его ошибок. 7. Я рад, что рассказал вам эту историю. 8. Я рад, что мне рассказали эту историю. 9. Я хочу познакомить вас с этой артисткой. 10. Я хочу, чтобы меня познакомили с этой артисткой. 11. Он будет счастлив посетить эту знаменитую картинную галерею. 12. Он был счастлив, что посетил эту знаменитую картинную галерею. 13. Я рада, что дала вам нужные сведения.

29 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English, using:

I. the Infinitive as a subject.

1. Пить из этого источника в жаркий день – одно удовольствие. 2. Сказать ему правду означало лишить его последней надежды. 3. Не предупредить его об этом было бы нечестно. 4. Нам понадобилось немало времени на то, чтобы убедить его, что он неправ. 5. Побывать в Крыму и не видеть моря было очень обидно. 6. Вздремнуть в своем кресле после обеда было его давнишней привычкой. 7. Неплохо бы поехать за город завтра.

II. the Infinitive as an attribute.

1. Она всегда найдёт, над чем посмеяться. 2. Не о чем было беспокоиться. Больной чувствовал себя лучше. 3. Пьеса оставляет желать лучшего. 4. Вот статья, которую надо прочитать. 5. Пятиэтажный дом, который должен быть построен на углу улицы, предназначен для рабочих нашего завода. 6. План нашей работы будет обсуждаться на заседании, которое состоится завтра. 7. Ему нечего было сказать. 8. Он тяжелый человек; с ним трудно иметь дело. 9. Кто вторым пришёл к финишу? 10. Есть ли в доме кто-нибудь, кто мог бы присмотреть за больным? 11. Вот человек, с которым можно поговорить на эту тему.

III. the Infinitive as an adverbial modifier of purpose.

1. Я встал в 6 часов, чтобы не опоздать на утренний поезд. 2. Я написал ему письмо, чтобы напомнить ему о его обещании. 3. Ребенок выбежал навстречу матери. 4. Вы приехали для участия в конференции? 5. Все было сделано для того, чтобы спасти его. 6. Он вызвал машину, чтобы отвезти нас на станцию.

30 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English, using the words in brackets.

1. Он спокойный и сдержанный человек. С ним легко иметь дело. (to deal with) 2. Врач остался ещё на один час, чтобы убедиться (to make sure) что жизнь ребёнка вне опасности. 3. Я старался много работать, чтобы не думать (not to think about) о том, что случилось. 4. Дети были слишком возбуждены, (to be excited) чтобы вести себя спокойно. 5. Ей нелегко угодить (to please). 6. Он первый открыл (to discover) это удивительное место для отдыха. 7. Первое, что надо было сделать после приезда, – это забронировать (to book) комнату в гостинице. 8. Я вам сказал всю правду. Мне нечего скрывать (to conceal) от вас. 9. У меня достаточно времени, чтобы зайти (to call on) к друзьям. 10. Поздно спорить об этом. Уже ничего нельзя изменить (to change). 11. Нам повезло, что мы застали (to find) его дома. 12. Ей нечем гордиться (to be proud of). 13. Они уехали (to leave) последними. 14. Интересно, кто первый обратил наше внимание (to draw attention to) на эту ошибку. 15. Она сказала, что ей не к кому обратиться за помощью (to turn for help). 16. Единственное, что нужно сделать, это позвонить ему (to ring him up).

2.4 The Infinitive Constructions

The Infinitive may have "a subject" of its own within the sentence. In this case it forms with it a construction: the Complex Object, the Complex Subject, the for-to-Infinitive Construction.

2.4.1 The Complex Object

The Complex Object (the Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction) consists of a noun in the common case or a pronoun in the objective case and the Infinitive. It is mostly translated into Russian by an object clause.

Subject + Predicate + Noun (Pronoun) + Infinitive

- I want **Mother (her) to help** me.
  Я хочу, *чтобы мама (она) помогла* мне.
- They expect **the steamer to leave** tonight.
  Они ожидают, *что пароход отойдёт* сегодня вечером.

The Complex Object is used after:

1. the verbs of mental activity: *to know, to think, to consider, to believe, to find* (считать, полагать), *to expect, to suppose* (предполагать), *to imagine, to feel, to trust, to understand*, etc. (more characteristic of literary style) After the verbs *to think, to consider, to find* the verb *to be* can be omitted.	❑ I *knew* **them to be** right. Я знал, *что они правы.* ❑ We *expect* **them to arrive** soon. Мы ожидаем, *что они скоро приедут.* ❑ I *find* **him (to be)** a very clever man. ❑ I don't *consider* **him (to be)** an honest man.
2. the verbs of declaring: *to pronounce, to declare, to report*, etc.	❑ The doctor *pronounced* **the wound to be** a slight one. Врач сказал, *что рана лёгкая.*
3. the verbs denoting wish and intention: *to want, to wish, to desire, to mean, to urge, to intend/to choose* (= want)	❑ He *intended* **me to go** with him to India. Он хотел, *чтобы я поехала* с ним в Индию. ❑ I *want* **you to stop** worrying. Я хочу, *чтобы ты прекратил* волноваться.
4. the verbs denoting feeling and emotion: *to like, to love, to dislike, to hate, cannot bear*	❑ Tell me what you *would like* **me to do**. Скажи, что бы ты хотела, *чтобы я сделал.*
5. the verbs denoting order and permission: *to order, to allow, to let, to command, to encourage, to ask for, to forbid* In most cases after these verbs the Passive Infinitive is used.	❑ The colonel *ordered* **his men to attack**. Полковник приказал *своим людям наступать.* ❑ The captain *ordered* **the cases to be loaded**. Капитан приказал *погрузить ящики.*

NB! If the "subject" of the verb and the infinitive is the same person or thing, the corresponding reflexive pronoun should be used.

- **Он** думал, что **он** прав. He thought **himself** to be right.

EXERCISES



31 **(A, B) Translate the sentences, paying special attention to the use of the Complex Object.**

1. I don't like you to say such things. 2. Put on a thicker coat, I don't want you to catch cold. 3. Ancient people supposed the world to be flat. 4. We found the beds quite comfortable. 5. We knew him to be very brave. 6. The doctor pronounced him to be out of danger. 7. The officer commanded his men to fire. 8. She wouldn't explain, just urged me to use my own eyes. 9. There is no harm, I think, in letting you know. 10. I understood you to say that you had received no letter from your brother since he left England.

32 (A, B) Replace the following complex sentences or groups of sentences by simple sentences with the Infinitive Construction.

Model: The salesman urged me. He insisted on my buying the car.
The salesman urged me to buy the car.

1. I shall stay at home and do my lessons. Mother said so.
.....
2. I never smoke indoors. My wife doesn't like it.
.....
3. He's an honest boy. I know it.
.....
4. We don't eat ice-cream before dinner because Mother has forbidden it.
.....
5. She sent us an answer. We didn't expect it.
.....
6. He ordered that tea should be brought at once.
.....
7. No one had expected that she would marry the man.
.....
8. Nobody should think ill of her. I won't have it.
.....
9. Don't shout so! The whole house will know what has happened. Do you want it?
.....

33 (A, B) Practise the following according to the model.

Model: A. Do you want to make a speech?
B. No, I want *you to make a speech*.

Do you want to ... :

1. speak first?
.....
2. introduce the speakers?
.....
3. attend the conference?
.....
4. give a talk?
.....
5. make the arrangements?
.....
6. fix a date?
.....
7. organize the reception?
.....
8. buy souvenirs?
.....
9. take photographs?
.....

34 (A, B) Fill in the blanks with suitable verbs from the list.

want let make (2) allow expect wish

1. Why don't you ..... her to wear high heels? 2. The way she looks at me ..... me blush. 3. Do you ..... me to show you the place on the map? 4. No one had ..... her to return so early. 5. Who ..... you to miss lectures? 6. She ..... the children to be well behaved. 7. You can't ..... him come if he doesn't want to.

35 (B, C) Replace the words in italics by the Complex Object.

Model: Members of the Government itself acknowledge *that many of their predictions* were over-optimistic.
Members of the Government itself acknowledge *many of their predictions to have been* over-optimistic.

1. The Court declared *that the book was obscene* (непристойный)
.....
2. The majority of critics thought *that the film was highly original*.
.....
3. Many of the audience considered *that the speaker had overstated his case*.
.....
4. Evidence showed *that the man's alibi was a complete fabrication*.
.....
5. At a very early age, Paderewski revealed *that he was a master of the keyboard*.
.....
6. Everyone knew *that he was a man of integrity*.
.....

7. Detectives investigating the robbery discovered *that some precious stones were missing*.
.....

36 (B, C) Complete the story. Use the elements in brackets to construct the Complex Object. Translate the sentences with the Complex Object.

Knowing One's Neighbours

BARRISTER (speaking to a witness): I (you/want/tell) (1)..... me the truth and only the truth, for everything is of importance. How far were you standing from the place of the accident?
WITNESS (without a moment's hesitation): Just four yards, two feet and six inches.
BARRISTER (slightly taken aback): I (would like/you/tell) (2)..... me how you managed to be so exact.
WITNESS: Well, I (some fool/expect/put) (3)..... me this question and I thought it fit to measure the distance.



37 (B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English, using the model.

Model: want/expect/suppose/consider somebody **to do** something

1. Я считаю, что это был смелый шаг (move). 2. Я хочу, чтобы вы поближе узнали друг друга. 3. Мы не ожидали, что он примет такое решение. 4. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы он поехал с нами на озеро. 5. Она не ожидала, что её сын будет изучать архитектуру. 6. Он хочет, чтобы его секретарь договорился о встрече. 7. Мы не предполагали, что он приедет так рано. 8. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы вы сообщили нам о своём решении. 9. Мы считаем его большим специалистом в этой области. 10. Мы не ожидали, что обсуждение будет таким интересным.

38 (B, C) Complete the sentences, translate the phrases in brackets, paying attention to the form of the Infinitive.

1. They want (чтобы мы послали им телеграмму) ..... .
2. I would like (чтобы вы подождали меня здесь) ..... .
3. He expects (что его дочь станет архитектором) ..... .
4. She wishes (чтобы её пригласили на вечер) ..... .
5. Would you like (чтобы я позвонил вам) ..... ?
6. I know (что его статья была опубликована) ..... .
7. We don't want (чтобы нас прерывали) ..... .
8. The doctor ordered (чтобы я принимал это лекарство) ..... .
9. Where do you want (чтобы я подождал вас) ..... ?
10. Would you like (чтобы мы пригласили Джона сюда) ..... ?
11. They found (что он подходящий человек для этой работы) ..... .
12. I want (чтобы вы пошли сегодня в театр) ..... .
13. She likes (чтобы обед был вовремя) ..... .
14. She doesn't like (чтобы дети гуляли одни) ..... .
15. He doesn't like (когда ему задают много вопросов) ..... .
16. She loves (чтобы ей делали комплименты) ..... .

39 (B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Я знаю, что он очень опытный врач. 2. Мы ожидаем, что договор будет подписан в ближайшем будущем. 3. Я ожидаю, что меня пригласят туда. 4. Я считаю, что я прав. 5. Я считаю, что он прав. 6. Они не ожидали, что их пригласят туда. 7. Я знал, что он в Москве. 8. Я полагаю, что он очень честный человек. 9. Когда вы ожидаете, что эти товары прибудут? 10. Я считаю, что он скромный человек. 11. Никто не ожидал, что это случится.

6. The Complex Object is also used after the verbs denoting sense perception: *to hear*, *to see*, *to watch*, *to feel*, *to observe*, etc. They are always followed by the bare Infinitive (without the particle *to*).

After these verbs only the Simple Infinitive Active is used. If the meaning is passive, we use Participle II.

If the process is expressed, Participle I Active/Passive is used.

- I *saw* **Brown enter** the room.
  Я видел, *как Браун вошёл* в комнату.
- I *felt* **the blood rush** into my cheeks.
  Я почувствовал, *как кровь прилила* к моим щекам.
- I *saw* **the fire** slowly **conquered**.
  Я видел, *как пожар* постепенно *потушили*.
- He *saw* **Fleur coming** to us.
  Он видел, *как Флёр подходила* к нам.
- He *watched* **his camera being repaired**.
  Он наблюдал, *как ремонтируют его фотоаппарат*.

COMPARE:

Verb + Infinitive	**Verb + Participle I**
I *saw* him **enter** the shop. (I saw the whole action – he opened the door, went in and disappeared.)	I *saw* him **entering** the shop. (This action was in progress when I saw him.)

NB!

1. The verbs *to see* and *to hear* are followed by a clause (not by the Infinitive Construction) when they are not really verbs of sense perception, i.e. when the verb *to see* means "to understand" and the verb *to hear* – "to learn, to be told":

- I *saw* **that she didn't realize** the danger.
  Я видел (понимал), что она не осознаёт опасности.
- I *heard* **that he had left** for the South.
  Я слышал (мне сказали), что он уехал на юг.

2. After the verbs *to see* and *to notice* the Complex Object is not used with the verb *to be*, a clause is used in that case:

- I *saw* **that he was disappointed**.
  Я видел, что он разочарован.
- We *noticed* **that all the teachers were in the hall**.
  Мы заметили, что все учителя были в зале.

EXERCISES



40 **(A, B) Translate the sentences, paying special attention to the use of the Complex Object.**

1. Seeing her enter the room, he rose to greet her. 2. Did you feel the bridge shake? 3. Nobody said anything, we just watched him put it away in his case. 4. You could have heard a pin drop. 5. Did you notice his hand shake? 6. I felt something crawl up my arm. 7. I sat watching the shadows creep across the floor. 8. He is the man who observed the accused man enter the bank. 9. Have you ever heard this song sung in Italian? 10. I have never seen him do otherwise.

41 **(A, B) Fill in the blanks with the particle *to* where necessary.**

1. This is the place from which I saw John ..... arrive to the house. 2. I tried to induce him ..... see a

doctor. 3. The family suspected it and wanted to get him ..... see a lawyer. 4. Did you hear him ..... go out? 5. I told her ..... bring in the tea. 6. Women always want you ..... write them letters. 7. I'd love you ..... see my little daughter. 8. You can't make me ..... say what you want me ..... say. 9. She felt her heart ..... beat wildly. 10. I had expected him ..... be disappointed. 11. Don't let it ..... trouble you. 12. She watched me ..... open the safe.

42 (A, B) Replace the following complex sentences or groups of sentences by simple sentences with the Infinitive Construction.

Model: I looked out of the window. He crossed the street.
I saw him cross the street.

1. I heard someone. He was laughing.
.....
2. The suspected man entered the building. We saw him.
.....
3. The accused man was trying to force the lock of the door. He observed it.
.....
4. She felt it. Joy was filling her.
.....
5. She saw him. He was running from the scene of the crime.
.....
6. You got off the train at Saltmarsh City. The porter saw you.
.....
7. I watched her. She crossed the street.
.....
8. I could hear it perfectly well. They were discussing me.
.....

43 (B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English, using the Infinitive Construction wherever possible.

I

1. Мы слышали,как они спорили. – *We heard them arguing.* 2. Она видела,как мальчик поднимался по лестнице. 3. Никто не заметил, как я открыл дверь и вышел. 4. Я видел, как какой-то человек показывал ей дорогу на станцию. 5. Я никогда не слышала, чтобы он говорил неправду. 6. После захода солнца мы почувствовали, как температура воздуха начала быстро падать. 7. Когда я садился в поезд, я вдруг почувствовал, как кто-то коснулся моего плеча. 8. Мы наблюдали, как ремонтировали дорогу. 9. Я слышал, как кто-то окликнул меня. 10. Он заметил, как она побледнела.

II

1. Я видел, что ему не хочется идти домой. – *I saw that he didn't feel like going home.* 2. Она слышала, что профессор болен уже неделю. 3. Она слышала, как кто-то упомянул моё имя в разговоре. 4. Мы чувствовали, что он нам не верит. 5. Вы слышали, что он бросил занятия музыкой? 6. Мы чувствовали, что он не заметил нас. 7. Она видела, что он её не понимает.

44 (B, C) Complete the jokes by translating parts of the sentences from Russian into English.

I. A Sound Sleeper

JOHN: Hello, Bob, old boy. It's ages since I saw you last. Я хочу, чтобы ты знал (1)..... ..... that I even spoke to you in my dream.

BOB: Sorry, but я не слышал, как ты разговаривал (2)..... .



II. Modesty

"A real man of genius is above all modest," says a young poet, "he never brags. Modesty is a true sign of greatness. For instance, слышали ли вы когда-нибудь, чтобы я хвалил (praise) себя (3)..... ..... ?"



Revision

45 **(B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English, using the Complex Objectm where possible.**

1. Я никогда не слышал, как он поёт. 2. Я слышал, что он сдал все экзамены. 3. Я слышал, как она сказала это. 4. Я никогда не видел, как он танцует, но я слышал, что он танцует очень хорошо. 5. Я видел, что она не понимает меня. 6. Она видела, что он вошёл в сад, и вышла, чтобы встретить его. 7. Я увидела, что он взволнован, и спросила его, в чём дело. 8. Я видел, что такси остановилось у двери. 9. Я видел, как она вышла из дома. 10. Я почувствовал, что кто-то дотронулся до моей руки. 11. Я увидел, что стекло разбито. 12. Вы слышали, как он спросил меня об этом? 13. Я бы хотел посмотреть (увидеть), как она танцует. 14. Никто не слышал, как он сказал это. 15. Я слышал, как профессор упомянул об этих фактах в своей лекции.

46 **(B, C) Translate the following sentences.**

1. Я хотел бы, чтобы вы объяснили мне эту задачу. 2. Что вы хотите, чтобы я сделал для вас? 3. Вы слышали когда-нибудь, как он говорит по-французски? 4. Я слышал, что он переехал в Москву. 5. Они не видели, как я взял кольцо. 6. Никто не ожидал, что они уедут так скоро. 7. Я знаю, что он честный человек. 8. Хочет ли он, чтобы мы помогли ему? 9. Вы слышали, как он выступал (говорил) вчера на собрании? 10. Я не хотел, чтобы его пригласили на вечер. 11. Я думаю, что сегодня вечером вы услышите, как она поёт. 12. Она чувствовала, как дрожит её голос.

2.4.2 The Complex Subject

The Complex Subject (the Nominative-with-the-Infinitive Construction) consists of **a noun/pronoun** (in the nominative case) and **the Infinitive**. It is considered to be the subject of the sentence. Its Russian equivalent is in most cases a subordinate clause.

- **Laser** *is known* **to be used** in medicine.
  Известно, **что лазер широко используется** в медицине.

The Complex Subject is used with:

1. the following groups of verbs in the Passive:

- denoting sense perception: *to see, to hear, to notice, to observe, to watch*, etc.
  - **The car** *was seen* **to disappear** in the distance.
    Видели, как машина скрылась вдали.
  - **She** *was heard* **to laugh** heartily.
    Слышно было, как она весело смеялась.
- denoting mental activity: *to think, to consider, to believe, to expect, to suppose, to know, understand*, etc.
  - **He** *was thought* **to be** honest and kind.
    Его *считали* честным и добрым человеком.
  - **He** *is considered* **to have been** one of the most popular writers of his time.
    Считается, что он был одним из самых популярных писателей своего времени.
- the verbs: *to say, to report* (сообщать), *to order, to ask, to allow, to state* (заявлять), *to announce* (объявлять).
  - **She** *is said* **to be working** at the factory.
    Говорят, что она сейчас работает на заводе.
  - **The delegation** *is reported* **to have left** Moscow.
    Сообщается, что делегация уже покинула Москву.

NOTE: After the verbs in the Passive Voice the Complex Subject is more characteristic of a literary than a colloquial style, except with the verbs *to suppose*, *to expect*, *to make*.

1. The Infinitive in the Complex Subject is used in all its forms and expresses:

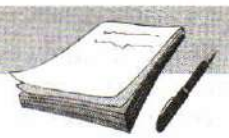
a) a simultaneous action
- He *is said* **to live** in London.
  Говорят, что он *живёт* в Лондоне.

b) an action in progress
- The water *seems* **to be boiling**.
  Кажется, вода *кипит*.

c) an action prior to the action expressed by the finite verb
- They *are reported* **to have finished** the construction.
  Сообщают, что они *уже закончили* строительство.

2. The Infinitive in sentences with the Complex Subject cannot refer to the future except usages with the verbs and word-groups *to expect*, *to be sure/certain*, *to be likely*:
- We *are sure* **to come** to the heart of the matter.
  Мы обязательно *доберёмся* до сути дела.
- He *is expected* **to give** us an answer tomorrow.
  Ожидают, что он *даст* нам ответ завтра.

EXERCISES



47 (A, B) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

1. The river is supposed to flow in this direction. 2. You are expected to know these things. 3. He is said to have owned a very good library. 4. He was told to have organized the whole business. 5. You're not supposed to mark other people's books. 6. The actress was heard to speak to the film director about a new production. 7. She was believed to have a wonderful collection of china. 8. He is known to be an expert in this field. 9. The theatre is reported to have given several performances in Russia. 10. He was heard to groan. 11. This invention is considered to be of great importance in shipbuilding. 12. The cargo of this steamer is stated to consist of 3,000 tons of wheat and 2,000 tons of barley. 13. They were seen to exchange glances. 14. He is known to be an expert in this field.

48 (B, C) Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Infinitive.

1. He appears (to know) ..... French well. He is said (to spend) ..... his youth in Paris. 2. The enemy was reported (to overthrow) ..... the defence and (to advance) ..... towards the city. 3. They are supposed (to work) ..... at the problem for the last two months. 4. His childhood is said (to be) ..... very difficult. 5. A young woman is supposed (to write) ..... this book. 6. He is believed (to teach) ..... by his father. 7. She is expected (to operate) .... on today. 8. He is said (to spend) ..... his youth in England. 9. The book was thought (to lose) ..... until the librarian happened (to find) ..... it during the inventory. 10. This man was seen (run) ..... away from the scene of crime. 11. The parties are reported (to consider) .... the agreement for six months.

49 (A, B) Practise the following according to the model.

Model: A group of tourists visits an old palace, they ask their guide questions about its owner. The guide does not seem to be sure about the details.
A: Did he live here? (most of his life).
B: *Yes, he is said to have lived here most of his life.*
Yes, he is supposed to have lived here most of his life.

1. Did he build any other houses? (several)
.....
2. Did he employ a large staff? (huge)
.....
3. Did he hunt? (when he was a young man)
.....
4. Did he keep race-horses? (all his life)
.....
5. Did they win races? (quite a lot of)
.....
6. Did he sell his other houses? (two of them)
.....
7. Did he quarrel with neighbours? (some of them)
.....
8. Did he leave the country? (after the second duel)
.....
9. Did he die abroad? (in Paris)
.....

50 (A, B) Paraphrase the following sentences, using the Complex Subject.

Model: It is reported that the delegation has left London.
The delegation is reported to have left London.

1. It is known that he has a large collection of pictures.
.....
2. It may be said that the new theatre is the most beautiful building in town.
.....
3. It was reported that the ship had arrived in Odessa.
.....
4. It can't be considered that the results of the experiment are bad.
.....
5. It is expected that many people will attend the meeting.
.....
6. It was found that the lecture was very interesting.
.....
7. He did not hope that she would call.
.....
8. It was reported that the Prime Minister had arrived to the Summit.
.....
9. It can be expected that the weather will improve soon.
.....
10. He was ill. They say so.
.....
11. It is supposed that the lake was much bigger then.
.....
12. It can't be expected that the St. Petersburg football team will win.

51 (B) Translate the words in brackets.

1. He is thought (был) ..... a very good singer. 2. They are expected (пошлют) ..... a reply today. 3. They are said (переехали) ..... to a new flat. 4. Who is supposed (подпишет) ..... the letter? 5. The doctor is supposed (прописал) ..... you something. 6. The results of the experiment are believed (были) ..... very good. 7. The new instrument is expected (поможет) ..... scientists solve many important problems. 8. The members of the committee are understood (пришли) ..... to an agreement. 9. He is said (предложил) ..... them his services. 10. In the 19th century the dark areas on the Mars were thought (были) ..... seas. 11. We were supposed (проведём) ..... the day on board the ship. 12. The expedition is said (сделала) ..... a very important discovery. 13. They were expected (пройдут) ..... 300 miles that day. 14. They were believed (знали) ..... the secret all the time.

52 (B, C) Translate the following sentences into English.

I

1. Говорят, что он в Москве. 2. Ожидают, что договор будет подписан на этой неделе. 3. Сообщают, что экспедиция выехала 15 мая. 4. Известно, что он придерживается другого мнения по этому вопросу. 5. Считают, что он один из лучших лётчиков нашей страны. 6. Говорят, что этот дом был построен около двухсот лет тому назад. 7. Как известно, Макаренко был прекрасным педагогом. 8. Говорят, что экспедиция собрала очень интересный материал. 9. Сообщалось, что в Сибирь была послана большая группа исследователей. 10. Предполагается, что в нашем городе будет построен новый завод. 11. Полагают, что она уже доехала до границы.

II

1. Как сообщают, средняя (average) температура в этом году была значительно ниже, чем в прошлом. 2. Известно, что это вещество поглощает световые лучи. 3. Полагают, что это изобретение поможет нам в нашей работе. 4. Известно, что Лобачевский был самым крупным математиком своего времени. 5. Ожидают, что делегация прибудет завтра. 6. Говорят, что он написал очень хорошую книгу. 7. Говорят, что переговоры уже закончены. 8. Сообщают, что экспедиция уже вернулась в лагерь. 9. Никак не ожидали, что зима наступит так рано.

The Complex Subject is also used with:

2. word groups: *to be likely* (вероятно), *to be unlikely* (маловероятно, вряд ли), *to be certain/to be sure* (несомненно, обязательно, бесспорно, непременно).

- ❑ **He** *is unlikely* **to know** her address.
  Маловероятно (вряд ли), что он знает его адрес.
- ❑ **He** *is sure* **to be asked** about it.
  Его *наверняка* об этом спросят.

3. pairs of synonyms:
to seem/to appear (казаться, по-видимому),
to prove/to turn out (оказываться),
to happen/to chance (случаться).

- ❑ **They** *seem* **to have quite forgotten** us already.
  Они, *кажется*, совершенно нас забыли.
- ❑ The first **experiment** *proved* **to be** a success.
  Первый опыт *оказался* удачным.
- ❑ Only yesterday **we** *happened* **to meet** the man.
  Только вчера мы *случайно* встретили этого человека.

Negative forms:

don't / **doesn't** / **didn't** + *seem* / *prove* / *happen* + *Infinitive*

- ❑ He **doesn't seem to know** this subject.
  Он, *кажется*, не знает этого предмета.
- ❑ He **didn't prove to be** a very experienced engineer.
  Он *оказался* не очень опытным инженером.
- ❑ He **didn't happen to be** there at that time.
  Случилось так, что его не было там в это время.

is/are **not** *likely* + *Infinitive*

- ❑ He **is not likely to come** today.
  Он, *вероятно*, не придёт сегодня.

NB! If the verbs *to prove*, *to seem/to appear* (выглядеть, производить впечатление) are followed by adjectives or nouns with adjectives, the verb *to be* after them can be omitted.

- ❑ She **proved** *(to be)* very **clever**.
- ❑ He **appears an experienced teacher**.

COMPARE:

- ❑ He **seems** ill.
  Он *выглядит* больным.
- ❑ He **seems to be** ill.
  Он, *кажется*, болен.

EXERCISES



53 **(A, B) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.**

I

1. The cargo does not seem to have been damaged by the storm. 2. The negotiations are likely to continue until Saturday. 3. He didn't seem to know you. 4. The situation seems to have become difficult. 5. The man doesn't seem to recognize you. 6. She seems to have done it especially for you. 7. This doesn't seem to be the right decision. 8. The man seems to be a stranger here. 9. She seems to be used to the thought that they'll have to move to another flat. 10. It seems to be an interesting comparison.

II

1. The play is likely to have been written by Shaw. 2. He is certain to get the letter tomorrow. 3. They are most likely to have begun this work. 4. He is sure to enjoy himself at the party. 5. The agreement is certain to have been signed. 6. They are certain to return soon. 7. They are very likely to take part in this work. 8. They are unlikely to have any objections to our proposal. 9. This house is likely to have been built at the beginning of the 19th century. 10. He is sure to be appointed manager of the factory. 11. He is sure to like his new work. 12. They are sure to have returned home by now.

54 **Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Infinitive.**

I. (B)

1. She smiled broadly and waved her hand. She seemed (to recognize) ..... me. 2. Even if he is out, you needn't worry. He is sure (to leave) ..... the key under the doormat. 3. At that time I happened (to work) ..... at my first novel. 4. You aren't likely (to miss) ..... the train if you start right away. 5. Don't cry! Everything is bound (to get) ..... right between you. 6. She lost her head and seemed (to forget) ..... the little English she knew. 7. You needn't mention it again. He is not likely (to forget) ..... it. 8. You needn't tell me this. I happened (to give) ..... all the details by Mother. 9. Just look at his hands. He is sure (to work) .... in the garage.

II. (B, C)

1. He seems (to be satisfied) ..... with the results. 2. It seemed it would take not less than a page (to put) ..... it into words. 3. The book is likely (to publish) ..... and (to appear) ..... on sale pretty soon. It is sure (to sell) ..... well and (to sell) ..... out in no time. 4. The man appears (to know) ..... practically all European languages; he is said (to learn) ..... them while travelling. 5. You seem (to look) ..... for trouble. 6. The man seemed (to study) ..... me and I felt uneasy in his presence. 7. The strength of the metal proved (to over-estimate) ..... by the designer. The engineer claimed (to warn) ..... against its use for the purpose as it was likely (to deform) ..... under great load. 8. We seem (to fly) ..... over the sea for quite a time and there is yet no land (to see) ..... . 9. We don't seem (to acquaint) ..... , at least I can't remember having ever met him. 10. He seems (to read) .... since morning. 11. They seemed (to quarrel) ..... . I could hear their angry voices.

55 **(A) Practise the following according to the model.**

Model:
A. He doesn't usually play chess.
B. Well, he *seems/appears to be playing* chess today.
A. He doesn't usually collect the children from school.
B. But today he *seems to have collected* them himself.

1. do the shopping.
   .....
2. wait for his wife.
   .....

3. bring his wife flowers.
.....
4. collect the children from school.
.....
5. help his wife.
.....
6. talk to his mother-in-law.
.....
7. quarrel with his neighbours.
.....
8. play with the children.
.....
9. walk to work.
.....
10. carry his wife's parcels.
.....

56 (B) Paraphrase the following sentences, using the Complex Subject.

Model: It seemed that he knew the subject well.
He seemed to know the subject well.

1. It happened that they met that very day.
.....
2. It proved that there were some broken cups in the case.
.....
3. It seems that the play has made a deep impression on him.
.....
4. It proved that he was a very experienced worker.
.....
5. It appears that the house was built in the 18th century.
.....
6. It happened that there was a doctor there at that time.
.....
7. It appears that there are different opinions on this subject.
.....
8. It happened that he was at home at that time.
.....
9. It seems that there is a great difference between these two samples.
.....

57 (B) Paraphrase the sentences, using the model.

Model: It is not likely that they will return soon.
They are not likely to return soon.

1. It appears unlikely that the experiment will give good results.
.....
2. It is likely that he has accepted their offer.
.....
3. It is certain that they will come to Moscow.
.....
4. It appears likely that he will recover soon.
.....
5. It is likely that there will be a heated discussion on this question.
.....
6. It is unlikely that the meeting will be postponed.
.....
7. It is very likely that his article will be published in the newspaper.
.....
8. It is certain that they will be here on Monday.
.....
9. It is likely that there will be a good wheat crop this year.
.....
10. It is likely that the conference will be held in Moscow.
.....
11. It is likely that the goods were shipped on Monday.
.....
12. It seems likely that there will be a storm on the sea.
.....

58 (B, C) Translate the phrases in brackets to complete the sentences.

I

1. This book seems (была переведена очень опытным переводчиком).
.....
2. The box seems (пустая) ..... .
3. The problem appears (представляет для них большой интерес)
.....

4. He seems (доволен нашей работой)
.....
5. Everybody appeared (были удивлены, когда услышали это)
.....
6. Dmitry seems (сидит в читальном зале)
.....
7. He appears (ждёт вас внизу)
.....
8. He turned out (очень хорошим спортсменом)
.....
9. I happened (встретил его в Москве)
.....
10. I happened (слышал, как он спросил её об этом) .....

II

1. The delegation is likely (уже уехала из Москвы)
.....
2. The plane is likely (уже прибыл в Прагу)
.....
3. He is likely (придёт вечером)
.....
4. They are sure (согласятся принять участие в этой работе)
.....
5. He is sure (получит приз за свою картину)
.....
6. His book is sure (напечатана в России)
.....
7. They aren't likely (не приедут в мае)
.....
8. They aren't likely (не получили зарплату сегодня)
.....
9. The theatre is unlikely (не поедет в Лондон в этом сезоне)
.....
10. This problem is unlikely (будет обсуждаться сегодня).
.....

59 (B, C) Translate the following sentences, using the Infinitive constructions.

I

1. Он, кажется, сердится на меня. 2. Он, кажется, болен. 3. Он, кажется, болел. 4. Они, по-видимому, пользовались этим словарём. 5. Он, кажется, знает её хорошо. 6. Они, по-видимому, очень хорошо поняли это правило. 7. Кажется, все студенты читали эту статью. 8. Она, кажется, знает три иностранных языка. 9. Кажется, эта статья была опубликована в «Правде» на прошлой неделе. 10. Он, по-видимому, удовлетворён результатом своей работы. 11. Он, кажется, уехал на юг. 12. Они, вероятно, вернутся осенью. 13. Вряд ли он примет участие в этом спектакле. 14. Он, кажется, очень добрый человек. 15. Она, по-видимому, забыла о своём обещании.

II

1. Правила, вероятно, изменятся. 2. Очень вероятно, что эта проблема будет обсуждена на заседании правительства. 3. Вряд ли он придёт сюда. 4. Очень вероятно, что собрание закончится через час. 5. Он, вероятно, будет дома в шесть часов. 6. Эти меры будут, вероятно, приняты. 7. Они вряд ли скоро вернутся. 8. Очень вероятно, что он знает, где работает Андрей Иванов. 9. Товары, вероятно, будут доставлены без опоздания. 10. Очень вероятно, что завтра будет хорошая погода. 11. Маловероятно, что они закончат свою работу до конца мая. 12. Этот опыт, вероятно, будет успешным.



A J☺ke

BROTHER: Are you really going to marry that young man Jones? **He is said to be** very kind and clever. But isn't he a bit strange? At any rate, he is unlike other young men.

SISTER: I'm going to marry Jones and I don't find anything strange about him. And then if he is indeed unlike other young men, **he is likely to make** a very good husband.

Revision

60 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Видели, как она писала письмо. 2. Думали, что это она пишет эти письма. 3. Предполагали, что она написала это письмо. 4. Наверняка она и сейчас пишет письмо. 5. Конечно, она написала это письмо. 6. Вряд ли она пишет эти письма. 7. Вряд ли она написала письмо. 8. Конечно, письмо уже написано. 9. Конечно, она его уже написала. 10. Оказалось, что она написала стихотворение. 11. Случайно она написала хорошее стихотворение.

II

1. Кажется, кто-то стучит. 2. Известно, что он один из лучших врачей в больнице. 3. Он, наверное, получит удовольствие от этой поездки. 4. Оказалось, что он прав. 5. Этот вопрос вряд ли будет обсуждаться на собрании. 6. Они, наверное, помогут нам. 7. Считают, что Иванов лучший рабочий в нашем цехе (shop). 8. Лекция, наверное, будет интересной. 9. Оказалось, что он большой специалист по этому вопросу. 10. Он, кажется, не понял этого правила. 11. Она, по-видимому, не любит музыку. 12. Он, кажется, ничего не знает об этом. 13. Товары, по-видимому, не были тщательно упакованы. 14. Он, казалось, не был удивлен этим сообщением. 15. Он, кажется, не понимает значения этого изобретения. 16. Никто, по-видимому, не обратил внимания на его слова.

61 (B, C) The head of the company is talking to the project manager. He disapproves of what his team is doing. Restore the dialogue between them, using the Infinitive constructions.

HEAD OF THE COMPANY

1. I/expect/you/finish the work by May.
   .....
2. I/consider/you/be responsible and creative.
   .....
3. I/order/the project/send to our partners/next week.
   .....
4. Last week I/watch/the designers/work. I/happen/see/they/test the experimental model.
   .....
5. Not in the least. They/not seem/know/what they were doing.
   .....
6. They/be sure/send the whole thing back.
   .....
7. We'll see in a week's time.
   .....

PROJECT MANAGER

1. I quite understand but my assistant Bill Clark says/his wife/expect/he/come home in time for dinner.
   .....
2. I try hard to be responsible but my engineers/want/I/pay for overtime. And the only thing I can't create is money.
   .....
3. I'm sorry but the team/not think/the project/be ready.
   .....
4. I hope you liked what you saw.
   .....
5. Here I can't agree with you, Sir. Our experiment/prove/be a success.
   .....
6. Our partners/appear/be happy with the report we sent them. I/hear/they/praise the work.
   .....

62 **(B, C) Translate the sentences to complete the jokes.**



1. A Boy Who Can't Behave

"Oh, Auntie!" cried little Annie, "make Freddie behave himself. Каждый раз, когда я случайно ударяю (hit) его по голове, он обязательно начинает реветь (to burst out crying) ...."



2. Who Profits?

Случилось так, что на званом обеде Charles Lamb, знаменитый английский юморист, сидел рядом с очень разговорчивым молодым человеком. (1) .... Observing that Lamb did not listen to his preaching, the young man exclaimed, "Вы, кажется, не извлекаете никакой пользы (benefit) from what I am telling you!" (2) .... "No, Sir, I don't," answered Lamb; "but the gentleman on the other side of me, наверняка получает пользу; because everything you tell me comes in at one ear and goes out at the other." (3) .....

2.4.3 The *for-to*-Infinitive Construction

In this construction an adjective, a noun or a pronoun is preceded by the preposition *for*. In translating this construction into Russian a subordinate clause or an Infinitive is used.

Sentence Patterns with the *for*-Phrase

Some of the verbs are followed by for + object + Infinitive construction.
We use *for* + *noun/pronoun* to introduce "the subject" of the Infinitive in the following cases:

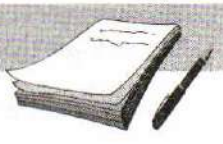
1. after *it is/was/will be easy, good, important, convenient, dangerous, necessary, difficult* (**for smb to do** smth);	❑ *It's easier* **for me to go** out and buy a new pair of gloves. Мне легче пойти и купить новую пару перчаток. ❑ *It will be important* **for Berth to go** to University.
2. with the verbs: *to wait, to arrange, to hope, to long, to prepare, to be anxious* (**for smb to do** smth), *to ask*	❑ I'*m waiting* **for you to come**. Я жду вашего прихода. ❑ I *have arranged* **for you to have** a private room. Я договорился, что у тебя будет отдельная комната.
3. with nouns such as: *advantage, disadvantage, demand, disaster, idea, mistake, reason* (**for smb to do** smth)	❑ It was *a mistake* **for you to lend** him the money. Ты совершил ошибку, одолжив ему деньги.

4. with such pronouns as: *somebody*, *nobody*, *no one*, *nothing*, etc.	❑ There is *no one* **for the children to play** with. Детям не с кем играть. ❑ There is *nothing else* **for me to say**. Мне больше нечего сказать.
5. after such phrases as: *It is the only thing*	❑ *It was the only thing* **for me to do**. Это было единственное, что я мог сделать.
It is the right time	❑ *It is not the right time* **for us to speak** about it. Сейчас не время нам об этом говорить.
6. when the Infinitive expresses purpose:	❑ He stood aside **for us to pass by**. Он отошёл в сторону, чтобы мы могли пройти. ❑ There are benches **for the people to sit on** in the park. В парке есть скамейки, чтобы люди могли сидеть.
7. *(too)* adjective *(enough)* **for smb to do** smth	❑ The lane was *wide enough* **for him to turn** the car. Переулок был достаточно широк, чтобы развернуть машину.

* **EXCEPTION:**

- ❑ It was **silly of you** to ask that question. С твоей стороны было глупо задать этот вопрос.
- ❑ It's **nice (kind) of you** to say so. Очень мило с вашей стороны так говорить (что вы так говорите).
- ❑ It will be very **sensible of you** to go there at once. Очень будет разумно, если ты пойдёшь туда сейчас же.

EXERCISES



63 **(B) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.**

1. There is no need for the steamer to call at Tuapse. 2. It was necessary for him to return immediately. 3. There is no reason for us to change the terms of payment. 4. There was no time for them to examine the goods that day. 5. It is too late for you to go there. 6. It is easy for you to answer this question. 7. The day was much too cold and rainy for anyone to have a good time. 8. He thinks it best for you to stay here.

64 **(A) Replace the following groups of sentences by a sentence with a *for*-phrase.**

Model: He won't catch the six fifteen. It is impossible. It is impossible *for him to catch the six fifteen*.

1. She explained everything. It was not difficult.
   .....
2. She managed to do it in time. But it was quite an effort.
   .....
3. Don't make mistakes. It's important.
   .....
4. Her mother made the decision. It's the usual thing in this family.
   .....

5. We ought to take a vacation now. It won't be difficult.
   ..... .
6. You'll speak English with her. It'll do you good.
   ..... .
7. She is very late. It's rather unusual.
   ..... .
8. You really ought to see a doctor. It will be best.
   ..... .
9. We'll spend a couple of weeks in St. Petersburg next June. It will be rather pleasant.
   ..... .

65 (A) Complete the following sentences by adding *for*-phrases to them.

Model: It would be better (you/to stay in bed).
It would be better *for you to stay in bed*.

1. It's very important (children/to play outdoors). 2. It'll be best (she/to talk to the manager). 3. It might be just possible (you/to make him see the doctor). 4. It would be easy (I/to pretend). 5. It's very bad (boys/to smoke). 6. It's not (you/to carry that heavy bag).

66 (A, B) Complete the following sentences by adding *for*-phrases to them. You may use the following:

~~his date/come~~ you/go away
she/find a good job she/stay indoors
the team/change the schedule
he/take up a computer course

1. He stood there with a bunch of flowers waiting *for his date to come*. 2. Under the circumstances, I really think it best ..... . 3. All right, I'll go. Why are you so anxious .... ? 4. After a long telephone conversation with John we arranged .... 5. She is out playing. The doctor does not think it necessary ..... . 6. The manager was very cross and said that he did not mean ..... .

67 (A, B) Add infinitives to complete the *for*-phrases in the sentences below.

1. It's getting cold. It's bad for the children ..... . 2. Have you brought something for me ..... on the train? 3. There's simply nobody there for a young girl ..... . 4. I can't find a place for us ..... . 5. Those are not the right people for you ..... . 6. I have bought a few things for Tony ..... .

68 (A, B) Replace the following pairs of sentences by sentences with *for*-phrases of result *(too/enough)*.

Model: The street is very narrow. He won't be able to turn the car.
The street is *too* narrow *for him to turn the car*.

1. The way to the village was long. I could not walk.
   ..... .
2. The heat was oppressive. We did not stay long on the beach.
   ..... .
3. The problem was comparatively easy. I solved it in half an hour.
   ..... .
4. The situation was getting complicated. We could no longer cope with it.
   ..... .
5. The conversation was interesting. The children did not want to go to bed.
   ..... .
6. The noise of the traffic grew loud. I could not sleep.
   ..... .
7. The light was good. She could read the inscription.
   ..... .

69 (A, B) Translate the following sentences.

1. Вы думаете, мне легко отказаться от этой мысли? 2. Я считаю (нахожу необходимым), чтобы ты кончил школу. 3. Нам было трудно понять, чего ты хочешь. 4. Мама испекла пирог, чтобы мы съели его за ужином. 5. Он оставил дверь открытой, чтобы мы могли войти. 6. Я привезу книг, чтобы вы могли читать летом. 7. Я оставил записку на столе, чтобы все могли её видеть. 8. Детям там негде спать. 9. Мне здесь больше нечего делать. 10. Не такая это игра, чтобы дети могли в неё играть.

70 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Машина шла слишком быстро, чтобы я мог рассмотреть лицо водителя. 2. Она говорила так медленно, что мы понимали каждое слово. 3. Я был слишком расстроен, чтобы мама этого не заметила. 4. Он говорил по-английски достаточно хорошо, и мы поняли, что ему надо. 5. В пещере было так темно, что мы не смогли найти выход. 6. Вам полезно есть фрукты. 7. Мне легче сделать это сегодня. 8. Им будет проще поехать туда на метро. 9. Ей было бы трудно решить эту задачу. 10. Нам было приятно снова встретить наших друзей. 11. Нам будет полезно отдохнуть. 12. Вам вредно столько курить. 13. Ей было трудно молчать. 14. Не мне давать вам советы. 15. Не им обсуждать этот вопрос.

Revision

71 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Я оставила письма на столе, чтобы мистер Питерс подписал их. 2. Вам необходимо быть здесь завтра в 5 часов. 3. Нам трудно сделать эту работу в такой короткий срок. 4. Детям там совершенно нечего делать. 5. Ей очень трудно перевести эту статью. 6. Очень мило, что вы пришли. 7. Сейчас слишком поздно, чтобы дети шли гулять. 8. С его стороны было невежливо опаздывать. 9. Ему легко это сделать. 10. Очень важно, чтобы он получил документы на этой неделе. 11. Надеюсь, вы понимаете, что мне очень неудобно оставаться в Лондоне летом. 12. Ему очень легко сделать эту работу. 13. Вашей сестре необходимо повидать его. 14. Текст был слишком трудный, чтобы он мог перевести его без словаря. 15. Сегодня достаточно тепло, чтобы он шёл в школу без пальто. 16. У нас слишком мало времени. Я не смогу тебе всё рассказать.

2.5 Revision

72 (B) Rewrite the sentences, replacing the words in italics by a Gerund or Infinitive Construction.

(Model:) His doctor recommended *that he should try* taking sleeping pills for a while.
His doctor recommended *him to try* taking sleeping pills for a while.

1. He preferred *that I should say* nothing about it at present. ..... .
2. She couldn't bear *that he should think* of her in that way. ..... .
3. He was surprised to find the door open. He remembered *that he had locked* it before going to bed. ..... .
4. The speaker making the radio appeal urged *that his listeners should give* more attention to the problem. ..... .

5. The law requires *that all cars should be regularly tested* for safety and efficiency.
.....
6. His lawyer advised him *that he should drop the case* since it was unlikely to succeed.
.....

73 (B) Translate into English, using infinitive attributes.

1. Мне надо вам кое-что сказать. 2. У меня есть хорошая новость, которую я должен вам рассказать. 3. Он первый прервал молчание. 4. Мне надо о многом поговорить с вами. 5. Он ушёл из лаборатории последним. 6. Вот книга, которую хорошо почитать в поезде. 7. У меня не было времени прочитать эту статью. 8. Он не такой человек, чтобы забыть о своём обещании. 9. У неё есть ребенок, о котором ей надо заботиться. 10. Вот статья, которую вы должны прочитать.

74 (B) Translate the following sentences, using Infinitive Constructions.

1. Я думаю, что он хороший инженер. 2. Я хочу, чтобы вы, наконец, меня поняли. 3. Мы наблюдали, как дети играли в саду. 4. Она слышала, что они вернулись поздно вечером. 5. Они не хотели, чтобы я делал эту работу один. 6. Никто не заметил, как он ушёл. 7. Позвольте мне помочь вам. 8. Я не ожидал, что они вернутся так скоро. 9. Я почувствовал, что кто-то внимательно смотрит на меня. 10. Что заставило вас сказать это? 11. Я видел, что он подошёл к ней и что-то сказал. 12. Я слышал, как он что-то объяснял ей. 13. Кто велел ему (сказал ему) прийти сегодня?

75 (B, C) Translate into English using the Complex Object (Objective-with-the-Infinitive Construction) where possible.

1. Пегготи знала, что мистер Мёрдстон чёрствый и жёстокий человек, и не хотела, чтобы миссис Копперфильд выходила за него замуж. 2. Мистер Мёрдстон заставил жену повиноваться ему. 3. Дэвид чувствовал, что рука его матушки дрожит. 4. Мистер Мёрдстон и его сестра считали Дэвида ленивым и упрямым мальчиком. 5. Мистер Мёрдстон приказал, чтобы Дэвида заперли в его комнате. 6. Дэвид проснулся, услышав, что кто-то шепотом зовёт его. 7. Пегготи слышала, что мистер Мёрдстон собирается отдать Дэвида в школу. 8. Мистер Мёрдстон не хотел, чтобы Дэвид жил дома, и добился того, что миссис Копперфильд отдала его в школу. 9. Пегготи видела, что миссис Копперфильд несчастна, но не могла ничего сделать, чтобы помочь ей. 10. Мистер Мёрдстон хотел, чтобы Пегготи отказали от места (to dismiss), но миссис Копперфильд не могла допустить, чтобы её верная служанка ушла от неё. 11. Мисс Бетси увидела, что в сад вошёл грязный оборванный мальчик. 12. Мисс Бетси чувствовала, что Дэвид говорит правду.

76 (B, C) Translate into English, using the *for-to*-Infinitive Construction where possible.

1. Каждый вечер мистер Пегготи ставил свечу на подоконник, чтобы маленькая Эмили знала, что он её ждёт. 2. Когда мистер Пегготи нашёл Эмили, он решил, что самое лучшее, что они могут сделать, – это уехать в Австралию. 3. Дэвид купил поваренную книгу (cookery book), чтобы Дора пользовалась ею. 4. Дора сказала, что первое, что она должна сделать, – это приготовить Джипу хороший ужин. 5. Дора понимала, что Дэвиду необходимо поехать с мисс Бетой в Кентербери, и сказала, что ей будет даже полезно (beneficial) побыть одной. 6. Мистер Микобер попросил Трэдльса помочь ему, так как разоблачение (exposure) Урии Хипа было слишком трудным делом, чтобы он мог с ним справиться один (to cope with). 7. Мистер Микобер попросил, чтобы принесли бумаги и конторские книги (account-books) Урии Хипа. 8. Урии Хипу ничего не оставалось делать, как сознаться.

(«Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка», В.Л. Каушанская и др.)

77 (B, C) Translate into English, using the Complex Subject (Nominative-with-the-Infinitive Construction).

1. Вальтер Скотт считается создателем исторического романа. 2. Сообщают, что экспедиция достигла места назначения. 3. Едва ли его назначат главным инженером, ведь он кончил институт всего два года тому назад. 4. Он, по-видимому, хорошо знает английский язык; наверное, он изучал его в детстве. 5. Я случайно знаю номер его телефона. 6. Он оказался хорошим спортсменом. 7. Шум, казалось, всё приближался. 8. Я случайно проходил мимо вокзала, когда в Петербург приехали артисты Шекспировского мемориального театра (Shakespeare Memorial Theatre). 9. Он, кажется, пишет новую статью; кажется, он работает над ней уже две недели. 10. Его статья, несомненно, будет напечатана. 11. Я случайно встретил его в Москве. 12. Обязательно прочитайте эту книгу; она вам, несомненно, понравится.

2.6 Tests

I

1. По правде говоря, мне не нравится его предложение.
2. Чай был слишком горячим, его невозможно было пить.
3. У вас есть что добавить?
4. Плохая погода заставила нас вернуться домой.
5. Мы ожидаем, что товары будут доставлены через три недели.
6. Мы стояли у ворот, ожидая, когда прибудет такси.
7. Учитель видел, что студенты не знают, как выполнить это задание.
8. Он оказался не очень хорошим спортсменом.
9. Я случайно встретил его на выставке. Говорят, он недавно вернулся в Москву.
10. Казалось, он не понимает меня.

II

1. Мягко выражаясь, она была не очень красива.
2. Он был достаточно умён, чтобы понять всё сразу.
3. Есть ещё одно дело, которое надо сделать.
4. Она была настолько легкомысленна, что пошла туда одна.
5. Мама не разрешала сыну играть на улице.
6. Преподаватель любит, чтобы студенты записывали его лекции.
7. Я слышал, что товары погрузили (load) на пароход, но я точно этого не знаю.
8. Вероятно, делегация пробудет в Москве несколько дней.
9. Он отправился туда, чтобы проверить все факты.
10. Он, казалось, был недоволен результатами своей работы.

III

1. Короче говоря, они поженились и переехали жить в другой город.
2. Проблема слишком трудна, чтобы решить её немедленно.
3. Архитектор показал мне проект памятника, который будет воздвигнут на площади.
4. Дайте мне знать, когда он позвонит.
5. Я хочу, чтобы мне показали эти записи.
6. Я видел, что он злится, и решил поговорить с ним.
7. Кажется маловероятным, что их предложение будет принято.
8. Товары непременно будут доставлены вовремя.
9. Никто не слышал, как она вошла в комнату.
10. Он, казалось, забыл о своём обещании.

IV

1. Начнём с того, что я никогда не был знаком с этим человеком.
2. Вы достаточно его знаете, чтобы рекомендовать его на эту должность?
3. На этой неделе у меня много дел, которые я должен обязательно сделать.
4. Не давайте ему разговаривать с заключёнными.
5. Считаете ли вы, что он опытный врач?
6. Я слышал, что о нем говорили на последнем собрании.
7. В этом семестре вряд ли будут какие-либо изменения в расписании.
8. Чемодан был слишком тяжёлый, чтобы она могла нести его.
9. Я видел, как он подошёл к ним и сказал что-то.
10. Мне очень жаль. Я пришёл, чтобы сообщить вам неприятную новость.

V

1. В довершение всего она разбила любимую чашку мамы.
2. Она знает английский язык достаточно хорошо, чтобы поехать в командировку без переводчика.
3. Она знала, что не виновата, ей нечего было бояться.
4. Не разрешайте детям купаться в ручье. Вода очень холодная.
5. Я думаю, что этот вопрос имеет большое значение.
6. Я видел, что он очень расстроен.
7. Говорят, что это здание было построено в XVII веке.
8. Кажется маловероятным, что они придут к соглашению.
9. Он не ожидал, что его спросят об этом.
10. Я видел, как тёмные тучи покрыли небо, и слышал, что поднялся ветер.

3. The Participle

3.1 Forms and Functions

	Active	Passive
Present Participle (Participle I)	asking	being asked
Past Participle (Participle II)	asked	–
Perfect Participle	having asked	having been asked

(for Irregular Verbs see Appendices 2, 3; for Spelling Rules see Appendix 4)

The Present Participle (Active and Passive) shows that the action named by the Participle takes place at the same time with that of the finite verb. These forms denote simultaneous action in the present, past or future.

- Do you *see* the child **waving** the flag?
- That day we *stayed* at home **watching** TV.
- In a few minutes the guests *will be arriving* **wearing** smiles and **carrying** presents.

The Past Participle has no tense distinctions; it has only one form which can express both an action simultaneous with and prior to the action expressed by the finite verb. In most cases it denotes priority or refers to no particular time.

- He *is* a man **loved** and **admired** by everybody.
- The dog **carried** by the child *gave* a sharp yelp.
- She *took* the long **forgotten** letter out of the bag.

The Perfect Participle (Active and Passive) shows that the action named by the Participle preceded that of the finite verb. Its forms denote the priority to a present, past or future action.

- **Having explained** everything, I *want* to tell you how sorry I am.
- **Having finished** the letter, he *went* to the post office.
- **Having settled** the problem, you *will find* something new to worry about.

NB!

1. A prior action is not always expressed by the Perfect Participle. The Present Participle is used even if priority is meant with some verbs:

a) of sense perception: *to see, to hear, to feel, to think, to find*, etc.
- **Hearing** footsteps, he rose and went to open the door.
  Услышав шаги внизу, он встал и пошёл открывать дверь.

b) of motion: *to come, to arrive, to enter, to leave*, etc.
- **Leaving** the house, he went directly to the station.
  Выйдя из дома, он отправился прямо на станцию.

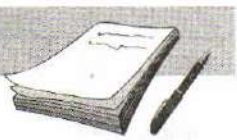
c) verbs associated with motion: *to seize, to grasp, to open, to close, to put, to take, to look, to turn*, etc.

2. If the actions denoted by the Participle and by the predicate closely follow each other, the Present Participle is used instead of the Perfect Participle:
- **Seeing** me, he smiled happily.
  Увидев меня, он счастливо *улыбнулся*.

The Perfect Participle is used when there is a period of time between the two actions.
- **Having seen** her last before the war, he didn't recognize her.

The Participle has special forms to denote the **Active and Passive Voice**.
- When **writing** letters, he doesn't like to be disturbed.
- **Being written** in pencil, the letter was difficult to read.
- **Having written** the letter, he went to the post office.
- **Having been written** long ago, the manuscript was impossible to read.

EXERCISE



1 **(A, B) Translate the sentences from English into Russian, paying special attention to the form of the Participle in the sentences. Select sentences with Participle I, Participle II and the Perfect Participle.**

Participle I	Participle II	Perfect Participle
1, ...	2, ...	

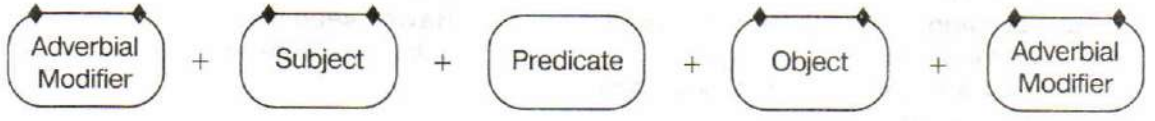
I. 1. The boy playing in the garden is my sister's son. 2. You can get the recommended book in the library. 3. He asked her to go on with her story, promising not to interrupt her again. 4. Receiving no letters from her father, she called him. 5. He left the office at three o'clock, saying he would be back at five. 6. She

stood leaning against the wall. 7. He lay on the sofa reading a newspaper. 8. Seeing her, he raised his hat. 9. Having signed the letter, the manager asked the secretary to send it off at once. 10. Having lived in that town all his life, he knew it very well. 11. Having arranged everything, he went home on the 10.30 train. 12. Being checked with great care, the report didn't contain any errors. 13. These machines will be sent to the plant being constructed in this region. 14. Being told of his arrival, I went to see him. 15. Having been three times seriously wounded, he was no longer fit for active service.

II. 1. A person bringing good news is always welcome. 2. While skating yesterday, he fell and hurt himself. 3. She showed the travellers into the room reserved for them. 4. When writing an essay we must use new words and phrases. 5. The leaves lying on the ground reminded us of autumn. 6. Books read in childhood seem like old friends. 7. The answer received from her greatly surprised us. 8. There are many wonderful books describing the life of people in the North. 9. Being a great book-lover, he spent a lot of money on books. 10. The figures mentioned in his article were published in Izvestia. 11. Receiving the telegram, he rang the manager up.

3.2 Functions of the Participle in the Sentence

Sentence Word Order



♦ – attribute

The Participle has two syntactic functions:

	An attribute	An adverbial modifier
building	❑ The young men **building**[1] our house with me are my brothers. Молодые люди, *которые строят* наш дом вместе со мной, – мои братья.	❑ He made his living **building**[3] summer houses or garages for people. Он зарабатывал на жизнь, *строя* людям дачи и гаражи.
TRANSLATION	**строящий / который строит**	**строя**
being built	❑ The white stone house **being built**[2] near the park is a new building of our Art Museum. Белокаменное сооружение, *строящееся* у парка, – новое здание нашего музея изобразительных искусств.	❑ **Being built**[4] with great skill and care, the mansion has been used by the family for centuries. *(Так как) особняк был построен (будучи построенным)* очень искусно, он служит семье уже несколько веков.
TRANSLATION	**строящийся (в данный момент) / которое строится сейчас**	**будучи построенным / так как построен**

	An attribute	An adverbial modifier
built	❑ They are reconstructing the house **built** in the 18th century. Они реставрируют здание, *построенное* в XVIII веке.	❑ If **built**[3] of the local stone, the road will serve for years. *Если построить* дорогу из этого местного камня, она будет служить долгие годы.
TRANSLATION	**построенный**	**Так как (если / когда) построен**

NOTES:

1. In some cases the Present Participle Active in the function of an attribute is rendered in Russian by a clause.

❑ He came back and stood on the steps **leading down to the street**.
Он вернулся и стоял на лестнице, *которая вела на улицу*.

2. The Present Participle Passive *(being read)* is very seldom used as an attribute.

3. The Past Participle (Participle II) can be an adverbial modifier when it is used with the conjunctions *when*, *while*, *as if/as though*, *though*, *unless*, *if*.

❑ **When told** to come in, he seemed to change his mind.
Когда его попросили войти, он, казалось, передумал.

❑ She continued staring at the screen **as if fascinated**.
Она продолжала смотреть на экран, как будто заворожённая.

In this function the Present Participle (Participle I) can also be used with conjunctions *when*, *while (reading)* ***(читая/когда читал)***:

❑ **(While) reading** this book, I always remember my childhood.

❑ **(When) reading** this book, I wrote out a number of useful expressions.

4. The Present Participle *being* (from *to be*) is not used in adverbial modifiers of time, we use *while*-phrase or a clause instead.

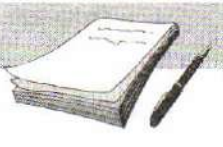
❑ *Будучи* в Москве, я посетил Кремль.
While in Moscow (= while I was in Moscow), I visited Kremlin.

❑ *Будучи* мальчиком, я любил играть в футбол.
When a boy (= when I was a boy), I liked to play football.

NB! *Being* is used in adverbial modifiers of cause.

❑ **Being tired** (= as he was tired), he went home at once.
Будучи усталым (= так как он устал), он сразу же пошёл домой.

EXERCISES



2 **(A) Mark the correct word.**

1. разбитая чашка [b]
разбивая ☐
a) breaking b) broken

2. проигранная игра ☐
проигрывающая команда ☐
a) losing b) lost

3. кипяченая вода ☐
кипящая вода ☐
a) boiling b) boiled

4. жареная рыба ☐
жарящаяся рыба ☐
a) frying b) fried

5. написанное письмо ☐
пишущий мальчик ☐
a) writing b) written

6. печёный картофель ☐
запекая рыбу ☐
a) baked b) baking

3 (A, B) Open the brackets, using the correct form of the Participle. Do not mix these:

interesting films	interested spectators
exciting games	excited children
boring lessons	bored students
burning fires	burnt woods
sinking ships	sunk ships

1. A crowd of (excite) ..... people were watching the firemen trying to save the (burn) ..... building. 2. "During my vacation I came across several extremely (interest) ..... books," said he. "Which ones?" she asked in an (interest) ..... voice. 3. Why do you look so (worry) ..... ? – I've had a number of (worry) ..... telephone calls lately. 4. I don't know what was in the (burn) ..... letter, I didn't read it. 5. Nothing can save the (sink) ..... ship now, all we can do is to try and save the passengers. 6. It was an (excite) ..... incident. No wonder she spoke about it in an (excite) ..... voice. 7. After hearing the (frighten) ..... tale, the (frighten) ..... children wouldn't go to sleep. 8. The doctor did his best to convince her that there was nothing seriously wrong with the boy but the (worry) ..... mother wouldn't calm down.

4 (A) Replace the attributive clauses with the Participle.

Model: All the people who live in this house are students.
All the people *living* in this house are students.

1. The man who is speaking now is our new secretary.
.....
2. The apparatus that stands on the table in the corner of the laboratory is quite new.
.....
3. The young man who helps the professor in his experiments studies at an evening school.
.....
4. People who take books from the library must return them in time.
.....
5. There are many pupils in our class who take part in the performance.
.....

5 (A) Replace the adverbial clauses of time with the Participle.

Model: When you speak English, pay attention to the intonation.
(When) Speaking English, pay attention to the intonation.

1. Be careful when you cross a street.
.....
2. When you leave the room, don't forget to switch off the light.
.....
3. When they were travelling in Central Africa, the explorers met many wild animals.
.....
4. When you copy English texts, pay attention to the articles.
.....
5. You must have much practice when you are learning to speak a foreign language.
.....

6 (B, C) Fill in the blanks with the appropriate forms from the column.

1. The houses ..... many years ago are not as convenient as the modern ones. 2. What is the number of apartment houses ..... in the past few years? 3. The number of apartment houses ..... for the population of Moscow is rapidly

building
being built
built
used
using
sent
sending
being sent

growing. 4. The workers ..... this house used new construction methods. 5. At the conference they discussed new methods ..... in building. 6. The new methods ..... in the building of houses proved more effective. 7. Here are some samples of the products of this plant ..... to different parts of the country. 8. These are the samples of products ..... last month.

7 (B, C) Fill in the blanks with the Passive Participle of the verb in brackets.

1. a) I cannot forget the story ..... by him. b) They listened breathlessly to the story ..... by the old man. (to tell) 2. a) One can't fail to notice the progress ..... by our group during the last term. b) These are only a few of the attempts now ..... to improve the methods of teaching. (to make) 3. a) We could hear the noise of furniture ..... upstairs. b) For a moment they sat silent ..... by the story. (to move) 4. a) The monument ..... on this square has been recently unveiled. b) The monument ..... on this square will be soon unveiled. (to erect)

3.2.1 The Perfect Participle

The Perfect Participle (Active and Passive) can never be used as attribute. In a sentence it can function only as an adverbial modifier which shows the priority of the action named by the finite verb.

	An attribute	**An adverbial modifier**
having built	–	❑ **Having built** the house, he began building a greenhouse. *Построив дом*, он принялся за оранжерею.
TRANSLATION		**построив / когда / после того, как построил**
having been built	–	❑ **Having been built** of concrete, the house was always cold in winter. *Так как дом был построен* из бетона, в нём всегда было холодно зимой.
TRANSLATION		**так как / потому что построен**

Russian Equivalents of Participles Used as Attributes

READING

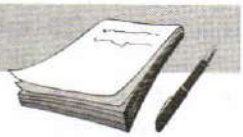
Читающий / который читает
The main verb is in the Present tense
❑ *Look* at this **reading** boy. He is only five years old.
Посмотри на этого **читающего** мальчика. Ему только пять лет.

Читавший / который читал (тогда)
The main verb is in the Past tense
❑ We *looked* at the **reading** boy. He had a nice voice.
Мы посмотрели на **читавшего** мальчика. У него был приятный голос.

NB! When translating Russian participles ending in ***-вший*** *(читавший)* we use the Present Participle *(reading)* only if the action expressed by the participle is simultaneous with that of the finite verb. If it is prior to that named by the finite verb, we use a clause.

- ❑ Я подошёл к молодому человеку, *стоявшему* у двери.
  I *came up* to the young man **standing** at the door.
- ❑ Все толкали молодого человека, *вставшего* у двери вагона.
  Everyone *pushed* the young man **who had placed** himself at the car door.

EXERCISES



8 (B) Paraphrase the sentences, using participles instead of the clauses in italics.

Model: *When the shop assistant discovered* that he had a talent for music, he gave up his job to become a professional singer.
Discovering that he had a talent for music, the shop assistant gave up his job to become a professional singer.
As he had witnessed the crime, he was expected to give evidence in court.
Having witnessed the crime, he was expected to give evidence in court.

1. *When the editor learned* that his newspaper had been taken over by another publisher, he resigned from his position.
   .....
2. *I declined his offer of a loan* and said that I didn't like owing people money.
   .....
3. The demonstrator *who protested violently* was led away by the police.
   .....
4. *When I visit a strange city*, I like to have a guide-book with me.
   .....
5. Motorists *who intend to take their cars with them to the Continent* are advised to make early reservations.
   .....
6. *Now that I have heard your side of the question*, I am more inclined to agree with you.
   .....
7. *As he had been warned* that bad weather lay ahead, the ship's captain changed the course.
   .....

9 Join the two sentences, using participles and making any necessary changes in the word order.

I. (B)

Model: 1. He got off the bus. He helped his grandmother.
Getting off the bus, he helped his grandmother.
2. They found the treasure. They began quarrelling about how to divide it.
Having found the treasure, they began quarrelling about how to divide it.
3. He was exhausted by his work. He threw himself on the bed.
Being exhausted by his work, he threw himself on the bed.

1. He realized that he had missed the last train. He began to walk.
   .....
2. She didn't want to hear the story again. She had heard it all before.
   .....
3. She entered the room suddenly. She found them smoking.
   .....
4. I turned on the light. I was astonished at what I saw.
   .....
5. We visited the museum. We decided to have lunch in the park.
   .....

6. He offered to show us the way home. He thought we'd got lost.
.....
7. He fed the dog. He sat down to his own dinner.
.....
8. I didn't like to sit down. I knew that the grass was very wet.
.....

II. (B, C)

1. I was away at the time of the disastrous floods. I could, therefore, do nothing to help with the salvage work.
.....
2. The world disappointed him. He became a monk.
.....
3. He was brought up in the belief that pleasures were sinful. As a result, he now leads an ascetic life.
.....
4. He was very angry when his car broke down. He had had it serviced only a week before.
.....
5. A new conception has been developed in theoretical linguistics. The conception is useful in language teaching.
.....
6. He had to put off buying a house. He was unable to borrow the money from any bank.
.....

10 (B) Replace the adverbial clauses of time in italics by the appropriate form of the Participle, using the model.

Model:	увидев	**seeing** (тогда)
	когда увидел	**having seen** (раньше)

1. *When I entered the room*, I felt some change in the atmosphere at once.
Entering the room, I felt some...
2. *When we had finally reached the river*, we decided to stay there and wait for the others.
.....
3. *When I reached out in the darkness*, I felt a stone wall where I expected to find the door.
.....
4. *When she opened the parcel*, she saw a large box of pencils.
.....
5. *When they had finally opened the safe*, they found that most of the papers had gone.
.....
6. *When she closed the suitcase*, she put it on the bed.
.....
7. *When she had closed and locked the suitcase*, she rang for the porter to come and take it downstairs.
.....

11 (B) Replace the adverbial clauses of time in italics by the appropriate form of the Participle, using the models.

Model 1:	читая когда читаю когда читал	**(when, while) reading**
Model 2:	прочитав когда прочитал потому что прочитал	**having read**

1. *As she had been walking most of the night*, she felt tired and sleepy.
Having walked most of the night, she felt...
2. *When I take the child to the circus*, I always know I'm going to enjoy myself.
.....
3. *When he had passed the last examination*, he began to look round for a job.
.....
4. *When he had drunk his second cup of coffee*, he folded the newspaper and rose.
.....
5. *When I had finally made up my mind*, I told my parents about my new plans.
.....
6. *As she had spent most of her housekeeping money*, she reluctantly decided to go home.
.....
7. *When I spoke to her*, I always tried to make my meaning clear.
.....
8. *When we were playing chess that evening*, we kept watching each other.
.....
9. *When she had taken the children to school*, she could go and do her weekly shopping.
.....

12 (B, C) Decide which is correct in the following jokes: the Participle ending in *-ed*, or in *-ing*.

1. – Why are you looking so *depressed/depressing*?
   – I've just been to the doctor and he told me I would have to take a pill every day for the rest of my life.
   – Why is that so *depressed/depressing*?
   – He only gave me twenty-five pills.



2. – I was extremely *embarrassed/embarrassing* yesterday. I called my wife Sue.
   – What's *embarrassed/embarrassing* about that?
   – Her name's Edwina.

3. Mary: That boy over there is *annoyed/annoying* me.
   Jane: But he is not even looking at you.
   Mary: That's what I am *annoyed/annoying* about!

4. – I've got an *amazed/amazing* watch. It only cost me £1.
   – Why is it *amazed/amazing*?
   – Because every time I look at it I'm *amazed/amazing* it's still working.



13 Open the brackets, using the appropriate form of the Participle.

I. (A, B)

1. (to wait) ..... in the hall, he thought over the problem he was planning to discuss with the old lady. 2. He left (to say) ..... he would be back in two hours. 3. (to write) ..... in a very bad handwriting, the letter was difficult to read. 4. (to write) ..... his first book, he worked endless hours till dawn. 5. (to spend) ..... twenty years abroad, he was happy to be coming home. 6. (to be) ..... away from home, he still felt himself part of the family.

II. (B, C)

1. (to reject) ..... by the publisher, the story was returned to the author. 2. (to reject) ..... by publishers several times, the story was accepted by a weekly magazine. 3. (to wait) ..... in the reception room, he thought over what he would say. 4. (to leave) ..... a note with the porter, he said he would be back in half an hour. 5. (to write) ..... in an archaic language, the book was difficult to read. 6. (to write) ..... his first book, he used his own experiences. 7. (to be) ..... away so long he was happy to be coming back.

14 (B, C) Translate the words in brackets.

I

1. We came up to the man (стоявшему на углу) ..... and asked him the way. 2. Go to the shop and ask the man (стоящего там) ..... to show you the way. 3. The man (стоящий у окна) .... was our teacher last year. 4. Did you see in what direction the man (стоявший здесь) ..... went? 5. The people (ожидающие вас) .... have been sitting here since 3 o'clock. 6. The people (ожидавшие вас) .... have just gone.

II

1. (Рассказав всё, что он знал) .... the man left the room. 2. (Постучав

дважды и не получив ответа) .... he came in. 3. (Толкнув дверь) ..... he felt that it was not locked. 4. (Тихо закрыв дверь) .... he tiptoed into the room. 5. Each time (рассказывая об этом случае) .... she could not help crying. 6. (Приехав в гостиницу) .... she found a telegram awaiting her. 7. We took a trip in a boat down the river (и вернулись) ..... when it was dark. 8. I felt very tired (проработав целый день) ..... in the sun.

III

1. The conference (проходящая сейчас) .... in our city is devoted to the problems of enviroment protection. 2. Unable to attend the conference (проходившую тогда) .... at the University, we asked to inform us about its decisions. 3. They are now at a conference (которая проходит) ..... at the University. 4. Suddenly I heard the sound of a key (поворачиваемого) .... in the lock. 5. (Когда их поставили в воду) ..... the flowers opened their petals. 6. The flowers faded (так как их долгое время держали без воды) ....

When we mention two consecutive actions, one of them may be named by the Present Participle.

- He looked at me **smiling**.
  Он *посмотрел* на меня и *улыбнулся*.
- **Seeing** that it was getting cold, we went home.
  Мы *увидели*, что становится холодно, и *пошли* домой.

15 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English. Use the Present Participle instead of the verbs in italics.

Model: Он стоял у окна и *курил* сигарету.
He stood at the window *smoking* a cigarette.

1. Мы *оставили* ему записку и отправились на прогулку в парк. 2. Он *открыл* книгу и показал мне подчёркнутое место. 3. Она *улыбнулась* и вышла из комнаты. 4. Она тяжело *вздохнула* и налила себе вторую чашку кофе. 5. Она открыла зонтик и храбро *пошла* под дождь. 6. Мы *оставили* чемоданы в камере хранения и отправились на поиски комнаты в гостинице. 7. Он ещё раз *посмотрел* на карту и сказал, что мы свернули не там. 8. Мы не застали его дома и *оставили* ему записку. 9. Я *не был уверен*, что она права, и ничего не сказал. 10. Она медленно *печатала* что-то на машинке и иногда спрашивала меня, как пишется то или другое слово.

16 (A, B) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Гордясь своим отцом, он часто говорит о нём. 2. Выступая на собрании, я забыл упомянуть об этом факте. 3. Как зовут человека, говорящего сейчас по телефону? 4. Наконец она увидела человека, спасшего её сына. 5. Они усыновили (adopted) мальчика, потерявшего родителей в авиационной катастрофе. 6. Не найдя нужной книги дома, я отправился в библиотеку. 7. Не выполнив работу вовремя, я вынужден был извиниться перед ними. 8. Пробыв в Лондоне около недели, я мог рассказать им много интересного. 9. Путешествуя по стране, мы познакомились со многими достопримечательностями. 10. Зная, что у меня достаточно времени, чтобы дойти до кинотеатра, я не спешил. 11. Увидев, что такси подъехало к дому, он взял вещи и быстро спустился вниз.

17 (B) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Это была одна из историй, которые часто рассказывала нам мать. 2. Он не мог забыть грустную историю, рассказанную ему старухой. 3. Он внимательно слушал историю, которую рассказывала одна из девочек. 4. Девочка, рассказывающая эту историю, уверена, что это правда. 5. Говорившая по телефону девушка наконец повесила трубку. 6. Говорившая с моим братом женщина улыбнулась мне. 7. Это один из студентов, принимающих участие в конференции. 8. Я поговорил с одним из студентов, принимавших участие в конференции два года назад. 9. Мы шли по дороге, ведущей в город. 10. Здесь уже давно нет дороги, которая раньше вела к озеру.

18 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I

1. Секретарь отправил подписанные директором письма. 2. В этой комнате есть несколько сломанных стульев. 3. Разбитый стакан лежал на столе. 4 Он принёс мне несколько иллюстрированных журналов. 5. Мы послали каталоги по указанному адресу. 6. Его неожиданный ответ удивил нас всех. 7. Прочитав много книг по этому вопросу, он смог сделать очень интересный доклад. 8. Войдя в комнату, он увидел нескольких приятелей, ожидавших его. 9. Проработав над докладом весь день, он чувствовал себя очень усталым. 10. Он ушёл, сказав, что скоро вернётся. 11. Сняв пальто и шляпу, он пошёл наверх. 12. Проспав несколько часов, он снова почувствовал себя хорошо. 13. Увидев отца, дети побежали ему навстречу.

II

1. Я вчера разговаривал с одним инженером, работавшим несколько лет тому назад в порту. Мальчик, работавший в саду, не видел, как я подошёл к нему. 2. Студенты, переводившие эту статью, говорят, что она очень трудная. Я подошёл к студенту, переводившему какую-то статью, и спросил его, нужен ли ему словарь. 3. Я хочу прочитать эту книгу, так как мой приятель, читавший её, говорит, что она очень интересная. Я спросил у молодого человека, читавшего газету, который час. 4. Он не заметил письма, лежавшего на столе. 5. Все студенты, получившие приглашение на эту лекцию, присутствовали на ней. 6. Мне сказали, что женщина, сидевшая в коридоре, ждала директора.

Revision

19 (B, C) Replace the Infinitive in brackets with the appropriate form of the Participle.

1. She stayed (to lock) ..... in her room, (to refuse) ..... to come downstairs. 2. He had a good practical knowledge of the language, (to work) ..... as an interpreter for many years. 3. They went out as they had come, (to see) ..... nobody and (to see) ..... by no one on their way. 4. He looked at the scene (to shake) ..... to the depth of his heart. 5. The boy came out of the water, all blue and (to shake) ..... from head to foot. 6. (To arrive) ..... at the airport where he was to change, he had to wait for three hours for the connection. 7. (To arrive) ..... in the town about twenty years before, he had succeeded thereafter beyond his wildest expectations. 8. The girl was fascinated by the dark surface of the water (to reflect) ..... the stars. 9. The young foliage of the trees, (to reflect) ..... in the river, looked like lace. 10. He retired (to leave) ..... the laboratory in the hands of a talented successor. 11. He retired (to turn) ..... the laboratory into a big research centre. 12. (To finish) ..... their meal, they went for a stroll in the park. 13. (To look) ..... through the paper, he gave it to the secretary to be typed.

20 (B, C) Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Я ещё не просмотрел всех журналов, присланных нам из Петербурга. 2. Я уже проверил все сочинения, написанные студентами моей группы. 3. Все студенты, принимающие участие в этой работе, должны прийти в университет сегодня в 6 часов вечера. 4. Так как у него было достаточно времени (имея много времени), он пошёл на вокзал пешком. 5. Переходя через мост, я встретил Дмитрия. 6. Вы должны быть очень внимательны, играя в шахматы. 7. Будучи очень усталым, я решил остаться дома. 8. Мы долго сидели в саду, разговаривая о нашей поездке на юг. 9. Он положил спящего ребёнка на диван. 10. Они быстро шли, разговаривая о чем-то с большим интересом. 11. Я вчера прочёл очень интересный рассказ, описывающий жизнь шахтеров. 12. Читая этот рассказ, я встретил несколько интересных выражений. 13. Ожидая трамвая, я увидел Анну. 14. Рассказы, напечатанные в этом журнале, очень интересные. 15. Человек, сидевший у открытого окна, смотрел на детей, игравших в саду. 16. Потушив свет, он лёг спать. 17. Прочитав письмо, он положил его в ящик стола.

21 **(B, C) Open the brackets. Use the appropriate forms of the Participle or the Infinitive.**

1. He did not wish himself (to criticize) ..... . 2. She's been like that ever since she had her youngest (to kill) ..... in Africa. 3. Do you want your things (to move) ..... to room 305? 4. Nobody expected any measures (to take) ..... . 5. How can I make myself (to hear) ..... in this uproar? 6. And I want everything (to deliver) ..... at my hotel. 7. Nobody heard the door (to open) ..... . 8. When do you want the letters (to type) ..... ? 9. I had the dress (to copy) ..... and sent the original back. 10. How could you leave that child (to cry) ..... in the darkness? 11. There were so many people there and nobody saw it (to do) ..... . 12. They found him (to wander) ..... in the park. 13. They found the lock (to break) ..... and the man (to go) ..... . 14. He ordered the garage door (to lock and to seal) ..... . 15. How he got himself (to elect) ..... is a mystery.

3.3 *Have Something Done*

The construction is used to say that we arrange for someone else to do something for us. It means *«заказать, нанять, пригласить кого-либо сделать что-либо»*.
The Past Participle (*done/repaired/cleaned*, etc.) comes after the object.

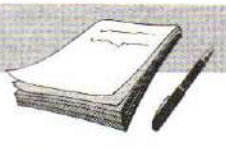
***have* + object + Past Participle**

- I **have my coat cleaned** every month. – Я отдаю пальто в химчистку каждый месяц.
- We **had the roof repaired** yesterday. – Вчера нам починили крышу.
- They **are having the house painted** at the moment. – Им сейчас красят дом.
- How often **do** you **have your car serviced**? – Как часто вы проходите техосмотр?
- She **has** just **had her car cleaned**. – Ей только что помыли машину.

Sometimes the model is used to say that something (often something not nice) happened to someone.

- He **had** all his money **stolen**. – У него украли все деньги.
- George **had** his nose **broken** in a fight. – Джорджу разбили нос в драке.

EXERCISES



22 **(A, B) Answer the questions, using the model.**

Model: Did Ann make the dress yourself?
No, *she had it made*.

1. Did you cut your hair yourself?
   ..... .
2. Did they paint the garage themselves?
   ..... .
3. Did Jim cut that tree himself?
   ..... .
4. Did you repair the car yourself?
   ..... .
5. Do you clean your house yourself?
   ..... .

23 **(A, B) Complete the situation, using *to have smth done* in the appropriate tense form.**

1. Sue is at the hairdresser's at the moment.
   She is having her hair done.
2. Ann's watch had been broken, she took it to a jeweller's. Now it is working. Ann .....
   ..... .

3. What are the workmen doing in your garden? Oh, I .....
4. Can I see your new photos? I'm afraid not, I .....

24 **(B, C) Translate into English, using the pattern *to have smth done*.**

Model: 1) Я делаю причёску в парикмахерской каждую пятницу.
I have my hair done every Friday.
2) Здесь вам почистят пальто за одни сутки.
Here you can **have your coat cleaned** overnight.

1. Вам надо отгладить и почистить костюм. .....
2. Мне надо сфотографироваться. .....
3. Здесь можно отдать в чистку плащ? .....
4. Вам не починят кран до понедельника. .....
5. Где вам шьют? .....
6. Где вам шили это платье? .....
7. У него украли документы в прошлом году. .....
8. Ей выкрасили кухню в светло-зелёный цвет. .....
9. Она сшила себе новое пальто. .....
10. Мне нужно сделать причёску. .....

3.4 The Absolute Participial Construction

The Absolute Participial Construction is a construction in which the participle has the "subject" of its own. This "subject" is not the subject of the sentence.

- *The letter* **having been written**, he went out to post it.
  Письмо было написано, и он пошел на почту отправить его.
- *The room* **being dark**, I couldn't see him.
  Так как в комнате было темно, я не видел его.

Though formally independent of the sentence, the absolute construction is a logical adverbial modifier of time, cause, condition and is rendered in Russian by means of an adverbial clause (*так как*; *хотя*; *когда*; *после того как*).

EXERCISES



25 **(A, B) Translate the sentences from English into Russian.**

1. Many men preceded Newton in the field of mechanics, perhaps the most outstanding being Galileo. 2. Red phosphorus being a more stable form, its reactions are much less violent. 3. The fuel exhausted, the engine stopped. 4. Probably the first metals used by man were gold, silver and copper, these metals being

found in nature in the native or metallic state. 5. Electrons moving through a wire, electrical energy is generated. 6. Mars has two satellites, Deimos ("Horror") and Phobos ("Fear"), both discovered during the favourable opposition of 1877. 7. A magnet being broken in two, each piece becomes a magnet with its own pair of poles. 8. Many technical and scientific problems having been solved, the first space flight could be realized. 9. An electron leaving the surface, the metal becomes positively charged. 10. The plant supplied with good raw materials, the quality of products has been much improved.

26 (A, B) Replace the clauses with the Absolute Participial Construction.

Model: As the book was translated into Russian, everybody could read it.
The book being translated into Russian, everybody could read it.

1. As the rain had ruined my hat, I had to buy a new one. ..... 2. After this was done, they set off with light hearts. ..... 3. As few people were buying his pencils, he could hardly earn a living. ..... 4. As there was a severe storm at sea, the steamer couldn't leave the port. ..... 5. As it was Sunday, the library was closed. ..... 6. As the weather was fine, they went for a walk. ..... 7. As the Professor was ill, the lecture was put off. ....

3.5 Revision

27 (B, C) Write where necessary the particle *to* before the Infinitives.

1. He was making every effort to induce his father ..... change his mind. 2. I knew that he would never encourage his daughter ..... marry a fortune. 3. As he answered her question, I noticed her ..... look surprised. 4. I could feel the blood ..... leave my face in a rush. 5. Understand once and for all, I won't have you ..... say this sort of thing. 6. The doctor had expressly forbidden him ..... talk. 7. He did not hear the car ..... arrive. 8. He had never known his uncle ..... express any sort of feeling. 9. I wasn't prepared to let him ..... go out alone. 10. He was not only giving them the chance, he was pressing them ..... to do so. 11. I shall try to make the thing ..... work. 12. They watched Esther ..... return after a time.

28 (C) Complete the texts. Use infinitives or *ing*-forms of the verbs in brackets.

I

Saturday. It was the day on which he had promised (1)..... his landlady (to pay). He had expected something (2)..... up all through the week (to turn). Yet he had found no work. All he could do now was (3)..... her that he could not pay the bill (to tell). But he did not have the courage (4)..... the woman (to face). It was the middle of June. The night was warm. He made up his mind (5)..... out (to stay). (6)..... down the Embankment, he kept (7)..... to himself that he had always tried (8)..... what he thought best, but everything had gone wrong (to walk, to say, to do). He was ashamed of (9)..... so many lies to his friends (to tell). It had been absurd (10)..... his pride (11)..... him from (12)..... for assistance (to let, to prevent, to ask). Now his lies made it impossible for him (13)..... to anyone for help (to turn). But it was no good (14)..... about it (to think).

II

When my sister Anne was six years old, I saved her from [1]..... (to kidnap). At the end of the war there were rumours about strange men who lured little children into quiet places with promises of toys and sweets, persuaded them into [2]..... about their parents and if the parents turned out [3]..... of no further interest to them, they usually left the children [4]..... their way home in tears (to talk, to be, to find). So my parents spent a great deal of time [5]..... Anne about [6]..... to strange men (to warn, to talk). One day, Anne went out [7]..... in the street after tea and could not be found an hour later (to play). We looked through [8]..... streets but no one had seen her (to surround). My father went off in the car [9]..... for her and I decided [10]..... in the park (to look, to search). Some boys there told me that they had seen a small girl in a blue dress [11]..... a cricket match and someone else said that she had been seen [12]..... off with a man who was pushing a bicycle (to watch, to walk). The chances were against this child [13]..... my sister but I walked off in the direction in which they had been seen [14]..... (to be, to walk). This brought me to a back alley. I called Anne's name and was surprised [15]..... her voice [16]..... back (to hear, to call).

29 (B, C) Translate the following, using Infinitives or *ing*-forms.

1. Жена фермера приходила каждый день, чтобы убрать комнаты. (to clean) 2. Ему посоветовали не рассказывать им историю своей жизни. (to advise) 3. Девочке велели разлить в чашки чай. (to tell) 4. Слышали, как несколько минут тому назад они спорили на террасе? (to hear) 5. Фил сунул деньги в карман, не сосчитав их. (count) 6. Полагают, что он глубоко привязан к своей семье. (to believe) 7. Было известно, что он пишет книгу о нравах. (to know) 8. Через окно можно было видеть, что водитель ждёт у машины. (to see) 9. Я был слишком возбуждён, чтобы есть. (to be excited) 10. Сообщили, что он изменил своё решение. (to report) 11. Я знал, что он не способен принимать решения. (be capable of) 12. Он любил смеяться над теми, кто был робок. (be fond of) 13. Ему разрешили оставить у них свою фамилию и адрес. (to allow) 14. Симон и Дик остались разговаривать в гостиной. (to leave) 15. Он без труда найдёт себе работу в Нью-Йорке. (no difficulty)

3.6 Tests

I

1. Прибыв до открытия конференции, они успели осмотреть город.
2. Она сидела и улыбалась.
3. Этот человек, сидящий у окна, вчера сделал интересный доклад.
4. Когда я смотрел этот фильм, я вспоминал своё детство.
5. Я прочёл несколько книг этого автора, переведённых на русский язык.
6. Люди, ожидавшие вас, только что ушли.
7. Узнав его поближе (got to know), я понял, какой это хороший человек.
8. Человек, только что стоявший здесь, ушёл.
9. Внимательно прочитав доклад, я нашёл в нём несколько ошибок.
10. Будучи очень расстроенным, он решил уйти, не прощаясь.

II

1. Дома, построенные много лет назад, не столь удобны, как современные.
2. Подумав, что он может заинтересоваться этой книгой, я посоветовал ему прочитать её.

3. Постучав дважды, они решили, что дома никого нет.
4. Не чувствуя себя виноватым (guilty), он отказался извиниться.
5. Некоторые марки, собранные им, очень интересны.
6. Будучи опытным врачом, он сразу понял, что случилось.
7. Женщина, открывшая мне дверь, выглядела очень мило.
8. Он показал мне список товаров, экспортируемых этой фирмой.
9. Он лежал на диване и читал книгу.
10. Подумав, что она сказала это в шутку, я рассмеялся.

III

1. Проработав целый день на солнце, я чувствовал себя очень усталым.
2. Приехав в гостиницу, он обнаружил телеграмму, ожидавшую его здесь.
3. Они стояли и громко разговаривали.
4. Опаздывая на переговоры, они ушли до окончания вечера.
5. Сочинения, которые пишут современные дети, очень отличаются от тех, которые писали дети 20-х годов.
6. Она показала мне письмо, написанное в 1941 году.
7. Я купил книгу, содержащую сведения о системе образования в США.
8. Услышав шаги, он поднял голову.
9. Моя бабушка, рассказавшая мне эту сказку, живёт в городе.
10. Купив билеты, он поспешил на платформу.

IV

1. Сказав это, он вышел из комнаты.
2. Полученные вчера известия произвели на всех большое впечатление.
3. Я не мог переодеться, так как оставил свои вещи на вокзале.
4. Не зная причины её отсутствия, я решил позвонить ей.
5. Плачущая девочка была голодна.
6. Сказка, рассказанная мамой, испугала (scare) ребёнка.
7. Будучи занят, он не сразу услышал меня.
8. Прочитав много книг Диккенса, он хорошо знал этого писателя.
9. Бабушка смотрела на детей, играющих во дворе.
10. Как вам нравится книга, которую сейчас обсуждают?

V

1. Учёные, принимавшие участие в этой экспедиции, были награждены нашим правительством.
2. Потеряв ключ, я не смог войти в комнату.
3. Лёжа на диване, он смотрел телевизор.
4. Мальчик, бегущий мимо дома, вдруг остановился.
5. Поздоровавшись со всеми, он вошёл в свой кабинет.
6. Будучи ребёнком, он не смог понять, что случилось.
7. В доме, который строится на площади, будет большой магазин.
8. Очень интересно читать сочинения, написанные детьми.
9. Повернув налево, мы увидели большое белое здание.
10. Я показал ему список книг (list), прочитанных в прошлом году.

THE PREPOSITION

1. Definition

Prepositions as a class of words are used to show how things are related in space or in time, they may express abstract relation and serve to connect the words in a sentence.

Accordingly, prepositions may be divided into **prepositions of place and direction** *(under, next to, towards, through,* etc*)*, **prepositions of time** *(after, before, till, at, for, during,* etc*)* and those **expressing abstract relations** *(by, with, because of,* etc*)*.

There are many "small words" in English such as *up*, *down*, *by*, *away*, etc. They can be used as prepositions or adverbs. A preposition must have an object (a noun or a pronoun). Prepositions are always followed by a noun group:

- **Across** *the road*; **over** *the wall*; **down** *the mountain*.

An adverb does not need an object, so it is more closely related to a verb:

- Don't go near the fire! *Stay* away.
- We *jumped* back.

Prepositions	Adverbs
He went **up** *the stairs*.	I looked **up** and saw an airplane.
Before *the war* he lived in Kiev.	I've read this book **before**.
We'll go there **after** *dinner*.	I never saw him **after**.

Some prepositions consist of more than one word: *in between*, *in front of*, *on top of*, etc.

Many prepositions have more than one meaning and many express similar meanings.

NB! Note that most prepositions in the Russian language do not coincide with those in English.

The table is **at** the window.	Стол **у** окна.
The lessons begin **at** 8 o'clock.	Занятия начинаются **в** 8.
He works **at** a factory.	Он работает **на** заводе.
They laughed **at** him.	Они смеялись **над** ним.

Книга **на** столе.	The book is **on** the table.
Он посмотрел **на** меня.	He looked **at** me.
Я сержусь **на** него.	I'm angry **with** him.
Я поеду **на** юг.	I'm going **to** the South.
Я жил **на** севере.	I lived **in** the North.
Я поеду туда **на** три дня.	I'm going there **for** three days.

2. Prepositions of Place

in front of (opposite) *перед/напротив/впереди*	❑ A car stopped **in front of** the house. *Перед домом (напротив дома)* остановилась машина. ❑ Please, go **in front of** me. Пожалуйста, иди *впереди* меня.
behind *за/сзади/позади*	❑ The boy was hiding **behind** a tree. Мальчик прятался *за* деревом. ❑ There was an orchad **behind** the house. *Позади* дома был сад. ❑ Walk close **behind** me. Иди *за* мной.
beside/next to/near to/ by/close by *около/возле/у/рядом с*	❑ Sit **beside** me. Садись *рядом* со мной (возле меня). ❑ The hotel is **near to** the station. Гостиница *рядом* со станцией. ❑ My house is **by** the river. Мой дом *у* реки.
under/underneath/ below *под/ниже/внизу*	❑ We passed **under** a bridge. Мы прошли *под* мостом. ❑ I looked **underneath** the bed. Я заглянул *под* кровать. ❑ The temperature was five degrees **below** zero. Температура была пять градусов *ниже* нуля. ❑ The people in the rooms **below** are very noisy. Люди, живущие *внизу* (*под* нами), очень шумные.
over[1]***/above*** *над/выше*	❑ There was light **above/over** my head. *Над* моей головой был свет.
between[2] *между* (двумя отдельными предметами)	❑ The Mediterranean Sea is **between** Europe and Africa. Средиземное море располагается *между* Европой и Африкой.
among[3] *среди* (более двух, в массе, толпе)	❑ I saw him **among** the people (the crowd). *Среди* людей я заметил его.
round *за* (поворотом)	❑ The shop is **round** the corner. Магазин *за* углом.
inside *внутрь/внутри/в*	❑ Don't let the dog come **inside** the house. Не разрешай собаке входить *в* дом. ❑ There is a woman waiting for you **inside** the cinema. *Внутри* кинотеатра вас ожидает женщина.
outside *снаружи/вне*	❑ The telephone box is just **outside** the bank. Телефонная будка находится на улице, (*снаружи*) у банка.

NOTES:

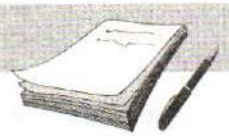
1. **Over** — *над*, *свыше*, *через/над*, *prefix «пере-»*

- ❑ A lamp was hanging **over** the table.
- ❑ There was **over** a hundred people at the meeting.
- ❑ Chkalov was the first pilot to fly **over** the North Pole.
- ❑ The boy climbed **over** the wall of the garden.

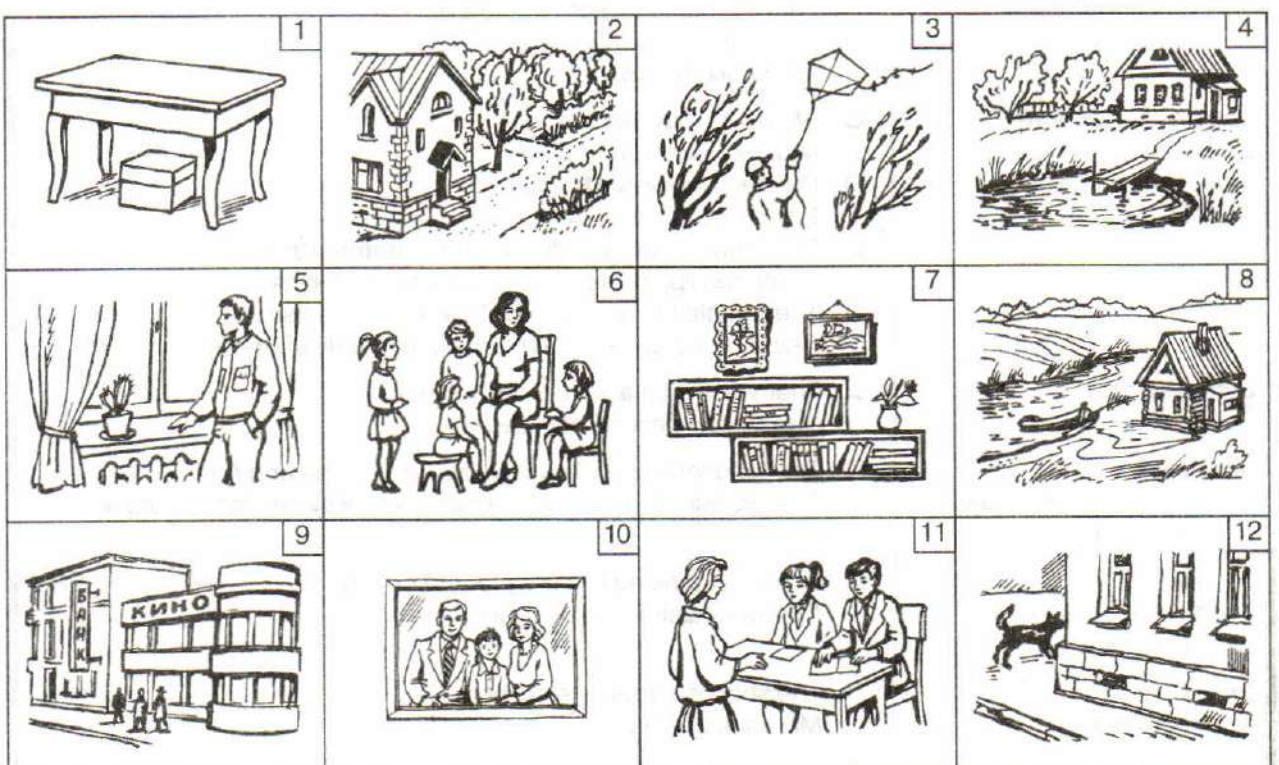
2. When boundaries are concerned, there may be more than two limits:

- ❑ Germany lies **between** *Poland*, *France*, *Switzerland* and *Austria*.

EXERCISES



1 **(A) Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.**



1. The box is ..... the table.
2. The garden is ..... the house.
3. The kite is ..... the trees.
4. There is a pond ..... the house.
5. The man is standing ..... the window.
6. The woman is sitting ..... her children.
7. The bookshelves are ..... the pictures.
8. There is a nice little house ..... the river.
9. The bank is ..... the cinema in the main street.
10. The child is sitting ..... his father and mother.
11. The teacher is standing ..... his pupils.
12. The dog ran ..... the corner.

2 (A, B) Fill in the prepositions from the column.

1. The boy was hiding ..... a tree.
2. She would like to live ..... the sea.
3. There are some trees ..... the house.
4. Come and sit ..... me.
5. When the sun sets, it goes ..... the horizon.
6. We were flying ..... the clouds.
7. I saw him ..... the crowd.
8. The Earth moves ..... the Sun.
9. A servant held a large umbrella ..... his master's head.
10. It is convenient living so ..... the station.

over
beside
behind
below
in front of
among
near to
above
round
by

3 (A, B) You are discussing with your friend the arrangement of pictures on the wall of your room. Translate the prepositions in brackets.

I think you should put the photo of this actress (между) [1]..... the two flower pictures and the actor's photo (рядом) [2]..... it. (Под) [3]..... them I'd place this beautiful landscape and (над) [4]..... them this wonderful scenery. The Cathedral and the view of Rome are somehow lost (среди) [5]..... all those bright pictures. Place them (над) [6]..... all the pictures. Now, that's much better.

4 (B) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Мы пролетаем над Сахарой. 2. Девушка стояла под деревом, шёл сильный дождь. 3. Кто этот человек, который сидит рядом с Мэри? 4. Здесь есть телефон? – Да, у двери. 5. Мне расписаться (sign) на строке, над строкой или под ней? 6. Остановка автобуса за углом. 7. Перед театром красивый фонтан. 8. Судья (referee) встал между сражающимися (fighting) боксёрами и остановил поединок. 9. Бабушка разделила пирог между детьми. 10. Рядом со мной свободное место, сядь рядом со мной. 11. Кинотеатр прямо напротив остановки автобуса, рядом с кафе. 12. Я плохо видела, так как передо мной сидел высокий человек.

2.1 Prepositions of Place *at, in, on*

Prepositions of Space

AT	**at** the bus-stop **at** the table/door **at** the window/blackboard	около (вблизи) чего-либо
	at the station/airport **at** school/college/the lesson **at** home/work **at** the cinema/restaurant **at** the office/plant	в общественном месте или учреждении
	at 5 Weston Road **at** Mike's (house)	давая адрес с номером дома дома у кого-либо

IN	**in** Spain/**in** Europe **in** the South of France **in** the park/**in** the country	в стране, регионе, местности
	in London/**in** York **in** a village	в городе, поселке, деревне
	in a little box/**in** the house	внутри чего-либо
ON	**on** the sofa/grass/page 7 **on** the top of the TV set	на поверхности чего-либо
	on the A34 road **on** the north coast **on** the Volga	на поверхности чего-либо в виде вытянутой линии (road, river, railway, coastline)

AT* or *IN	**at** ⇨ в общественном месте **in** ⇨ внутри здания **at** ⇨ адрес с номером дома **in** ⇨ название улицы	❑ I had a hard day **at** the office. ❑ I left my coat **in** the office. ❑ The University is **at** 25 Booth Street. ❑ They live **in** Garden Lane.

Prepositions *at, in, on* are used in the following expressions:

AT

at the top/bottom of the page – вверху/внизу страницы
at the end of the street – в конце улицы
at/on the corner of the street – на углу улицы
at the front/back of a building/hall/cinema/group of people – впереди/в передней части/в начале; в конце/в задней части здания/позади...
at the traffic lights – у светофора
at the seaside – у моря

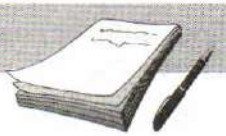
IN

in a row/in row five – в ряду/в пятом ряду
***But:* on the front/back row** – в первом/последнем ряду
in a line/queue – в очереди
in an armchair – в кресле
***But:* on a chair** – на стуле
in a photograph/picture/mirror – на фотографии/на картине/в зеркале
in the sky – на небе
in the front/back of a car – впереди/сзади в машине
in bed – в постели
in hospital – в больнице
in prison – в тюрьме
in the water/sea/river – в воде/в море/в реке

ON

on the right/left – справа/слева
on the ground/first/second ... floor – на первом/втором ... этаже
on a small island – на маленьком острове
on the way to – на пути к
on a farm – на ферме
on the front/back of a letter/paper – на лицевой/оборотной стороне письма/документа

EXERCISES



5 **(A, B) Put *at*, *in*, *on* in the correct position.**

1. There is someone ..... the door.
2. They live ..... Coronation Street ..... number 32.
3. Meet me ..... the bus-stop ..... the end of Bristol Road.
4. I've applied for a job ..... the United Nations ..... Geneva.
5. There was a note ..... the table. It was from Elsie. She had signed her name ..... the bottom.
6. Hello. This is Doris. Jim is ..... Athens ..... the Acropolis Hotel.
7. There is a good film ..... the cinema.
8. It was very cold ..... the cinema.
9. I'll see you ..... Fred's house.
10. When we were ..... the south we stayed ..... a small hotel ..... the coast.
11. Jack lives ..... a flat ..... Park Street ..... the third floor.
12. I had a seat ..... the front row.

6 **(A, B) Translate the prepositions in brackets.**

1. I'll meet you (в) ..... airport.
2. When I go to the cinema I prefer to sit (на) ..... the front row.
3. Who is that woman (на) ..... that photograph?
4. Who is man standing (у) ..... the door?
5. Don't sit (на) ..... that armchair. It's broken. Sit (на) ..... that chair.
6. Portsmouth is (на) ..... the south coast of England.
7. Our house is (в) ..... the end of the street.
8. There's a report of the football match (на) ..... page 7 of the newspaper.
9. You'll find the sport results (на) ..... the back page of the newspaper.
10. Turn left (у) ..... the traffic lights.
11. I wouldn't like an office job. I couldn't spend the whole day sitting (за) ..... a desk.

7 **(B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.**

1. Самые высокие американские небоскребы – в Чикаго.
2. В большинстве стран правостороннее движение (ездят по правой стороне).
3. Я обычно покупаю газету по дороге на работу.
4. Она проводит весь день, сидя у окна и наблюдая за тем, что происходит на улице.
5. Я прочла о несчастном случае на первой странице газеты.
6. Обычно мы пользуемся парадным входом, но есть ещё и другой вход позади здания.
7. Офис министра Бойля на третьем этаже слева.
8. Не разрешайте детям играть на улице.
9. Моя мама встаёт очень рано, она работает на ферме.
10. У неё нет времени лежать в постели или смотреться в зеркало.

3. Prepositions of Direction

to *в/к/на*	❑ He went **to** school/the door/the meeting. Он пошёл *в* школу/*к* двери/*на* собрание.

go **to** America
fly **to** Moscow
go **to** the bank
be sent **to** prison
come **to** England
walk **to** work

go **to** a party
be taken **to** hospital
return **to** Italy
drive **to** the station
go **to** the theatre
go **to** bed

into *в (внутрь)*	❑ Don't wait outside! Come **into** the house. Не стой на улице. Заходи *в* дом.
out of *из (изнутри)*	❑ I took it **out of** the water. Я достал это *из* воды.
toward(s) к/в направлении	❑ He was walking slowly **towards** the sea. Он медленно шёл *к* (по направлению к) морю.
from *от/из/с*	❑ He travelled **from** Rome **to** London. Он путешествовал *из* Рима в Лондон. ❑ He jumped **from** the wall. Он прыгнул *со* стены. ❑ Bees go **from** flower **to** flower. Пчёлы летают *с* цветка на цветок.
off* *с* (чего-либо)	❑ to fall **off** a ladder/a tree упасть *с* лестницы/с дерева ❑ The ball rolled **off** the bench. Мячик скатился *со* скамейки. ❑ He got **off** the train. Он сошёл *с* поезда.
onto/on to *на* (в направлении *на*)	❑ The actor stepped **onto** the stage. Актёр вышел *на* сцену. ❑ She tripped on a rock and fell **on to** the ground. Она споткнулась о камень и упала *на* землю.
past *мимо*	❑ He walked **past** the house and turned right. Он прошёл *мимо* дома и повернул направо.

* **OFF** — *с/со*, *от*

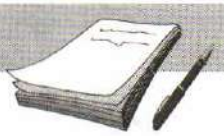
❑ The knife fell **off** the table.
❑ Cut a bit **off** the rope, it's too long.

Moving in Space

across *через/поперек/по (поверхности)*	❑ I live **across** the road/river. Я живу *через* дорогу/*за* рекой. ❑ They went **across** the field/the ice. Они шли *через* поле/*по* льду.
over *через (что-то высокое)*	❑ He jumped **over** the wall. Он перепрыгнул *через* стену.
through *через (сквозь, насквозь)*	❑ The road went **through** a forest. Дорога проходила *через* лес. ❑ The cat came **through** the window. Кот проник *через* окно.
along *по/вдоль*	❑ We went **along** the street/the grass. Мы шли *по* улице/траве. ❑ There are trees all **along** the road. *Вдоль* дороги растут деревья.

up/down *вверх/вниз*	❑ The elevator was moving noisily **up** and **down**. Лифт с шумом двигался *вверх* и *вниз*.
(a)round, about *по, вокруг (без определенного направления)*	❑ We were walking **around/about** the town. Мы гуляли *по* городу. ❑ He's travelled **about/around** the world. Он путешествовал *по* свету.

EXERCISES



8 **(A, B) Fill in the gaps with the prepositions from the box.**

across along (2) from (2) into off (2) on out of (2) over past through to (3) up

1. Be careful! Don't fall ..... the stairs.
2. Please, take your feet ..... the chair.
3. Why are you looking ..... the window?
4. He earned money going ..... town ..... town.
5. I was walking ..... the road with my dog.
6. The dog swam ..... the river.
7. The old road goes ..... the village.
8. A man came ..... house and got ..... the car.
9. They walked ..... me without speaking.
10. A lot of English words came ..... Latin.
11. We walked ..... the hill ..... the house.
12. Go ..... this road, ... the cinema, ... the bridge, and the hospital is ..... your left.

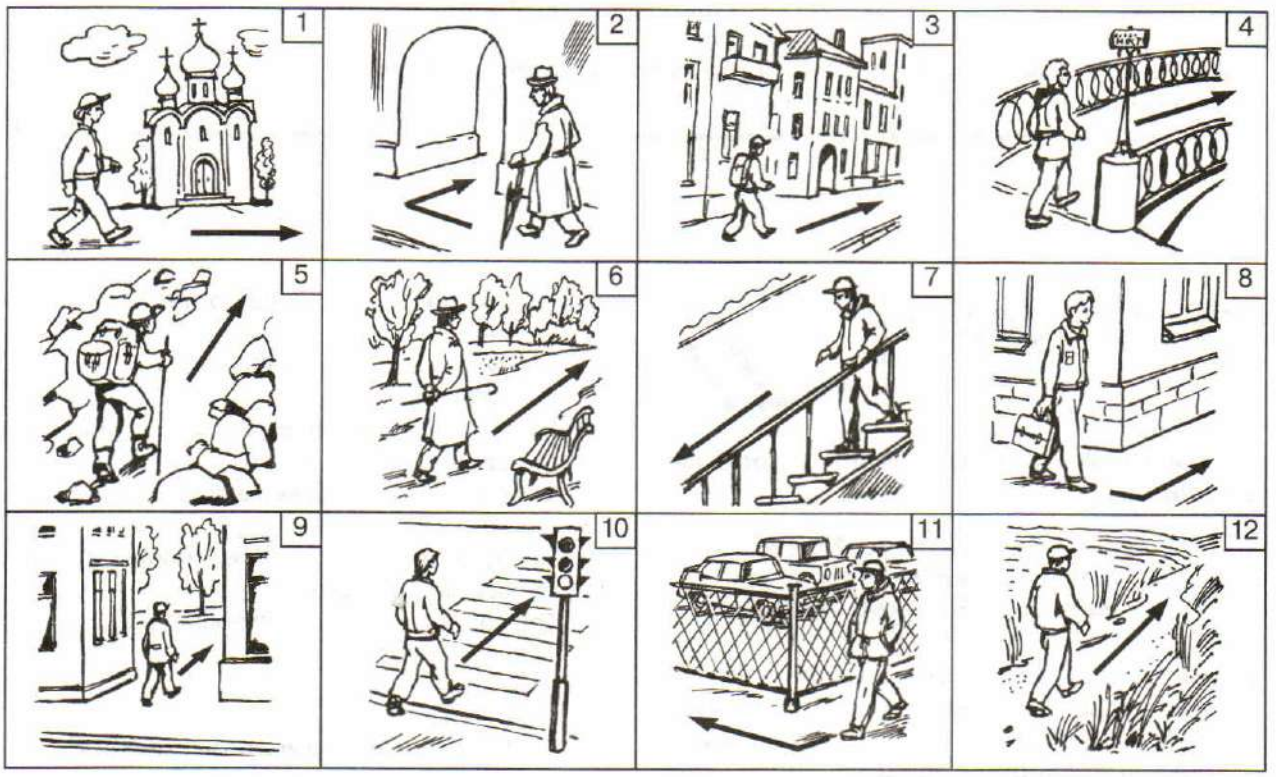
9 **(B) Put in a preposition of direction.**

1. A book fell ..... the shelf.
2. A woman got ..... the car.
3. The Moon travels ..... the Earth.
4. Fish can't live ..... water.
5. How far is it ..... here ..... the airport?
6. We walked ..... the corner and saw the lost cat.
7. She was sitting with the back turned ..... the window.
8. Three men pulled the cart ..... the ditch (канава).
9. You can't talk to Mr. Green today. He is ..... town this week.
10. I enjoy looking ..... the window and watch the people in the street.
11. The cat got ..... the house ..... the window.

10 **(B) Translate the words in brackets.**

1. He took his handkerchief (из) ..... his pocket. 2. He threw the letter (в) ..... the fire. 3. I have to return the book (в) ..... the library tomorrow. 4. At 6 o'clock the taxi stopped (у) ..... the door, we got (из) ..... it and went (на) ..... the station. 5. I looked (в) ..... the window and saw a little boy running (по) ..... the street. 6. He has just returned (из) ..... his flight (на) ..... the North. 7. He jumped (в) ..... the river and swam about. 8. On my way home I walk (мимо) ..... your office every day. 9. He opened the door and went out (на) ..... the street. 10. Italy has to import coal and oil (из) ..... other countries. 11. I've received a letter (от) ..... my friend, he writes that he'll soon return (на) ..... the South.

11 **(B) Somebody asks you the way to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the picture and write sentences.**



.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

12 **(B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.**

1. Когда вы уезжаете в Испанию? 2. Я потерял ключ, но мне удалось попасть в дом через окно. 3. Марсель только что вернулся во Францию после двух лет, проведённых в Англии. 4. Мы едем в машине уже три часа, я бы с радостью вышел из машины и немного прошёлся пешком. 5. Мяч упал с балкона и выкатился на дорогу. 6. Ворота были закрыты, нам пришлось перелезть (climb) через высокую стену и спрыгнуть с неё во двор. 7. Наконец вдали мы увидели озеро и побежали к нему. 8. Холм был высоким, у меня не было сил (energy) въехать на него на велосипеде, и я повёл (push) его в гору.

13 **(B, C) Use the prepositions from the box to complete the senteces.**

by from in (3) in front of on out of past round

TWO LEGS IN ONE BOOT

It was late in the afternoon. Inspector Mayhew had an hour to go before he finished work for the day. He sat (1)..... his police car watching the traffic go (2)..... . Suddenly, he sat up! A woman in a blue car drove slowly (3)..... and the inspector clearly saw a pair of man's legs sticking (4)..... the boot! Inspector Mayhew immediately gave chase.

The woman drove (5)..... the town. The blue lamp (6)..... top of the police car was flashing but the woman paid no attention to it. The inspector finally got (7)..... her and made her stop. "What's the matter?" the woman asked. "You've got a body (8)..... the boot!" the inspector said. There was a loud laugh (9)..... the boot. "But I'm alive," the voice said. "I'm a car mechanic and I'm trying to find the cause of a strange noise (10)..... the back of this car."



4. Some Prepositions Confused

Between and *among*

Between (между) is used for two people or things, *among (среди)* – for more than two.
Between is also used when the speaker sees the surrounding objects separately, there are not very many of them and each one is clearly distinct from the other:

- Switzerland lies **between** *France, Italy, Austria* and *Germany*.

Words like *divide* and *share* are followed by *between* when we use several singular nouns and to show a division between people, things or times:

- He **shared** his property **between** *his wife, his daughter* and *his sister*.
- I **divide** my time **between** *teaching, writing* and *gardening*.
- Divide this **between** *you both*.

EXERCISE



14 **(A, B) Choose the proper preposition.**

1. The fleeing animal was soon lost *between/among* the trees. 2. The three hikers couldn't divide their scanty (скудный) meal *between/among* them. 3. "May misunderstanding never come *between/among* us," said the bride to her husband. 4. *Between/among* the Indians on the one hand and starvation on the other, the early settlers had the bad time of it. 5. *Between/among* all the days of the days of the week, I like Saturday best. 6. Don't smoke *between/among* the courses. 7. Divide it equally *between/among* the two of you.

Beside, besides and *except*

Beside means "alongside of, at the side of".
Besides means "in addition to" or plus (+).
Except means "excluding" or minus (-).
Besides can also be an adverb and act in the sentence as a parenthesis which is separated by commas:

- I haven't the time, and **besides**, I am not interested.
- We sat **beside** the water.
- I haven't any other living relations **besides** this cousin of mine.
- They are all relatives of mine **except** Olivia.

Except and *besides*

Кроме

«за исключением» ***except***

- He doesn't know any foreign language, **except** German.

«сверх, в дополнение» ***besides***

- He knows two foreign languages **besides** German.

EXERCISES



15 (A, B) Choose the proper preposition.

1. The dog sat *besides/beside* his master. 2. They found nobody in the house *besides/beside* the caretaker. 3. *Besides/beside* the lake grew beautiful wild daffodils. 4. How many people *except/besides* you are going to the game? 5. I like all colours *except/besides* grey. 6. Divide this *among/between* you both. 7. Germany lies *among/between* the four countries. 8. I saw you *among/between* the crowd. 9. He gets up very early *besides/except* Sunday. 10. Nobody was late *besides/except* me. 11. Five others were late *besides/except* me.

16 (B, C) Fill in the blanks. Use *beside* or *besides*.

1. Who's the pretty blonde sitting ..... Keith? 2. ..... languages, we have to study literature and history. 3. Who was at the theatre ..... Anne and John? 4. I don't like this dress; ..... , it's too expensive. 5. "Perhaps you'll be lucky this time," he said as he settled himself ..... her in the car. 6. It's too late to go out, and ..... , you haven't done your work. 7. ..... the apple-tree we've got a few very tall pear-trees in our garden. 8. I don't feel like going anywhere. ..... , it's starting to rain. 9. Don't stand ..... that wall – it doesn't look safe. 10. I don't like him; he is careless and lazy, and ..... , he is impatient.

17 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Все были там, кроме моего друга Ивана. 2. Библиотека открыта каждый день, кроме среды. 3. Все пошли спать, кроме отца, у него много работы. 4. Я встретил на свадьбе всех наших родственников, кроме тёти Ани. 5. У него будет три экзамена кроме английского. 6. В саду никого не было, кроме пожилого человека с собакой. 7. Кроме этих двух писем я получил от неё ещё и телеграмму. 8. Кроме профессора Грина там было ещё несколько преподавателей. 9. Они получили много подарков, кроме вашего. 10. Он прочёл все газеты, кроме «Таймз».

Across, over, through

Across

for large areas
- ❑ They are laying a pipeline **across** Siberia (the desert).

movement through water
- ❑ She swam **across** the Channel.

Over

for verbs like *"wander"* (here and there)
- ❑ We wandered **over** the countryside (over the world).

for the obstacles like *a wall/a fence*
- ❑ He jumped **over** the low fence.

Across and *over* both mean "from one side to the other":
- ❑ My house is **across/over** the road.

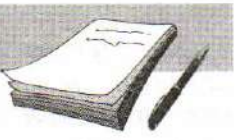
Through

refers to smth like a tunnel
- ❑ **through** a pipe

smth dense
- ❑ **through** a forest

NB! With nouns like *"park"* we can use either *across* or *through*.

EXERCISE



18 **(A, B) Supply a fitting preposition: *across*, *over*, *through*.**

1. There was a small shop ..... the road. 2. The Greenpeace is against a pipeline ..... Alaska. 3. The river is too broad, you can't swim ..... it. 4. We ran ..... the field. 5. The pipe is clogged, nothing can flow ..... it. 6. On my way to the office I walked ..... the park every day. 7. The river Thames flows ..... London. 8. He has traveled ..... Europe. 9. She passed a comb ..... her hair. 10. The road goes ..... the forest. 11. I looked ..... the hedge but saw nobody. 12. He is famous all ..... the world.

In and *into*

In is used only when no change from outside to inside is meant.
Into should be used when an area or a substance is penetrated.
- ❑ Forbidden to leave the premises, he spent his time walking **in** his garden.
- ❑ He walked right **into** the room without knocking.

NB! When the area/substance is not mentioned, we use the adverb *in*:
- ❑ Walk right **in**!

EXERCISE



19 **(A, B) Choose the proper word from the two in italics.**

1. He drove the nail *in/into* the wall as high as he could reach. 2. Someone carelessly dropped a lighted cigarette *in/into* a pile of rubbish. 3. He thrust a pipe *in/into* his mouth and began to fill it. 4. After searching all over the house, they found him walking *in/into* the garden. 5. Something soft and slippery fell *in/into* her lap. 6. He drove from France *in/into* Italy. 7. How did he get *in/into*? 8. I divided the loaf *in/into* five parts. 9. "Let me *in/into*," he cried, and forced the door by strength.

5. Revision

EXERCISE



20 **Translate the sentences.**

I (A, B)

1. Сядьте у окна. 2. Ваш словарь на полке. 3. Он сейчас в Москве. 4. Он открыл дверь и выбежал из комнаты. 5. Мальчик бросил камень в воду. 6. Я прочёл все рассказы, кроме этого. 7. Она не шла, она бежала по улице. 8. Перед нашим домом памятник Суворову. 9. Мы шли под огромными деревьями. 10. Над нами было голубое небо. 11. Мы летим в Америку. 12. Шёл сильный дождь, мы побежали к дому. 13. Ребёнок упал с кровати. 14. Мы спускались с холма.

II (B, C)

1. Он вошёл в комнату, сел за стол и вынул свои книги из портфеля. 2. Возле реки росли два больших дерева. 3. У нас нет других книг, кроме тех, которые мы вам показали. 4. Река текла между высокими берегами, устремляясь к морю. 5. В Австрии поезда часто проходят через тоннели. 6. Пароход плыл вниз по реке. 7. Кроме книг, которые вы мне дали, я прочёл несколько статей по этому вопросу. 8. Они шли за нами. 9. Они не хотели войти в дом и ждали нас на улице у дома. 10. Он работает в театре. 11. Он оставил пальто в театре, где смотрел новую пьесу. 12. Они живут на улице Освальд, дом 25.

6. Prepositions with Forms of Transport

Types of vehicles or transport we use to travel (no article, no possessive pronoun, no possessive case before the means of transport)	Physical position of the person (what transport he/she is in/on) (used with an article, an adjective, a possessive pronoun or the possessive case)
by car/by bus/by bicycle – by road **by boat/by ship – by sea** **by train – by rail** **by plane – by air**	**in the car/in Nick's van/in a taxi/in a lorry** **on the bus/on my bicycle/on a big ship/ on a liner/on a ferry** **on the train/on the 6.45 train** **on the plane/on a jet**
NB! On foot	(in) for cars and taxis
	(on) for bicycles and public transport

Get in(to)/get out of a car/taxi – сесть в/выйти из машины/такси.
Get on/get off a bicycle/bus/train/plane – сесть на/сойти с велосипеда/поезда/ автобуса/самолета.

- He got **into** the car and drove off.
- He jumped **onto** the old bus, which was empty.
- Mr. Ward got **into** his lorry.
- She was carried **out of** the ambulance.
- The car was traveling **at** 50 km an hour when the accident happened.

EXERCISES



21 (A, B) Complete the sentences with the prepositions from the box.

at by in on

1. Do you like traveling ..... train?
2. Jane usually goes to work ..... bike or ..... foot.
3. The plane is flying ..... 600 miles an hour.
4. How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles ..... plane?
5. Get ..... the train! Quick! It's ready to leave.
6. I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go ..... my bike.
7. I saw Jane this morning. She was ..... a bus which passed me.
8. I didn't feel like walking so I came home ..... a taxi.
9. At last the bus arrived and I got ..... the bus.
10. I have to get ..... the train at the next stop.

22 (B, C) Put in the correct prepositions.

1. Since I broke my leg, I have to travel ..... bus because I can't get ..... the car.
2. We went for a trip up the Nile ..... a big boat called the Felucca.
3. It takes about half an hour to get home ..... my bike and about twenty minutes ..... the bus.
4. This plane flies ..... supersonic speed.
5. The bus was so crowded that I could hardly get ..... it.
6. I followed them ..... my car and saw that they jumped ..... the bus and run into the nearest café.
7. He went ..... plane, the last thing he wanted was to spend ten days ..... a boat.
8. The passengers ..... the plane were beginning to panic.
9. We drove to the airport ..... a taxi.

7. Prepositions of Time

AT is used for:	
1. exact time	❑ **at** 10 o'clock; **at** half past two; (**at**) what time..?
2. meal times	❑ **at** lunch; **at** dinner
3. points of time	❑ **at** night; **at** dawn
4. festivals	❑ **at** Christmas; **at** Easter (**BUT! On** Christmas **Day**)
5. age	❑ **at** the age of 14
6. moment/time	❑ **at** the moment/**at** present/**at** this/that time **at** the same time/**at** the week-end
7. beginning/end	❑ **at** the end of the month/match/film/January **at** the beginning of the game
ON is used for:	
1. days of the week	❑ **on** Monday(s); **on** Sunday
2. parts of the day	❑ **on** Monday morning; **on** Sunday afternoons
3. dates	❑ **on** July 1st; **on** the 3d of March
4. anniversaries	❑ **on** your birthday
5. festivals	❑ **on** New Year's Day
6. particular occasions	❑ **on** that day
IN is used for:	
1. parts of the day	❑ **in** the evening/**in** the afternoon (**BUT! On** Monday **morning**)
2. months	❑ **in** May
3. years	❑ **in** 2050
4. seasons	❑ **in** (the) spring
5. centuries	❑ **in** the 20th century
6. periods	❑ **in** two year's time; **in** a few minutes; **in** the end

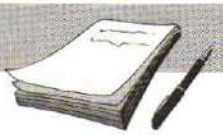
NOTES:

We do not use *at/on/in* before:

this – this morning/this week/this Monday
last – last August/last week/last Christmas
next – next Tuesday/next year
every – every day/every week
all, some, each, one, any

- ❑ Are you going out **this Saturday**?
- ❑ The garden was lovely **last spring**.
- ❑ We are going on vacation **next week**.

EXERCISES



23 **(A, B) Complete the sentences with the prepositions of time.**

1. I start work ..... 8 o'clock. 2. I'm going on holiday ..... October. 3. Where will you be ..... Christmas? 4. Are you busy ..... the moment? 5. I always feel tired ..... the evening. 6. Goodbye! I'll see you ..... a few days. 7. We are going to the country ..... the weekend.

8. I don't work ..... Saturdays. 9. I didn't sleep well last night, somebody called ..... midnight. 10. I left school ..... 2006 and entered University ..... the 1st of September 2007. 11. Are you doing anything ..... Saturday evening? 12. We met ..... lunch ..... Monday and I haven't seen him since. 13. ..... that day nobody worked at the office. 14. We live ..... the 21st century.

24 (A, B) Put in the prepositions of time if necessary.

1. I don't work ..... Mondays but ..... last Monday I had to work, we're full ..... the end of the month. 2. I'm leaving ..... Friday, I go to my country house ..... every other Friday. 3. Will you be at home ..... this evening? – I'm afraid not, let's meet ..... the afternoon. 4. We usually go to France ..... summer but it has become so crowded there that we decided to go to Spain ..... this summer. 5. I don't often go out ..... night but ..... this night is a special one, my son is getting married. 6. I phone Robert ..... every Sunday, that's the first time I didn't manage it ..... Sunday.

25 Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

I (A, B)

1. Колумб открыл Америку в XV веке. 2. В Англии дети идут в школу в возрасте пяти лет. 3. Если нет облаков, вы можете видеть звёзды ночью. 4. Я не буду дома утром. Позвоните мне, пожалуйста, в понедельник вечером. 5. Мы идём в театр 14 февраля, мы обычно идём куда-нибудь (go out) в этот день. 6. Мы всегда устраиваем вечеринку на Рождество, во время рождественских праздников никто не работает. 7. Поспеши! Мы уходим через пять минут. 8. Телефон и дверной звонок зазвонили одновременно. 9. Я приглашаю тебя на обед в ресторан на твой день рождения.

II (B, C)

1. Я очень хочу спать. Я лёг в полночь, а встал в 6 утра. 2. Я люблю гулять по городу ночью. Так красиво и тихо вокруг. 3. Кэрол вышла замуж в 17 лет, это было в 2007, 15 ноября. 4. Я позвоню тебе в субботу утром примерно в 10 утра, хорошо? 5. Трудно слушать, когда все говорят одновременно. 6. Я сейчас занят, не могли бы вы позвонить мне в конце дня, примерно в 6 часов? 7. Ты хотела бы пойти в кино в пятницу вечером? – Прости, я не могу в эту пятницу. Давай пойдём в следующую пятницу. 8. В назначенное время вечером мистер Грин не появился. Его секретарь сказал, что он вернётся через три дня. 9. В этот день мы проснулись на рассвете. Наше путешествие начиналось. 10. Я оплачиваю все счета в начале месяца.

7.1 Prepositions *for, during, while*

1. *For* + period of time

- I've lived in this house **for twenty years**.
- We watched the game **for two hours**.
- Are you going away **for the weekend**?
- I haven't seen you **for ages**.

2. *during* + noun

- We met a lot of interesting people **during the holiday**.
- It must have been raining **during the night**.

3. ***while* + subject + predicate**

- I fell asleep **while I was watching** TV.
- We saw Ann **while we were waiting** for the bus.

NOTES:

***during* + noun**	***while* + subject + predicate**
❑ We swam a lot **during our holidays**. ❑ I fell asleep **during the film**.	❑ We swam a lot **while we were** on holiday. ❑ I fell asleep **while I was watching** the film.

EXERCISES



26 **(A, B) Complete the sentences with the prepositions from the box.**

during for while

1. Ron is going away ..... two weeks in summer.
2. I'll call you some time ..... the day.
3. My husband usually reads ..... I watch TV.
4. I'm going to France next week. I hope to visit Paris ..... I'm there.
5. I've been waiting for you ..... half an hour. What have you been doing?
6. ..... we were in New York, we stayed at the Hilton.
7. ..... our stay in London we visited a lot of museums.
8. I was running high temperature ..... three days.
9. Tom and Ann usually go out on Saturday, they never go out ..... the week.
10. Please don't speak to me ..... I'm reading.
11. I've been living in Germany ..... a year.

27 **(B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.**

1. Пока есть жизнь, есть надежда.
2. Моя дочь прислала нам много открыток, пока была в Испании во время каникул.
3. Я обычно не смотрю телевизор в течение дня, но вчера я был болен и смотрел телевизор три часа.
4. Присядьте, пожалуйста, пока вы ждёте.
5. Кто-то разбил окно, пока я спал. Ты ничего не слышал?
6. Мои тётя и дядя жили в Лондоне четыре года.
7. Во время матча шёл дождь, но никто не уходил, пока играла наша команда.
8. В течение дня солнце даёт нам свет и тепло.
9. Я уезжаю на несколько дней. Вы можете жить в моей квартире, пока я отсутствую.
10. Пока он жил в Италии, он изучал музыку.
11. Во время обеда никто не разговаривал.

A J☺ke

Jack was talking about his six months on holiday in Norway.
– **During** the dark winter nights, I only wore white clothes.
– Why?
– So that cars would see me clearly.
– Did it work?
– No. I got knocked down by a snow plough!

7.2 Prepositions *before, till/until, by*

1. ***before*** – *ранее, чем; перед*
   - ❑ two days **before** Christmas
   - ❑ **before** the war/revolution
   - ❑ **before** Christ (BC) – *до* Рождества Христова
   - ❑ They arrived **before** holidays.
     Они приехали *до* начала каникул.

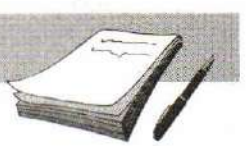
2. ***till/until*** – *пока, до*
   Conjunction: *до того времени когда; до тех пор как; пока*
   - ❑ Let's wait **till** the rain stops.
     Давай подождём, *пока* закончится дождь.
   - ❑ I'll wait **until** ten o'clock.
     Я подожду *до* 10 часов.
   - ❑ **Until** then, I had known nothing about it.
     До того времени я ничего не знал об этом.
   - ❑ **till now** – до сих пор
     till then – до тех пор

3. ***under*** – *о возрасте*
   - ❑ children **under** sixteen – дети *до* 16 лет

4. ***from ... to ...*** – *от ... до ...*
   - ❑ **from** Romulus **to** our time
     От Ромула *до* наших дней.

5. ***by*** – *к определенному моменту*
   by the time smth happens – *к тому времени как*
   - ❑ You should have received my letter **by Monday**.
     К понедельнику ты должен был бы уже получить мое письмо.
   - ❑ **By the time** I finished, I was very tired.
     К тому времени, как я закончил, я очень устал.

EXERCISES



28 **(A, B) Put in prepositions *before, till/until, by*.**

1. He works from morning ..... night day after day.
2. Everybody is nervous ..... exams.
3. I was tired this morning so I stayed in bed ..... half past ten.
4. We'd better hurry. We have to be at home ..... 5 o'clock.
5. I always have breakfast ..... going to work.
6. Tom'll be away ..... Monday.
7. I've posted the letter today so I think they'll receive it ..... Monday.
8. I'll wait ..... 10 o'clock. I have very little time to spare.
9. ..... going to sleep I read a few pages of my book.
10. ..... now I knew nothing about it.
11. Where is Ann? She should be here ..... now.

29 **(B, C) Translate the prepositions in brackets.**

1. Your name comes (перед) ..... mine on the list.
2. Don't wait for me. I'll be working (до) ..... 10 o'clock. So I hope I'll finish this work (к) ..... Friday.
3. I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully (перед) ..... answering it.
4. We don't expect the director (до) ..... the end of the week.
5. If we leave now we'll be at your mother's (к) ..... 12 o'clock. Just in time for lunch.
6. Let's have a cup of coffee (до) ..... going out.
7. (Перед) ..... going to a foreign country, it's a good idea to learn a few words of the language.
8. Let's wait (до) ..... arrival of the post and then call them.
9. I hope to finish this work (к) ..... the end of the month.

7.3 Prepositions *since, from, in time / on time*

	с, от (какого-либо момента)
since	▪ The action started in the past and is <u>still going on at present</u>. Used with Perfect tenses. ❑ I've been working **since** 12 o'clock. Я работаю *с* 12 часов (и всё ещё работаю). ❑ I haven't seen him **since** Monday. Я не видел его *с* понедельника.
from	▪ Indicates the starting point of an action which is <u>no longer going on at the present moment</u>. ❑ He works **from** eight till four. Tomorrow he'll work **from** ten. Он работает *с* 8 до 16. Завтра он будет работать *с* 10. ❑ He studied English **from** the age of five. Он изучал английский *с* пяти лет.

From is used with the following adverbs of place and time:

from there – оттуда
from here – отсюда
from nowhere – ниоткуда
from then – с тех пор
from now – с этих пор, отныне

Set expressions with *from*:

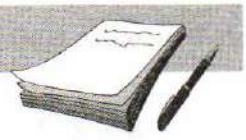
from (the) beginning to (the) end – с начала до конца
from day to day – со дня на день
from morning till night – с утра до ночи
from time to time – время от времени

Since is also a conjunction meaning *с тех пор как; так как/поскольку*:

❑ I haven't seen him **since** he returned from London.
Я не видел его *с тех пор, как* он вернулся из Лондона.
❑ **Since** you are busy, I'll do the work.
Поскольку ты занят, я выполню эту работу.

On time *вовремя, в срок* (как запланировано)	***In time*** *к определенному времени* (успеть к; не позже чем)
❑ The train left **on time** (according to the schedule). Поезд отправился вовремя (согласно расписанию).	❑ Will you be home **in time** for dinner? Ты будешь дома к обеду?
❑ I'll meet you at 7.30. Please, be there **on time**. Я буду ждать тебя в 7.30. Пожалуйста, приди вовремя (не опаздывай).	❑ I want to get home **in time** to see the football match. Я хочу прийти домой к началу футбольного матча (вовремя, чтобы посмотреть...).

EXERCISES



30 (A, B) Translate the preposition in brackets.

1. She hasn't been home (c) ..... her marriage.
2. Where have you been (c) ..... our last meeting?
3. He said he had been waiting for you (c) ..... 5 to 7 p.m. You had never come.
4. I've been waiting here (c) ..... 5 o'clock.
5. (C) ..... October the weather has been awful.
6. My younger boy has been using computer (c) ..... the age of four.
7. He has been here (c) ..... Monday.
8. The library is open (c) ..... 9 a.m. to 8 p.m.
9. Richard has been in Canada (c) ..... January.
10. It usually rains here (c) ..... November to February.

31 (B, C) Complete the sencences with *in time/ on time*.

1. It's a very good train service here. The trains always run ..... .
2. Our car is being repaired. I hope it's ready ..... for our holiday.
3. I usually get up ..... to wash my hair and make up.
4. My friend is sick, I hope he'll be fit ..... to go hiking.
5. Our Dean is very punctual, our meetings always begin ..... .
6. I'm having my evening frock dry-cleaned, they said it'll be ready ..... for me to wear it this evening.
7. Don't work yourself up, the play'll begin ..... .
8. I nearly sat down on a painted bench, he stopped me just ..... .
9. Father is always very angry with me when I'm not ..... for dinner. He likes everything to be ..... .

Revision

32 (B, C) Complete the sentences with the appropriate prepositions.

1. The temperature ..... the South Pole ..... winter is usually ..... 50 degrees ..... zero.
2. Mona Lisa, which is ..... the Louvre ..... Paris, was paited well ..... 400 years ago.
3. The Odeon is directly ..... the bus station, a few metres ..... the square. If you're approaching it ..... west, turn ..... the left when you see the university ..... your right.
4. "Try to arrive ..... time ..... the future," he said to me in a whisper.
5. G comes ..... F ..... the alphabet and ..... H.
6. He was working at the painting ..... five weeks ..... the spring.
7. Peggoty and I were sitting that night ..... the parlour (гостиная) fire alone. I had been reading ..... her ..... crocodiles.
8. Our train stopped ..... five minutes ..... a small station.
9. He was born ..... 1930, I think ..... May, 3.
10. He opened the bookcase ..... his writing table and took several books ..... it.
11. I expect to get an answer ..... him ..... a few days.

33 **Fill in the prepositions. Some can be used more than once; more than one answer is possible in some cases.**



across by down for into on over past round through to towards under

Let me tell you how to get (1)..... our place. Are you coming (2)..... car? OK. You drive (3)..... the A 1734 (4)..... Blackstone (5)..... about twelve miles; go (6)..... the first turn to Stroop, take the second turn and then go straight (7)..... the crossroads, (8)..... a petrol station, take the next right and drive (9)..... the park. On the other side of the park, go (10)..... the canal bridge, (11)..... the hill, turn left (12)..... the Market Square, keep straight on (13)..... the railway bridge and you'll come (14)..... Miller Street. It's probably best to park there because there isn't usually a space (15)..... our house. We're just (16)..... the corner from the post-office – 37 Jack Lane.

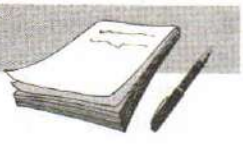
8. Prepositions Expressing Abstract Relations

8.1 Prepositions *by, with*

By – refers to method, means or agent.
With – indicates tools or instruments.

- ❑ This church was designed **by** Wren.
- ❑ He makes a living **by** teaching.
- ❑ The car was broken **by** a fallen tree.
- ❑ I can't cut it **with** this knife, it's dull.
- ❑ I saw it **with** my own eyes.

EXERCISE



34 **(A, B) Fill in the blanks with *by* or *with*.**

1. My letter was answered ..... the secretary, not the boss himself. 2. The bridge was built ..... soldiers during the war. 3. He took my hand ..... his both hands and shook it. 4. This information is given ..... a machine, it should be checked. 5. She's hurt her arm ..... scissors. 6. The wood was wet, I couldn't burn it ..... a match. 7. The story told ..... him seemed to be true. 8. She thought that the

medicine prescribed ..... the doctor was sure to help. 9. They said that the old picture in my grandmother's bedroom was painted ..... a famous painter. 10. It was so difficult for her to walk ..... crutches. 11. When they played chess, she loved to play ..... white pieces. 12. He rubbed the mirror ..... his sleeve and saw the face he couldn't recognize.

8.2 *As* and *like*

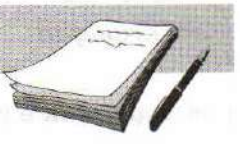
Like is used to compare things. It can also mean "such as" or "similar to":

- There is no one **like** John.
- We don't invite people **like** the Frosts.
- It was **like** a dream.

As means "in the role of", "in the capacity of":

- I work **as** a receptionist.
- He acted **as** usher at his brother's wedding.

EXERCISES



35 (A, B) Choose the proper preposition.

1. They worked *as/like* beavers (бобр) to finish the cabin on time. 2. Stop that nonsense! You are acting *as/like* a baby. 3. The manager hired him to act *as/like* a fool in one of Shakespeare's plays. 4. The water felt *as/like* ice to her tender skin. 5. I feel *as/like* a fool having all this fuss made over me. 6. *As/Like* a nurse, I can't approve of your decision to leave hospital so soon but *as/like* a mother I understand you perfectly.

36 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Люди, как Джоунс, всегда так ведут себя. 2. Однажды я работал водителем автобуса. 3. На нём была шляпа, как эта, и зелёное пальто. 4. Он больше похож на мать, чем на отца. 5. Кто использовал эту вазу как молоток? 6. Лучше дома места нет! 7. Пожилой человек бежал, как спортсмен. 8. Его всегда уважали как судью и как человека. 9. Он ведёт себя, как король. 10. Он писал о Наполеоне как о государственном деятеле, а не как о солдате. 11. Это выглядит, как золото, но я не уверена. 12. Как юрист я бы этого не посоветовал.

8.3 *About, on*

We can use *about* and *on* to mean "concerning".

On in a formal way, for example, to describe a textbook:

- a textbook **on** physics

About is informal:

- a book **about** animals

EXERCISE



37 **(A, B, C) *On* or *about*?**

1. I've read a lot of books *on/about* animals. 2. Read this article *on/about* the Antarctic. 3. At home he often thought *on/about* his family but at his work he was supposed to dwell *on/about* other subjects. 4. He was the leader of the party, he reflected *on/about* the future of the country. 5. I know very little *on/about* plants. 6. Our professor delivered a lecture *on/about* the morphology (строение) of plants. 7. V. Bianki wrote a lot of books *on/about* animals. 8. At that time Darvin's treatise (трактат) *on/about* animals was a new step in science.

9. Composite Prepositions

according to	*согласно (чему-либо)*	❑ **According to** the schedule, the steamer arrives at 7 o'clock on Monday.
in accordance with	*в соответствии с*	❑ He acted **in accordance with** our instructions.
as compared with	*по сравнению с*	❑ The output has greatly increased **as compared with** the last year.
as far as	*до* (о расстоянии)	❑ I'll go with you **as far as** the station.
as to/as for	*что касается*	❑ **As to (as for)** our plans, we'll speak about them later.
because of	*из-за*	❑ We didn't go there **because of** the rain.
by means of	*посредством*	❑ It can be done **by means of** heat treatment.
due to; owing to	*из-за; благодаря*	❑ Our delay was **due to** the heavy traffic. ❑ We couldn't get there **owing to** the storm.
thanks to	*благодаря*	❑ **Thanks to** his help, we could finish the work in time.
except for	*за исключением; если не считать*	❑ Your essay is good, **except for** a few mistakes.
in spite of	*несмотря на*	❑ We finished the work in time **in spite of** all the difficulties.
instead of	*вместо*	❑ We bought a new car **instead of** the old one.
irrespective of	*независимо от*	❑ In the US every person can study at a University, **irrespective of** age.

EXERCISE



38 **(B) Use the prepositions from the table above to complete the sentences.**

1. Our success was ..... luck. 2. ..... the Bible, God created the World in six days. 3. ..... you, I never want to see you again. 4. We followed them ..... the river and stopped, we had no boat. 5. They went out ..... the rain. 6. Shall we have fish ..... meat? 7. The flights were cancelled ..... the strike. 8. We were late ..... heavy traffic on the road. 9. The books are placed on the shelves ..... authors. 10. ..... this problem, I'll deal with it on Monday. 11. "..... your wishes, Sir, we've sent the flowers to this address." 12. He's lost his job ..... bad health. 13. If you don't feel like it, I'll go there ..... you. 14. ..... all his efforts he failed.

10. Revision

EXERCISES



39 **(B, C) Fill in the gaps with the prepositions from the box.**

among as at beside besides between by except in into like with

1. I left him standing ..... the wreck of his car. 2. I acted ..... chairman at the meeting of our club yesterday. 3. As soon as he saw the child fall ..... the water, he jumped after her. 4. There were two people ..... the station ..... me. 5. "Let's go ..... that store first," he suggested to his friend. 6. He stayed ..... his aunt's during the whole of his childhood. 7. She paused on the pavement, feeling the envelope ..... her fingers. 8. She was standing laughing ..... a crowd of her admirers. 9. What's the difference ..... a crow and a rook? 10. It's funny how she always talks ..... a distinguished professor! 11. A man who wastes money is known ..... a spendthrift. 12. They travelled through all parts of Great Britain ..... Ulster. 13. I like wandering ..... the woods all by myself. 14. The tall castle they had built ..... the water's edge had already disappeared.

40 **(B, C) Translate into Russian, using the proper prepositions.**

1. Их маленький домик стоял в лесу, спрятанный между большими деревьями. 2. Мы живём у моря; я каждый день вижу его из своего окна. 3. Вы можете поехать туда на автобусе. 4. Он работал водителем автобуса полгода. 5. В Греции, как и в Италии, при приготовлении пищи употребляют много оливкового масла. 6. Он наколол (chopped) дрова топором и сложил их у печки. 7. В полдень жара в этих широтах (latitudes) очень сильная, и приходится скрываться (take refuge) от неё в доме. 8. Это только между нами (с тобой). 9. Я не люблю бывать среди незнакомых людей. 10. Миссис Пёрл положила последнюю страницу рукописи на диван рядом с собой. 11. Я никогда не встречала таких, как ты. 12. Она медленно опустила руку (reached) в свою сумочку и достала очки. 13. Между ними нет большой разницы. 14. Кто был вчера у Петровых кроме вас двоих? 15. Все, кроме Пола, пришли вовремя.

41 (B, C) Dictation-translation.

1. Оставайся вечером с нами. 2. Он подошёл и сел рядом со мной на скамью. 3. Она сидела на стуле у двери. 4. Ты ведёшь себя, как подросток! 5. Он всегда открывает письма ножом. 6. Кроме того что он съел три пирожных, он съел десять шоколадок! 7. Они привезли довольствие (supplies) на поезде. 8. Пришли все, кроме ваших студентов. 9. Нынешнее лето я проведу у своей подруги под Москвой. 10. Какие могут быть тайны между нами! 11. Ты теперь среди друзей. 12. Раздели это яблоко на четыре части. 13. Это место известно в городе как Пять Углов. 14. Давай встретимся у Пяти Углов.

11. Use of Prepositions in Set Expressions

About
to be about – собираться сделать что-либо
to bring about – приводить к чему-либо

Above
above all – главным образом, больше всего
above measure – свыше меры
above suspision – вне подозрений

After
after all – в конце концов
the day after tomorrow – послезавтра
long/soon after – спустя долгое время/вскоре
name after smb – назвать в честь кого-либо

Along
come along – идём(те)
get along – ладить
all along – с самого начала

At
at the age of – в возрасте
not at all – не совсем
at all costs – любой ценой
at dinner/lunch/tea – за обедом/ланчем/чаем
at the expense of – за счет кого-либо
at the end – в конце
at first – сначала
at once – сразу же
at any rate – во всяком случае
at a time – за один раз
at a speed of – со скоростью
at this/that/the same time – в это/то/то же самое время
at somebody's disposal/service – в распоряжении кого-либо, к чьим-либо услугам
at home – дома

Before
the day before (yesterday) – накануне (позавчера)
long before – задолго до

Behind
be behind time – опаздывать
behind one's back – за спиной у кого-либо
be behind smb – отставать от кого-либо

By
by accident/chance – случайно
by heart – наизусть
by land/sea/air – сухопутным/морским/воздушным путем
by means of – посредством
by no means – ни в коем случае
by the way – между прочим
step by step – шаг за шагом
by retail – в розницу
six by eight meters – 6 на 8 метров
by six meters – на 6 метров (больше/меньше)

Down
up and down – взад и вперед; вверх и вниз
down to – вплоть до
upside down – вверх дном

For
for ever/good – навсегда
for example/instance – например
for ages – целую вечность
for the time being – в настоящее время
to go for a walk – идти на прогулку

In
in any case – во всяком случае
in conclusion – в заключение
in the direction of – в направлении
in exchange – в обмен
in fact – в действительности
in general – вообще

in the meantime – тем временем
in part – частично
in ink/pencil – чернилами/карандашом
in Russian/English – на русском/английском языке
in sight – в поле зрения
in stock – на складе/в запасе
in return – взамен

On **on the average** – в среднем
on business – по делу/в командировку
on board – на борту
on condition that – при условии что
on the contrary – наоборот
on demand – по требованию
on the one/other hand – с одной стороны/с другой стороны
on the part of – со стороны кого-либо
on purpose – специально
on sale – в продаже
on the whole – в общем
and so on – и так далее
later on – позже
be on – идти (о фильме, пьесе)

Out of **out-of-date** – устаревший
out of doors – на улице/открытом воздухе
out of necessity – по необходимости
out of pity – из жалости
out of order – не работает
out of use – вышедший из употребления

To **to my disappointment/sorrow/joy** – к моему разочарованию/горю/радости
to the end – до конца
to the right/left – направо/налево
to and fro – взад-вперед
to the North/South – на север/юг

Under **be under construction/repair** – строиться/ремонтироваться
under the circumstances – при этих обстоятельствах
under the agreement/contract – по соглашению/контракту

Up **up to** – вплоть до
up-to-date – современный
be up – проснуться
The time is up. – Время истекло.
What's up? – Что случилось?

Within **within reach/sight/hearing** – в пределах достижимости/видимости/слышимости
within three miles of – в трех милях от

12. Tests

I

A. Put in the correct preposition.

1. Let's go ..... a concert.
2. I've spent a day ..... York.
3. We usually meet ..... the University.
4. They are delivering the furniture ..... my flat ..... Tuesday.
5. Do you think you can finish the painting ..... Easter?
6. She sat down ..... me and started looking ..... me.
7. She was standing ..... a crowd of children.
8. It's interesting to work ..... her.
9. We went ..... the field and then ..... the woods.

B. Put in *at*, *in*, *on*, *(–)*.

1. ..... Easter
2. ..... Friday
3. 1944
4. ..... the evening
5. ..... Monday evening
6. ..... May
7. ..... next Sunday
8. ..... what time?
9. ..... supper time
10. ..... this Saturday
11. ..... Sunday afternoon

II

A. Put in the correct preposition.

1. Stop shouting ..... me.
2. Can you repair my watch ..... Tuesday? I'm leaving on Wednesday.
3. Somebody has parked ..... my garage door, I can't get my car out.
4. I sent it ..... London yesterday.
5. I went to see my father ..... Canada.
6. Our house is ..... the wood and the river.
7. We'll come and see you some time ..... Christmas and Easter.
8. I found the letter ..... some old papers.
9. It's difficult to swim ..... the river.

B. Put in *at*, *in*, *on*, *(–)*.

1. ..... next Monday
2. I don't know ..... what time it's now.
3. 1998
4. ..... Tuesday
5. ..... Monday morning
6. ..... the afternoon
7. ..... April
8. ..... dinner time
9. ..... this Friday
10 ..... Christmas
11. ..... Saturday evening

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE AND THE COMPLEX SENTENCE

1. The Compound Sentence

It is a sentence which consists of two or more clauses coordinated with each other, each clause has a subject and a predicate of its own.

In a compound sentence the clauses may be connected:

a) by means of coordinating conjunctions: *and, or, else* (иначе), *but* or conjunctive adverbs: *otherwise* (иначе), *however* (однако), *nevertheless* (тем не менее), *yet/still* (всё-таки, тем не менее), *therefore* (поэтому):

- He went to his study **but** he couldn't work.
- There was no news, **nevertheless** she went on hoping.
- She's vain (тщеславна) and foolish and **yet** people like her.
- He has treated you badly: **still**, he's your brother and you ought to help him.
- Do what you've been told, **otherwise** you'll be punished.
- He was mistaken, **however** he went on doing his way.

b) without a conjunction:

- The rain fell softly, the house was quiet.

Some conjunctions are used in pairs (correlatively): *both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but (also).*

These conjunctions are more widely used in simple sentences but sometimes they can be used in compound sentences:

- He is **either** in Paris **or** in London.
- **Either** you're lying **or** he must be an absolute wimp.

2. The Complex Sentence

A complex sentence is a hierarchical structure which consists of an independent (main) clause and one or more dependent (subordinate) clauses. The subordinate clauses may function grammatically as a subject, object, predicative, attribute or adverbial modifier in a main clause. The subordinate clauses are generally introduced by subordinating conjunctions and connectives. These conjunctions and connectives are often polysemantic and multifunctional, which may cause confusion in usage and understanding. We shall consider here only those types of sentences and connectives which may present some difficulties in understanding and translating.

A subordinate clause may follow, precede or interrupt the main clause:

- I asked him **why he had come**.
- **Since it was Saturday**, he didn't go to his office.
- The man **who lives next door** is very friendly.

2.1 Subject Clauses

Subordinate subject clauses perform the function of a subject to the predicate of the main clause. Subject clauses are introduced by the following connectives:

that	–	*то, что*
what	–	*то, что; что ... , так это ...*
if, whether	–	частица *ли* после сказуемого в предложении-подлежащем
who	–	*кто; тот, кто*
whoever	–	*кто бы ни ..; всякий, кто*
which	–	*кто из; который из*
whatever	–	*всё, что; что бы ни*
where	–	*то, где; вопрос о том, где; то, куда; вопрос о том, куда*
when	–	*то, когда; вопрос о том, когда*
why	–	*то, почему; вопрос о том, почему*
how	–	*то, как; вопрос о том, как*
how + adjective	–	*насколько* + прилагательное

- **That he will never agree to this plan** is absolutely clear. – То, *что он никогда не согласится с этим планом*, совершенно ясно.
- **Whether he will agree to join us** is not quite clear. – Ещё не совсем ясно, *согласится ли он присоединиться к нам*.
- **What was done** could not be undone. – *Что сделано*, того уже не исправить.
- **Who her mother was**, was the question. – *Кто был её матерью* – вот вопрос.
- **When we shall start** is uncertain. – *Когда мы отправимся*, неизвестно.
- **Whoever is elected Prime Minister**, lives at 10 Downing Street. – *Кто бы ни был избран премьер-министром*, он живёт на Даунинг-стрит, 10.
- **How important it is to start the work right away** is clear to everybody. – Всем ясно, *насколько важно начать эту работу немедленно*.

NOTES:

1. When a subject clause is placed at the end of a sentence, it is introduced by the introductory *it*:
- **It** is surprising *how your voice hasn't changed*.

In these cases, subordinate subject clauses can be introduced without any connectives:
- **It** is a pity *you are leaving*.

2. Usually, subject clauses are not separated from the main clause by a comma.

EXERCISES



1 **(B) Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. That electrons compose the atom was settled but what an electron is was yet to be discovered. 2. It is very difficult for me to know whether to say "yes" or "no". 3. Whether there is life on Mars has been a most intriguing problem since the exploration of space started. 4. How this can happen may be shown on a diagram. 5. What seems to us today to be a banal truth was by no means trivial six centuries ago. 6. That the environment affects humankind in a great variety of ways is a point beyond discussion. 7. When this should be done remains to be settled yet. 8. Why he did it has been puzzling me these two days. 9. Which of them is going to win has suddenly become a matter of primary importance for everybody.

10. Whatever they say or do becomes immediately known to the headmaster. 11. It is my belief that they were lost while trying to locate their companions. 12. That he exceeded his authority (полномочия) seems practically certain.

2 (B, C) Translate from Russian into English.

1. Тот, кто не знает этого, не знает ничего. 2. То, что я пытался узнать, было очень важно для нашего расследования. 3. Пыталась ли она когда-либо изменить это, было спрятано в её собственном сердце. 4. Удивительно, как мало изменился этот район. 5. Что мне больше всего нравится в полковнике, так это его усы. 6. Что бы она ни намеревалась (mean) сказать, осталось несказанным. 7. Вопрос о том, куда им переезжать, не обсуждался. 8. Встретятся ли они когда-нибудь ещё – загадка. 9. Насколько трудно было выполнить эту работу, видно из её дневника. 10. Кто бы это ни сделал – гений. 11. То, что вы сделали, непростительно. 12. Как вы это собираетесь сделать, мне не ясно.

2.2 Predicative Clauses

A subordinate predicative clause together with the link-verb in the main clause form a compound nominal predicate to the subject of the main clause. The connectives introducing predicative clauses are the same as in subject clauses.

- This decision **is what we have been hoping for**. – Это решение – как раз *то, на что мы надеялись*.
- But his chief trouble **was that he did not know any editor or writer**. – Но главная его проблема заключалась *в том, что он не знал ни одного редактора или писателя*.

As a rule, predicative clauses are not separated by a comma.

Sometimes we need to translate the link-verb *to be* into Russian. The recommended ways to do it are:

состоит в том, что ...
представляет собой то, что ...
является тем, что ...
это то, что ...

EXERCISES



3 (B) Translate into Russian.

1. This was what I wished for. 2. This book was what is often referred to as an autobiographical novel. 3. The trouble is that I have lost his address. 4. The problem is whether they'll be able to help us. 5. The mistake was that he had never had to earn his living. 6. The boy's only excuse was that he had had no time to study. 7. This was why he had thought of Bosinney. 8. The greatest difficulty is how you are to get across the border. 9. It is wonderful and beautiful how a man and his dog will stick to one another, through thick and thin. 10. The most important thing is whether they can deliver the parcel in time.

4 (B, C) Translate the sentences into English.

1. Самое неприятное условие заключается в том, что мы сами должны поехать за товаром. 2. Его предложение состоит в том, что они изготовят и доставят мебель сами. 3. Такая работа – это то, что называется настоящим искусством. 4. Самая большая загадка – это то, как он сюда попал. 5. Самое смешное в этом то, что я не знаю ответа на ваш вопрос. 6. Вопрос в том, что он скажет нам. 7. Ваша поддержка – это то, в чём она сейчас нуждается больше всего. 8. Вопрос в том, приедут ли они вовремя, чтобы помочь нам. 9. Причина в том, что ты не хочешь понимать. 10. Его самая большая надежда – это то, что опыт удастся.

2.3 Object Clauses

Object clauses perform the function of an object to the predicate-verb of the main clause:

- I don't know **what you're talking about**.
- He told us **that he felt ill**.

1. Object clauses are connected to the main clause in the following ways:

a) by means of conjunctions *that*, *if*, *whether*:
- Time will show **whether I'm right or wrong**.
- The policeman inquired **if I had a driving licence**.

b) by means of the connectives *who*, *which*, *what*, *whatever*, *whoever*, *whichever*; *where*, *when*, *how*, *why*, etc.:
- I'll do **what I say**.
- I'm always ready to listen to **whatever you may say**.
- I found out **who had done it**.
- I don't know **when he will come**.

c) without a conjunction:
- He said **he felt tired**.
- I'm afraid **they'll be late**.

2. As a rule, object clauses are not separated by a comma from the main clause.

3. For Indirect Speech see "Direct and Indirect Speech".

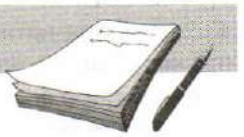
4. When the predicate-verb in the main clause is expressed by the verbs *to demand*, *to require*, *to insist*, *to advise*, *to recommend*, *to suggest*, *to propose*, *to agree*, *to arrange* (договариваться), *to order*, *to command*, **should + Infinitive** is used in the object clause:
- They **insisted** (that) we **should have dinner** with them.
  Они настаивали, чтобы мы с ними пообедали.
- She **demanded** (that) **I should apologise** to her.

NOTES:

1. Other structures are possible, too:
   - What do you **suggest** we **should do**?
   - What do you **suggest** we **do**?
   - Jim **insisted** I **should see** a doctor.
   - Jim **insisted** I **see** a doctor.

2. We use *should* in a subordinate clause after the adjectives *important*, *strange*, *funny*, *natural*, *surprised*, *essential*, *unbelievable*, *odd*, *typical*, *interesting*, *surprising*, *desirable*, etc.
   - It's **strange** that he **should be** late. He's usually on time.
   - I was **surprised** that he **should say** such a thing.

EXERCISES



5 (B) Write a new sentence with the same meaning using the verbs above.

Model: "You must stay in bed for two days," the doctor said to me.
The doctor recommended *that I should stay in bed for two days*.

1. "Why don't you visit the museum after lunch?" I said to them.
   .....
2. "Help me!" he didn't ask, he demanded and it sounded rude.
   .....
3. "I think it's wise to accept such a good offer," he advised me.
   .....
4. "Arrange everything for the journey," the director ordered the secretary.
   .....
5. "If I were you, I'd start early," she advised.
   .....
6. "You really must stay a little longer," she insisted.
   .....
7. "Let the prisoners free," the officer commanded.
   .....

8. "You must come with us," he insisted.
.....
9. "You ought to be present. The situation here requires that."
.....
10. "Why don't we start at ten?" the guide proposed.
.....
11. "You must pay by the Monday evening," the landlord demanded.
.....
12. "Why don't you go away for a few days?" Jack suggested to me.
.....

A J☺ke

- You are the manager of this rock group, aren't you?
- That's right. What can I do for you?
- Does the band take requests?
- Yes. I'm sure that they'll be able to play **anything you ask for**.
- Wonderful! Could you ask them to play cards and stop making that horrible noise!

6 (B, C) Translate the sentences.

I

1. Доктор посоветовал, чтобы она поехала на юг осенью.
2. Они настаивали на том, чтобы этот вопрос был обсуждён на следующем заседании.
3. Он приказал, чтобы все было готово к 5 часам.
4. Мой брат предложил, чтобы мы провели отпуск в деревне.
5. Покупатель настаивал, чтобы товар был принят обратно магазином.
6. Заказчик потребовал, чтобы работа была завершена в срок.

II

1. Желательно, чтобы они приняли участие в этой работе.
2. Очень важно, чтобы все документы были подписаны ко вторнику.
3. Невероятно, что он не знал об этом.
4. Необходимо, чтобы врач немедленно осмотрел его.
5. Лучше, чтобы вы пошли туда сами.
6. Естественно, что родители беспокоятся о своих детях.
7. Я была удивлена, что он сказал это.
8. Очень важно, чтобы все слушали внимательно.

2.4 Attributive Clauses

Attributive clauses serve as attribute to a noun (pronoun) in the main clause. According to their meaning and the way they are connected with the main clause, they are divided into relative and appositive ones.

Attributive relative clauses qualify the nouns or pronouns.

Attributive appositive clauses disclose their meaning.

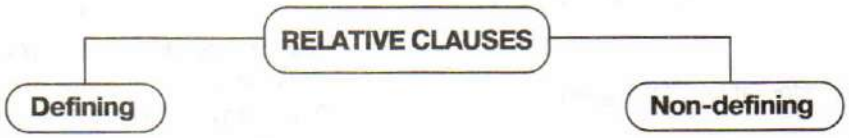
- ❑ The facts **those men were so eager to know** were visible. (attributive relative clause)
- ❑ The fact **that the rector's letter didn't require an immediate answer** would give him time to think. (attributive appositive clause)

Relative clauses are introduced with:

a) relative pronouns (*who(m)*, *which*, *whose*, *that*):
- ❑ The scientist **who/whom/that we met during the conference** was from Germany.
- ❑ A cellular phone is something **that/which we use for communication**.

b) relative adverbs (*when*, *where*, *why*)
- ❑ The house **where I was born** is quite old.

2.4.1 Defining and Non-Defining Relative Clauses



It defines (= explains) exactly who or what is being discussed. The information it gives is essential to the meaning of the main clause.
No commas used.

- "I saw that man again."
  "Which man?"
  "The man **who wants to buy my house**."
- The letter **that arrived this morning** was wrongly addressed.

It gives extra information about the subject being discussed, which is not essential to the meaning of the main clause.
Commas used.

- A man, **who said he knew my father**, came to see me yesterday.
  (It is an interesting fact but it is extra rather than essential information.)

Non-defining clauses are used mostly in writing. In conversation two short sentences can be enough:

- I'm going to Sheila. I told you about her yesterday.

2.4.2 Subject and Object Relative Clauses

- The man **who normally works here** is ill.

Main clause: The man is ill.
Clause: who normally works here.
= he normally works here.

"he" is the subject so this is a subject relative clause.

- The man **you saw yesterday** is ill.

Main clause: The man is ill.
Clause: who you saw yesterday.
= you saw him yesterday.

"him" is the object so this is an object relative clause.

Subject Relative Clauses	Object Relative Clauses
❑ The thing [*that* really **surprised** me] was his attitude.	❑ The thing [*that* **I** really **liked** about her] was her kindness.
❑ The woman [*who* **lives** next door] is very friendly.	❑ The woman [*who* **you met** yesterday] lives next door.

You can omit (пропустить) *that*, *who* or *which* when they are the object of the verb in the relative clause:

- The woman **you met yesterday** lives next door.
- The thing **I really liked about her** was her kindness.

Prepositions are usually not used before relative pronouns. They come after the verb + object:

- It's the book (that/which) I told you **about**.

Prepositions are put before relative pronouns in formal style. In this case *that* cannot be used:

- It's the book **about** which I told you.

Relative Pronouns in Defining and Non-Defining Clauses

CLAUSE		PERSON	THING/ANIMAL
Defining	Subject	**who** (or **that**)	**that** (or **which**)
	Object	– (or **who(m)/that**)	– (or **that/which**)
Non-defining	Subject	, **who** ... ,	, **which** ... ,
	Object	, **who(m)** ... ,	, **which** ... ,

NOTES:

- In the table the words in brackets are possible alternatives to the relative pronouns or to omitted pronouns but they are less common.
- *Whom* is used only in formal English.
- Objects defining relative clauses do not normally need *who* or *that*.
- *Where*, *when*, *why* can also be used to introduce defining and non-defining relative clauses:
  - We visited the town **where I was born**. (defining)
  - I bought them at the supermarket **where I met Mrs. Butler**. (non-defining)
  - There must be a reason **why you said that**.
- *That* is used with words such as *all*, *every(thing)*, *some(thing)*, *any(thing)*, *no(thing)*, *none*, *few*, *little*, *much*, *only* and with the superlative form:
  - This is **all (that)** we can do for you.
  - The **only** thing **that** was important for him was his work.
  - It's **the best** performance **(that)** I've ever seen.

EXERCISES



7 (B) Join the sentences below, using *who*, *whom*, *whose*, *which*.

Model: I met Jane's father. He works at Oxford University.
I met Jane's father, *who works at Oxford University*.

1. Ursula is studying Russian. She has never been to Russia.
   .....
2. Manchester is in the North-West. We are moving to Manchester.
   .....
3. Manchester is a big city. It's one of England's fastest growing towns.
   .....
4. This is Dora. We stayed at her house for our holiday.
   .....
5. You'll meet Andrew. His brother is one of my closest friends.
   .....
6. She is the girl. I bought a box of sweets for her.
   .....
7. He is the man. I sent a letter to him.
   .....
8. That's the boy. He's just got a place at university.
   .....
9. The bus didn't have enough seats. They sent it.
   .....
10. I didn't receive the letters. She sent me the letters.
    .....

8 (B) Join each pair in two different ways: informal and formal.

Model: That's the chair. I sat on it.
a) That's the chair *I sat on*.
b) That's the chair *on which I sat*.

1. She is the girl. I gave flowers to her.
   .....
2. That's the park. I passed by it.
   .....
3. That's the dress. I've paid for it.
   .....
4. This is the music. We listened to it yesterday.
   .....
5. That's the man. I spoke to him the other day.
   .....
6. I'm looking for a man. One can rely on him.
   .....
7. I sacked (уволить) the sales assistant. I had a terrible argument with him.
   .....
8. That's my house. The burglars broke into it the other day.
   .....
9. She is the girl. I told you about her.
   .....

9 (B, C) Fill in the right connectives where necessary.

1. Gerry works for a company ..... makes cars and buses. 2. The book is about the man ..... made this wonderful discovery. 3. It seems ..... the Earth is the only planet ..... life exists. 4. The accident ..... had happened the day before was my fault. 5. She gave me the address, ... I wrote down on a piece of paper. 6. Have you found the note-book ..... you lost? 7. What was the name of the man ..... wife was taken to hospital? 8. A new cinema, ... holds 2000 people, has been opened in New York. 9. That man, ... name I don't remember, worked for our company some years ago. 10. Is there a shop near here ..... I can buy some bread? 11. The reason ..... I'm phoning you is to invite you to a party.

10 (B) Construct relative clauses with a preposition.

Model: I didn't get the job (apply for it).
I didn't get the job *I applied for*.

1. The house (live in it) ..... was built in the 19th century. 2. I enjoy my classes because I like the people (study with them) ..... . 3. I like the girl (dance with her) ..... . 4. The game (join in it) ..... was very heated (азартная). 5. The tragedy (just learn about it) ..... is in the news report. 6. The substances (the matter consists of them) ..... are rather dangerous. 7. I threw away the paper (the present/wrap in it) ..... . 8. The article (the author/refer to it) ..... was written by an American scientist.

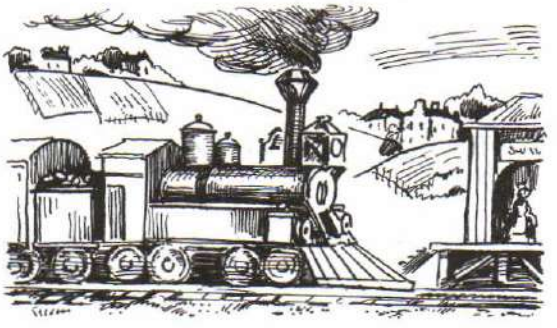
11 (B, C) Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Человек, который звонил вам, не назвал своего имени.
2. Как называется река, которая протекает в городе?
3. Вы видели фотографии, которые сделала Анна?
4. Вы всегда задаёте вопросы, на которые трудно ответить.
5. Вы знаете кого-нибудь, кто хочет купить машину?
6. У меня есть друг, который очень хорошо ремонтирует машины.
7. Обед, который ты приготовила, очень вкусный.
8. Где цветы, которые я тебе подарил?
9. Тебе понравился отель, где вы остановились?
10. Это книги, о которых я тебе говорил.
11. Ты знаешь человека, с которым разговаривает Джилл?
12. Ты нашёл карту, которую искал?

12 (B, C) Fill in *who*, *which* or *whose*. Say where *that* can be used instead and where the relative pronoun can be left out.

WHEN THE RAILWAY ARRIVED

It was a village (1)..... population had little sense of time until the railway arrived. After that, it was not the sun but the trains (2)..... villagers noted to keep time. Most people (3)..... lived along the line knew the timetables approximately: the train (4)..... arrived at 8.19 was called the Eight, the one (5)..... left at 11.37 was the Twelve, and so on. Anyone (6)..... wanted to catch the train got to the station at least half an hour before the train.



Most of the trains were "mixed" trains, (7)..... carried both passengers and goods. On the evening train, a driver (8)..... name was Bill Maindy often gave whistling performances from the locomotive. If the owls answered back, Bill stayed even after it was time for the train to leave.

The locomotives (9)..... the railway company used were quite unequal to the work, (10)..... required trains (11)..... had good brakes. Coming down the hill from Bovey, trains often passed the station; and passengers (12)..... wanted to get off had to walk back.

Apart from stopping at the stations, drivers stopped at places (13)..... were famous for their heather honey, (14)..... is still a great favourite round here. Most villagers, (15)..... worried little about time anyway, merely shouted loud comments while the guard got out and fixed the hives.

13 (B) Complete the sentences with *where*, *when*, *why*.

1. We visited the school ..... my father taught.
2. I met her last month, ... she came to our house.
3. We all worked at the place ..... the fire had started.
4. I met him in the café, ... he was working as a waiter.
5. Do you remember the time ..... we lived in Africa?
6. Did he tell the reason ..... they were late?
7. The cat sat on the wall, ... it had a good view of the birds.
8. I'm talking about the time ..... they didn't have cars.
9. Last year I spent my holiday in Spain, ... I met Andy.
10. I couldn't understand the reason ..... they were so rude.
11. We went away in August, ... the children were on holiday from school.
12. They arrived in the evening, at a time ..... we were all out.

2.4.3 *Which* Referring to the Whole Sentence

Which in relative clauses generally refers to nouns:

- He turned on **the television, which** looked new and expensive.
- He turned on the television, **which I thought was rather surprising**.

Which in the second sentence refers to the action of turning on the TV set, no just to the word "television". *Which* can be used like this only in non-defining relative clauses.

EXERCISE



14 **(B, C) Join the sentences below, using *which*.**

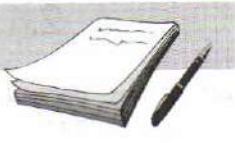
Model: I love the countryside. That's why I want to go and live there.
I love the countryside, which is why I want to go and live there.

1. They stayed for hours. I was very annoyed about this.
   .....
2. He passed all the exams. This surprised us.
   .....
3. They forgot about my birthday. This was a bit disappointing.
   .....
4. The pilot showed us how to fly. It was extremely interesting.
   .....
5. I couldn't get a flight to Paris. This upset the children.
   .....
6. The store wouldn't accept bank cards. I found this rather surprising.
   .....
7. He was rude. His behavior made me very angry.
   .....
8. The man asked for directions. This made me a bit suspicious.
   .....

2.4.4 Clauses Introduced by *What, That, Which*

	English	Russian	Examples	Notes
ЧТО	***what***	*то, что; что именно*	❑ I told you **what** I know.	– *what* is always stressed; – cannot be omitted
	that	*что*	❑ I told you **(that)** I know about the plan. – used with such words as *all, every(thing), some(thing), any(thing), no(thing)*: ❑ This is **all (that)** I can do for you.	– *that* is always unstressed; – can be omitted
	which	*что; чего; и этого*	❑ I told you about the plan, **which** is enough for the present. Я рассказал вам о плане, ***чего*** *на настоящий момент* ***достаточно*** / ***и этого*** *в настоящий момент достаточно.*	– *which* here refers to the whole main clause; – cannot be omitted

EXERCISES



15 **(B) Fill in *that* or *what*.**

1. The thing is ..... I can't do without a dictionary today. 2. You should have apologized to Anne, that's ..... I'm driving at. 3. All ..... glitters is not gold. 4. ..... they will get there at noon is out of the question. 5. He'll do anything ..... will be necessary to help Lizzie, there's no doubt about that.

6. The point is ..... she always says ..... she means. 7. I'm absolutely sure ..... he'll do nothing ..... might do her any harm. 8. ..... I'd like to know is whether he'll have some time to spare on Monday morning. 9. That was all ..... he wanted to ask us. 10. I'll do my best to get everything ..... you'll want for your work. 11. ..... I mean is ..... the proof of the pudding is in the eating.

16 (B, C) Fill in the proper connectives: *that*, *what* or *which*.

1. I felt certain now ..... I had seen him somewhere. 2. She walked ten kilometers that day, ... was pretty good for a woman of 68. 3. You can have everything ..... you like. 4. I'm sorry. That's all ..... I know. 5. Steve went out with Susan, ... made Jane very angry. 6. Do you want to know ..... I've learnt? 7. ..... I'd like is a trip to Turkey. 8. He told me all ..... he knew. 9. I will not forget ..... you have told me. 10. He was cruel to the poor boy, ... surprised me at the time.

17 (B, C) Tick the sentences in which connectives may be omitted (✓).

1. They don't seem to speak with one another, which is somehow strange. 2. Thank you for all that you have done for me. 3. Are you not glad that we came? 4. I don't understand what you are driving at. 5. We scarcely noticed that it had stopped raining. 6. There was a coyness about her very way of pouring out the tea, which Tom quite reveled in. 7. Are you saying that you haven't known about it? 8. I gave her everything that she could wish for.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

18 Translate into English, using *that*, *what* or *which* where necessary.

I (B)

1. Я слышал, что он уже вернулся в Москву. 2. Я знаю, что он рассказывал вам. 3. Покажите мне, что вы купили. 4. Он сказал мне, что написал письмо маме. 5. Я рассказал студентам, что я видел в Лондоне. 6. Я уверен, что они вернутся очень скоро. 7. Я знаю, что она написала ему. (2 variants) 8. Я хотел бы знать, что вы сказали ему. 9. Я думаю, что завтра будет дождь.

II (C)

1. Я могу догадаться, что ты собираешься сказать. 2. Он сдал экзамен, что сильно удивило его самого. 3. Я не понимаю, что тебя так рассердило. 4. Они были совершенно равнодушны к тому, что он делал и что он говорил. 5. Это как раз то, чего я не понимаю. 6. Он всегда приходит с цветами, что, конечно, приятно. 7. Я знала, что вы придёте. 8. Я вижу, что тебе не хочется идти туда. 9. Секретарь говорит, что он уже ушёл. 10. Ты ведь знаешь, что я имею в виду?

Revision

19 (C) The following text is incomplete. To improve it and to make the meaning clear, add the information given below, in the form of relative clauses (formal style).

BRITAIN BEFORE THE ROMANS

About the year 5000 BC, the waters the English Channel and the North Sea joined together and Britain became an island.

The human population of the new island at that time was a few hundreds (1)..... ..... . But at the very time (2)..... , a revolution was occurring thousands of miles away in the Near East, (3)..... . He was learning not merely to hunt and kill for his food, but to keep the animals (4)..... . He was learning,

too, to gather the seeds of the grasses and scatter them about him to grow into the food (5)..... . He was learning, in short, to be a farmer. Men with this new knowledge did not cross the still widening waters between Europe and Britain until about 2300 BC. And when they came they had to keep to the chalky and sandy soils where they could turn the ground over for their seeds to grow. So the area (6)..... ..... was very limited.



These first settlers on the chalk ridges were men (7)..... ..... . They crossed it only if they had to and they crossed it where it was narrowest. But there were others (8)..... ..... – men living along the coasts of Spain or Brittany. When they crossed, it was where the English Channel was wider. The settlements of these people can be distinguished today by their remarkable burial places (9)..... .

It was about the year 900 BC that a large westward movement of races on the European continent produced another invasion of Britain, by a people (10)..... . These were the Celts, and they spoke a language (11)..... .

(from A History of England by J. Thorn, R. Lockyer & D. Smith)

The additional information:

- They lived by hunting with roughly made stone instrument.
- This separation of Britain from the continent was taking place.
- It was to change for ever the life of man.
- The animals provided food in captivity (неволя).
- He wanted to make food.
- They settled on this area.
- To them the sea was a natural barrier.
- For them the sea had fewer terrors.
- Its roof is a great stone.
- These people are the first to have left on this island something more than material remains.
- The tongues of Ireland, Wales and the Highlands of Scotland are the direct descendants of this language.

20 (C) Fill in the spaces with an attributive clause referring to the noun in italics. First read the story.

Model: *A cobbler, who was young and cheerful, lived...*

A *cobbler* (башмачник) ..... lived in an *attic* ..... at the top of a high building and made just enough money every day to keep him alive. But he was perfectly happy and was always singing with joy, and when the *day* ..... came to an end, he slept soundly. A rich *banker* ..... , lived in a large house opposite, and was so far from being happy that when the *day* ..... ended, he would not sleep for thinking of all the *money* ..... , and was disturbed early in the morning by the *cobbler* ..... . One day he sent over to the cobbler a present of a hundred *pounds* ..... . At first the cobbler was overjoyed but



he soon began to lose his cheerfulness. He began to be afraid that someone would steal his *gold* ..... and began to lose his sleep through the fear that someone might come into his *room* ..... . His *songs* ..... ceased and at last he felt he could bear it no longer, so seizing the bag of *gold* ..... , he went to the *banker* ..... and throwing down the money exclaimed, "Take back the hundred *pounds* ..... and leave me my *happiness* ..... , for my happiness is *all* ..... ."

2.5 Adverbial Clauses

Adverbial clauses refer to a verb, an adjective or an adverb of the main clause in the function of an adverbial modifier. Adverbial clauses are connected with the main clause by means of subordinating conjunctions and connectives. Some conjunctions are polysemantic and can introduce different types of adverbial clauses, which may be confusing. Besides, many English conjunctions, prepositions and adverbs are identical in form, which also may create some difficulties in understanding the meaning of a sentence. It is necessary to differentiate them by their functions.

Prepositions connect phrases to the words they modify:

- **After** the presentation the guests *will be able to buy* some products.

Subordinating conjunctions connect clauses to the words they modify:

- **After** the presentation is over, the guests *will be able to buy* some products.
- **Once** the performance starts, they *will not allow* entrance.

The adverb, unlike the preposition and conjunction, is a part of the sentence – an adverbial modifier:

- **Once** the towns were independent entities.

EXERCISE



21 **(B) Define the function of the words in italics. Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. *Before* you read his answer, tell me about the circumstances. 2. The rope will tighten considerably *after* it has been soaked. 3. I was hoping that *once* I was in the right area, I would get some fresh images. 4. No matter what they teach you *once* you believe it's true. 5. If you are wise you will leave *before* he sees you. 6. I know what we shall have for dinner, *for* I have seen the menu. 7. I haven't seen him *since*, not *once*. 8. *For* several days we didn't hear from them. 9. Don't make any hasty decisions *until* Father comes home. 10. He didn't start to read her letter *until* late that night when the whole family had settled for the night. 11. She didn't begin to read *before* she was seven. 12. Come Tuesday night but not *before*.

2.5.1 Time Clauses

We use time clauses to say when something happens.

Time clause are introduced by conjunctions *when*, *after*, *before*, *while*, *till*, *until*, *as*, *since*, *as soon as*, *as long as*.

NB! The verb in the time clause can be in the present or past tense. We never use a future tense in a time clause, we use one of the present tenses instead:

- ❑ I'll look after the children **while she goes to London**.
- ❑ I'll do it **when I've finished writing this letter**.

No commas are used when the time clause follows the main clause, if it proceeds the main clause, it is separated from it by a comma:

- ❑ **When he had finished reading**, he looked up.

a) *When*, *as*, *while* are used to say that two events happen at the same time (в то время как...).

- ❑ We arrived **when they were leaving**.
- ❑ She wept **as he told us the story**.
- ❑ John arrived **while we were watching the film**.

b) When one event happens before or after another event, we use the conjunctions *after*, *as soon as*, *before*, *when* (как только), *as long as* (пока, до тех пор, пока...):

- ❑ Can I see you **before we go**, Helen?
- ❑ **As soon as we get tickets**, we'll call you.

c) When we want to say that something happens when a situation ends, we use a time clause with *till* or *until* and a present or past tense:

- ❑ We'll support them **till they find work**.
- ❑ They waited **until he had gone**.

NB! After *till/until* no negation is used as the conjunctions *till* and *until* are negative in meaning.

d) A clause introduced by *since* denotes the starting point of the action (situation) described in the main clause. We use the Past Simple or the Past Perfect in the time clause; the Present or Past Perfect in the main clause.

- ❑ I'**ve been** in politics *since* I **was** at university.
- ❑ Janine **had been busy** ever *since* she **had heard** the news.

e) Time clauses are sometimes introduced by phrases: *at the time* (в то время когда), *by the time (that)* (к тому времени когда), *the moment* (в тот момент когда), *the day* (в тот день когда), *the next time* (в следующий раз когда):

- ❑ **The moment I saw him** I understood that something had happened.
- ❑ I'll ask him about it **the next time I see him**.
- ❑ I was informed about it **the day I arrived in Moscow**.

f)

ПОКА

while *«в то время как»*	❑ **While** I slept, it rained.
as long as *«до тех пор пока»*	❑ He read **as long as** the lamp burned.
before *«прежде чем»*	❑ He worked hard **before** he reached his goal.
till/until *«пока не»*	❑ He won't stop **until** he achieves good results.

AS

indicates the longer situation which started before the shorter event and perhaps went on after it:

- ❑ **As** they were driving along the main road, they saw a broken car smashed into a shop window. *(когда)*

is used to talk about two developing situations:

- ❑ **As** the city grew, more and more people were attracted to the new capital. *(по мере того как; в то время как)*

is used to say that two short actions both happened at the same time:

- ❑ Just **as** he passed under the window, the lights in the room went off. *(в то самое время)*

EXERCISES



22 (B) Complete the sentences with the conjunctions or phrases from the box.

after as as long as as soon as before by the time since the moment till until when while

1. ..... I got home, I found that Jill had painted her room. 2. She was an employee at the post office ..... she started her own business. 3. Can you look after the children ..... I am out? 4. Wait here ..... I come back. 5. You'll feel better ..... you've had something to eat. 6. You can use my car ..... I am on holidays. 7. The building had almost burnt down ..... the fire brigade arrived. 8. We realized that something had gone wrong ..... we saw him run towards us. 9. You'll get a surprise ..... you open the door. 10. We waited at the airport ..... he arrived. 11. I watched her ..... she opened the letter. 12. We've been staying in this hotel ..... we arrived in London.

23 (B) Choose the correct conjunction in each situation.

1. *After/before* you leave, you must visit the museum.
2. Don't say anything *while/when* Tom is here.
3. Wait here *after/until* he has gone.
4. We saw Ann *when/while* we were waiting for the bus.
5. She had already opened the letter *when/before* she realized it wasn't addressed to her.
6. The alarm was raised *as long as/as soon as* the fire was discovered.
7. *While/when* I was reading, Joan was playing the piano.
8. *At the time/by the time* we arrived, the party had finished.
9. I've been living by myself *from/since* I entered university.
10. *Before/since* I went out, I phoned Ann.

24 Translate the sentences.

I (B)

1. Я подожду дома, пока вы не позвоните. 2. Когда мы были в Лондоне, мы посетили Тауэр. 3. Я передам ему это сообщение, как только он позвонит. 4. Я не играл в футбол с 15 лет (с тех пор, как мне было 15 лет). 5. После того как я закончил работу, я пошёл домой. 6. Они закрыли ворота до того, как я вошёл в них. 7. Я позвонил в магазин, как только проверил (check) содержимое (contents) коробки. 8. После того как я прочту книгу, ты сможешь взять её. 9. Том читал книгу, а я в это время смотрел телевизор. 10. Что ты собираешься делать, пока ты ждёшь их?

II (C)

1. Давайте проведём совещание после того, как пообедаем. 2. Я не могу работать, пока не позавтракаю. 3. Мы ждали в аэропорту, пока они не прибыли. 4. Сэлли рассказала мне о своей помолвке, когда была здесь. 5. Я приду, как только закончу работу. 6. Я еду в Лондон на следующей неделе. Я надеюсь увидеть Тома, пока я там. 7. Он не пойдёт домой, пока они не вернутся. 8. Они ушли, пока я разговаривал с доктором. 9. Мне сообщили об этом в тот день, когда я приехал в Москву. 10. К тому времени, как он приехал, полиция уже покинула это место. 11. Я принесу тебе эту книгу в следующий раз, когда приду. 12. Они не получали от него никаких известий (hear from) с тех пор, как он покинул Россию.

25 (B, C) Fill in the blanks with *till/until* or *before*.

1. They remained in the garden ..... they got quite cold. 2. A quarter of an hour passed ..... the lessons began. 3. He slept through the early grey of morning ..... the direct rays of the sun fell on his face. 4. I waited ..... the next train came. 5. Meg strained her eyes upon her work ..... it was too dark to see the threads. 6. She listened patiently ..... he had finished his lecture. 7. ..... we start our experiment, I want you to read these notes. 8. He was sure that she wouldn't say anything ..... the children left for school. 9. Don't trouble trouble ..... the trouble troubles you.

2.5.2 Adverbial Clauses of Place

To say where something happens, we use conjunctions *where*, *wherever*, *anywhere*, *everywhere*:

- I looked **where** he pointed.
- You can go **anywhere** you like.

EXERCISE



26 **(B, C) Complete the following sentences to say where. Use the prompts below or your own ideas.**

Prompts: *the accident happened*; *you like*; *everyone can see it*; *you can find a chair*; *you go in the world*.

1. Let's put the TV-set in a place where *everyone can see it*.
2. Please sit wherever ..... .
3. This is the exact spot where ..... .
4. You're not allowed to park anywhere ..... .
5. Some television programmes are familiar everywhere ..... .

2.5.3 Adverbial Clauses of Manner

1. Manner clauses are used to say how something is done. They are introduced by conjunctions *as* (как), *as if/as though* (как будто/как если бы), *like*. The manner clause always comes after the main clause. Adverbs *just*, *exactly*, *precisely* are often used in front of *as* for emphasis:

- They plough land *exactly* **as their ancestors did**.
- He complained about everything *just* **as I knew he would**.

We can also use *"the way (that)"*, *"in a way (that)"*, *"in the way (that)"* to talk how something is done:

- They did it **in a way (that)** I had never seen before.
- We made it move **in the way (that)** we wanted it to.

2. *As if/as though* are used to say how someone or something looks/feels/sounds, etc:

- She *felt* **as if** she had a fever.
- He *looked* **as if** he hadn't slept much.
- Mary *sounded* **as though** she had run all the way.

3. *As if/as though* are also used to indicate that the information in the manner clause might not be true, or is definitely not true:

- She acts **as if** she owns the place.

4. We use past tense after *as if/as though* to show that the idea is not real:

- She treats him **as though** he **were** her own son.

NB! When the action in the manner clause is described as unreal *were* is used instead of *was*.

The Use of Tenses after *As If / As Though* (Unreal Action)

	Principal Clause		Manner Clause
Simultaneous Action	He **talks** They **walked** slowly	*as if* *as though*	he **knew** everything. (Past Simple) they **were carrying** something heavy. (Past Continuous)
Prior Action	I **remember** the story He **described** her	*as if* *as if*	I **had** just **read** it. he **had met** her before. (Past Perfect)

EXERCISES



27 (B, C) Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

as *as if* *in the way* *the way*

1. I think you should write the paper ..... I showed you. 2. He kept looking at the entrance ..... he was waiting for somebody. 3. You never do anything ..... you're asked to. 4. He stretched himself (потянуться) on his bed ..... a dog stretches himself. 5. He speaks ..... he knows the subject well. 6. I think the cake is exactly ..... mother makes it. 7. He described the town ..... he had seen it himself. 8. Her smile was sweet and innocent just ..... it had ever been. 9. He left but she went on talking ..... nothing had happened.

28 (B, C) Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense forms.

1. Why do you talk about her as if she (be) ..... old? She is only fifty-five. 2. They ate their dinner as if they (not eat) ..... for a week. 3. They spoke as though they never (part) ..... . 4. I'm not a child but you speak to me as if I (be) ..... a child. 5. The sky is full of black clouds. It looks as if it (be) ..... going to rain. 6. I'm in love. I feel as if I (float) ..... on air. 7. He looked at me as if he never (see) ..... me. 8. They met as if they (be) ..... friends. 9. When I told her the news, she reacted as though she already (hear) ..... it. 10. You act as though you (be) ..... my boss. 11. It sounds as if it (rain) ..... .

29 (B, C) Translate the sentences.

1. Похоже, что Том не придёт.
   .....
2. Аня говорила (sound), как будто была простужена.
   .....
3. Сью хромала (limp), похоже, она повредила ногу.
   .....
4. Мы незнакомы. Почему она улыбается мне, как будто мы знакомы?
   .....
5. Он говорит, как мой отец.
   .....
6. Кирпичи делаются так же, как во время Римской империи.
   .....
7. Мне никогда не разрешали вести себя так, как я хотел.
   .....
8. Они танцевали так, как я никогда не видел прежде.
   .....
9. Мне не нравятся люди, которые ведут себя так, как он.
   .....
10. Она не хочет (отказывается) одеваться так, как её коллеги.
    .....
11. Он выглядит так, как будто увидел привидение.
    .....

2.5.4 Purpose and Reason Clauses

Purpose Clauses

We use a purpose clause to say what one's intention is when he/she does something.

Purpose clauses are introduced by conjunctions *so, so as to, so that, in order that* (чтобы, для того чтобы).

A purpose clause usually comes after a main clause. The most common type of purpose clauses contains a modal verb and is introduced by *so that*:

- I have drawn a diagram **so that my explanation will be clear**.
- She said she wanted tea ready at six **so that she could be out by eight**.
- Father lifted Philip onto his shoulder **so that he might see the procession.**

To make a purpose clause negative, we use *"so that ... won't/wouldn't"*:

- I hurried **so that I wouldn't** be late.

Reason Clauses

We use a reason clause when we want to explain why one does something or why it happens. It is introduced by conjunctions *because* (потому что), *since* or *as* (так как, поскольку):

- **Since it was Saturday**, he stayed at home.
- **As he had been up since 4 a.m.**, he was very tired.

As- and *since*-clauses can be used to give the reason for an action or situation. They are used when the reason is already well known or is less important than the rest of the sentence. *Since* is a little more formal than *as*:

- **Since you refuse to pay**, we shall be forced to take legal action.
- **As I had no money with me**, I didn't pay him.

When the reason is the most important part of the sentence *because* is generally used. *Because*-clauses usually come at the end of the sentence:

- You will never learn **because you are idle**.
- You want to know why I didn't tell you? I didn't tell you **because I forgot**, simply.

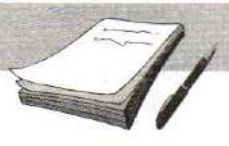
For suggests that the reason is given as an explanation for the action, as an afterthought. *For*-clauses never come at the beginning of the sentence:

- I know what we shall have for dinner, **for I have seen the menu**.

In a formal and literary style *for* is used to indicate the reason for mentioning what has been said previously:

- The visitors will be well content to walk around at their own pace. **For** it is a long day's walk and the scenery is very enjoyable.

EXERCISES



30 **(B) Complete the sentences with the conjunctions from the box.**

as because since so that

1. I walk to work every morning ..... I can get some exercise. 2. I went away ..... there was no one there. 3. He spoke slowly ..... everybody may understand him. 4. ..... nobody met me at the station, I had to carry the luggage myself. 5. ..... you've finished your work, you may go home. 6. I'll call him at once ..... he wouldn't wait for me. 7. ..... it's a public holiday, you won't find many shops open. 8. I'll write the letter immediately ..... they could receive it by the end of the week. 9. He walked quickly ..... he was in a great hurry. 10. He drew a street plan ..... she might be able to find the house easily. 11. He left the car in the road ..... he wanted to keep it out of sight. 12. Speak louder ..... I may hear you.

31 (B) Fill in the blanks with the appropriate conjunction: *as*, *since*, *because* or *for*.

1. ..... the light fell on his face, he turned round. 2. I asked her and looked curiously at her ..... she looked so curiously at me. 3. ..... it was late, we decided to stop work and go home. 4. This room was chill, ... it seldom had fire. 5. He could be wrong, especially ..... he isn't even sure about the car. 6. She had had to give up doing overtime at work ..... there was so much to do at home. 7. "Then why did you ask them?" The question slipped out before I could stop myself and I regretted it at once, ... it is a rule with me never to provoke my wife if I can help it. 8. ..... our birthdays fall on the same day, our lives are probably parallel. 9. ..... he didn't come, I went away without waiting for him. 10. The picture fell ..... the cord broke. 11. ..... you raise no objection, I presume you agree to what I suggest. 12. I can't do this exercise ..... I don't understand the rule.

32 (B, C) Translate the sentences.

1. Я записал все цифры, чтобы он не забыл их. 2. Говори громче, чтобы я мог слышать тебя. 3. Положите часы на стол, чтобы дети не сломали их. 4. Зажгите свет, чтобы они могли читать. 5. Я сказал им об этом ещё раз, чтобы они не забыли. 6. Я дал ему этот журнал, чтобы он мог прочесть вашу статью. 7. Секретарь положил почту на стол, чтобы директор просмотрел её. 8. Обслуживание в гостинице должно улучшиться, так как произошли изменения в её руководстве. 9. Так как авиадиспетчеры (the air traffic controllers) объявили забастовку (be on strike), мы отменили свой полёт. 10. Так как её никогда нет дома, когда я звоню, мне придётся написать ей. 11. Мне пришлось отдать документ в перевод (have smth done), так как я не смог прочесть его по-немецки. 12. Я не сплю так поздно, так как хочу посмотреть фильм в половине двенадцатого.

2.5.5 *As* and *since* in Clauses of Time and Cause (Reason)

As and *since* may be used to introduce the clauses of time and cause.

- **As I was walking in the park**, I met my friend.
- **As I was ill**, I could not go to the party.
- I have known him **since I moved to this place**.
- **Since it was Sunday**, the office was closed.

EXERCISES



33 (B) Define the functions of the conjunctions *since* and *as*. Translate the sentences.

1. She had left them after a brief visit, saying that as the day was a special day, she should hurry back home and get ready for the party. 2. The Manchester train came just as he reached the station. 3. He stood watching her as she went out of the shop. 4. He knew that the arrival of letters for him was impossible since nobody knew his address. 5. What have you been doing since George has been away? 6. As the twilight was beginning to fade, they heard the sound of horse's hoofs. 7. After lunch, since the afternoon was so fine, I took out a deckchair (шезлонг) into my little rose garden. 8. As the fog was collecting rapidly, it began to grow dark. 9. You've been getting thinner since I last saw you. 10. Since our birthdays fall on the same day, our lives are probably parallel. 11. He rose to his feet and pulled on his jacket as Elizabeth entered the room. 12. As the news had already spread through the picket lines, there was nothing left for them to do but start negotiating. 13. He hasn't worked since you sacked him. 14. I've been able to do it since I was a child.

Revision

34 **(B, C) Make one complex sentence out of the two simple ones, using the conjunctions from the box. Omit some words where necessary.**

as because before for since until

Model: The lane came to an end. We had to retrace our steps. – *As the lane came to an end, we had to retrace our steps.*

1. We started on our way. Just then it began snowing.
   .....
2. He walked with care. He did not wish to fall.
   .....
3. The spring is now well advanced. We shall soon hear the cuckoo's voice again.
   .....
4. The game was stopped. A heavy rain storm broke out.
   .....
5. She went to Italy in April. I haven't received a single letter from her.
   .....
6. The champion grew weaker. His opponent's attacks became more and more violent.
   .....
7. I decided to stop and have lunch first. I was feeling rather hungry.
   .....
8. Don't send this telegram now. I want Father to read it first.
   .....
9. I made the decision. Then that phone call came.
   .....
10. Don't go there at once. Let them ring you up first.
    .....

35 **(B, C) Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Прежде чем вы начнёте спорить, вспомните вчерашнее заседание. 2. Пока не придёт инженер, мы не будем включать аппарат. 3. Так как вы не можете прийти к соглашению, нам придётся отложить подписание контракта. 4. По мере того как они поднимались всё выше, воздух становился холоднее. 5. Как раз когда они вошли под арку, сзади послышался шум автомобиля. 6. Давайте сделаем это до того, как они придут. 7. Она не пришла, потому что не хотела встречаться с ними. 8. Он не стал возражать, ибо он вообще не любитель спорить. 9. Оставайтесь здесь, пока не придут ваши родители. 10. Они живут в этом доме с тех пор, как их брат уехал в Лондон.

2.5.6 Contrast Clauses

We use contrast clauses when we want to make two statements and one of the statements makes the other seem surprising.

Contrast clauses are introduced by conjunctions: *although*, *though*, *even though*:

- **Although he was late**, he stopped to buy a newspaper.
- She finished the race, **even though she had a bad fall**.

Sometimes the words *still*, *nevertheless* or *just the same* are used in the main clause to add emphasis to the contrast:

- ❑ **Although** I was shocked, I **still** couldn't blame him.
- ❑ **Although** she hated them, she agreed to help them **all the same**.

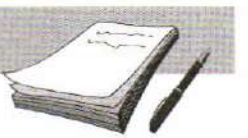
We can also use *despite the fact that* or *in spite of the fact that* to form a contrast clause. In spoken English it is possible to omit *that*:

- ❑ They ignored his order, **in spite of the fact that** they would probably get into trouble.
- ❑ He insisted on playing, **in spite of the fact** he had a bad cold.

NOTES:

1. To render the same idea we can use
   in spite of / **despite** + **noun/pronoun** or **-ing**
   - ❑ **Although** the traffic was bad, I arrived on time.
   - ❑ **In spite of** the traffic, I arrived on time.
   - ❑ I couldn't sleep, **though** I was very tired.
   - ❑ I couldn't sleep **despite** being tired.
2. We use *in spite of* but *despite* without *"of"*.
   - ❑ **In spite of poor health**, my father was always cheerful.
   - ❑ **Despite the difference** in their ages, they were close friends.
3. *Even though* is a stronger form of *although*.
   - ❑ **Even though** I was really tired, I couldn't sleep.

EXERCISES



36 **(B) Match two parts of the sentences, using the conjunctions: *although*, *though*, *in spite of the fact that* to introduce the contrast.**

Model: It rained a lot. We enjoyed our holiday.
Although it rained a lot, we enjoyed our holiday.

1. She wasn't well. She went to work.
   .....
2. I'm not tired. I've been working hard all day.
   .....
3. The house isn't very nice. I like the garden.
   .....
4. I've never seen him before. I recognized him from a photograph.
   .....
5. I don't play the piano now. I used to when I was younger.
   .....
6. You look very much as your grandfather. You're not as tall as he was.
   .....
7. We were hungry. We had no time for lunch.
   .....
8. We are poor. We still have our pride.
   .....
9. He was difficult to understand. His English was very good.
   .....
10. We started early. We only arrived just in time.
    .....
11. It was very warm. She had her coat on.
    .....

37 **(B, C) Use either a noun group or one of the phrases to complete the sentences. Choose the right connective: *although*, *despite*, *in spite of*.**

his recent illness	I had planned everything carefully
his English name	I haven't got much money
all his precautions	I'm afraid I won't be able to
his injury	you write well
	I work(ed) hard

1. ....., a lot of things went on wrong.
2. He looked very well, ...
3. ..... he is in fact German.

4. I'm going to buy a car, ...
5. I'd like to help you, ...
6. ....., his money has been stolen.
7. ....., I still have to take work home.
8. ....., you won't be published.
9. He continued the race, ...
10. ....., I failed my exams.

38 (B, C) Translate the sentences.

1. Мне очень понравилась его последняя книга, несмотря на то, что она была не очень хорошо написана.
2. Я никогда не могу вспомнить его имя, хотя знаю его давно.
3. Мне действительно понравилась пьеса, хотя у нас были не очень хорошие места.
4. Он умер бедным, хотя много работал всю свою жизнь.
5. Несмотря на то что я учил французский язык три года, мне трудно говорить на нём на улице.
6. Хотя я не ел 24 часа, я не голоден.
7. Хотя было только 9 часов, на улицах было мало народу.
8. Хотя он очень занят, он найдёт время, чтобы помочь нам.
9. Он вышел, несмотря на то, что он был очень простужен.
10. Хотя было поздно, мы решили пойти туда.
11. Несмотря на то, что он много работает, он зарабатывает мало.
12. Я люблю музыку, хотя и не играю на музыкальном инструменте.

2.6 Revision

39 (B) Fill in the appropriate conjunction.

1. ..... it was very cold, he went out without an overcoat.
2. ..... I was feeling tired, I went to bed early.
3. It smells ..... someone has been smoking here.
4. Robert suddenly began to feel ill ..... he was doing the examination.
5. ..... she'd finished her work, it was too late to go shopping.
6. I'm going out now. I'll be back in an hour. Will you stay here ..... I'm back?
7. The houses are knocked down ..... they can be replaced by car parks and office blocks.
8. ..... I heard the noise, I immediately telephoned the police.
9. We spoke quietly, ... we didn't want to disturb anyone.
10. She was told ..... there were no tickets left.
11. It's two weeks now ..... I wrote to you.
12. He behaves ..... he does, because his father was very strict with him.
13. These are the people ..... Catherine was referring.
14. That was the same room ..... we stayed for our honeymoon.
15. The phone rang just ..... I sat down to eat.
16. It looks ..... he isn't going to come.
17. I watched her ..... she was opening the letter.
18. You're too late to catch the train ..... leaves at 2.15.

2.7 Tests

I

I. Translate the sentences.

1. Приедут ли они сегодня, ещё неизвестно.
2. Как это произошло, никому не ясно.
3. Чья это подпись (signature), не имеет значения.
4. Проблема заключается в том, что я потерял её адрес.
5. Он выглядит так, как будто не ел несколько дней.

II. Cross out the relative pronoun in the relative clauses where possible.

1. I like people who are extrovert and sociable.
2. Careful with that! That's the bag in which I keep my keys.
3. Monkeys which have been annoying people in one Indian state are locked up in a special jail.
4. As a vegetarian, there aren't many things that I can eat in this restaurant.

III. Rewrite these sentences with:

a) a purpose clause containing a modal verb
   1. He tied a knot (узелок) in his handkerchief because he didn't want to forget something.
   2. I waved my arms because I wanted them to see me.

b) a contrast clause
   1. Most of employees were working mothers but the company refused to provide nursery facilities (детский сад).
   2. We live in the same house but we hardly ever speak to each other.

IV. Choose the right connector for the given sentence.

1. We went out to get *that/what* we needed.
2. I know *that/what* he bought a small kitten.

V. Complete the sentences, using the conjunctions from the box.

as because in order not to till while

1. ..... waiting for the water to boil, he made a call.
2. You'll have to wait ..... we've finished here.
3. You must consume 2,250 calories daily ..... lose or gain weight.
4. Another advert (реклама) has been banned from children's TV ..... it frightens children.
5. I serve my country ..... my father did.

II

I. Translate the sentences.

1. То, что он видел, ему не нравилось.
2. Пожалуйста, послушайте внимательно, что я хочу сказать.
3. То, что здесь ошибка, понятно из контекста.
4. Она шла прихрамывая (limp), как будто у неё болела (hurt) нога.
5. Вопрос заключается в том, смогут ли они помочь нам.

II. Cross out the relative pronoun in the relative clauses where possible.

1. What's the best holiday that you've ever had?
2. The doctor has given me some new medicine which is better than the old one.
3. That's the woman who told me about the job.
4. What do you think about the things that you did when you were young?

III. Rewrite these sentences with:

a) a contrast clause

1. Everyone disagreed with him but he insisted that he was right.
2. I'm exhausted. I've done nothing all day.

b) a purpose clause containing a modal verb

1. She left her address because she wanted us to forward her letters.
2. I'll fasten the bike, I don't want it to be stolen.

IV. Choose the right connector for the given sentence.

1. There was a danger *what/that* they would decide to leave.
2. She asked *what/that* I'd brought with me.

V. Complete the sentences, using the conjunctions from the box.

as in order that since therefore though

1. He previously worked at the Ministry of Finance, ... he comes with a great deal of experience.
2. ..... he drew closer, picking his way through the rocks, he could see that his son was crying.
3. He began smoking ..... he has something to do with his hands.
4. This was not an easy decision, ... it was dictated by our duty.
5. It's over ten years ..... we left college.

EMPHASIS

In the English language there is a variety of ways to emphasize the meaning of certain parts of a sentence. We shall deal here with those that may cause some difficulty in understanding and interpreting the meaning of the sentence: emphatic *do*; double negation; emphatic constructions *"it is ... that/which/who/whom"*; *"it was not until ... that"*; the emphatic phrase *"not ... till/until"*.

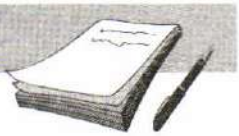
1. The Emphatic "Do"

The verb *do* is used to emphasize the predicate of the sentence. It is placed right before the predicate in the required grammatical form while the predicate is in the form of the Infinitive without *to*:

- We waited and waited and finally he **did** come. – Мы все ждали и ждали, и наконец он **всё-таки** пришёл.
- She **did** learn to drive at the age of 65. – Она **действительно** научилась водить машину в возрасте 65 лет.
- He **does** know a lot about the ocean. – Он **на самом деле** много знает об океане.
- She **does** talk a lot, doesn't she? – Она **и правда** много говорит.

NOTE: the verb *do* in these cases is always said with strong stress.

EXERCISES



1 **(B) Translate the sentences into Russian. Try to convey the exact meaning of the emphatic *do*.**

1. I don't have much contact with my family. I do see my younger sister, though, when I come to London. 2. I don't take much exercise now but I did play volleyball quite a lot when I was at school. 3. He said he would come and he did come. 4. Now I see that she does know the subject well. 5. We do not know very much of this author. But we do know that all the three poems were written by him. 6. I don't object to your going to the mountains but I do object to your going there unaccompanied. 7. He didn't come but he did send them the atlas as he had promised.

2 **(B, C) Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Я действительно сначала думала, что это из-за денег. 2. Я на самом деле люблю его. 3. Я всё-таки думаю, что мы должны туда поехать. 4. Я и правда поверила тебе тогда. 5. Он на самом деле хочет тебе помочь. 6. Ты правда выглядишь замечательно сегодня. 7. Будь же всё-таки серьёзной! 8. Он всё-таки отклонил это предложение. 9. Они действительно согласились сделать эту работу. 10. Я всё-таки надеюсь, что вы приедете.

2. Double Negation

The particle *not* before a negative adjective or adverb serves to emphasize the positive meaning of the adjective or adverb. Such phrases are usually rendered in Russian by means of the combinations «*довольно, весьма, вполне*» + прилагательное (наречие):

not unusual – *вполне обычный*
not impossible – *весьма возможный*
not infrequently – *довольно часто*

- Constructions of this type are **not unusual** in this country.
- Such outcome is **not impossible**.
- These machines cause trouble **not infrequently**.

EXERCISE



3 **(B, C) Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. The total number of German words in English is not inconsiderable. 2. Their contribution to the common cause was not insignificant. 3. This second novel was savagely but not unfairly criticized. 4. I would say his reaction was not unreasonable. 5. It is not unreasonable to group together the painters who worked chiefly in Florence. 6. Storms and hurricanes are not infrequent in these parts of the world. 7. I'm afraid that was done not irregularly. 8. This last work of his is not uninteresting and will not be unsuccessful. 9. Our life there was not uneventful. 10. He looked down at her not in an unfriendly way.

3. The Emphatic Construction "It is ... that/which/who/whom"

This construction is a grammatical means to emphasize a certain part of a sentence. The emphasized part is placed between *it* and *that* and the whole sentence is a complex one. Russian sentences corresponding in meaning to such constructions are usually simple, with emphatic words before the emphasized part of the sentence. Sometimes, in Russian sentences these emphasized parts are placed at the end.

- **It is** always the unusual **which** alarms.
  Тревогу вызывает всегда необычное.
- **It was** he **who** had started the discussion.
  Именно он открыл дискуссию.

NOTE: most frequently used Russian emphatic words are: *именно, как раз, только, лишь*.

In the negative sentences they are: *вовсе не; совсем не*:

- But it is not the Detective Inspector who is the central figure in the film.

EXERCISES



4 **(B) Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. It was in his dealings with children that the best and sweetest side of his personality was manifested. 2. And it was my dearest friend who first started me on that course. 3. It is no doubt to this quality that the great popularity of this collection is due. 4. It was the first time in the whole year that he had lost balance. 5. It was of Walter that they now spoke. 6. It was while looking at the spot where the fine porcelain vase had stood that she felt a strange certainty of being watched, and turning, saw a stranger in the open door way. 7. It was their identification of Ms. Balantine with a certain school of American writers that made her subject to a powerful line of attack on the part of literary critics. 8. It is not from outside, however, but from within, that American English has made the greatest additions to its special words and their uses. 9. It is not only women who go to pawnbrokers, you know. 10. It isn't everyone who has mink, my dear. 11. It is when people began to use tools for social production that they also began to speak. 12. It was only with the help of my friends that I managed to survive that tragedy.

5 **(B, C) Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Это сказал именно Джон. 2. Только после войны здесь появились каменные дома. 3. Именно она остановила машину. 4. Не только я один виноват. 5. Лишь на следующее утро она заметила исчезновение фотографии. 6. Они пришли из леса вовсе не этой дорогой. 7. Именно тогда он вспомнил о старом архитекторе. 8. Только после того как вы научитесь плавать, я позволю вам принять участие в лодочном походе. 9. Вовсе не этот художник нарисовал папин пруд. 10. Они пришли как раз перед тем, как начался спектакль.

4. The Emphatic Construction "It is not until ... that"

When an adverbial modifier of time is emphasized by means of this construction, it is rendered in Russian by a simple affirmative sentence with emphasizing words:

- **It was not until** noon **that** we were able to resume our work. – **Только** в полдень мы смогли возобновить работу.

When an adverbial clause of time is emphasized, it is rendered in Russian by a complex sentence:

- **It was not until** they reached their house **that** he remembered about the letter. – **Только (тогда)**, когда они подошли к своему дому, он вспомнил про письмо.

EXERCISES



6 **(B, C) Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. Actually, however, it is not until the other person begins to speak that you can form a very definite idea of his personality and his character. 2. It was not until 1846 when "Vanity Fair" began to appear that Thackeray attained any eminence. 3. It was not until the end of the 17th century that France began to produce the art that reflected the artificial life of Versailles. 4. It was not till impressionism turned its attention to the nature of light and the colour of shadow that painters evolved a new way of seeing. 5. It was not until seven years had passed since the manuscripts had come into this scientist's hands that they published them. 6. It was not till a century and a half had passed after Claudian conquest that the Emperor Severus marked the final limit of the northern frontier between Scotland and England.

7 **(B, C) Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Самолёт отправился только на следующий день. 2. Только тогда, когда он увидел их снова, он понял свою ошибку. 3. Только глубокой ночью стали известны результаты матча. 4. Мы получили от него первые вести только ранней весной. 5. Они узнали, что поезд отменён только тогда, когда приехали на вокзал. 6. Снег растаял лишь в конце апреля. 7. Она сообщила им о своём решении уехать лишь, когда уже приехала на новое место жительства. 8. Только тогда когда была опубликована его книга, он смог оставить работу в больнице. 9. Только тогда, когда он увидел это письмо, он поверил, что всё позади. 10. Это можно понять, лишь когда сам сделаешь это.

5. The Emphatic "Not ... till/until"

This negative construction is rendered in Russian by means of an affirmative sentence with the emphatic words before the adverbial modifier of time.

Not till/until after = только после

- They did **not** come back **till** late at night. – Они **вернулись только** поздно ночью.
- They did **not** meet again **until** after the war. – Они **встретились** снова **только** после войны.

EXERCISES



8 **(B) Translate the sentences into Russian.**

1. The first part of his novel did not come out until after his return from the trip. 2. Cotton was not introduced to Japan from China until later and wool was unknown. 3. The last novel by Ch. Bronte remained unfinished and was not published until the end of the 20th century when it was completed by another authoress. 4. In England ancient fields indicate that no plough was used till late in the local bronze age, about 800 B. C. 5. Silver and lead were not used in Britain till after 500, though Britain is well supplied with lead ores. 6. "Utopia" was written in Latin about 1516 and it was not translated till 1551, some years after More's death.

9 **(B, C) Translate the sentences into English.**

1. Он начал писать стихи только после окончания университета. 2. Он позвонил только в 8 часов. 3. Они уехали только в полночь. 4. Спектакль начался только в 11 часов. 5. Я смог уйти только после ланча. 6. Мы сможем встретиться только после представления. 7. Я начну этот перевод только после отпуска. 8. Мы заснули только на рассвете. 9. Они вернутся только осенью. 10. Они поженились только после рождения второго ребёнка.

6. TESTS

I

A. Fill in suitable conjunctions.

1. Thanks, but that's not ..... I wanted.
2. Always brush your teeth ..... you have a meal.
3. ..... I knew her family, I did what I could for her.
4. Can you watch the kids ..... I'm out?
5. We won't know what has happened ..... Sean phones.
6. He hasn't looked at another girl ..... he met Julie.
7. I'm quite sure ..... she's telling the truth.
8. Let's start now, ... we're sure to have enough time.
9. I feel ..... I'm getting a cold.
10. I'm sorry for the people ..... haven't got a sense of humour.

B. Translate the sentences.

1. Это человек, которого я действительно уважаю (respect).
2. Я потеряла кольцо, которое подарил мне Джек.
3. Всё, что я имею, твоё.
4. Это то, что мне надо.
5. Хотя у него плохой характер (bad-tempered), у него много друзей.
6. Так как он не говорил по-немецки, был приглашён переводчик.
7. Ты должен повидаться с отцом, прежде чем ты уедешь в Канаду.
8. Поскольку завтра праздничный день, мы закончим работу на час раньше.

II

A. Fill in suitable conjunctions.

1. The only thing ..... matters to me is your happiness.
2. Do you know a shop ..... I can find sandals?
3. An orphan is a child ..... hasn't got any parents.
4. The holiday wasn't at all ..... I'd expected.
5. I saw a girl ..... beauty took my breath away.
6. She cycles to work every day, ... keeps her healthy.
7. I went to bed ..... I was tired.
8. I'll come round to your place ..... I've finished work.
9. He won't get any money ..... he finishes the work properly.
10. It looks ..... it's going to snow.

B. Translate the sentences.

1. Мне понравилась лекция, хотя я не всё понял.
2. Я собираюсь купить новое платье, так как у нас сегодня гости к обеду.
3. Он подвинул стол, чтобы было место (room) для ёлки.
4. Я пойду в магазин, пока не начался дождь.
5. Дети убрали в квартире, пока я была на работе.
6. Я позвоню вам, как только приеду.
7. Поскольку Петр в отпуске, вы будете работать вместо него.
8. Я не понял, что вы сказали.

APPENDICES

Appendix1

List of Grammar Terms and Key Words

Abbreviation	сокращение, аббревиатура
Active Voice	действительный залог, актив
Adjective	прилагательное
Adverb	наречие
Adverb of manner	наречие образа действия (отвечающее на вопрос *как? каким образом?*)
Adverbial	обстоятельство
Adverbial clause of cause	придаточное предложение причины
Adverbial clause of time	придаточное предложение времени
Adverbial modifier (of place, time)	обстоятельство (места, времени)
Affirmative	утвердительная форма
Appendix	приложение
Appositive	в функции приложения
Appropriate	соответствующий, подходящий
Aspect	вид
Attribute	определение
Attributive clause	определительное придаточное предложение
Auxiliary verb	вспомогательный глагол
Bare infinitive	инфинитив без частицы *to*
Blanks	пустые места, пробелы
Bold type	жирный шрифт
Borrow	заимствовать
Brackets	скобки
Case	падеж
Class noun	имя существительное, обозначающее отдельный предмет
Clause	часть сложного предложения
Collective noun	собирательное имя существительное
Colloquial	разговорный
Colon	двоеточие
Comma	запятая
Common noun	нарицательное имя существительное
Comparative	сравнительный
Compare	сравнивать
Complete	закончить, завершить
Completed action	завершенное действие
Complex Object	сложное дополнение
Complex sentence	сложноподчинённое предложение
Complex Subject	сложное подлежащее
Compound	составное слово
Compound nominal predicate	составное именное сказуемое
Compound sentence	сложносочинённое предложение

Condition	условие
Conditional sentence	условное предложение
Conjunction	союз
Conjunctive/connective adverb	наречие, служащее для соединения
Connective	соединительное слово
Consequence	следствие
Consonant	согласная, -ый
Construction	оборот, конструкция
Coordinating conjunction	сочинительный союз
Correct	1) правильный, соответствующий 2) исправить, поправить
Corresponding	соответствующий
Countable noun	исчисляемое существительное
Customary action	обычное действие
Dash	тире
Defining	определительный
Defining relative clause	ограничительное определительное предложение
Degree	мера, степень
Degrees of Comparison	степени сравнения
Demonstrative	указательный
Denote	обозначать
Derivative	производный
Direct Speech	прямая речь
Emphasis	выделение
Emphasize	выделить, подчеркнуть
Emphatic	выделительный
Ending	окончание
Example	пример
Exclamation mark (AmE: exclamation point)	восклицательный знак
Exercise	упражнение
Express	выражать
Expression	выражение, словосочетание
Extend	продолжить; расширить; дополнить
Feminine	женский род
Fiction	художественная литература
Finite verbs	личные формы глагола
Formation	образование
Full stop (AmE: period)	точка
Future	будущий
General question	общий вопрос
General truth	истина (нечто постоянное и неизменное)
Gerund	герундий
Gerundial Construction	герундиальный оборот
Habitual	привычный
Hyphen	дефис
Imply	подразумевать
Indefinite	неопределённый
Indirect Speech	косвенная речь

Infinitive	инфинитив
Insert	вставить
Interrogative	вопросительный
Intransitive verb	непереходный глагол
Introduce	вводить
Introductory	вводный
Introductory subject	формальное подлежащее
Inversion	инверсия, обратный порядок слов в предложении
Irregular verb	неправильный глагол
Italics	курсивный шрифт
Join	соединить, объединить
Limited	ограниченный
List	список
Main clause	главное предложение
Masculine	мужской род
Meaning	значение
Measure	мера
Mental activity	мыслительная (умственная) деятельность
Mind	обратить внимание
Missing	недостающий
Negative	отрицательный
Negative sentence	отрицательное предложение
Nominative Case	именительный падеж
Non-defining relative clause	распространительное определительное предложение
Non-finite verbs	неличные формы глагола (инфинитив, причастие, герундий)
Noun	существительное
Number	число
Object	дополнение
Object clause	дополнительное придаточное предложение
Objective Case	объектный (косвенный) падеж
Objective pronouns	местоимения в объектном (косвенном) падеже
Observe	соблюдать
Omit	пропускать, опускать
Opinion	мнение, суждение
Order	приказ
Parentheses (BrE also: brackets)	круглые скобки
Parenthesis	1) вводное слово/предложение 2) круглая скобка
Particle	частица
Participle	причастие
Passive Voice	страдательный залог
Past	прошедший (о времени)
Pattern	модель
Peculiarity	особенность
Permanent action	постоянное действие (факт)
Person (1st, 2nd, 3rd)	лицо (1-е, 2-е, 3-е)
Personal	личный
Plural	множественное число
Polysemantic	многозначный

Possessive	притяжательный
Posterior	последующий
Precede	предшествовать
Predicate	сказуемое
Predicative	именная часть составного сказуемого
Predicative clause	придаточное предложение-сказуемое
Prefix	приставка
Preposition	предлог
Prepositional object	предложное дополнение
Present	настоящее время
Previous	предыдущий
Principal clause	главное предложение
Prior	предшествующий
Proceed	продолжать
Productive	продуктивный
Prompt	подсказка
Pronoun	местоимение
Proper noun	собственное имя существительное
Punctuation	пунктуация
Punctuation marks	знаки препинания
Quantity	количество
Question	вопрос
Question mark	вопросительный знак
Quotation marks (BrE also: inverted commas)	кавычки
Real condition	реальное условие
Reciprocal	взаимный
Reflexive	возвратный
Regular verb	правильный глагол
Relations	(взаимо-)отношения
Relative	относительный
Relative adverb	относительное наречие
Relative clause	определительное/относительное придаточное предложение
Relative pronoun	относительное местоимение
Render	передавать
Repeated action	повторяющееся действие
Replace	заменить
Reported Speech	косвенная речь
Request	просьба
Required	требуемый
Reword	перефразировать
Right	правильно
Root	корень слова
Rule	правило
Semicolon	точка с запятой
Sense perception	чувственное восприятие
Sequence of tenses	согласование времен
Set expression	устойчивое словосочетание
Simple sentence	простое предложение
Simultaneous	одновременный
Singular	единственное число
Special question	специальный вопрос

State	1. состояние 2. утверждать, гласить
Statement	утверждение
Stem	основа слова
Stressed	ударный
Subject	подлежащее
Subordinate clause	придаточное предложение
Substitute	заменить
Succession of actions	последовательность действий
Superlative	превосходный
Syllable	слог
Temporary action	периодическое, временное действие
Tense	грамматическое время (глагола)
Uncountable noun	неисчисляемое существительное
Unproductive	непродуктивный
Unreal condition	нереальное условие
Unstressed	безударный
Viewpoint adverb	наречие, выражающее точку зрения
Vowel	гласная, -й
***W**hen/if*-clause	придаточное предложение времени и условия
Wish	желание, пожелание
Wrong	неправильный
Zero	нулевой

Appendix 2

List of Irregular Verbs

	Base Form	Past Simple	Past Participle	Translation
1	arise [ə´raɪz]	arose [ə´rouz]	arisen [ə´rɪzn]	возникать
2	awake [ə´weɪk]	awoke [ə´wouk]	awoken [ə´woukn]	будить; просыпаться
3	be [bi:]	was [wɔz] were [wə:]	been [bi:n]	быть
4	bear [bɛə]	bore [bɔ:]	born [bɔ:n]	рождать
5	bear [bɛə]	bore [bɔ:]	borne [bɔ:n]	носить, выносить
6	beat [bi:t]	beat [bi:t]	beaten [bi:tn]	бить
7	become [bɪ´kʌm]	became [bɪ´keɪm]	become [bɪ´kʌm]	становиться
8	begin [bɪ´gɪn]	began [bɪ´gæn]	begun [bɪ´gʌn]	начинать(-ся)
9	bend [bend]	bent [bent]	bent [bent]	гнуть(-ся), сгибать(-ся)
10	bet [bet]	bet [bet]	bet [bet]	держать пари
11	bind [baɪnd]	bound [baund]	bound [baund]	связывать
12	bite [baɪt]	bit [bɪt]	bit(ten) [bɪt(n)]	кусать
13	blow [blou]	blew [blu:]	blown [bloun]	дуть
14	break [breɪk]	broke [brouk]	broken [broukn]	ломать
15	bring [brɪŋ]	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]	приносить
16	build [bɪld]	built [bɪlt]	built [bɪlt]	строить
17	burn [bə:n]	burnt [bə:nt]	burnt [bə:nt]	гореть, жечь
18	burst [bə:st]	burst [bə:st]	burst [bə:st]	разрываться
19	buy [baɪ]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought [bɔ:t]	покупать
20	cast [kɑ:st]	cast [kɑ:st]	cast [kɑ:st]	бросать, кидать
21	catch [kætʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]	ловить, схватывать
22	choose [ʧu:z]	chose [ʧouz]	chosen [ʧouzn]	выбирать
23	cling [klɪŋ]	clung [klʌŋ]	clung [klʌŋ]	прилипать, цепляться
24	come [kʌm]	came [keɪm]	come [kʌm]	приходить
25	cost [kɔst]	cost [kɔst]	cost [kɔst]	стоить
26	creep [kri:p]	crept [krept]	crept [krept]	ползать
27	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	резать
28	deal [di:l]	dealt [delt]	dealt [delt]	торговать; иметь дело
29	dig [dɪg]	dug [dʌg]	dug [dʌg]	копать
30	do [du:]	did [dɪd]	done [dʌn]	делать
31	draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]	тащить; рисовать
32	dream [dri:m]	dreamt [dremt] dreamed [dri:md]	dreamt [dremt] dreamed [dri:md]	видеть сны; мечтать
33	drink [drɪŋk]	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk]	пить
34	drive [draɪv]	drove [drouv]	driven [drɪvn]	ехать; гнать; везти
35	dwell [dwel]	dwelt [dwelt]	dwelt [dwelt]	обитать; останавливаться подробно
36	eat [i:t]	ate [et]	eaten [i:tn]	есть, кушать
37	fall [fɔ:l]	fell [fel]	fallen [fɔ:ln]	падать
38	feed [fi:d]	fed [fed]	fed [fed]	кормить(-ся)
39	feel [fi:l]	felt [felt]	felt [felt]	чувствовать
40	fight [faɪt]	fought [fɔ:t]	fought [fɔ:t]	бороться, сражаться
41	find [faɪnd]	found [faund]	found [faund]	находить
42	flee [fli:]	fled [fled]	fled [fled]	бежать, спасаться бегством
43	fly [flaɪ]	flew [flu:]	flown [floun]	летать
44	forbid [fə´bɪd]	forbade [fə´beɪd]	forbidden [fə´bɪdn]	запрещать
45	forget [fə´get]	forgot [fə´gɔt]	forgotten [fə´gɔtn]	забывать

	Base Form	Past Simple	Past Participle	Translation
46	forgive [fə´gɪv]	forgave [fə´geɪv]	forgiven [fə´gɪvn]	прощать
47	freeze [fri:z]	froze [frouz]	frozen [frouzn]	замерзать, замораживать
48	get [get]	got [gɔt]	got [gɔt]	получать; становиться
49	give [gɪv]	gave [geɪv]	given [gɪvn]	давать
50	go [gou]	went [went]	gone [gɔn]	идти, ехать
51	grind [graɪnd]	ground [graund]	ground [graund]	точить; молоть
52	grow [grou]	grew [gru:]	grown [groun]	расти, выращивать
53	hang [hæŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	висеть, вешать
		hanged [hæŋd]	hanged [hæŋd]	
54	have [hæv]	had [hæd]	had [hæd]	иметь
55	hear [hɪə]	heard [hə:d]	heard [hə:d]	слышать
56	hide [haɪd]	hid [hɪd]	hidden [hɪdn]	прятать
57	hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]	hit [hɪt]	ударять; поражать
58	hold [hould]	held [held]	held [held]	держать
59	hurt [hə:t]	hurt [hə:t]	hurt [hə:t]	повредить, ушибать; обидеть
60	keep [ki:p]	kept [kept]	kept [kept]	держать, хранить
61	kneel [ni:l]	knelt [nelt]	knelt [nelt]	становиться на колени
62	know [nou]	knew [nju:]	known [noun]	знать
63	lay [leɪ]	laid [leɪd]	laid [leɪd]	класть
64	lead [li:d]	led [led]	led [led]	вести
65	lean [li:n]	leant [lent]	leant [lent]	прислоняться
		leaned [li:nd]	leaned [li:nd]	
66	leap [li:p]	leapt [lept]	leapt [lept]	прыгать
		leaped [li:pt]	leaped [li:pt]	
67	learn [lə:n]	learnt [lə:nt]	learnt [lə:nt]	учиться
		learned	learned	
68	leave [li:v]	left [left]	left [left]	оставлять, уезжать
69	lend [lend]	lent [lent]	lent [lent]	давать взаймы, одалживать
70	let [let]	let [let]	let [let]	позволять; сдавать в наём
71	lie [laɪ]	lay [leɪ]	lain [leɪn]	лежать
72	light [laɪt]	lit [lɪt]	lit [lɪt]	зажигать, освещать
		lighted [´laɪtɪd]	lighted [´laɪtɪd]	
73	lose [lu:z]	lost [lɔst]	lost [lɔst]	терять
74	make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	made [meɪd]	делать; заставлять
75	mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]	значить; подразумевать
76	meet [mi:t]	met [met]	met [met]	встречать
77	pay [peɪ]	paid [peɪd]	paid [peɪd]	платить
78	put [put]	put [put]	put [put]	класть
79	read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]	читать
80	ride [raɪd]	rode [roud]	ridden [rɪdn]	ездить верхом
81	ring [rɪŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	rung [rʌŋ]	звонить; звенеть
82	rise [raɪz]	rose [rouz]	risen [rɪzn]	подниматься
83	run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	run [rʌn]	бежать
84	saw [sɔ:]	sawed [sɔ:d]	sawed [sɔ:d]	пилить
			sawn [sɔ:n]	
85	say [seɪ]	said [sed]	said [sed]	говорить, сказать
86	see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	seen [si:n]	видеть
87	seek [si:k]	sought [sɔ:t]	sought [sɔ:t]	искать
88	sell [sel]	sold [sould]	sold [sould]	продавать
89	send [send]	sent [sent]	sent [sent]	посылать
90	set [set]	set [set]	set [set]	помещать, ставить; заходить (о солнце)
91	shake [ʃeɪk]	shook [ʃuk]	shaken [ʃeɪkn]	трясти

	Base Form	Past Simple	Past Participle	Translation
92	shave [ʃeɪv]	shaved [ʃeɪvd]	shaved [ʃeɪvd] shaven [ʃeɪvn]	брить(-ся)
93	shed [ʃed]	shed [ʃed]	shed [ʃed]	проливать *(слёзы, кровь)*
94	shine [ʃaɪn]	shone [ʃɔn] shined [ʃaɪnd]	shone [ʃɔn] shined [ʃaɪnd]	сиять, светить
95	shoot [ʃu:t]	shot [ʃɔt]	shot [ʃɔt]	стрелять
96	show [ʃou]	showed [ʃoud]	shown [ʃoun] showed	показывать
97	shrink [ʃrɪŋk]	shrank [ʃræŋk]	shrunk [ʃrʌŋk]	сморщиваться; сокращаться
98	shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]	shut [ʃʌt]	закрывать
99	sing [sɪŋ]	sang [sæŋ]	sung [sʌŋ]	петь
100	sink [sɪŋk]	sank [sæŋk]	sunk [sʌŋk]	погружаться, тонуть
101	sit [sɪt]	sat [sæt]	sat [sæt]	сидеть
102	sleep [sli:p]	slept [slept]	slept [slept]	спать
103	slide [slaɪd]	slid [slɪd]	slid [slɪd]	скользить
104	smell [smel]	smelled smelt [smelt]	smelled smelt [smelt]	пахнуть; нюхать
105	sow [sou]	sowed [soud]	sown [soun] sowed [soud]	сеять
106	speak [spi:k]	spoke [spouk]	spoken [ˈspoukən]	говорить
107	spell [spel]	spelt [spelt] spelled	spelt [spelt] spelled	писать или произносить слово по буквам
108	spend [spend]	spent [spent]	spent [spent]	тратить
109	spill [spɪl]	spilt [spɪlt] spilled	spilt [spɪlt] spilled	проливать
110	spit [spɪt]	spat [spæt]	spat [spæt]	плевать
111	split [splɪt]	split [splɪt]	split [splɪt]	раскалывать(-ся)
112	spoil [spoɪl]	spoilt [spoɪlt] spoiled	spoilt [spoɪlt] spoiled	портить
113	spread [spred]	spread [spred]	spread [spred]	распространять(-ся)
114	spring [sprɪŋ]	sprang [spræŋ]	sprung [spræŋ]	прыгать
115	stand [stænd]	stood [stud]	stood [stud]	стоять
116	steal [sti:l]	stole [stoul]	stolen [stouln]	красть
117	stick [stɪk]	stuck [stʌk]	stuck [stʌk]	приклеивать(-ся)
118	sting [stɪŋ]	stung [stʌŋ]	stung [stʌŋ]	жалить
119	strike [straɪk]	struck [strʌk]	struck [strʌk]	ударять; бастовать
120	strive [straɪv]	strove [strouv]	striven [strɪvn]	стремиться
121	swear [swɛə]	swore [swɔ:]	sworn [swɔ:n]	клясться; браниться
122	sweep [swi:p]	swept [swept]	swept [swept]	мести
123	swell [swel]	swelled [sweld]	swollen [ˈswoulən] swelled [sweld]	пухнуть, раздуваться
124	swim [swɪm]	swam [swæm]	swum [swʌm]	плавать
125	swing [swɪŋ]	swung [swʌŋ]	swung [swʌŋ]	качать(-ся); размахивать
126	take [teɪk]	took [tuk]	taken [teɪkn]	брать
127	teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]	обучать, учить
128	tear [tɛə]	tore [tɔ:]	torn [tɔ:n]	рвать
129	tell [tel]	told [tould]	told [tould]	рассказывать
130	think [θɪŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]	думать
131	throw [θrou]	threw [θru:]	thrown [θroun]	бросать
132	understand [ʌndəˈstænd]	understood [ʌndəˈstud]	understood [ʌndəˈstud]	понимать
133	wake [weɪk]	woke [wouk] waked [weɪkt]	woken [woukn] waked [weɪkt]	просыпаться; будить

	Base Form	Past Simple	Past Participle	Translation
134	wear [wɛə]	wore [wɔ:]	worn [wɔ:n]	носить
135	weep [wi:p]	wept [wept]	wept [wept]	плакать
136	win [wɪn]	won [wʌn]	won [wʌn]	выигрывать
137	wind [waɪnd]	wound [waund]	wound [waund]	заводить *(часы)*; виться
138	write [raɪt]	wrote [rout]	written [rɪtn]	писать

Appendix 3

Irregular and Regular Verbs: Confusing Forms

	Base Form	Past Simple	Past Participle	Translation
1	to fall	fell	fallen	падать
	to feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
	to fill	filled	filled	наполнять
2	to flow	flowed	flowed	течь, литься
	to fly	flew	flown	летать
3	to lay	laid	laid	класть, положить
	to lie	lay	lain	лежать
	to lie	lied	lied	лгать
4	to leave	left	left	уезжать
	to live	lived	lived	жить
5	to raise	raised	raised	поднимать
	to rise	rose	risen	подниматься
6	to strike	struck	struck	бить, ударять
	to stroke	stroked	stroked	гладить

Appendix 4

Regular Verbs: Spelling Rules

Base Form	third person singular of Present Simple	**'-ing'** form or Present Participle	**'-ed'** form or Past Participle	Exceptions
	+ '-s'	+ 'ing'	+ 'ed'	
join	*joins*	*joining*	*joined*	
ending	+ '-es'			
in **-sh** *finish*	*finishes*	*finishing*	*finished*	
-ch *reach*	*reaches*	*reaching*	*reached*	
-ss *pass*	*passes*	*passing*	*passed*	
-x *mix*	*mixes*	*mixing*	*mixed*	
-z *buzz*	*buzzes*	*buzzing*	*buzzed*	
-o *echo*	*echoes*	*echoing*	*echoed*	
ending in **'-e'**	+ '-s'	omit `-e' before adding '-ing' or '-ed'		*age, agree, disagree, dye, free, knee, tiptoe* do not omit `-e' before adding `-ing'
dance	*dances*	*dancing*	*danced*	
ending in **'-ie'**		`-ie' ⇨ '-y' before adding '-ing'		
tie	*ties*	*tying*	*tied*	
ending in consonant + **'-y'**	'-y' ⇨ '-ies'		'-y' ⇨ '-ied'	
cry	*cries*	*crying*	*cried*	
one-syllable, ending in single vowel + consonant	+ '-s'	double final consonant before adding '-ing' or '-ed'		not '-w', '-x', '-y': *rowing, boxing, playing*
dip	*dips*	*dipping*	*dipped*	
two-syllable, ending in single vowel + **'-l'**				in American English *traveling, traveled*
travel	*travels*	*travelling*	*travelled*	
the following verbs: *equip, handicap, hiccup, kidnap, program, refer, worship*				
equip	*equips*	*equipping*	*equipped*	

Appendix 5

Place and Order of Adverbs in a Sentence – General Information

– before adjectives, other adverbs and participles	❑ The task was **surprisingly** simple. ❑ He walked **very** fast. ❑ We are **extremely** interested in their proposal.
– usually after verbs	❑ He speaks **slowly**.
– at the beginning of a sentence for the sake of emphasis	❑ **Slowly**, he entered the room. ❑ **Tomorrow**, I will let you about my decision. ❑ **Now**, I understand what you mean.
– when there are two or more adverbs in the same sentence, they usually come in the following order: ***manner – place – time***	❑ She spoke **very well here last time**.
– if there is a verb of movement (*go*, *come*, *leave*) in the sentence, then the adverbs come in the following order: ***place – manner – time***	❑ She arrived **here by train yesterday**.

Place of Adverbs – Specific Categories

– adverbs ***of manner*** ("how?" – *well*, *quickly*, *politely*, *easily*, etc.) - before main verbs - after auxiliary verbs - at the end of the sentence	 ❑ They **quickly** returned. ❑ He was **anxiously** waiting for their reply. ❑ She smiled **kindly**.
– adverbs ***of degree*** ("to what extent?" – *very*, *quite*, *rather*, *absolutely*, etc.) - before adjectives, adverbs or main verbs - after auxiliary verbs	 ❑ We were **very** glad to see them. ❑ The student passed the exam **quite** well. ❑ I **absolutely** enjoyed our trip. ❑ I don't **quite** understand how we are going to it.
– adverbs ***of frequency*** ("how often?" – *always*, *often*, *usually*, etc.) - after auxiliary verbs and the verb *to be* - before main verbs	 ❑ He has **never** visited us. ❑ Paul is **often** late. ❑ He **sometimes** comes here.
– adverbs of ***place and time*** – usually at the end of the sentence – some ***one-syllable adverbs of time*** (*soon*, *now*, *then*) – - before main verbs - after auxiliary verbs or the verb *to be*	❑ How long are they going to stay **here**? ❑ I saw him **yesterday**. ❑ I **now** understand what he means. ❑ She will **soon** come back home.

Appendix 6

American English

There are a few grammatical differences between British and American English:

1. In American English *the Past Simple* is often used to give new information or to announce a recent happening:
   - ❑ I **lost** my key. Can you help me look for it?

   The Past Simple is used with **just** and **already**:
   - ❑ I'm not hungry. I **just had** lunch.
   - ❑ "Don't forget to post the letter." – "I **already posted** it".

   Americans use *the Past Simple* with **yet**:
   - ❑ I **didn't tell** them about the accident **yet**.

2. In American English the forms **I have/I don't have/ do you have?** are more usual than *I've got/I haven't got/have you got?*:
   - ❑ We **have** a new car.
   - ❑ Do you **have** any change?

3. These verbs (**burn**, **learn**, etc.) are normally regular in American English: burn**ed**, learn**ed**, etc.

4. The Past Participle of **get** is **gotten** in American English:
   - ❑ Your English has **gotten** much better since I last saw you.

Appendix 7

Punctuation

. FULL STOP (US = PERIOD)

Used to mark the end of a sentence:

Edward walked briskly into the hotel. The receptionist looked at him coldly.

Also ⇨ **Letters** and **Abbreviations** below.

? QUESTION MARK

1. Used at the end of a direct question:
   Who was the first to arrive?

(***Note***. It is not used at the end of an indirect question: He asked who had been the first to arrive.)

2. Used in parentheses to express doubt:
   He was born in 1550(?) and died in 1613.

! EXCLAMATION MARK (US: ALSO EXCLAMATION POINT)

Used at the end of a sentence or remark expressing a high degree of anger, amazement or other strong emotion:

"What a wonderful surprise!" she cried.
Get out of here and never come back!

(***Note***. Beware of over-using exclamation marks or including them where the emotion is only mild.)

, COMMA

1. Used to separate the items in lists of words, phrases or clauses:

Red, pink, yellow and white roses filled the huge vases.

If you take your time, stay calm, concentrate and think ahead, you'll pass your driving test.

2. Sometimes used after a subordinate adverbial clause or after a phrase which comes before the main clause. It is essential after longer clauses and phrases, and to avoid ambiguity:

When the sun is shining brightly above, the world seems a happier place.

In the summer of 1984, many trees died.

3. Used after a non-finite or verbless clause, at the beginning of a sentence:

To get there on time, she left half an hour early.
Happy and contented, the cat fell asleep.

4. Used to separate an introductory or transitional word or phrase (e.g. *therefore*, *however*, *by the way*, *for instance*) from the rest of the sentence:

Yes, it certainly had been an eventful day.
In fact, I don't even know her name.
Driving on icy roads can be dangerous and one should, therefore, be very careful.

5. Used before and after any element (e.g. a dependent clause, a comment) which interrupts the sentence:

The fire, although it had been burning for several hours, was still blazing fiercely.

You should, indeed you must, report the matter to the police.

6. Used before and after a non-defining relative clause or a phrase in apposition, which gives more information about the noun it follows:

The Pennine Hills, which have been a favourite with hikers for many years, are situated between Lancashire and Yorkshire.

Queen Elizabeth II, a very popular monarch, celebrated her Silver Jubilee in 1977.

(***Note.*** No commas are used around a relative clause that defines the noun it follows: *The hills that separate Lancashire from Yorkshire are called the Pennines.*)

7. Sometimes used to separate main clauses linked by a conjunction (e.g. *and*, *as*, *but*, *for*, *or*), especially when the first clause is long:

We had been looking forward to meeting Sarah's husband, but discovered that he was not as pleasant as we had hoped.

Also ⇨ **Conversation** and **Letters** below.

: COLON

1. *(Formal)* Used after a main clause where the following statement illustrates or explains the content of that clause. It may be replaced by a semicolon or a full stop:

The garden had been neglected for a long time: it was overgrown and full of weeds.

2. Used before a long list, and often introduced by phrases such as: *such as*; *for example*; *for instance*; *in the following examples*; *as follows*:

Your first aid kit should include the following items: cotton wool, lint, antiseptic lotion, sticking plaster, bandages and safety pins.

Also ⇨ **Letters** and **Quotations** below.

; SEMICOLON

1. *(Formal)* Used to separate main clauses, not (usually) joined by a conjunction, which are considered so closely connected as to belong to one sentence:

The sun was setting now; the shadows were long.

He had never been to Russia before; however, it had always been one of his life-long ambitions.

2. Used instead of a comma to separate from each other parts of a sentence that are already separated by commas:

There are two facts to consider: first, the weather; second, the expense.

– DASH

1. *(Colloq.)* Used instead of a colon or a semicolon to make the writing more vivid or dramatic:

Sirens blared, men shouted, and people crowded in to witness the scene – it was chaos.

So you've been lying to me for years and years – how can I ever trust you again?

2. *(Colloq.)* Used singly or in pairs to separate extra information, an afterthought or a comment, in a vivid or dramatic way, from the rest of the sentence:

Schooldays are the happiest days of our lives – or so we are told.

Schooldays – or so we are told – are the happiest days of our lives.

(***Note.*** In more formal usage, parentheses or commas replace dashes.)

Also ⇨ **Conversation** below.

() PARENTHESES (GB: ALSO BRACKETS)

1. Used to separate extra information, an afterthought or a comment from the rest of the sentence:

Schooldays (so we are told) are the happiest days of our lives.

He said he'd never seen the sea before (but I think he was joking).

2. Used to enclose cross-references:

The abacus (see the picture on page 1) is used for teaching numbers to children.

'' QUOTATION MARKS (GB: ALSO INVERTED COMMAS)

(***Note.*** In GB usage they are usually single: *'Fire!'* In US usage they are usually double: *"Fire!"*)

Used around a slang or technical term when it is in a context in which it is not usually found, or around a word to which the writer wishes to draw particular attention:

Next, the clay pot had to be 'fired'.

He called himself a 'gentleman' but you would never have thought so from the way he behaved.

Also ⇨ **Conversation** and **Quotations** below.

- HYPHEN

(***Note.*** It must not be confused with the dash, which separates parts of a sentence. The hyphen is half the length of the dash.)

1. Sometimes used to form a compound word from two other words: *hard-hearted*; *radio-telescope*; *fork-lift truck*.

2. Used to form a compound word from a prefix and a proper name: *pre-Raphaelite*; *pro-Soviet*; *anti-Nazi*.

3. Used to form a compound word from two other words which are separated by a preposition: *mother-in-law*; *mother-to-be*; *mother-of-pearl*; *out-of-date*.

4. *(Esp. GB)* Sometimes used to separate a prefix ending in a vowel from a word beginning with that same vowel: *co-ordination*; *re-elect*; *pre-eminent*.

' APOSTROPHE

1. Used with 's' to indicate the possessive:
Singular noun: *the dog's* [dɔgz] *bone*.
Singular noun ending in 's': *the princess's* [prin'sesiz] *smile*.
Singular proper noun ending in 's' (two possible forms): *King Charles's* ['ʧa:lziz] *crown*, *King Charles'* ['ʧa:lziz] *crown*.
Plural noun: *students'* ['stju:dənts] *books*.
Irregular plural: *men's* [menz] *jackets*.

2. Used in a contracted form to indicate the omission of letters or figures:
I'm (= I am); *he's (= he is/has)*; *they'd (= they would/had)*. *In '87 (= 1987)*.

3. Used with 's' to form the plural of a letter, a figure or an abbreviation, when these are used as proper words. In modern usage it is often omitted after a figure or a capital letter:
In the 1960's or *in the 1960s*. *MP's* or *MPs*. *He can't pronounce his r's*.

4. Used with 's' to form the plural of a word (e.g. a preposition or a conjunction) that does not usually have a plural:
No if's or but's – just do as I say.

ABBREVIATIONS

1. A full stop may end an abbreviation or a person's initials, although this is becoming less common, especially in GB usage:
Mr. R. S. H. Smith or *Mr R S H Smith*.

2. When the abbreviation consists of capitals, it is common GB usage to omit the full stops: *UN*, *WHO*, *BCC*.

3. The omission of full stops in a lower case abbreviation is less common: *i.e.*, *p.m.*, *e.g.*, or *ie*, *pm*, *eg*.

4. If the abbreviation includes the last letter of the word, it is usual in GB usage to omit the full stop: *Mr*, *Dr*, *St*, *Rd*.

5. To form the plural of capital letter abbreviations, add a lower case 's or s: *MP's* or *MPs*, *TV's* or *TVs*.

CONVERSATION

1. A new indented paragraph is begun with each new speaker.

2. Quotation marks enclose all words and punctuation in direct speech:
"What on earth did you do that for?" he asked.

3. Introductory words (e.g. *he said*, *she cried*, *they answered*) are separated from the actual words spoken by commas if no other punctuation mark (e.g. question mark, exclamation mark) is used:
John said, "That's all I know." "That's all I know", said John. "That", said John, "is all I know."
"Why?" asked John.

4. A comma separates a question tag from the rest of the sentence:
"You knew he'd come, didn't you?"

5. A mild interjection or the direct use of a name is separated from the rest of the sentence by a comma:
"Oh, so that's what he wanted." (BUT: "Oh no! I don't believe you!")
"Well, Peter, I did my best." (BUT: "Peter! Look out!")

6. Hesitant or interrupted speech can be indicated by dashes:
"Can I – I mean, would you mind if I came too?"
"You'll find it in – were his dying words."

7. Speech within speech is shown by (GB usage) double quotation marks inside single marks, or (US usage) single quotation marks within double marks:
'When the judge said, "Not guilty," I could have hugged him.' (GB)
"When the judge said, 'Not guilty,' I could have hugged him." (US)

QUOTATIONS

1. The quotation is separated from its introduction by a colon and is enclosed by quotation marks:
It was Disraeli who said: "Little things affect little minds."

2. If a word or phrase is omitted from the quotation, this is indicated by a row of three dots (...):
"The condition of man ... is a condition of war of everyone against everyone." (Thomas Hobbes)

Also ⇨ **Conversation** above.

LETTERS

1. A business letter is set out as shown below. The punctuation marks are optional. The address of the person who is writing the letter is in the top right-hand corner; the address of the person to whom the letter is being written is in the top left-hand corner, but below the address of the sender:

3 Willow Street,
Frambleton,
Suffolk.
SF5 9PK.
6th June, 1984.

Mr D. B. Taylor.
Metalwork Ltd,
Booth Street,
Ormton,
Lancashire.
LC14 3JQ.

Dear Mr Taylor,
Thank you for...

Yours faithfully/sincerely/(US) truly,
[signature]
Mary Burton.

2. In US usage, a colon is substituted for the comma in the salutation, except informally:
Dear Ms Burton: but *Dear Mary,*

3. In an informal letter, only the address of the sender is necessary, the optional punctuation is more likely to be omitted, and *Yours sincerely*, etc. is replaced by a more friendly or personal phrase, e.g. *Yours*, *Yours affectionately*, *With best / warm wishes*, *With love*.

Appendix 8

Prepositions and Homonymous Adverbs. Meaning and Use

about	1. *о, об, относительно*	❑ We'll speak **about** it tomorrow.
	2. *вокруг, кругом, по*	❑ He looked **about** him. ❑ He walked **about** the garden.
	3. *примерно, приблизительно*	❑ It's **about** five o'clock now.
above	1. *над, выше*	❑ The plane flew **above** the clouds. ❑ The temperature is **above** zero.
	2. *свыше, больше*	❑ There were **above** 200 people there.
across	1. *через*	❑ The boy went **across** the street.
	2. *поперек*	❑ They built a bridge **across** the river.
after	1. *после*	❑ He returned home **after** twelve.
	2. *вслед, за*	❑ He ran **after** her.
	3. союз: *после того, как*	❑ They went home **after** the work had been completed.
along	1. *вдоль*	❑ They went **along** the stream.
	2. *по*	❑ They drove **along** the road.
	3. *дальше, вперед*	❑ They moved **along**.
	4. *вместе с*	❑ I've brought my sister **along**.

among	*между, среди* (относится к большому количеству предметов)	❑ He was lost **among** the crowd of people.
at	1. *у, возле, около*	❑ He stopped **at** the door.
	2. *в*	❑ I met him **at** the theatre yesterday. ❑ He studies **at** University.
	3. *на, в*	❑ He works **at** the factory. ❑ He'll see him **at** the lecture.
	4. *в* (о времени)	❑ I get up **at** 7 o'clock.
before	1. *до, перед* (о времени)	❑ We'll have a walk **before** dinner.
	2. союз: *прежде чем*	❑ **Before** being admitted to Oxford University, he was carefully tested.
behind	*позади, за*	❑ He sat **behind** me.
below	*под, ниже*	❑ Her photograph is **below** that picture.
beside	*рядом с, около, близ*	❑ He was sitting **beside** me.
between	*между* (обычно относится к двум предметам или группам)	❑ She divided the cake **between** the two of them.
by	1. *к* (обозначение срока)	❑ We'll have finished the work **by** Monday.
	2. *у, возле, около*	❑ He was sitting **by** the window.
	3. *мимо*	❑ He walked **by** me without saying a word.
down	1. *вниз по, с* (направление)	❑ He ran **down** the stairs (hill).
	2. *по, вдоль по*	❑ They went **down** the corridor.
during	*в течение* *во время*	❑ **During** my stay in London I visited many museums. ❑ **During** the war she worked at a plant in Siberia.
for	1. *для*	❑ It's a great pleasure **for** me.
	2. *за*	❑ He paid **for** the dinner.
	3. *в течение*	❑ I'll stay here **for** two days.
	4. *на* (указание срока или момента)	❑ He booked a room **for** three nights. ❑ We made an appointment **for** 5 o'clock.
from	*от, из, с* (откуда, от кого)	❑ This is a letter **from** Mary. ❑ He has returned **from** Moscow. ❑ He took a book **from** the shelf.
in	1. *в* (место, время)	❑ We live **in** St. Petersburg. ❑ They arrived **in** London. ❑ There were several pencils **in** the box. ❑ They arrived **in** 2003/**in** May/**in** spring.
	2. *через*	❑ He'll return **in** a week/**in** three days.
inside	*внутри*	❑ The children are **inside** the house.
into	*в* (направление, внутрь)	❑ He put the letter **into** his pocket.
of	1. *из*	❑ Some **of** my friends came to see me off. ❑ The watch is made **of** gold.
	2. *о, об, относительно*	❑ She was thinking **of** him constantly.
off	1. *с* (поверхности)	❑ He took all the things **off** the table.
	2. *от* (отделение части, удаление)	❑ He cut a bit **off** the rope. ❑ The dog ran **off** (away).

on	1. *на* (поверхности) 2. *в* (дни и даты) 3. *по, после* (в сочетании с герундием) 4. *о, об, по* (на тему о)	❑ Put the magazine **on** the table. ❑ They arrived **on** the 1st of May/**on** Sunday. ❑ **On** receiving your letter, I telephoned to your brother. ❑ He delivered a lecture **on** Greek drama. ❑ What is your opinion **on** the subject?
out of	*из* (направление действия)	❑ He ran **out of** the room.
outside	*вне, за пределы (-лами)* (куда/где)	❑ He went **outside** the house to meet us.
over	1. *над* 2. *свыше, сверх* 3. *за, на протяжении* 4. *через*	❑ A lamp was hanging **over** the table. ❑ There were **over** a hundred cars waiting near the bridge. ❑ You've done a lot **over** the past two years. ❑ He climbed **over** the wall.
(a)round	*вокруг, кругом*	❑ The earth moves **round** the Sun. ❑ There were a lot of flowers **around** the house.
since	1. *с* (какого-то момента) союз: a) *с тех пор, как* b) *поскольку, так как*	❑ We've lived here **since** the war. ❑ I haven't seen him **since** he left Moscow. ❑ **Since** the car is out of order, we'll go by train.
through	1. *через, сквозь* 2. *из-за*, вследствие	❑ We were walking **through** the forest. ❑ The accident happened **through** your carelessness.
till, until	*до, вплоть до* союз: *до тех пор пока ... не*	❑ We'll stay here **till (until)** Monday. ❑ I'll work **until** I finish my work.
to	*к, в, на* (куда)	❑ They went **to** the director/to school/to the party.
towards	1. *к, по направлению к* 2. *к, по отношению к*	❑ The ship sailed **towards** the sea. ❑ He is friendly **towards** me.
under	1. *под* 2. *меньше*	❑ He was lying **under** the tree. ❑ He is **under** forty.
up	*вверх по,* *вверх, наверх*	❑ The steamer sailed **up** the river. ❑ I looked **up** and saw him.

Literature

Alexander L. G. Longman English Grammar Practice for Intermediate Students. – Longman, 1992.– 296 pp.

English Grammar Through Practice (Morphology). – M. : Higher School Publishing House, 1976. – 208 pp.

Helleger-Jone M. A., Lampater P. Grammar in Profile. – Ernest Klett Verlag: Stuttgart, 1991.

Krutikov Y. A., Kuzmina I. S., Rabinovich Kh. V. Exercises in Modern English Grammar. – M. : Higher School Publishing House, 1971. – 247 pp.

Krylova I. P. An English Grammar Practice Book. – M. : Higher School Publishing House, 1978. – 235 pp.

Lapidus B., Shevtsova S. A Practical Guide to Better English. – M. : International Relations Institute Publishing House, 1962. – 174 pp.

Matyushkina-Guerke T. I., Kuzmichyova T. N., Ivanova L. I. Practical Grammar in Patterns (For laboratory work). – M. : Higher School Publishing House, 1974. – 192 pp.

Murphy R. English Grammar In Use (A self-study reference and practice book for intermediate students). – Cambridge University Press, 1992. – 328 pp.

Murphy R. Essential Grammar in Use. – Cambridge University Press, 1994. – 259 pp.

Natanson E. A. Practical English Grammar by Correspondence. – M. : Higher School Publishing House, 1973. – 304 pp.

Rollason J. 50 Mixed-Ability Grammar Lessons. – Scholastic. – 136 pp.

Swan M., Walter C. How English Works. – Oxford University Press, 2002. – 358 pp.

Swan M., Walter C. The New Cambridge English Course: Practice 4. – Cambridge University Press, 1997.

Walker E., Elsworth S. Grammar Practice. – Longman, 2000.

Willis Dave. Student's Grammar. – London : Harper Collins Publishers, 1991. – 263 pp.

Woolard G. Grammar with Laughter. – Language Teaching Publications, 1999. – 104 pp.

Борковская И. Б., Рейман Е. А., Успенская Н. В. Предлоги в английском языке. – Л. : Наука, 1973.

Волкова Е. И. Английский артикль в речевых ситуациях.– М. : Просвещение, 1974. – 158 с.

Гордон Е. М., Крылова И. П. Употребление артиклей в английском языке. – М. : Международные отношения, 1964. – 82 с.

Каушанская В. Л., Ковнер Р. Л. Грамматика английского языка (на английском языке). – Л. : Просвещение, 1973. – 319 с.

Каушанская В. Л., Ковнер Р. Л. и др. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка. – Л. : Просвещение, 1968. – 200 с.

Качалова К. Н., Израилевич Е. Е. Практическая грамматика английского языка. – М. : Внешторгиздат, 1959. – 720 с.

Лебедева А. Я. Времена английского глагола (сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка). – Л. : Просвещение, 1979. – 79 с.

Мальчевская Т. Н. Сборник упражений по переводу гуманитарных текстов с английского языка на русский: Практическое пособие. – Л. : Наука, Ленинградское отделение, 1970. – 213 с.

Натанзон Е. А. Косвенные наклонения и модальные глаголы в английском языке. – М. : Международные отношения, 1968. – 160 с.

Предлоги: Справочник по английскому языку. – М. : Астрель, 2004. – 382 с.

Уокер Сильвия. Связующие слова: Справочник по английскому языку. – М. : Астрель, 2004. – 236 с.

Т. Ю. Дроздова, В. Г. Маилова, А. И. Берестова

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

REFERENCE & PRACTICE

Version 2.0

Художник *О. В. Граблевская*
Художественный редактор *А. А. Неклюдова*
Технический редактор *А. Б. Ткаченко*
Корректор *Е. И. Старкова*
Компьютерная верстка *А. Б. Ткаченко*

Подписано в печать 08.10.2012.
Формат 84x108/16.
Гарнитура Pragmatica.
Печать офсетная. Объем 26,5 п.л.
Заказ № 5947/12.

Издательство «Антология»
199053, Санкт-Петербург, В.О., Средний пр., д. 4
тел.: (812) 328-14-41
www.anthologybooks.ru

Отпечатано в соответствии с предоставленными материалами
в ООО «ИПК Парето-Принт», г. Тверь
www.pareto-print.ru